Administration for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway

03-603228
Issue 1
May 2009

© 2009 Avaya Inc.
All Rights Reserved.

Notice

While reasonable efforts were made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing, Avaya Inc. can assume no liability for any errors. Changes and corrections to the information in this document may be incorporated in future releases.

For full legal page information, please see the complete document, Avaya Legal Page for Software Documentation, Document number 03-600758.

To locate this document on the website, simply go to http://www.avaya.com/support and search for the document number in the search box.

Documentation disclaimer

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for any modifications, additions, or deletions to the original published version of this documentation unless such modifications, additions, or deletions were performed by Avaya. Customer and/or End User agree to indemnify and hold harmless Avaya, Avaya's agents, servants and employees against all claims, lawsuits, demands and judgments arising out of, or in connection with, subsequent modifications, additions or deletions to this documentation to the extent made by the Customer or End User.

Link disclaimer

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked websites referenced elsewhere within this documentation, and Avaya does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. We cannot guarantee that these links will work all of the time and we have no control over the availability of the linked pages.

Warranty

Avaya Inc. provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Avaya's standard warranty language, as well as information regarding support for this product, while under warranty, is available through the following website:

http://www.avaya.com/support

Copyright

Except where expressly stated otherwise, the Product is protected by copyright and other laws respecting proprietary rights. Unauthorized reproduction, transfer, and or use can be a criminal, as well as a civil, offense under the applicable law.

Avaya support

Avaya provides a telephone number for you to use to report problems or to ask questions about your product. The support telephone number is 1-800-242-2121 in the United States. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya website:

http://www.avaya.com/support

Contents

About this book 21
Overview 21
Audience 21
Downloading this book and updates from the web 21
Downloading this book 21
Related resources 22
Technical assistance 23
Within the US. 23
International 23
Trademarks. 23
Sending us comments. 24

Chapter 1: Introduction 25
G430 contents 26
G430 support information. 26
G430 with media modules. 26

Chapter 2: Supported LAN deployments 27
Basic configuration 27
Port redundancy configuration 28
Port and switch redundancy configuration 29
RSTP configuration 30
RSTP and switch redundancy configuration 31

Chapter 3: Configuration overview. 33
Defining the Services interface 33
Defining the USB-modem interface. 33
Defining other interfaces 34
Configuration using CLI. 34
Configuration using GUI applications 34
Saving configuration changes 35
Summary of configuration changes CLI commands 36
Firmware version control 36

Chapter 4: Accessing the Avaya G430 Media Gateway 37
Accessing the CLI 37
Logging into the CLI. 37
CLI contexts 38

CLI help . . . 38
Accessing CLI via local network . . . 39
Accessing CLI with a PC device . . . 39
Accessing the gateway through the Services port . . . 39
Accessing the CLI via modem . . . 40
Accessing the CLI via a USB modem . . . 40
Accessing the CLI via a modem connection to the S8300 . . . 41
Accessing Avaya IW . . . 41
Access and run the Avaya IW using a laptop computer . . . 42
Accessing GIW . . . 44
Access the GIW . . . 45
Accessing PIM . . . 46
Accessing Avaya Aura Communication Manager . . . 46
Managing login permissions . . . 47
Security overview . . . 47
Managing user accounts . . . 47
Privilege level . . . 48
Configuring usernames . . . 48
Managing password length and contents . . . 49
Managing password lockout and disabling . . . 49
Managing password expiry . . . 49
Changing a password . . . 50
Displaying user account information . . . 50
Summary of user account CLI commands . . . 50
Authenticating service logins with Access Security Gateway (ASG) authentication . . . 51
Enabling ASG authentication . . . 52
Replacing the ASG authentication file . . . 52
Configuring ASG authentication . . . 54
Displaying ASG authentication information . . . 55
Summary of ASG authentication CLI Commands . . . 56
SSH protocol support . . . 57
RSA authentication process . . . 58
Password authentication process . . . 58
SSH configuration . . . 58
Summary of SSH configuration commands . . . 59
SCP protocol support . . . 59
SCP configuration . . . 60
Summary of SCP configuration commands . . . 60
RADIUS authentication . . . 60

Using RADIUS authentication 60
Configuring RADIUS authentication 60
Changing RADIUS parameters 61
Disabling RADIUS authentication 61
Displaying RADIUS parameters 61
Summary of RADIUS authentication configuration commands 62
Special security features 62
Using the recovery password 63
Summary of recovery password commands 63
Configuring Telnet access 63
Summary of Telnet access configuration commands 64
Managing gateway secrets 64
Configuring the Master Configuration Key 65
Summary of Master Configuration Key configuration commands 65
Enabling SYN cookies 65
Configuring SYN cookies 66
Maintaining SYN cookies 67
Summary of SYN cookies configuration commands 67
Managed Security Services (MSS) 68
MSS reporting mechanism 68
Configuring MSS 68
DoS attack classifications 70
Defining custom DoS classifications 71
Example 73
Summary of MSS configuration CLI commands 74

Chapter 5: Basic device configuration 75
Defining an interface 75
Configuring the Primary Management Interface (PMI) 76
Setting the PMI of the G430 76
Summary of PMI configuration CLI commands 77
Defining the default gateway 78
Summary of default gateway configuration CLI commands 78
Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) 78
Survivability and migration options 79
Configuring the MGC list 80
Setting the G430's MGC 80
Determining results 81
Showing the current MGC list 81
Removing one or more MGCs 82

Changing the MGC list. 82
Setting reset times. 82
Accessing the registered MGC 83
Monitoring the ICC or LSP 83
Summary of MGC list configuration commands. 84
DNS resolver 84
DNS resolver features 85
Typical DNS resolver application – VPN failover 85
Configuring DNS resolver 86
DNS resolver configuration example 89
Using DNS resolver to resolve a hostname 89
Maintaining DNS resolver 89
Showing DNS resolver information. 89
Clearing DNS resolver counters 90
Viewing DNS resolver logging 90
Summary of DNS resolver configuration commands 90
Viewing the status of the device 91
Summary of device status commands 93
Software and firmware management 94
File transfer 94
Software and firmware upgrades 94
Managing the firmware banks. 95
Upgrading software and firmware using FTP/TFTP 96
Upgrading software and firmware using a USB mass storage device . . . 97
Uploading software and firmware from the gateway 98
Summary of software and firmware management commands 100
Backing up and restoring the G430 using a USB mass storage device 101
Backing up administration and configuration files using a USB mass storage device 102
Restoring backed up configuration and administration files to a gateway using a USB mass storage device. 104
Replicating a G430 using a USB mass storage device 104
Replacing/adding/upgrading media modules using a USB mass storage device 107
Additional USB commands 108
Summary of USB backup, restore, and replication commands 108
Backing up and restoring configuration files 109
Backing up/restoring a configuration file using FTP/TFTP/SCP 109
Backing up/restoring a configuration file using a USB mass storage device 110
Summary of configuration file backup and restore commands 111
Listing the files on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway 112

Summary of file listing commands 112

Chapter 6: Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS) 113

Media module compatibility with SLS 113
SLS service. 114
Avaya phones supported in SLS 114
Call processing in SLS mode 116
Call processing not supported by SLS. 117
Provisioning data 118
PIM configuration data 119
Entering SLS mode 120
Unregistered state 120
Setup state 120
Registered state 120
Teardown 121
SLS interaction with specific G430 features 121
Direct Inward Dialing in SLS mode 121
Multiple call appearances in SLS mode 122
Hold in SLS mode 122
Call Transfer in SLS mode 124
Using contact closure in SLS mode 125
IP Softphone shared administrative identity in SLS mode 126
SLS logging activities 127
Example of CDR log entries and format 128
Example of CDR log with contact closure 129
Configuring SLS 129
Configuring Communication Manager for SLS 130
Using PIM to manage SLS administration on the gateway 135
Enabling and disabling SLS. 140
Activating changes in SLS 141
Using the CLI to manually configure SLS administration on the gateway. . . 141
Prerequisites 141
Planning and preparing the SLS data set 142
Configuring the SLS data through the CLI 156
Administering Station parameters 160
Administering DS1 parameters 163
Administering BRI parameters 168
Administering trunk-group parameters 170
Administering signaling-group parameters 177
Administering dial-pattern parameters 178

Administering incoming-routing parameters 180
Summary of SLS configuration commands 181

Chapter 7: Configuring Ethernet ports 191
Ethernet ports on the G430 191
Ethernet ports on the G430 Media Gateway switch 191
Ethernet ports on the G430 Media Gateway router 191
Cables used for connecting devices to the fixed router 191
Configuring switch Ethernet ports 192
Switch Ethernet port commands 192
Summary of switch Ethernet port configuration CLI commands 193
Configuring the WAN Ethernet port 194
Configuring additional features on the WAN Ethernet port 194
WAN Ethernet port traffic shaping 195
Backup interfaces 195
WAN Ethernet port commands 195
Summary of WAN Ethernet port configuration CLI commands 196
Configuring DHCP client 196
DHCP client applications 197
DHCP client configuration 198
Releasing and renewing a DHCP lease 200
Maintaining DHCP client 201
Configuring DHCP client logging messages 201
Summary of DHCP client configuration CLI commands 202
Configuring LLDP 203
Supported TLVs 204
Mandatory TLVs 204
Optional TLVs 204
802.1 TLVs (optional) 204
LLDP configuration 204
Displaying LLDP configuration 205
Supported ports for LLDP 205
Summary of LLDP configuration CLI commands 206

Chapter 8: Configuring logging 207
Configuring a Syslog server 208
Defining Syslog servers 208
Disabling Syslog servers 209
Deleting Syslog servers 209
Displaying the status of the Syslog server 210

Syslog sink default settings. 210
Syslog message format 210
Copying a syslog file 211
Configuring a log file 211
Disabling logging system messages to a log file 211
Deleting current log file and opening an empty log file 211
Displaying log file messages 212
Displaying conditions defined for the file output sink 212
Log file message format. 213
Configuring a session log. 213
Discontinuing the display of system messages 213
Displaying how the session logging is configured 214
Session logging message format. 214
Configuring logging filters 215
Setting the logging filters 215
Severity levels 216
Sinks default severity levels 216
Applications to be filtered. 217
Syslog server example 218
Log file example 219
Session log example. 220
Summary of Logging configuration CLI commands 220

Chapter 9: Configuring VoIP QoS 223
Configuring RTP and RTCP. 223
Configuring header compression 223
Header compression configuration options 224
Configuring IPHC 224
Summary of IPHC header compression CLI commands 226
Configuring VJ header compression. 227
Summary of Van Jacobson header compression CLI commands 228
Displaying and clearing header compression statistics 229
Configuring QoS parameters 229
Configuring RTCP QoS parameters 230
RSVP parameters 230
Summary of QoS, RSVP, and RTCP configuration CLI commands 230
Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ). 231
Configuring Weighted Fair VoIP Queueing (WFVQ). 231
Summary of WFVQ configuration CLI commands. 232

Priority queueing 232
Configuring priority queuing 233
Summary of priority queueing configuration CLI commands 234

Chapter 10: Configuring the G430 for modem use 235
Configuring the USB-modem interface. 235
Configuring the USB port for modem use 235
Summary of CLI commands for configuring the USB port for modem use . . 237

Chapter 11: Configuring WAN interfaces 239
Initial WAN configuration 240
PPPoE overview 240
Configuring PPPoE 241
Summary of PPPoE commands. 244
Verifying the WAN configuration and testing connectivity 245
Summary of WAN configuration verification commands 246
Backup interfaces 246
Configuring backup delays 247
Interface backup relations rules 247
Backup commands 248
Summary of backup interfaces commands 248
Modem dial backup 248
Typical installations 251
Prerequisites for configuring modem dial backup 251
Configuring modem dial backup 252
Modem dial backup interactions with other features 255
Configuration example 257
Command sequence. 258
Command sequence explanation. 259
Modem dial backup maintenance. 261
Activating session logging 261
Setting the severity level of the logging session 261
Summary of modem dial backup commands 267
ICMP keepalive. 268
Enabling the ICMP keepalive feature 270
Defining the ICMP keepalive parameters. 270
Example of configuring ICMP keepalive 271
Summary of ICMP keepalive configuration commands. 271
Dynamic CAC 272
Enabling dynamic CAC and setting maximum bandwidth 273

Displaying bandwidth information 273
Summary of dynamic CAC configuration commands 274
Object tracking 274
Object tracking configuration 275
Configuring RTR 276
Configuring object tracking 278
Object tracking maintenance 280
Viewing RTR and object trackers logging 281
Example of tracking a single remote device 282
Example of tracking a group of devices 283
Typical object tracking applications 284
Typical application – VPN failover using object tracking 285
Typical application – backup for the WAN FastEthernet interface 285
Typical application – interface backup via policy-based routing 288
Typical application – tracking the DHCP client default route 289
Summary of object tracking configuration commands 290

Chapter 12: Configuring Emergency Transfer Relay (ETR) 293
Setting ETR state 293
Viewing ETR state 294
Summary of ETR commands 294

Chapter 13: Configuring SNMP 295
Agent and manager communication 295
SNMP versions 296
SNMPv1 297
SNMPv2c 297
SNMPv3 297
Users 298
SNMP security levels 298
SNMP-server user command 298
Groups 299
Creating an SNMPv3 group 300
Views 300
Creating an SNMPv3 view 300
Configuring SNMP traps 301
Notification types 302
Summary of SNMP trap configuration commands 303
Configuring SNMP access 304
Summary of SNMP access configuration commands 305

Configuring dynamic trap manager 306
Summary of dynamic trap manager configuration commands 307
SNMP configuration examples 308

Chapter 14: Configuring contact closure 311
Contact closure hardware configuration 311
Contact closure software configuration 312
Showing contact closure status 313
Summary of contact closure commands 313

Chapter 15: Transferring and managing announcement files 315
Announcement file operations 315
Summary of announcement files commands 318

Chapter 16: Configuring advanced switching 321
Configuring VLANs 321
VLAN Tagging 321
Multi VLAN binding 322
G430 VLAN table 323
Ingress VLAN Security 323
ICC-VLAN 323
VLAN CLI commands 324
VLAN configuration examples 324
Summary of VLAN commands 327
Configuring port redundancy 328
Secondary port activation 328
Switchback 329
Port redundancy CLI commands 329
Port redundancy configuration examples 329
Summary of port redundancy commands 330
Configuring port mirroring 331
Port mirroring CLI commands 331
Port mirroring configuration examples 331
Summary of port mirroring commands 332
Configuring spanning tree 332
Spanning tree protocol 332
Spanning tree per port 333
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) 333
Spanning tree CLI commands 335

Spanning tree configuration examples . . . 336
Summary of spanning tree commands . . . 337
Port classification . . . 339
Port classification CLI commands . . . 339
Port classification configuration examples . . . 339
Summary of port classification commands . . . 340

Chapter 17: Configuring monitoring applications . . . 341
Configuring RMON . . . 341
RMON CLI commands . . . 342
RMON configuration examples . . . 342
Summary of RMON commands . . . 344
Configuring and analyzing RTP statistics . . . 344
Configuring the RTP statistics application . . . 345
Viewing RTP statistics thresholds . . . 346
Configuring RTP statistics thresholds . . . 348
Enabling and resetting the RTP statistics application . . . 349
Viewing application configuration . . . 350
Configuring QoS traps . . . 352
Configuring QoS fault and clear traps . . . 353
Configuring the trap rate limiter . . . 354
Analyzing RTP statistics output . . . 354
Viewing RTP statistics summary reports . . . 354
Viewing RTP session statistics . . . 355
Viewing QoS traps, QoS fault traps, and QoS clear traps . . . 362
Analyzing QoS trap output . . . 363
Analyzing QoS fault and clear trap output . . . 366
Viewing automatic traceroute results . . . 368
RTP statistics examples . . . 369
Configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network . . . 369
A call over the WAN from an analog phone to an IP phone . . . 373
A local call between an IP and an analog phone . . . 375
A remote call over the WAN from an IP phone to an IP phone . . . 377
A conference call . . . 380
Summary of RTP statistics commands . . . 382
Configuring and analyzing packet sniffing . . . 383
What can be captured . . . 384
Streams that can always be captured . . . 384
Streams that can never be captured . . . 384
Streams that can sometimes be captured . . . 384

Configuring packet sniffing 385
Enabling packet sniffing. 385
Limiting packet sniffing to specific interfaces 385
Creating a capture list 386
Defining rule criteria for a capture list 386
Viewing the capture list 393
Applying a capture list. 393
Configuring packet sniffing settings 394
Starting the packet sniffing service 395
Analyzing captured packets 396
Stopping the packet sniffing service 396
Viewing packet sniffing information 396
Uploading the capture file 397
Analyzing the capture file 399
Simulating packets 401
Summary of packet sniffing commands 401
Reporting on interface status 404
Summary of interface status commands. 405
Configuring and monitoring CNA test plugs. 406
CNA test plug functionality 406
Test plug actions. 406
CNA tests 407
Configuring the G430 test plug for registration 407
CNA test plug configuration example 409
Resetting the CNA test plug counters 411
Summary of CNA test plug commands 411
Configuring echo cancellation 412
Echo cancellation CLI commands 412
Summary of echo cancellation commands 413
Integrated analog testing – Test and Heal 414
Types of tests 414
Types of test lines 415
Setting up a test profile 416
Displaying and clearing profiles 417
Launching and cancelling a test 417
Displaying test results. 417
Healing trunks 418
Displaying corrections 418
Summary of integrated analog testing commands 418

Chapter 18: Configuring the router 421
Configuring interfaces 421
Router interface concepts 422
Physical router interfaces 422
Layer 2 virtual interfaces 422
Layer 2 logical interfaces 423
IP Interface configuration commands 423
Configuring interface parameter commands 423
Interface configuration examples 423
Displaying interface configuration 424
Summary of basic interface configuration commands 424
Configuring unnumbered IP interfaces 426
Configuring unnumbered IP on an interface 426
Unnumbered IP examples 427
Summary of unnumbered IP interface configuration commands 428
Routing sources 428
Configuring the routing table 429
Configuring next hops 430
Static route types 430
Configuring multiple next hops 430
Deleting a route and its next hops 430
Permanent static route 431
Discard route 431
Routing table commands 432
Summary of routing table commands 433
Configuring GRE tunneling 433
Routing packets to a GRE tunnel 434
Preventing nested tunneling in GRE tunnels 435
Reasons for nested tunneling in a GRE tunnel 435
Recommendations on avoiding nested tunneling 436
Optional GRE tunnel features 437
Keepalive 437
Dynamic MTU discovery 438
Setting up a GRE tunnel 439
Additional GRE tunnel parameters 440
GRE tunnel application example 441
Summary of GRE tunneling commands 443
Configuring DHCP and BOOTP relay 444
DHCP 444
BOOTP 444

DHCP/BOOTP relay 445
DHCP/BOOTP relay commands 446
Summary of DHCP and BOOTP relay commands 446
Configuring DHCP server 447
Typical DHCP server application 448
DHCP server CLI configuration 448
Configuring Options 449
Configuring vendor-specific options 450
Optional DHCP server CLI commands 451
DHCP pool configuration examples 452
Displaying DHCP server information 454
Summary of DHCP Server commands 455
Configuring broadcast relay 457
Directed broadcast forwarding 457
NetBIOS rebroadcast 458
Summary of broadcast relay commands 458
Configuring the ARP table 459
Overview of ARP 459
The ARP table 459
ARP table commands 461
Summary of ARP table commands 461
Enabling proxy ARP 462
Summary of Proxy ARP commands 462
Configuring ICMP errors 463
Summary of ICMP errors commands 463
Configuring RIP 463
RIPv1 464
RIPv2 464
Preventing routing loops in RIP 464
RIP distribution access lists 465
RIP limitations 466
RIP commands 466
Summary of RIP commands 467
Configuring OSPF 469
OSPF dynamic Cost 470
OSPF limitations 470
OSPF commands 470
Summary of OSPF commands 472
Route redistribution 474
Export default metric 474

Summary of route redistribution commands 475
Configuring VRRP 475
VRRP configuration example 476
VRRP commands 477
Summary of VRRP commands 478
Configuring fragmentation 479
Fragmentation commands 480
Summary of fragmentation commands 480

Chapter 19: Configuring IPSec VPN 481
Overview of IPSec VPN configuration 482
Overview of IPSec VPN components 482
Summary of configuration steps 484
Configuring a site-to-site IPSec VPN 486
Coordinating with the VPN peer 486
Configuring ISAKMP policies 487
Configuring transform-sets 488
Configuring ISAKMP peer information 489
Configuring an ISAKMP peer-group 493
Configuring crypto maps 494
Configuring crypto lists 495
Deactivating crypto lists to modify IPSec VPN parameters 498
Configuring and assigning an access control list 499
Configuring global parameters 499
Configuring NAT Traversal 499
Assigning a crypto list to an interface 500
IPSec VPN maintenance 502
Displaying IPSec VPN configuration 502
Displaying IPSec VPN status 502
IPSec VPN intervention 503
IPSec VPN logging 503
Typical installations 505
Simple VPN topology – VPN hub and spokes 505
Configuring the simple VPN topology 506
Configuration example 508
Using dynamic local peer IP 511
Enabling continuous channel 514
Full or partial mesh 515
Full solution: hub and spoke with VPN 527
Typical failover applications 534

Introduction to the failover mechanism 534
Failover using GRE 535
Failover using DNS 542
Failover using a peer-group 550
Checklist for configuring site-to-site IPSec VPN 558
Summary of VPN commands 561

Chapter 20: Configuring policy 567
Types of policy lists 567
Access control lists 567
Access control list rule specifications 567
Network security using access control lists 568
QoS lists 569
Policy-based routing 569
Managing policy lists 570
Defining policy lists 570
Creating and editing a policy list 570
Defining list identification attributes 571
Default actions 572
Deleting a policy list 572
Attaching policy lists to an interface 572
Packets entering the interface 572
Packets exiting the interface 573
Device-wide policy lists 574
Defining global rules 575
Defining rules 575
Editing and creating rules 576
Policy lists rule criteria 576
IP protocol 577
Source and destination IP address 577
Source and destination port range 578
ICMP type and code 579
TCP establish bit (access control lists only) 580
Fragments 580
DSCP 580
Composite Operation 580
Composite operations 581
Pre-configured composite operations for access control lists 581
Pre-configured composite operations for QoS lists 582

Configuring composite operations 583
Adding composite operation to an ip rule 583
Composite operation example 584
DSCP table 584
Changing an entry in the DSCP table 585
Displaying and testing policy lists 586
Displaying policy lists 586
Simulating packets 587
Summary of access control list commands 588
Summary of QoS list commands 591

Chapter 21: Configuring policy-based routing 595
Applications 596
Separate routing of voice and data traffic 596
Backup 597
Setting up policy-based routing 597
PBR rules 600
Modifying rules 601
PBR rule criteria 601
Next hop lists 602
Modifying next hop lists 602
Adding entries to a next hop list 602
Deleting an entry from a next hop list 602
Canceling tracking and keeping the next hop 603
Changing the object tracker and keeping the next hop 603
Editing and deleting PBR lists 603
Displaying PBR lists 604
Application example 604
Configuration for the sample policy-based routing application 606
Simulating packets in PBR 609
Summary of policy-based routing commands 609

Chapter 22: Setting synchronization 613
Synchronization status 614
Displaying synchronization status 615
Summary of synchronization commands 615

Appendix A: Traps and MIBs 617
G430 traps 617

G430 MIB files 625
MIB files in the Load.MIB file 627
MIB files in the RFC1315-MIB.my file 628
MIB files in the Q-BRIDGE-MIB.my file 630
MIB files in the ENTITY-MIB.my file 631
MIB files in the IP-FORWARD-MIB.my file 632
MIB files in the VRRP-MIB.my file 633
MIB files in the UTILIZATION-MANAGEMENT-MIB.my file 634
MIB files in the ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB.my file 635
MIB files in the RSTP-MIB.my file 635
MIB files in the APPLIC-MIB.my file 636
MIB files in the DS1-MIB.my file 636
MIB files in the PPP-IP-NCP-MIB.my file 639
MIB files in the RFC1213-MIB.my file 640
MIB files in the AVAYA-ENTITY-MIB.my file 644
MIB files in the Rnd-MIB.my file 644
MIB files in the XSWITCH-MIB.my file 645
MIB files in the CROUTE-MIB.my file 646
MIB files in the RS-232-MIB.my file 649
MIB files in the RIPv2-MIB.my file 651
MIB files in the IF-MIB.my file 652
MIB files in the DS0BUNDLE-MIB.my file 654
MIB files in the RFC1406-MIB.my file 654
MIB files in the DS0-MIB.my file 656
MIB files in the POLICY-MIB.my file 657
MIB files in the BRIDGE-MIB.my file 663
MIB files in the CONFIG-MIB.my file 665
MIB files in the G700-MG-MIB.my file 669
MIB files in the FRAME-RELAY-DTE-MIB.my file 673
MIB files in the IP-MIB.my file 675
MIB files in the Load12-MIB.my file 676
MIB files in the PPP-LCP-MIB.my file 678
MIB files in the WAN-MIB.my file 679
MIB files in the SNMPv2-MIB.my file 681
MIB files in the OSPF-MIB.my file 682
MIB files in the TUNNEL-MIB.my file 685

Index 687

About this book

Overview

Administration for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway describes how to configure and manage the Avaya G430 Media Gateway after it is already installed. For installation instructions, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

Audience

The information in this book is intended for use by Avaya technicians, provisioning specialists, business partners, and customers.

Downloading this book and updates from the web

You can download the latest version of the *Administration for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway* from the Avaya website. You must have access to the Internet, and a copy of Acrobat Reader must be installed on your personal computer.

Avaya makes every effort to ensure that the information in this book is complete and accurate. However, information can change after we publish this book. Therefore, the Avaya website might contain new product information and updates to the information in this book. You can also download these updates from the Avaya website.

Downloading this book

1. Access the Avaya website at http://www.avaya.com/support/.
2. Click **FIND DOCUMENTATION and TECHNICAL INFORMATION by PRODUCT NAME**.
3. Type this book's document number (03-603228) in the **Search** box.
4. Click **GO**.

 The search results appear.

5. Locate the latest version of the book.
6. Click the book title. Your browser downloads the book.

Related resources

Title	Number
Overview for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway	03-603235
Quick Start for Hardware Installation for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway	03-603236
Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway	03-603233
Avaya G430 CLI Reference	03-603234
Maintenance Alarms for Avaya Aura Communication Manager, Media Gateways and Servers	03-300430
Maintenance Commands for Avaya Aura Communication Manager, Media Gateways and Servers	03-300431
Maintenance Procedures for Avaya Aura Communication Manager, Media Gateways and Servers	03-300432

Technical assistance

Avaya provides the following resources for technical assistance.

Within the US

For help with:

- Feature administration and system applications, call the Avaya DEFINITY Helpline at 1-800-225-7585
- Maintenance and repair, call the Avaya National Customer Care Support Line at 1-800-242-2121
- Toll fraud, call Avaya Toll Fraud Intervention at 1-800-643-2353

International

For all international resources, contact your local Avaya authorized dealer for additional help.

Trademarks

All trademarks identified by the ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks, respectively, of Avaya Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Sending us comments

Avaya welcomes your comments about this book. To reach us by:

- Mail, send your comments to:

 Avaya Inc.

 Product Documentation Group

 Room B3-H13

 1300 W. 120th Ave.

 Westminster, CO 80234 USA
- E-mail, send your comments to:

 document@avaya.com
- Fax, send your comments to:

 1-303-538-1741

Mention the name and number of this book, *Administration for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603228.

Chapter 1: Introduction

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway is a multipurpose media gateway targeting small and medium branches of 1 to 150 users. The G430 supports two expansion modules to support varying branch office sizes. The G430 works in conjunction with Avaya Aura™ Communication Manager IP telephony software running on Avaya S8XXX Servers to help deliver intelligent communications to enterprises of all sizes.
The G430 combines telephone exchange and data networking, by providing PSTN toll bypass and routing data and VoIP traffic over the WAN. The G430 features a VoIP engine and Ethernet LAN connectivity. The G430 provides full support for Avaya IP and digital telephones, as well as analog devices such as modems, fax machines, and telephones.

Telephone services on a G430 are controlled by an Avaya S8XXX Server operating either as an External Call Controller (ECC) or as an Internal Call Controller (ICC). The G430 supports the Avaya S8300 Server as an ICC, or as an ECC when the S8300 is installed in another media gateway. The G430 also supports the Avaya S87XX, S85XX, and S8400 Servers as ECCs.

An ICC can be used in addition to an ECC with the ICC installed as a Local Survivable Processor (LSP) designed to take over call control in the event that the ECC fails or the WAN link between the branch office and main location breaks. The LSP provides full featured telephone service survivability for the branch office. The G430 itself also features Standard Local Survivability (SLS), which provides basic telephone services in the event that the connection with the primary ECC is lost.

The G430 is a scalable device with a basic configuration consisting of one power supply unit (PSU), 256 MB RAM, and a single on-board DSP supporting 20 VoIP channels. This configuration can be enhanced by adding a DSP board supporting either 10, 20, or 80 VoIP channels. You can also replace the 256 MB RAM with 512 MB RAM and use an external compact flash to increase the number of announcement files from 256 to 1024.

The G430 is a modular device, adaptable to support different combinations of endpoint devices. While fixed front panel ports support the connection of external LAN switches, Ethernet WAN lines and external routers, three slots are provided for plugging in optional media modules. Two EM200 expansion modules can be connected to the G430, providing two media module slots each, bringing the total number of available media module slots to seven. Pluggable media modules provide interfaces for different types of telephones and trunks. A combination is selected to suit the needs of the branch. A range of telephony modules provides full support for legacy equipment such as analog and digital telephones. IP phones are supported via an external LAN switch.

The G430 features a field replaceable RAM memory card and a DSP childboard.

G430 contents

- An advanced router
- A Voice over IP (VoIP) engine
- A fax and modem over IP engine
- Preservation of calls in progress when switching from one server to another (applicable to all connections except ISDN BRI)
- Support for contact closure
- Virtual Private Networks (VPN)

G430 support information

The G430 device supports various telephones, trunks, and ports. You can add plug-in media modules to the G430 for additional support.

G430 with media modules

When you add plug-in media modules to the G430, the G430 also supports:

- IP telephones via an external LAN switch
- DCP digital telephones
- Analog telephones and trunks
- E1/T1 trunks
- ISDN PRI trunks
- ISDN BRI trunks

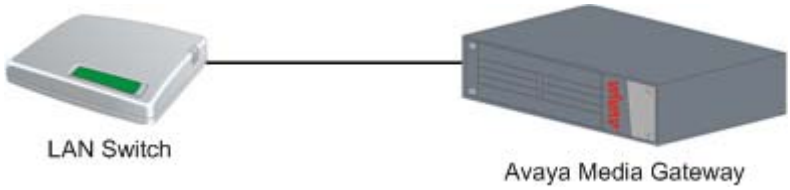
Chapter 2: Supported LAN deployments

There are five supported LAN configurations for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway.

Basic configuration

The G430 can be deployed in the LAN with a basic configuration that includes no redundancy. The G430 is connected to an external LAN switch using one of the two Ethernet LAN ports located on the G430's front panel.

Figure 1: Basic LAN deployment



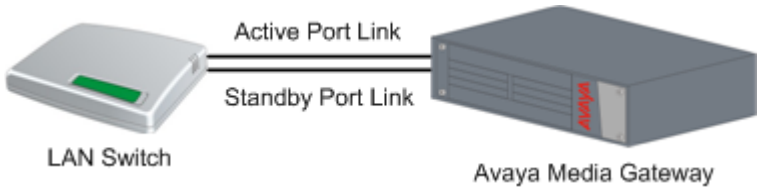
Port redundancy configuration

The G430 can be deployed in the LAN using port redundancy to provide redundancy. The G430 is connected to an external LAN switch using both of the Ethernet LAN ports located on the G430's front panel.

One of the Ethernet LAN ports is configured to be the active primary link, and the other Ethernet LAN port is configured to be on standby (disabled). For information on configuring the Ethernet LAN ports in a port redundancy pair, refer to Configuring port redundancy on page 328.

When the G430 senses a link down failure on the primary port, it automatically enables the secondary link. Both ports need to be administratively enabled on the LAN switch peer.

Figure 2: Port redundancy LAN deployment



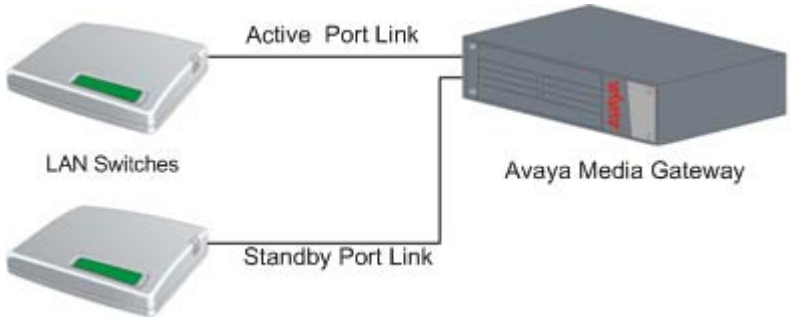
Port and switch redundancy configuration

The G430 can be deployed in the LAN using port and switch redundancy to provide redundancy. The G430 is connected to two external LAN switches. Each of the Ethernet LAN ports located on the G430's front panel is connected to one of the switches.

One of the Ethernet LAN ports is configured to be the active primary link, and the other Ethernet LAN port is configured to be on standby (disabled). For information on configuring the Ethernet LAN ports in a port redundancy pair, refer to Configuring port redundancy on page 328.

When the G430 senses a link down failure on the primary port or failure of the switch to which the primary link is attached, it automatically enables the secondary link to the backup switch. Both ports need to be administratively enabled on their respective LAN switch peers.

Figure 3: Port and switch redundancy LAN deployment



RSTP configuration

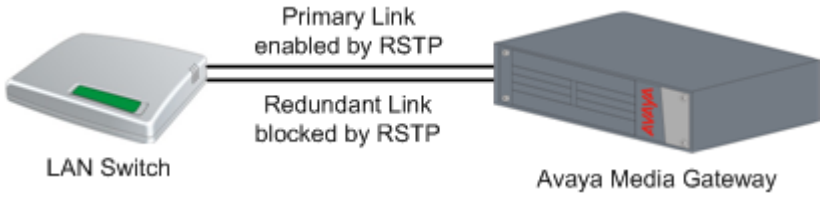
The G430 can be deployed in the LAN using RSTP to provide redundancy. The G430 is connected to an external LAN switch using both of the Ethernet LAN ports located on the G430's front panel.

Spanning tree protocol blocks one of the links from the G430 to the external LAN switch. Spanning tree protocol must be configured on both the external LAN switch and the Ethernet LAN ports on the G430. For information on configuring spanning tree on the Ethernet LAN ports, refer to Configuring spanning tree on page 332.

When the G430 senses a link down failure on the active port, it automatically enables the second link. Both ports need to be administratively enabled on the LAN switch peer.

The advantage of fast RSTP over port redundancy is that it controls the link state based on the best LAN topology using the links' cost. However, an RSTP convergence time penalty is incurred.

Figure 4: RSTP LAN deployment



RSTP and switch redundancy configuration

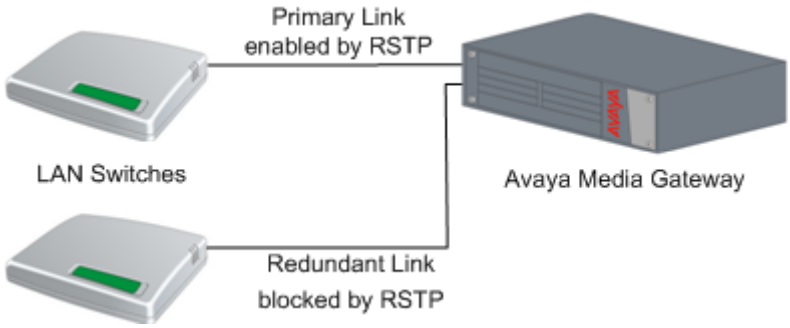
The G430 can be deployed in the LAN using RSTP and switch redundancy to provide redundancy. The G430 is connected to two external LAN switches. Each of the Ethernet LAN ports located on the G430's front panel is connected to one of the switches.

Spanning tree protocol blocks one of the links from the G430 to the external LAN switch. Spanning tree protocol must be configured on both the external LAN switch and the Ethernet LAN ports on the G430. For information on configuring spanning tree on the Ethernet LAN ports, refer to Configuring spanning tree on page 332.

When the G430 senses a link down failure on the active port or failure of the switch to which the active link is attached, it automatically enables the blocked link to the backup switch. Both ports need to be administratively enabled on the LAN switch peer.

The advantage of fast RSTP over port redundancy is that it controls the link state based on the best LAN topology using the links' cost. However, an RSTP convergence time penalty is incurred.

Figure 5: RSTP and switch redundancy LAN deployment



Chapter 3: Configuration overview

A new Avaya G430 Media Gateway comes with default configuration settings. There are certain items that you must configure, according to your system specifications, before using the G430. Configuration of other items depends on the specifications of your network.

A new G430 has two physical interfaces for management. These are the Services interface, and the USB-modem interface.

You must also ensure that the G430 is properly configured for whichever methods you intend to use for accessing the G430. For information on accessing the G430, see Accessing the Avaya G430 Media Gateway on page 37.

Defining the Services interface

No configuration of the Services interface is necessary. The Services interface has the fixed IP address 192.11.13.6. However, the console device you connect to the Services port requires a specific configuration of its network settings, as explained in Accessing the gateway through the Services port on page 39.

Defining the USB-modem interface

If you intend to use a USB modem to connect to the G430, you should also assign an IP address to the USB-modem interface. It is not necessary to include a subnet mask.

1. Enter **`interface usb-modem`** to enter the `USB-modem` context.
2. Use the **`ip address`** command to define a new IP address for the USB-modem interface.

The following example assigns an IP address of 10.3.3.2 to the USB-modem interface:

```
G430-001(super)# interface usb-modem
G430-001(super-if:USB-modem)# ip address 10.3.3.2
Done!
```

The default IP address for the USB port is 10.3.248.253 255.255.255.252.

Defining other interfaces

Your next step should be to define the other interfaces required by your system specifications. See Defining an interface on page 75.

Once you have defined your interfaces, you can define a Primary Management IP address (PMI). The PMI is the IP address which the G430 uses to identify itself when communicating with other devices, particularly the Media Gateway Controller (MGC). Management data intended for the G430 is routed to the interface defined as the PMI. You can use any interface as the PMI. For instructions on how to define the PMI, see Configuring the Primary Management Interface (PMI) on page 76.

Once you have defined a PMI, you must register the G430 with an MGC. The MGC is a call controller server that controls telephone services on the G430. The MGC can be internal or external. See Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) on page 78.

Once you have performed these steps, the G430 is ready for use. Other configuration tasks may also have to be performed, but these steps depend on the individual specifications of your G430 and your network.

Most G430 configuration tasks are performed using the G430 CLI. Avaya also provides several GUI applications that are designed to perform the basic configuration tasks described in this section. See Configuration using GUI applications on page 34.

Configuration using CLI

You can use the Avaya G430 Media Gateway CLI to manage the G430. The CLI is a command prompt interface that enables you to type commands and view responses. For instructions on how to access the G430 CLI, see Accessing the CLI on page 37.

This guide contains information and examples about how to use CLI commands to configure the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. For more information about the G430 CLI and a complete description of each CLI command, see the *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, *03-603234*.

Configuration using GUI applications

Several Avaya GUI applications enable you to perform some configuration tasks on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. It is recommended to use these applications whenever possible, particularly for initial installation and provisioning.

The Avaya Installation Wizard (Avaya IW) is a web-based installation wizard that leads the user through the key configuration steps of a G430 installation. The Avaya IW can be used for initial configuration of a G430 with an S8300 installed as the G430's primary (ICC) or backup (LSP) call controller. For instructions on how to access the Avaya IW, see Accessing Avaya IW on page 41. For step-by-step instructions on how to configure the G430 using the Avaya IW, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

The Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) is a standalone application that allows the user to perform certain basic G430 configuration tasks. The GIW can be used for initial configuration of a G430 that does not have an S8300 installed as either the G430's primary (ICC) or backup (LSP) call controller. For instructions on how to access the GIW, see Accessing GIW on page 44. For step-by-step instructions on how to configure the G430 using the GIW, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

The Avaya Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) is an application that allows the user to perform initial installation and provisioning of multiple gateways. It provides integrated network system views that ease centralized configuration tasks, especially provisioning and installing large numbers of gateways simultaneously. One of the primary functions of PIM is to provision and configure Standard Local Survivability (SLS). For instructions on how to access PIM, see Accessing PIM on page 46. For instructions on configuring SLS, see Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS) on page 113.

You can also use the Avaya G430 Manager to configure most features of the G430. The Avaya G430 Manager is a GUI application. You can access the Avaya G430 Manager from Avaya Integrated Management software or from a web browser. Most of the commands that are available through the G430 CLI are also available through the Avaya G430 Manager. For more information about the Avaya G430 Manager, see the *Avaya Integrated Management Release 5.2 G430 Manager User Guide*.

Saving configuration changes

When you make changes to the configuration of the Avaya G430 Media Gateway, you must save your changes to make them permanent. The G430 has two sets of configuration information:

- Running configuration
- Startup configuration

The G430 operates according to the running configuration. When the G430 is reset, the G430 erases the running configuration and loads the startup configuration as the new running configuration. When you change the configuration of the G430, your changes affect only the running configuration. Your changes are lost when the G430 resets if you do not save your changes.

Enter **`copy running-config startup-config`** to save changes to the configuration of the G430. A copy of the running configuration becomes the new startup configuration.

You can back up either the running configuration or the startup configuration to an FTP or TFTP server on your network, or to a USB flash drive. You can restore a backup copy of the configuration from the FTP or TFTP server or the USB flash drive. When you restore the backup copy of the configuration, the backup copy becomes the new running configuration on the G430. For more information, see Backing up and restoring configuration files on page 109.

Summary of configuration changes CLI commands

Table 1: Configuration changes CLI commands

Command	Description
copy running-config startup-config	Commit the current configuration, including Standard Local Survivability (SLS) data, to NVRAM

Firmware version control

Firmware is the software that runs the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. The Avaya G430 Media Gateway has two firmware banks:

- Bank A
- Bank B

Each firmware bank contains a version of the G430 firmware. These may be different versions. The purpose of this feature is to provide redundancy of firmware. You can save an old version of the firmware in case you need to use it later. If it becomes necessary to use the older version, you can enter **set boot bank bank-*x*** and then reset the G430 to use the older version. This is particularly important when uploading new versions.

For more information on firmware version control, see Software and firmware upgrades on page 94.

Chapter 4: Accessing the Avaya G430 Media Gateway

You can access the Avaya G430 Media Gateway using the CLI, the IW, the GIW, the PIM, and the Avaya Aura Communication Manager. You can manage login permissions by using and configuring usernames and passwords, and by configuring the G430 to use SSH, SCP, and RADIUS authentication. There are special security features that enable and disable the recovery password, establish incoming and outgoing Telnet connections, and configure SYN cookies for preventing SYN attacks.

Accessing the CLI

The CLI is a textual command prompt interface that you can use to configure the Avaya G430 Media Gateway and media modules. You can access the CLI with any of the following:

- SSH (Secure Shell), which enables you to establish a secure remote session over the network, Services port, or dial in modem (PPP). SSH is enabled by default.
- Telnet through the network, Services port, or dial in modem (PPP). Telnet is disabled by default.
- An SSH connection through a USB modem to the S8300, then a Telnet connection to the gateway using IP address 127.1.1.11.

If the G430 is under service contract with Avaya Services, remote service providers can connect remotely to service the G430 with Telnet and SSH sessions. For higher security, you can configure the G430 to authenticate remote service logins using Access Security Gateway (ASG) authentication instead of password authentication.

Logging into the CLI

Log in to the CLI with a username and password that your system administrator provides. Use RADIUS authentication if your network has a RADIUS server. For more information, see Managing login permissions on page 47.

Note:

Disconnect a Telnet session by typing **<Ctrl>+]**. This is particularly useful if the normal Telnet logout does not work.

CLI contexts

The CLI is divided into various contexts from which sets of related commands can be entered. Contexts are nested in a hierarchy, with each context accessible from another context, called the parent context. The top level of the CLI tree is called the general context. Each command has a context in which the command must be used. You can only use a command in its proper context.

For example, in order to configure the Loopback interface, you must first enter the `Loopback` interface context from general context. You can enter the `Loopback` interface context using the **`interface loopback 1`** command. Once you are in the `Loopback` interface context, you can enter Loopback interface commands.

You can use the **`tree`** command to view the available commands in each context.

CLI help

You can display a list of commands for the context you are in by typing **`help`** or **`?`**. The **`help`** command displays a list of all CLI commands that you can use within the current context, with a short explanation of each command.

If you type **`help`** or **`?`** before or after the first word or words of a command, the CLI displays a list of all commands in the current context that begin with this word or words. For example, to display a list of IP commands available in general context, enter **`help ip`**, **`ip help`**, **`? ip`**, or **`ip ?`**.

If you type **`help`** or **`?`** before or after a full command, the CLI displays the command's syntax and parameters, and an example of the command. You must be in the command's context in order to use the **`help`** command to display information about the command.

In the following example, the user enters the `vlan 1` interface context and displays help for the **`bandwidth`** command.

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 1
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 1)# bandwidth ?
Bandwidth commands:
------------------------------------------------------------------------
Syntax: bandwidth <kilobytes size>
                  <kilobytes size> : integer (1-10000000)
Example: bandwidth 1000
```

Accessing CLI via local network

Access the CLI from a computer on the same local network as the Avaya G430 Media Gateway by using SSH or, if Telnet is active, any standard Telnet program. Use the IP address of any G430 interface for the host address.

Accessing CLI with a PC device

To access the CLI with a PC device, connect a PC device to the Services port.

For information about using the Services port, see Accessing the gateway through the Services port on page 39.

Accessing the gateway through the Services port

1. Use a PC device with SSH client software.
2. Use an Ethernet cable to connect the PC device to the Services port on the front panel of the G430.
3. Set the TCP/IP properties of the PC device as follows:
 - IP address = `192.11.13.5`
 - Subnet mask = `255.255.255.252`
 - Disable DNS service
 - Disable WINS Resolution

 Note:

 Make a record of any IP addresses, DNS servers, or WINS entries that you change when you configure your laptop. Unless you use the NetSwitcher program or an equivalent, you will need to restore these entries to connect to other networks.
4. Configure the Internet browser settings of the PC device to disable the proxy server.
5. SSH to 192.11.13.6.

 Note:

 SSH is enabled by default, and Telnet is disabled by default. If you wish to use Telnet, you must enable it as described in Configuring Telnet access on page 63.

Accessing the CLI via modem

You can use any standard SSH or Telnet program to access the CLI from a remote location. This is done by using a dialup PPP network connection from a modem at the remote location. You can use a USB modem connected to the USB port on the front panel of the G430.

Note:

You can disconnect a Telnet session by typing **<Ctrl>+]**. This is particularly useful if the normal Telnet logout does not work.

Accessing the CLI via a USB modem

1. Connect a modem to the USB port on the front panel of the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. Use a USB cable to connect the modem. The G430 supports the Multitech MultiModem USB MT5634ZBA-USB-V92, and the USRobotics USB modem model 5637.
2. Make sure the USB port is properly configured for modem use. For details, see Configuring the USB port for modem use on page 235.
3. From the remote computer, create a dialup network connection to the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. Use the TCP/IP and PPP protocols to create the connection. Configure the connection according to the configuration of the COM port of the remote computer. By default, the G430 uses RAS authentication. If your network has a RADIUS server, you can use RADIUS authentication for the PPP connection. For more information, see Managing login permissions on page 47.
4. Open any standard SSH/Telnet program on the remote computer.

 Note:

 Telnet is disabled on the gateway by default. To enable Telnet, refer to Configuring Telnet access on page 63.
5. Open an SSH/Telnet session to the IP address of the USB port on the G430. For instructions on how to set the IP address of the USB port (i.e., the USB-modem interface), see Configuring the USB port for modem use on page 235.
6. Configure the serial connection on the remote computer to match the configuration of the USB port on the G430 (see Table 2).

Table 2: The USB port settings

Port setting	Value
Baud	-
Data bits	8

Table 2: The USB port settings

Port setting	Value
Parity	none
Stop bits	1
flow control	hardware

Accessing the CLI via a modem connection to the S8300

If the Avaya G430 Media Gateway includes an S8300 Server, you can access the CLI from a remote location. This is done by establishing a PPP network connection from a modem at the remote location to a USB modem connected to one of the USB ports on the front panel of the S8300. The S8300 supports the Multitech MultiModem USB MT5634ZBA-USB-V92, the MultiTech MT9234ZBA-USB, and the USRobotics USB modem model 5637.

Note:

In order to access the CLI via the S8300, the PMI of the G430 must be configured. See Configuring the Primary Management Interface (PMI) on page 76.

1. Connect a USB modem to either of the two USB ports on the Avaya S8300 Server.
2. Use the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface (MWI) to configure the USB port on the S8300 for modem use. For instructions, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.
3. From a remote computer, create a dialup network connection to the S8300. Use the TCP/IP and PPP protocols to create the connection.
4. Open any standard Telnet program on the remote computer.
5. Enter the command **`telnet`**, followed by the IP address of the S8300 USB port to which the modem is connected.
6. Enter the command **`telnet`**, followed by the PMI of the G430.

Accessing Avaya IW

The Avaya Installation Wizard (Avaya IW) is a web-based installation wizard that is used with the Avaya G430 Media Gateway to perform initial configuration tasks and to upgrade software and firmware. The Avaya IW is designed for use with systems that include an S8300 Server,

operating in either ICC or LSP mode. See Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) on page 78.

Specifically, you can perform the following tasks with the Avaya IW:

- Configure PMI and SNMP information, Ethernet interfaces, primary and secondary Media Gateway Controllers, G430 telephony and trunk parameters, and alarms
- Install license and password files, software, and firmware upgrades
- Enable and configure the USB ports of the S8300 and G430 for modem use
- Change your password

Access and run the Avaya IW using a laptop computer

1. Connect a laptop computer to the Services port of the S8300, using a crossover cable.
2. Configure the laptop as follows:
 - IP Address: 192.11.13.5
 - NetMask: 255.255.255.252
 - Disable DNS service
 - Disable WINS Resolution
 - Disable the Proxy Server in the Internet Explorer

 Note:

 Make a record of any IP addresses, DNS servers, or WINS entries that you change when you configure your services laptop. Unless you use the NetSwitcher program or an equivalent, you will need to restore these entries to connect to other networks.
3. Launch Internet Explorer on the laptop and enter the following URL to access the S8300 Server Home Page: **`http://192.11.13.6`**.

 The welcome screen for Avaya Integrated Management appears.
4. Click **Continue**. The Logon screen for Integrated Management appears.
5. Enter the appropriate login name and password.
6. Ask a customer representative for a login name and password that the customer would like for the superuser login. If you are a business partner, you can also repeat this procedure to add the dadmin login.

 Note:

 Make sure the customer can change this login, its password, or its permissions later.
7. From the Integrated Management main menu, select Launch Maintenance Web Interface.

8. From the navigation menu of the Maintenance Web Pages, select **Security** > **Administrator Accounts**.

 The **Administrator Accounts** screen appears.

9. Select **Add Login**.
10. Select **Privileged Administrator** and click **Submit**.

 The **Administrator Logins -- Add Login: Privileged Administrator** screen appears.

11. Type a login name for the account in the **Login name** field.
12. Verify the following:
 - **susers** appears in the **Primary group** field.
 - **prof18** appears in the **Additional groups (profile)** field. *prof18* is the code for the customer superuser.
 - **/bin/bash** appears in the **Linux shell** field.
 - **/var/home/*login name*** appears in the **Home directory** field, where ***login name*** is the name you entered in step 11.
13. Skip the fields **Lock this account** and **Date on which account is disabled-blank to ignore**.
14. For the **Select type of authentication** option, select **password**.

Note:

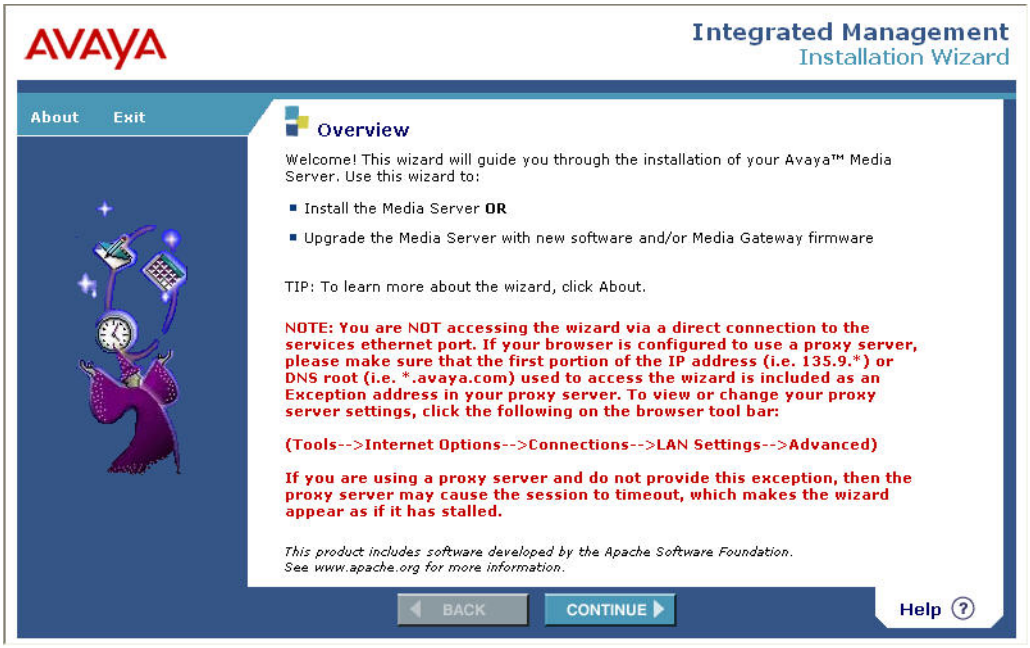
Do not lock the account or set the password to be disabled.

15. Enter the password in the **Enter password or key** field and the **Re-enter password or key** field.
16. In the section **Force password/key change on next login** select **no**.
17. Click **Submit**.

 The system informs you the login is added successfully.

18. Click the **Launch Installation Wizard** link on the home page. The **Avaya IW Overview** screen appears.

Figure 6: Avaya IW Overview screen



For step-by-step instructions on how to configure the G430 using the Avaya IW, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

Accessing GIW

The Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) is an automated tool that allows you to perform a streamlined installation and configuration of a G430 that does not include an S8300 Server. You can use the GIW to perform initial configuration of the G430 and to upgrade software and firmware. Specifically, you can perform the following tasks with the GIW:

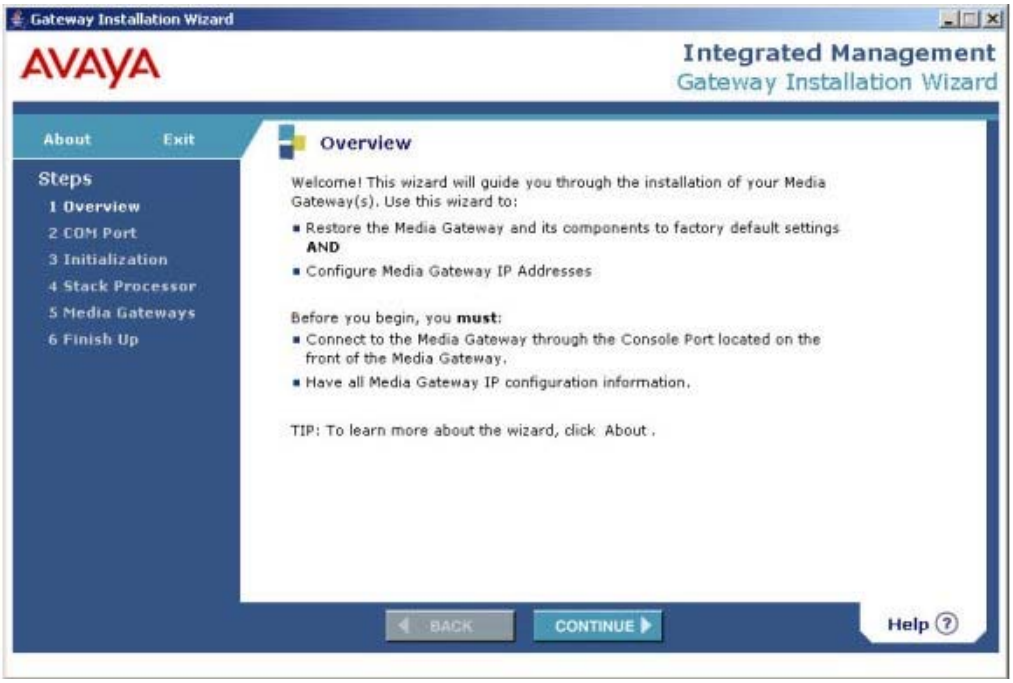
- Configure PMI information (see Configuring the Primary Management Interface (PMI) on page 76)
- Configure SNMP information (see Configuring SNMP on page 295)
- Configure primary and secondary Media Gateway Controllers (see Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) on page 78)
- Check connectivity between the G430 and its Media Gateway Controller
- Display information on the G430 and media modules installed on the G430

- Enable the G430 for modem use (see Configuring the G430 for modem use on page 235)
- Install software and firmware upgrades (see Software and firmware upgrades on page 94)

Access the GIW

1. Prepare a laptop with a CD-ROM drive, SSH client software, and a TFTP server on the network. This may be required for installing software and firmware upgrades
2. Install GIW on a laptop computer from the CD provided by Avaya. The laptop should be running Windows 2000 or Windows XP.
3. Set the laptop's TCP/IP properties as follows:
 - IP address: 192.11.13.5
 - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.252
 - Disable DNS service
 - Disable WINS Resolution
4. Disable the proxy server in the laptop's Internet browser settings.
5. Connect the laptop computer to the G430 Services port, using an Ethernet cable.
6. From your laptop computer, double-click the **GIW** icon to run GIW.

Figure 7: GIW Overview screen



For step-by-step instructions on how to configure the G430 using the GIW, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

Accessing PIM

The Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) enables you to remotely configure devices, primarily Avaya media gateways, on a network-wide basis. PIM provides integrated network system views that ease centralized configuration tasks, especially provisioning and installing large numbers of gateways simultaneously.

One of PIM's primary functions is to provision and configure Standard Local Survivability (SLS) on the G430. See Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS) on page 113.

PIM is launched from the Avaya Network Management Console. The Avaya Network Management Console is the central infrastructure application that discovers and monitors enabled network devices and runs Avaya Integrated Management applications.

PIM must be installed on the same Windows server as Avaya Network Management Console with System View and Avaya Secure Access Administration.

For detailed information about installing and launching PIM, see *Avaya Integrated Management Enterprise Network Management Installation and Upgrade*, 14-300444.

Accessing Avaya Aura Communication Manager

Use Avaya Aura Communication Manager software to control telephone services that the Avaya G430 Media Gateway provides. Run the Avaya Aura Communication Manager software on a server. There might be several servers on your network that can control the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. Access Avaya Aura Communication Manager on any server that is a Media Gateway Controller (MGC) for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. For more information, see Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) on page 78.

Access Avaya Aura Communication Manager with any of the following:

- **Avaya Site Administration (ASA)**. ASA provides wizards and other tools that help you to use Avaya Aura Communication Manager effectively. For more information, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.
- **SSH to port 5023 on the MGC**. For more information, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.
- **Avaya G430 Media Gateway CLI**. See Accessing the registered MGC on page 83.

Managing login permissions

You can manage login permissions to enable different privilege levels for each user and to operate the security mechanism.

Security overview

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway includes a security mechanism through which the system administrator defines users and assigns each user a username, password, and a privilege level. The user's privilege level determines which commands the user can perform.

In addition to its basic security mechanism, the G430 supports secure data transfer via SSH and SCP.

The G430 can be configured to work with an external RADIUS server to provide user authentication. When RADIUS authentication is enabled on the G430, the RADIUS server operates in conjunction with the G430 security mechanism. When the user enters a username, the G430 first searches its own database for the username. If the G430 does not find the username in its own database, it establishes a connection with the RADIUS server, and the RADIUS server provides the necessary authentication services.

Managing user accounts

You must provide a username and password when you perform any of the following actions:

- When you access the CLI. For more information, see Accessing the CLI on page 37.
- When you access the CLI using a modem with dialup PPP. For more information, see Accessing the CLI via modem on page 40.
- When you open Avaya G430 Manager.

You can configure various password parameters to enhance your system security. Some parameters control password length and content, and some control lockout and expiry policies.

When you use Avaya G430 Manager or the CLI, your username determines your privilege level. The commands that are available to you during the session depend on your privilege level.

If your network has a RADIUS server, you can use RADIUS authentication instead of a username and password. A RADIUS server provides centralized authentication service for many devices on a network.

Privilege level

When you open the Avaya G430 Manager or access CLI, you must enter a username. The username that you enter sets your privilege level. The commands that are available to you during the session depend on your privilege level. If you use RADIUS authentication, the RADIUS server sets your privilege level.

The G430 provides the following three privilege levels:

- **Read-only**. You can use the Read-only privilege level to view configuration parameters.
- **Read-write**. You can use the Read-write privilege level to view and change all configuration parameters except those related to security. For example, you cannot change a password with Read-write privilege level.
- **Admin**. You can use Admin privilege level to view and change all configuration parameters, including parameters related to security. Use Admin privilege level only when you need to change configuration that is related to security, such as adding new user accounts and setting the device policy manager source.

The default username has the Admin privilege level. For security reasons, the network administrator usually changes the password of the default username. For more information about privilege levels, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Configuring usernames

To create a username, use the **username** command. To remove a username, use the **no username** command. To change the password for a username, use the **password** command. To change the privilege level for a username, remove the username and add it again. You need an Admin privilege level to use the **username** and **no username** commands.

Note:

When ASG authentication is enabled on the gateway, all password user accounts with usernames similar to the reserved Avaya Services logins are deactivated. The logins are "rasaccess", "sroot", "init", "inads", and "craft". The login "dadmin" is reserved for an Avaya business partner remote services account, which can be defined for ASG authentication. For information about ASG authentication, refer to Authenticating service logins with Access Security Gateway (ASG) authentication on page 51.

When you create a new user, you must define the user's password and privilege level. Take care to enter a password that conforms with the password policies described in Managing password length and contents on page 49.

The following example creates a user named John with the password john7Long and a Read-write privilege level:

```
G430-001(super)# username john password john7Long access-type
read-write
```

Managing password length and contents

Use the following commands to control password length and the characters it must include:

- Use the **login authentication min-password-length** command to set the minimum password length to between 8 and 31 characters. The default length is 8 characters.
- Use the **login authentication min-password-digit-chars** command to set the minimum number of digit characters that a password must contain. The default is 0.
- Use the **login authentication min-password-lower-chars** command to set the minimum number of lowercase characters that a password must contain. The default is 1.
- Use the **login authentication min-password-upper-chars** command to set the minimum number of uppercase characters that a password must contain. The default is 0.
- Use the **login authentication min-password-special-chars** command to set the minimum number of special characters that a password must contain. Special characters are any printable non-alphanumeric characters except for white characters (blank or tab), and a double quote ("), which is ascii character 34. The default is 0 special characters.

Note:

The minimum password length must be at least as great as the sum of the minimum number of lowercase characters, uppercase characters, digit characters, and special characters.

Managing password lockout and disabling

When you lockout a user account, it remains locked out only for a specific time period. Disabling an account is a strong measure since it requires administrator intervention to re-enable the account. An administrator must run the **username** command and re-configure the account using the same user name and password.

- Use the **login authentication lockout** command to lockout or disable a local account after successive failed login attempts. You can configure the lockout period to between 30-3600 seconds. Both the lockout and the disabling policies go into effect after a configured 1-10 successive failed login attempts.
- Use the **login authentication inactivity-period** command to disable a local user account after an inactivity period of 2-365 days.

Managing password expiry

You can force all passwords to expire within a certain period of time after they were created. Accounts with expired passwords are locked and require an administrator to reset the account using the **username** command. However, a user can change the password before it expires using the **password** command.

- Use the **login authentication password-expire** command to cause all local user passwords to expire after 2-365 days.

Changing a password

If a password expiration policy is being implemented, it is recommended to change your password before it expires. When a password expiration policy is in effect, then starting from 10 days before password expiration, a warning appears every time you log on, informing you that your password will expire in *n* days.

1. Use the **password** command to change your password. Enter and confirm the new password.
2. Enter **copy running-config startup-config** so that the new password will take effect.

The new password you enter must match the password policies described in Managing password length and contents on page 49.

Displaying user account information

- Use the **show username** command to display information about the local user accounts.
- Use the **show login authentication** command to view the login authentication settings and information. This includes information on the configured lockout period, inactivity period, expiration period, password length, and characters that must be included in the password.

Summary of user account CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 3: User accounts CLI commands

Command	Description
login authentication inactivity-period	Disable a local user account after a specified inactivity period
login authentication lockout	Lockout or disable a local user account after successive failed login attempts
login authentication min-password-digit-chars	Set the minimum number of digit characters that a password must contain
login authentication min-password-length	Set the minimum password length

1 of 2

Table 3: User accounts CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
login authentication min-password-lower-chars	Set the minimum number of lowercase characters that a password must contain
login authentication min-password-special-chars	Set the minimum number of special characters that a password must contain
login authentication min-password-upper-chars	Set the minimum number of uppercase characters that a password must contain
login authentication password-expire	Cause all local user passwords to expire after a specified number of days
password	Change the password of a user account
show login authentication	View the login authentication settings and information
show username	Display information about the local user accounts
username	Add or remove a local user account
	2 of 2

Authenticating service logins with Access Security Gateway (ASG) authentication

The gateway supports ASG authentication for remote service logins. Direct remote connection of services to the gateway is needed for gateways that are under service contract, do not have LSPs, and are controlled by external MGCs. ASG is a more secure authentication method than password authentication and does not require a static password.

ASG uses one-time tokens for authentication, in which a unique secret key is associated with each login. ASG authentication is a challenge-response system, in which the remote user receives a challenge from the gateway and returns an ASG authenticated response, which the gateway verifies before permitting access. A new challenge is used for each access attempt.

ASG authentication is supported for remote services connecting to the gateway using Telnet or SSH protocols via any of the following:

- Dial-up modem connected to the USB or Services port
- Frame relay or leased line
- Secure gateway VPN
- Direct connection to the front panel Services port using the "craft" login

When ASG authentication is enabled on the G430, the G430 recognizes any login attempts using Avaya Services reserved usernames as service logins, and requests ASG authentication from the user, instead of a static user password.

The following usernames are reserved for Avaya Services usage: **rasaccess**, **sroot**, **init**, **inads**, and **craft**.

When ASG authentication is enabled on the G430, all password user accounts with usernames similar to the reserved service logins are deactivated.

Enabling ASG authentication

ASG authentication can be enabled and disabled on the gateway and requires an ASG authentication file. The ASG authentication file contains Avaya Services accounts for authenticating users at login as members of Avaya Services. The G430 is shipped with an ASG authentication file. For information about replacing the authentication file, refer to Replacing the ASG authentication file on page 52.

- For connection to Avaya Services via modem dial-up, enable the RASaccess operation mode for modem operation, using **`ppp authentication ras`**. The G430 must also be configured for remote modem access and enabled, as described in *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.
- For connection to Avaya Services via embedded VPN service, set up the VPN service for Services to connect.

Note:

By default, Avaya Services login access is enabled. If Avaya Services login access was blocked using **`no login authentication services-logins`**, you can reactivate it using **`login authentication services-logins`**.

Replacing the ASG authentication file

In case of any problems with the ASG authentication file, you can download a newer authentication file from the Authentication File System (AFS). You cannot install an authentication file with a different authentication file ID to that of the authentication file currently installed in the gateway.

Note:

If there is a need to install an authentication file with a different ID, you must first delete the current authentication file using the command **`erase auth-file`**. This command requires Supervisor level access and can only be used when directly connecting to the Services port. If you do delete the authentication file and replace it with an authentication file with a new ID, the authentication file label on the gateway chassis must also be replaced.

1. Optionally display the current ASG authentication file version, using the **show auth-file info** command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show auth-file info
Authentication File (AF) information:
AF-ID :7000012345
Date/time : 15:02:27 27-SEP-2005
Major release : 4
```

2. Use Windows File Explorer or another file management program to create a directory on an FTP, SCP or TFTP server for storing authentication files (for example, `C:\licenses`).
3. Access the Internet and go to rfa.avaya.com.
4. Login using your SSO login and password. The AFS and RFA information home page appears.
5. Start the AFS application from the **RFA information** page. Follow the instructions outlined in the *Authentication File System (AFS) Guide*, 03-601703 to create and download the authentication file.
6. Download the authentication file from an FTP, SCP or TFTP server or USB mass storage device to the G430. To install the authentication file, use one of the following commands:
 - To download an authentication file from a remote FTP server: **copy ftp auth-file *filename ip***, where ***filename*** is the name of the authentication file, including the full path and ***ip*** is the IP address of the host. The G430 prompts you for a username and password after you enter the command.
 - To download an authentication file from a remote SCP server:**copy scp auth-file *filename ip***, where ***filename*** is the name of the authentication file, including the full path and ***ip*** is the IP address of the host. The G430 prompts you for a username and password after you enter the command.
 - To download an authentication file from a remote TFTP server: **copy tftp auth-file *filename ip***, where ***filename*** is the name of the authentication file, including the full path and ***ip*** is the IP address of the host. The G430 prompts you for a username and password after you enter the command.
 - To download an authentication file from a USB mass storage device:**copy usb auth-file *source-usb-device source-filename***, where ***source-usb-device*** is the source USB mass storage device and ***source-filename*** is the full name and path of the authentication file.

 The authentication file is downloaded. You can view the download status using **show download auth-file status**.

Note:

You can also upload the authentication file from the gateway for troubleshooting. To upload the authentication file, use **copy auth-file ftp** to upload it to an FTP server, **copy auth-file scp** to upload it to an SCP server, **copy auth-file tftp** to upload it to a TFTP server, or **copy auth-file USB** to upload it to a USB mass storage device. To display the upload status, use **show upload auth-file status**.

Configuring ASG authentication

You can perform the following ASG configurations:

- Block Avaya Services login access, using **no login authentication services-logins**. This deactivates all Avaya Services logins, including local craft password-based authenticated login. To reactivate, use **login authentication services-logins**.
- Set the time the gateway waits for user response to authentication requests before timing out a connection, using **login authentication response-time *time***, where ***time*** is the time, in seconds, after which the gateway aborts the connection if no response is received.

 For example, to timeout connections if no response arrives within 180 seconds after an authentication request:

  ```
  G430-001(super)# login authentication response-time 180
  ```

 Use **no login authentication response-time** to return the response time value to the factory default of 120 seconds. The time value you enter is used for both:

 - The response time interval between the username prompt and the username entry
 - The response time interval between the challenge prompt and the challenge response
- Deactivate password authentication and activate ASG authentication of Avaya Services local connections to the Services port. To do this, use **no login authentication local-craft-password**. To enable password authentication of Avaya Services local connections to the Services port, use **login authentication local-craft-password** (default).

- Set a policy for locking out access to the gateway after successive failed login attempts. To do this, use **login authentication lockout *time* attempt *count***, where ***time*** is the interval of time for which lockout is enforced and ***count*** is a number of failed attempts after which lockout is enforced. Use **no login authentication lockout** to return the lockout time and lockout attempt threshold to their default values (180 and 3).

 For example, to lockout Avaya Services access to the device for 360 seconds following five failed login attempts:

```
G430-001(super)# login authentication lockout 360 attempt 5
```

 This lockout affects all users locally stored in the gateway, including locally defined user accounts and Avaya Services logins defined in the ASG authentication file. Remote users maintained centrally in a Radius server are not subject to the lockout sanction.

- Switch between modem operation modes, including rasaccess and ppp modes, using **ppp authentication {pap|chap|none|ras}**. ASG authentication is enabled when **ras** is selected. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# ppp authentication ras
```

Displaying ASG authentication information

- Display login authentication settings and information, using **show login authentication**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show login authentication
Services logins: On
Local craft: On
Lockout time: 180 seconds
Lockout attempt threshold: 3
Authentication response time: 120 seconds
CLI logout timeout: Off
```

- Display ASG authentication file information, using **show auth-file info**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show auth-file info
Authentication File (AF) information:
AF-ID :7000012345
Date/time : 15:02:27 27-SEP-2005
Major release : 4
```

- Display all locally defined user accounts, including services accounts and account type information such as authentication method, using **show username**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show username
User account   Access level  Account type  Active  Authent. method
-----------  -----------   ----------     -----   --------------
sroot          dev          Services      yes      challenge
init           dev          Services      yes      challenge
inads          tech         Services      yes      challenge
craft          admin        Services      yes      challenge
dadmin         admin        local         yes      challenge
rasaccess      read-only    Services      yes      challenge
root           admin        local         yes      password
```

Summary of ASG authentication CLI Commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 4: ASG authentication CLI command

Command	Description
copy auth-file ftp	Upload the authentication file from the gateway to an FTP server
copy auth-file scp	Upload the authentication file from the gateway to an SCP server
copy auth-file tftp	Upload the authentication file from the gateway to a TFTP server
copy auth-file usb	Upload the authentication file from the gateway to a USB mass storage device
copy ftp auth-file	Download an ASG authentication file from a remote FTP server
copy scp auth-file	Download an ASG authentication file from a remote SCP server
copy tftp auth-file	Download an ASG authentication file from a remote TFTP server
copy usb auth-file	Download an ASG authentication file from a USB mass storage device
erase auth-file	Erase the gateway's ASG authentication file

1 of 2

Table 4: ASG authentication CLI command (continued)

Command	Description
login authentication local-craft-password	Enable password authentication of Avaya Services local connections to the Services port with the "craft" login. Use the **no** form to disable password authentication for Avaya Services local connections to the Services port. When password authentication is disabled, ASG authentication is activated.
login authentication response-time	Set the time the gateway waits for user response to authentication requests before timing out a connection
login authentication lockout	Set a policy for locking out access to the gateway after successive failed login attempts
login authentication services-logins	Activate all Avaya Services logins, including local login to Services port with "craft" login. Use the **no** form to deactivate all Avaya Services logins.
ppp authentication	Set modem operation mode. Setting the mode to `ras` enables ASG authentication for Avaya Services remote logins through dial-up modem connection.
show auth-file info	Display ASG authentication file information
show download auth-file status	Display download status of ASG authentication file, after using **copy ftp\|scp\|tftp\|usb auth-file** to download an authentication file to the gateway
show login authentication	Display login authentication settings and information
show upload auth-file status	Display upload status of ASG authentication file, after using **copy auth-file ftp\|scp\|tftp** to upload an authentication file from the gateway

2 of 2

SSH protocol support

Secure Shell (SSH) protocol is a security protocol that enables you to establish a remote session over a secured tunnel, also called a remote shell. SSH accomplishes this by creating a transparent, encrypted channel between the local and remote devices. In addition to the remote shell, SSH provides secure file transfer between the local and remote devices. SSH is used for SCP file transfers. The G430 supports two concurrent SSH users.

Establishing an SSH session can be done by RSA authentication, or password authentication. To determine which of these ways is used on your G430, enter **show ip ssh**.

RSA authentication process

- The G430 generates a key of variable length (512-2048 bits) using the DSA encryption method. This is the private key.
- The G430 calculates an MD5 hash of the private key, called the public key (also called a fingerprint). The public key is always 16 bytes long. This public key is displayed.
- The G430 sends the public key to the client computer. This public key is used by the client to encrypt the data it sends to the G430. The G430 decrypts the data using the private key.
- Both sides negotiate and must agree on the same chipper type. The G430 only supports 3DES-CBC encryption. The user on the client side accepts the public key. The client maintains a cache containing a list of fingerprints per server IP address. If the information in this cache changes, the client notifies the user.
- The client chooses a random number that is used to encrypt and decrypt the information sent.
- This random number is sent to the G430, after encryption based on the G430's public key.
- When the G430 receives the encrypted random number, it decrypts it using the private key. This random number is now used with the 3DES-CBC encryption method for all encryption and decryption of data. The public and private keys are no longer used.

Password authentication process

Before any data is transferred, the G430 requires the client to supply a username and password. This authenticates the user on the client side to the G430.

SSH configuration

- To enable SSH on the G430:
 a. To execute the SSH protocol, the G430 must first be assigned hostname identification. Use the **`hostname`** command to assign hostname identification.
 b. To enable SSH to be used, you must also configure the server host key. Use the **`crypto key generate dsa`** command to generate an SSH host key pair.
 c. Enter **`ip ssh`** to enable SSH authentication. Note that SSH is enabled by default.
- To disable SSH on the G430:
 – Use the **`disconnect ssh`** command to disconnect an existing SSH session.
 – Enter **`no ip ssh`** to disable the SSH server which disconnects all active SSH sessions.
- Enter **`show ip ssh`** to display SSH configuration information and information about any active SSH sessions.

Summary of SSH configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 5: SSH configuration commands

Command	Description
crypto key generate dsa	Generate an SSH host key pair
disconnect ssh	Disconnect an existing SSH session
hostname	Assign hostname identification to the G430
ip ssh	Enable or disable the Secure Shell (SSH) service
show ip ssh	Display general SSH information and information about the currently active connections that are using SSH

SCP protocol support

In addition to data transfer via an SSH session, the SSH protocol is used to support SCP for secure file transfer. When using SCP, the G430 is the client, and an SCP server must be installed on the management station. After users are defined on the SCP server, the G430 acts as an SCP client.

The process of establishing an SCP session is the same process as described in SSH protocol support on page 57, except that the roles of the G430 and the client computer are reversed.

To perform file transfers secured by SCP, the G430 launches a local SSH client via the CLI. This establishes a secured channel to the secured file server. The G430 authenticates itself to the server by providing a username and password. With a Windows-based SSH server (WinSSHD), the username provided must be a defined user on the Windows machine with read/write privileges. The files transferred via SCP are saved in the `C:\Documents and Settings\`*`username`* directory.

The network element performs file transfer in unattended mode.

SCP configuration

Enter **clear ssh-client known-hosts** to clear the client's list of SCP server fingerprints. Each SCP client maintains a list of server fingerprints. If a key changes, the client's verification of the server's fingerprint will fail, thereby preventing the client's access to the SCP server. If this happens, you can enter **clear ssh-client known-hosts** to erase the client's server fingerprint list. This enables the client to access the server and begin to recreate its list of fingerprints with the SCP server's new fingerprint.

Summary of SCP configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 6: SCP configuration commands

Command	Description
clear ssh-client known-hosts	Clear the SSH known-host file content

RADIUS authentication

If your network has a RADIUS server, you can configure the G430 to use RADIUS authentication. A RADIUS server provides centralized authentication service for many devices on a network. When you use RADIUS authentication, you do not need to configure usernames and passwords on the G430. When you try to access the G430, the G430 searches for your username and password in its own database first. If it does not find them, it activates RADIUS authentication.

For additional information on RADIUS configuration and authentication, go to the Avaya website at http://www.avaya.com/support, and perform a search for the document *Avaya G700/G350 RADIUS Configuration Overview*, 104207.

Using RADIUS authentication

1. Configure your RADIUS server with the usernames, passwords, and privilege levels that you want to use on the G430.
2. Configure RADIUS authentication on the G430.

Configuring RADIUS authentication

1. Enter **set radius authentication enable** to enable RADIUS authentication.

2. Use the **set radius authentication secret** command to set the shared secret for the authentication. This command must be followed by a text string. For example:

```
set radius authentication secret hush
```

3. Use the **set radius authentication server** command to set the IP address of the primary or secondary RADIUS Authentication server.

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Changing RADIUS parameters

The following commands are optional:

- Use the **set radius authentication retry-number** command to set the number of times to resend an access request when there is no response.
- Use the **set radius authentication retry-time** command to set the time to wait before resending an access request.
- Use the **set radius authentication udp-port** command to set the RFC 2138 approved UDP port number. Normally, the UDP port number should be set to its default value of 1812. Some early implementations of the RADIUS server used port number 1645.

Disabling RADIUS authentication

Enter **set radius authentication disable** to disable RADIUS authentication on the G430.

Displaying RADIUS parameters

Enter **show radius authentication**. Shared secrets are not displayed.

Summary of RADIUS authentication configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 7: RADIUS authentication configuration command

Command	Description
clear radius authentication server	Clear the primary or secondary RADIUS server IP address
set radius authentication	Enable or disable RADIUS authentication
set radius authentication retry-number	Set the number of times to resend an access request when there is no response
set radius authentication retry-time	Set the time to wait before resending an access request
set radius authentication secret	Set the shared secret for RADIUS authentication
set radius authentication server	Set the IP address of the primary or secondary RADIUS authentication server
set radius authentication udp-port	Set the RFC 2138 approved UDP port number
show radius authentication	Display all RADIUS authentication configurations (shared secrets are not displayed)

Special security features

Special security features allow you to enable and disable the recovery password, establish incoming and outgoing Telnet connections, copy gateway configurations while keeping configuration secrets, and configure SYN cookies for preventing SYN attacks.

Using the recovery password

The G430 includes a special recovery password. The purpose of the recovery password is to enable the system administrator to access the G430 in the event that the regular password is forgotten. You can only use the recovery password when accessing the G430 via a direct connection to the Services port. The username and password for the recovery password are:

username: **root**

password: **ggdaseuaimhrke**

Note:

After accessing the G430 using the recovery password, remember to define an Admin level user before exiting the G430. See Configuring usernames on page 48.

You can use the **set terminal recovery password** command to enable or disable the recovery password option. Use this command only when accessing the G430 via a direct connection to the Services port.

Summary of recovery password commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 8: Recovery password configuration commands

Command	Description
set terminal recovery password	Enable or disable the recovery password

Configuring Telnet access

Telnet is disabled on the G430 by default. You can enable and disable the G430's ability to establish incoming and outgoing Telnet connections, using the following commands.

- Use the **ip telnet** command to enable the G430 to establish an incoming Telnet connection. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the G430's ability to establish an incoming Telnet connection.
- Enter **ip telnet-client** to enable the G430 to establish an outgoing Telnet connection. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the G430's ability to establish an outgoing Telnet connection. You can only use this command when accessing the G430 via a direct connection to the Services port.

- Use the **ip telnet-services** command to enable the Telnet server on the Services interface. You can only use this command when accessing the G430 via a direct connection to the Services port.

 Note:

 These commands are secured commands and are not displayed together with the running configuration (using the **show running-config** command). To see the status of these commands, use the **show protocol** command.

- Use the **show ip telnet** command to display the status of the Telnet server and the current Telnet connections.

Summary of Telnet access configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 9: Telnet access configuration commands

Command	Description
ip telnet	Enable the G430 to establish an incoming Telnet connection, or disable its ability to establish an incoming Telnet connection
ip telnet-client	Enable the G430 to establish an outgoing Telnet connection, or disable its ability to establish an outgoing Telnet connection
ip telnet-services	Enable the Telnet server on the Services interface
show ip telnet	Display the status of the Telnet server and the current Telnet connections
show protocol	Display the status of the Telnet or Telnet-client protocol
telnet	Initiate a login session via Telnet to a network host

Managing gateway secrets

The G430 provides a mechanism for storage, backup, and restore of sensitive materials (passwords and keys) maintained in the Media Gateways.

All sensitive materials are encrypted using a Master Configuration Key (MCK), derived from a passphrase entered by an administrator. The secrets are then stored in the configuration file in an encrypted format. This enables copying configurations, including secrets, from one device to another. The only requirement is that the administrator must generate an identical MCK (by using the same passphrase) in the target device before executing the copy operation.

Note:

All gateways have the same default MCK. For security reasons, it is recommended to configure a new MCK immediately upon gateway installation.

Configuring the Master Configuration Key

1. Enter **`key config-key password-encryption`** followed by a phrase of 13-64 printable ASCII characters.
2. Copy the running configuration to the start-up configuration using the **`copy running-config startup-config`** command.

The new MCK is now in effect.

Summary of Master Configuration Key configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 10: Master Configuration Key configuration commands

Command	Description
`key config-key password-encryption`	Set the default Master Configuration Key of the gateway

Enabling SYN cookies

The G430 provides various TCP/IP services and is therefore exposed to a myriad of TCP/IP based DoS attacks.

DoS (Denial of Service) attacks refers to a wide range of malicious attacks that can cause a denial of one or more services provided by a targeted host. Specifically, a *SYN attack* is a well-known TCP/IP attack in which a malicious attacker targets a vulnerable device and effectively denies it from establishing new TCP connections.

SYN cookies refers to a well-known method of protection against a SYN attack.

SYN attack (SYN flood attack)

The SYN (TCP connection request) attack is a common DoS attack characterized by the following pattern:

Using a spoofed IP address, an attacker sends multiple SYN packets to a listening TCP port on the target machine (the victim). For each SYN packet received, the target machine allocates resources and sends an acknowledgement (SYN-ACK) to the source IP address. The TCP connection is called a “half-open” connection at this point since the initiating side did not yet send back an acknowledgment (termed the 3rd ACK).

Because the target machine does not receive a response from the attacking machine, it attempts to resend the SYN-ACK, typically five times, at 3-, 6-, 12-, 24-, and 48-second intervals, before de-allocating the resources, 96 seconds after attempting the last resend. Altogether, the target machine typically allocates resources for over three minutes to respond to a single SYN attack.

When an attacker uses this technique repeatedly, the target machine eventually runs out of memory resources since it holds numerous half-open connections. It is unable to handle any more connections, thereby denying service to legitimate users.

Moreover, flooding the victim with TCP SYN at a high rate can cause the internal queues to fill up, also causing a denial of service.

SYN cookies

SYN cookies protect against SYN attacks by employing the following strategies:

- Not maintaining any state for half-open inbound TCP sessions, thus preventing the SYN attack from depleting memory resources.

 SYN cookies are able to maintain no state for half-open connections by responding to SYN requests with a SYN-ACK that contains a specially crafted initial sequence number (ISN), called a cookie. The value of the cookie is not a pseudo-random number generated by the system, but the result of a hash function. The hash result is generated from the source IP, source port, destination IP, destination port, and some secret values. The cookie can be verified when receiving a valid 3rd ACK that establishes the connection. The verification ensures that the connection is a legitimate connection and that the source IP address was not spoofed.

- Employing the SYN cookies method at a lower point in the network stack then regular TCP handling, closer to the start point of packet handling. This reduces the chances that a SYN attack will fill up the internal queues.

- Performing SYN attack fingerprinting and alerting an administrator about a SYN attack as it occurs. This is implemented by keeping track of the rate at which half-open TCP connections are created, and sending an alert when the rate exceeds a certain threshold.

In addition, when the SYN cookies mechanism is active, a hostile port scan might be misled into concluding that all TCP ports are open.

Configuring SYN cookies

1. Enter **`tcp syn-cookies`**.
2. Copy the running configuration to the start-up configuration using the **`copy running-config startup-config`** command.

3. Reset the device using the **reset** command.

SYN cookies are now enabled on the device.

SYN attack notification

When the SYN cookies feature is enabled, the G430 alerts the administrator to a suspected SYN attack as it occurs by sending the following syslog message:

```
SYN attack suspected! Number of unanswered SYN requests is greater
than 20 in last 10 seconds.
```

Maintaining SYN cookies

Use the following commands to show and clear SYN cookies statistics:

- Enter **show tcp syn-cookies** to show SYN cookies statistics.

 Note:

 For an example and explanation of SYN cookies statistics, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Enter **clear tcp syn-cookies counters** to clear the SYN cookies counters.

Summary of SYN cookies configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 11: Master Configuration Key configuration commands

Command	Description
clear tcp syn-cookies counters	Clear the SYN cookies counters
show tcp syn-cookies	Show SYN cookies statistics for inbound TCP connections
tcp syn-cookies	Enable or disable the TCP SYN cookies defense mechanism against SYN attacks

Managed Security Services (MSS)

Media Gateway IP interfaces and gateway applications such as WAN routers, PoE switches, and VPN devices can be at risk for DoS attacks. The G430 identifies predefined or custom-defined traffic patterns as suspected attacks and generates SNMP notifications, referred to as Managed Security Services (MSS) notifications.

MSS reporting mechanism

MSS notifications are sent to the active MGC by the dynamic trap manager. MSS notifications sent to the active MGC by the dynamic trap manager are converted to syslog messages by the SNMP trap manager on the MGC. For general information about configuring and enabling syslog messages and syslog message format, refer to Configuring a Syslog server on page 208.

MSS notifications are intercepted and, if certain conditions are met, may be forwarded to the Avaya Security Operations Center (SOC) as INADS alarms. The SOC is an Avaya service group that handles DoS alerts, responding as necessary to any DoS attack or related security issue.

Note:

The syslog messages on the active MGC are stored in the messages file on the MGC hard disk. You can view the syslog messages through the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface (MWI) if you want to debug security issues directly. For information about how to view syslog messages, see Viewing QoS traps, QoS fault traps, and QoS clear traps on page 362.

Note:

Any additional SNMP recipients defined with the security notification group enabled also receive the MSS notifications.

Configuring MSS

The MSS feature is automatically enabled and monitors all IP interfaces, including WAN data interfaces, IPSEC tunnels, Ethernet LAN and WAN ports, VoIP engine interfaces, and Dialer PPP interfaces.

1. Verify that the dynamic trap manager, which automatically sets the IP address of the active MGC SNMP trap manager, is configured so that security notifications are sent to the active MGC. By default, all types of notifications are enabled. You can enter **`show snmp`** to check which notification groups are configured to be sent to the active MGC. You can modify the dynamic trap manager configuration using the **`snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager`** command, setting the notification type to **`all`** or **`security`**.

2. If required, define additional notification recipients using the **snmp-server group**, **snmp-server host**, and **snmp-server user** commands, and activating the security notification filter. For example:

```
//define an SNMP group:
G430-001(super)# snmp-server group MSS_group v3 noauth read iso write iso
notify iso
Done!
//create a new snmp user belonging to the SNMP group:
G430-001(super)# snmp-server user MSS MSS_group v3
Done!
//identify an SNMP trap recipient, activating the security notification
filter:
G430-001(super)# snmp-server host 5.5.5.2 traps v3 noauth MSS security
Done!
//view the SNMP configuration
G430-001(super)# show snmp
Authentication trap disabled
Community-Access Community-String
---------------- ----------------
read-only *****
read-write *****

SNMPv3 Notifications Status
---------------------------
Traps: Enabled
Informs: Enabled Retries: 3 Timeout: 3 seconds
SNMP-Rec-Address Model Level Notification Trap/Inform User name
---------------- ----- ------- --------------- ----------- --------------------
5.5.5.2 v3 noauth all trap MSS
UDP port: 162
```

3. Use the **set mss-notification rate** command to modify the MSS reporting rate, if necessary. The default is 300 seconds. The G430 counts events for each DoS class for the duration of the interval. At the end of each interval, if the count of each class of DoS events surpasses a defined threshold, the G430 generates an MSS notification, reporting on the event type, event parameters, and the number of occurrences. To display the current MSS reporting rate, use the **show mss-notification rate** command.
4. Ensure that INADS reporting is configured on the active MGC. For information about configuring INADS reporting in Avaya Aura Communication Manager, see Avaya Aura Communication Manager documentation.

DoS attack classifications

Traffic patterns meeting the DoS attack classifications are automatically reported in MSS notifications.

Table 12: DoS attack classifications

DoS Attack	Description
LAND_ATTACK	Land attack packets with the source IP the same as an IP address
TCP_URGENT_ATTACK	TCP packets with the URGENT option set
ICMP_RATE_LIMIT	ICMP (echo) requests exceeding a pre-defined rate
SMURF_ATTACK	ICMP echo packets with limited broadcast destination address
FRAGGLE_ATTACK	UDP packets with limited broadcast destination address
SYN-FLOOD	The number of unacknowledged TCP SYN-ACK exceeds a predefined rate
UNREACHABLE_PORT_ ATTACK	TCP/UDP IP packets sent to unreachable ports
MALFRAGMENTED_IP	Malfragmented IP packets on TO-ME interfaces
MALFORMED_IP	Malformed IP packets. The G430 reports malformed IP packets when: ● The IP version in the IP header is a value other than 4 ● The IP header length is smaller than 20 ● The total length is smaller than the header length
MALFORMED_ARP	ARP messages with bad opcode
SPOOFED_IP	For all routable packets, the Gateway report reception of IP spoofed packets
UNKNOW_L4_IP_PROTOCOL	Packets with unknown (unsupported or administratively closed) protocol in IP packet with TO-ME interface as a destination
UNATHENTICATED_ACCESS	Failure to authenticate services

Defining custom DoS classifications

You can define custom DoS attack classifications using access control list (ACL) rules. ACL rules control which packets are authorized to pass through an interface. A custom DoS class is defined by configuring criteria for an ACL rule and tagging the ACL with a DoS classification label.

Note:

For general information about configuring policy rules, refer to Configuring policy on page 567.

Defining a DoS class using ACLs

1. Use the **`ip access-control-list`** command to enter the configuration mode of an ACL. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# ip access-control-list 301
```

2. Use the **`ip-rule`** command to enter the configuration mode of an ACL rule. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# ip-rule 1
```

3. Use the **`dos-classification`** command to configure the name of the DoS attack classification. Possible values are: `fraggle`, `smurf`, `ip-spoofing`, `other-attack-100`, `other-attack-101`, `other-attack-102`, `other-attack-103`, `other-attack-104`, and `other-attack-105`. For example:

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# dos-classification smurf
Done!
```

4. Define the packet criteria to which the ACL rule should apply. See Policy lists rule criteria on page 576.

 For example, you can use **`destination-ip`** to specify that the rule applies to packets with a specific destination address and you can use **`ip-protocol`** to specify that the rule applies to packets with a specific protocol:

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# destination-ip 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# ip-protocol icmp
Done!
```

5. Use the **`composite-operation`** command to associate the ACL rule with the predefined operation “deny-notify,” which tells the gateway to drop any packet received that matches the ACL rule, and send a trap upon dropping the packet. For example:

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# composite-operation deny-notify
Done!
```

6. Exit the ACL rule. For example:

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# exit
```

7. Exit the ACL. For example:

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301)# exit
```

8. Enter the configuration mode of the interface on which you want to activate the ACL. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 203
```

9. Activate the configured ACL for incoming packets on the desired interface. For example:

```
G430-001(super-if:vlan 203)# ip access-group 301 in
Done!
```

Example

The following example demonstrates the configuration of MSS notifications using ACL rules. In this example, smurf packets (ICMP packets that are sent to a limited broadcast destination) arriving at interface VLAN 203 are defined as a DoS attack to be reported in MSS notifications.

```
//create and enter the configuration mode of access control list 301:
G430-001(super)# ip access-control-list 301
//create and enter the configuration mode of ip rule 1:
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# ip-rule 1
//set the rule criteria for the custom DoS classification:
//use dos-classification command to specify to report on receiving smurf
//packets (ICMP echo packets with limited broadcast destination address )
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# dos-classification smurf
Done!
//apply predefined composite-operation deny-notify, which drops the packet and
//causes the gateway to send a trap when it drops the packet
G430-001(super-ACL 301)# composite-operation Deny-Notify
Done!
//specify that the ip rule applies to packets with this destination ip address.
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# destination-ip 255.255.255.255 0.0.0.0
Done!
//Specify that the ip rule applies to ICMP packets
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# ip-protocol icmp
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 1)# exit
G430-001(super-ACL 301)# show ip-rule
Index  Protocol    IP               Wildcard    Port         Operation
       DSCP                                                 Fragment rule
-----  --------  ---  ---------------  -----------  ------------  --------------
1      icmp    Src Any                            Any Type     Deny-Notify
       Any     Dst 255.255.255.255  Host          Any Code     No

Dos classification: smurf
Deflt  Any     Src Any                            Any          Permit
       Any     Dst Any                            Any          No

G430-001(super-ACL 301)# exit
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 203
//activate Access Control list 301 for incoming packets on interface vlan 203:
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 203)# ip access-group 301 in
Done!
```

Summary of MSS configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 13: MSS configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
composite-operation	Edit the specified composite operation. If the composite operation does not exist, it is created
destination-ip	Specify the destination IP address of packets to which the current rule applies
dos-classification	Set a label for a user-defined DoS attack classification to be reported in MSS notifications
ip access-control-list	Enter configuration mode for the specified policy access control list. If the specified list does not exist, the system creates it and enters its configuration mode.
ip-rule	Enter configuration mode for the specified rule. If the specified rule does not exist, the system creates it and enters its configuration mode.
ip-protocol	Specify that the current rule applies to packets having the specified IP protocol
set mss-notification rate	Set the rate at which the gateway sends Managed Security Services (MSS) notifications
show mss-notification rate	Show the interval time, in seconds, between MSS notifications
show snmp	Display SNMP configuration information
snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager	Modify the SNMP settings of the dynamic trap manager
snmp-server group	Define a new SNMPv3 group, or configure settings for the group
snmp-server host	Identify an SNMP management server, and specify the kind of messages it receives
snmp-server user	Configure settings for an SNMPv3 user

Chapter 5: Basic device configuration

Basic device configuration lets you:

- Define a new interface and its IP address
- Configure parameters that identify the G430 to other devices
- Define a G430 interface as the G430's default gateway
- Configure an MGC to work with the G430
- Configure DNS resolver for resolving hostnames to IP addresses
- View the status of the G430
- Manage and upgrade software, firmware, configuration, and other files on the G430
- Backup and restore the G430

Defining an interface

All interfaces on the G430 must be defined by the administrator, after installation of the G430.

1. Use the **`interface`** command to enter the interface context. Some types of interfaces require an identifier as a parameter. Other types of interfaces require the interface's module and port number as a parameter. For example:

```
interface vlan 1
interface fastethernet 10/3.0
```

 For more information on the various types of interfaces, see Router interface concepts on page 422.

2. Use the **`ip address`** command, followed by an IP address and subnet mask, to assign an IP address to the interface.
3. Use the **`load-interval`** command to set the load calculation interval for the interface.

For a list and descriptions of other interface configuration commands, see Configuring interfaces on page 421. For interface configuration examples, see Configuration example on page 257.

Configuring the Primary Management Interface (PMI)

The Primary Management Interface (PMI) address is the IP address of an interface that you can specify on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. The first IP address you configure on the G430 automatically becomes the PMI. You can subsequently assign any IP interface to be the PMI.

The PMI is used as the IP address of the G430 for the following management functions:

- Registration of the G430 to an MGC
- Sending SNMP traps
- Opening telnet sessions from the G430
- Sending messages from the G430 using FTP and TFTP protocol

You can designate any of the G430's interfaces to serve as the G430's PMI. The PMI must be an IP address that the MGC recognizes. If you are not sure which interface to use as the PMI, check with your system administrator.

Setting the PMI of the G430

1. Use the **`interface`** command to enter the context of the interface to which you want to set the PMI. For example, to use the VLAN 1 interface as the PMI, enter **`interface vlan 1`**.

 Note:

 If the interface has not been defined, you must define it now.

2. Enter **`pmi`**.
3. Enter **`exit`** to return to general context.
4. Enter **`copy running-config startup-config`**. This saves the new PMI in the startup configuration file.
5. Use the **`reset`** command to reset the G430.

 Note:

 Most configuration changes take effect as soon as you make the change, but must be saved to the startup configuration file in order to remain in effect after you reset the G430. The PMI address is an exception. A change to the PMI does not take effect at all until you reset the G430.

6. To verify the new PMI, enter **`show pmi`** in general context. If you use this command before you reset the G430, it displays two different PMIs:

 - **Active PMI**. The PMI that the G430 is currently using, as defined in the running configuration file

- **Configured PMI**. The PMI that the G430 is configured to use after reset, as defined in the startup configuration file

If you use this command after you reset the G430, both the Active and the Configured PMI should be the same IP address.

7. Use the following commands to configure other identification information:
 - Use the **`set system contact`** command to set the contact information for the G430
 - Use the **`set system location`** command to set the location information for the G430
 - Use the **`set system name`** command to specify the name of the G430

Summary of PMI configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 14: PMI configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
`interface (fastethernet\|tunnel\|vlan\|loopback\|dialer)`		Enter configuration mode for the FastEthernet, Tunnel, VLAN, Loopback, or Dialer interface
	`pmi`	Set the current interface as the Primary Management Interface for the system
`set system contact`		Set the contact information for this media gateway system
`set system location`		Set the location information for this media gateway system
`set system name`		Set the name of the media gateway system
`show pmi`		Display the current Primary Management Interface

Defining the default gateway

The G430 uses a default gateway to connect to outside networks that are not listed on the G430's routing table. To define a default gateway, use the **ip default-gateway** command, followed by either the IP address or name (type and number) of the interface you want to define as the default gateway.

The following example defines the interface with the IP address 132.55.4.45 as the default gateway:

```
ip default-gateway 132.55.4.45
```

Summary of default gateway configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 15: PMI configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
ip default-gateway	Set a default gateway for connecting to outside networks that are not listed on the G430's routing table

Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC)

The Media Gateway Controller (MGC) controls telephone services on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. You can use a server with Avaya Aura Communication Manager software as an MGC. The G430 supports both External Call Controllers (ECC) and Internal Call Controllers (ICC). An ICC is an Avaya S8300 Server that you install in the G430 as a media module. An ECC is an external server that communicates with the G430 over the network.

When the G430 uses an ECC, it can use a local S8300 as a backup controller for Enhanced Local Survivability (ELS). The S8300 functions in Local Survivable Processor (LSP) mode. If the ECC stops serving the G430, the S8300 takes over the service.

To register the G430 with an MGC, you need the G430's serial number. You can find this serial number in either of the following ways:

- Use the **show system** command
- Look for a 12-character string located on a label on the back panel of the G430

Table 16: Servers supported by the Avaya G430 Media Gateway

Server	Type	Usage
Avaya S8300 Server	Media module	ECC, ICC, or LSP
Avaya S8400 Server	External	ECC
Avaya S8500 Server	External	ECC or LSP
Avaya S8510 Server	External	ECC or LSP
Avaya S8710 Server	External	ECC
Avaya S8720 Server	External	ECC
Avaya S8730 Server	External	ECC

Survivability and migration options

Several options exist to minimize network disruption in the event that connectivity between the G430 and the server or media gateway controller (MGC) is lost.

- **MGC list**. You must specify at least one, and up to four, MGCs in the list. The first MGC on the list is the primary MGC. If the G430 cannot connect with, or loses its connection with, the primary MGC, it attempts to connect with the other MGCs on the list. See Configuring the MGC list on page 80.

 Note:

 When Standard Local Survivability (SLS) is enabled, the MGC list includes the SLS module as a fifth entry in the MGC list. For details about SLS, see Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS) on page 113.

- **Standard Local Survivability (SLS)**. SLS consists of a module built into the G430 to provide partial backup MGC functionality in the event that the connection with the primary MGC is lost. This feature allows a local G430 to provide a degree of MGC functionality when no link is available to an external MGC. It is configured on a system-wide basis using the Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) (see Accessing PIM on page 46). Alternatively, it can be configured on an individual G430 using the CLI. For more information and instructions on configuring SLS, see Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS) on page 113.
- **Enhanced Local Survivability (ELS)**. ELS is available for the G430 using a local S8300 or S85XX functioning in LSP mode. If the ECC stops serving the G430, the S8300 takes over the service.

- **Auto fallback to primary MGC**. This feature provides a means by which a G430 being serviced by its LSP can return to its primary MGC automatically when the connection is restored between the G430 and the MGC. By migrating the G430 to the MGC automatically, a fragmented network can be made whole faster, without the need for human intervention. Auto fallback is configured via the Avaya Aura Communication Manager. For details, see the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

 Note:

 Auto fallback does not include survivability. Therefore, there is a short period during registration with the MGC during which calls are dropped and service is not available. This problem can be minimized using the connection preservation feature described below.

- **Connection preservation**. This feature enables the G430 to preserve the bearer paths of stable calls in the event that the G430 migrates to another MGC (including an LSP), including migration back from an LSP to the primary MGC. A call for which the talk path between parties in the call has been established is considered stable. A call consisting of a user listening to announcements or music is not considered stable and is not preserved. Any change of state in the call prevents the call from being preserved. For example, putting a call on hold during MGC migration will cause the call to be dropped. Special features, such as conference and transfer, are not available on preserved calls. Connection preservation preserves all types of bearer connections except BRI. PRI trunk connections are also preserved. Connection preservation is configured via the Avaya Aura Communication Manager. For details, see the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

Configuring the MGC list

The G430 must be registered with an MGC in order to provide telephone service. You can set the G430's MGC, and show the current MGC list used to determine the results.

Setting the G430's MGC

Use the **`set mgc list`** command to set the G430's MGC. You can enter the IP addresses of up to four MGCs with the **`set mgc list`** command. The first MGC on the list is the primary MGC. The G430 searches for the primary MGC first. If it cannot connect to the primary MGC, it searches for the next MGC on the list, and so on.

When SLS is enabled, the MGC list includes the SLS module as a fifth entry on the MGC list. For details about SLS, see Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS) on page 113.

Note:

If the MGC is an S87XX server, the first server on the list will normally be the primary C-LAN board connected to the server. If the MGC is an S8400 or S85XX, the first server on the list will be either the primary C-LAN board connected to the server, or an Ethernet port on the server that has been enabled for processor Ethernet connections. If the MGC is an S8300, the first server on the list will be the IP address of the S8300. The remaining servers will be either alternate C-LAN boards connected to the S8400, S85XX, or S87XX servers, or an S8300 configured as an LSP, or the port enabled as the Ethernet processor port on an S85XX configured as an LSP.

In the following example of the **set mgc list** command, if the MGC with the IP address 132.236.73.2 is available, that MGC becomes the G430's MGC. If that server is not available, the G430 searches for the next MGC on the list, and so on.

```
G430-001(super)# set mgc list 132.236.73.2, 132.236.73.3,
132.236.73.4, 132.236.73.5
Done!
```

Determining results

To determine the result of the **set mgc list** command, use the **show mgc** command. This command has the following output:

- **Registered**. Indicates whether or not the G430 is registered with an MGC (YES or NO)
- **Active Controller**. Displays the IP address of the active MGC. If there is no active MGC (that is, if the **set mgc list** command failed to configure an MGC), this field displays 255.255.255.255.
- **H248 Link Status**. Indicates whether the communication link between the G430 and the MGC is up or down
- **H248 Link Error Code**. If there is a communication failure between the G430 and the MGC, this field displays the error code

Showing the current MGC list

To show the current MGC list, use the **show mgc list** command. This command shows the IP addresses of the MGCs on the MGC list. It also shows whether or not SLS is enabled.

Removing one or more MGCs

To remove one or more MGCs from the MGC list, use the **clear mgc list** command. Type the IP address of the MGC you want to remove as an argument to remove that MGC. You can remove more than one MGC with one command by typing the IP addresses of all the MGCs you want to remove, separated by commas. To remove all the MGCs on the list, enter **clear mgc list** with no arguments.

Changing the MGC list

1. Enter **clear mgc list** with no arguments to clear the MGC list.
2. Enter **set mgc list** with a different set of IP addresses.

Note:

If you use the **set mgc list** command without first clearing the MGC list, the G430 simply adds the new MGCs to the end of the MGC list.

Setting reset times

If the connection between the G430 and its registered MGC is lost, the G430 attempts to recover the connection. Use the **set reset-times primary-search** command and the **set reset-times total-search** command to set the timeout for the G430's search for the primary MGC and the other MGCs on its MGC list, respectively. Use the **set reset-times transition-point** command to configure the point at which the primary MGCs in the list end and the LSPs begin. For example, if there are three IP addresses in the MGC list and the third address is the LSP, the transition point should be 2.

The default time for the primary search is one minute. The default time for the total search is 30 minutes. The default transition point is 1.

For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set reset-times primary-search 20
Done!
G430-001(super)# set reset-times total-search 40
Done!
G430-001(super)# set reset-times transition-point 1
Done!
```

In this example, in the event of a connection loss with the registered MGC, the G430 searches for the primary MGC on its MGC list for 20 minutes. If the G430 does not establish a connection with the primary MGC within this time, it searches for the other MGCs on the list for a total of 40 minutes.

Use the **show recovery** command to display the reset times.

Accessing the registered MGC

Access the MGC according to the following:

- If the MGC is an S8300 Server, enter **session mgc**
- If the MGC is an S8400, S85XX, or S87XX server, use the **set mediaserver** command to manually define the MGC's IP address, and then enter **session mgc** to access the MGC

If the G430 includes a local S8300, enter **session icc** to access the S8300. You can use this command whether or not the local S8300 is the G430's registered MGC.

Note:

Both the **session mgc** command and the **session icc** command open a telnet connection to the MGC.

To open a connection directly to the Avaya Aura Communication Manager System Access Terminal (SAT) application in the MGC, add **sat** to the command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# session mgc sat
```

To open a connection to the MGC's LINUX operating system, do not add **sat** to the command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# session mgc
```

Monitoring the ICC or LSP

When a local MGC controls telephone services on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway in ICC or LSP mode, the G430 monitors the connection with the MGC. If the connection with the MGC is lost, the G430 starts a recovery process.

- Use the **set icc-monitoring** command to control heartbeat monitoring of an ICC or LSP. The `enable` parameter enables heartbeat monitoring. The `disable` parameter disables heartbeat monitoring.
- Use the **show icc-monitoring** command to display the status of the ICC/LSP monitoring process.

Summary of MGC list configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 17: MGC list configuration commands

Command	Description
clear mgc list	Remove one or more MGCs from the MGC list
session	Open a telnet connection to the MGC
set icc-monitoring	Enable or disable heartbeat monitoring of an MGC in ICC or LSP mode
set mediaserver	Set the MGC management address and ports
set mgc list	Create a list of valid Media Gateway Controller(s)
set reset-times	Set the timeout for the G430's search for the primary MGC, or search for the other MGC's on the MGC list, or configure the point at which the primary MGCs in the list end and the LSPs begin
show icc-monitoring	Display the status of the ICC/LSP monitoring process
show mediaserver	Display MGC configuration information
show mgc	Display the state and setup parameters of the currently active MGC
show mgc list	Display the IP addresses of the MGCs on the MGC list
show recovery	Show the media gateway connection recovery setup

DNS resolver

A DNS resolver resolves hostnames to IP addresses by querying DNS servers according to an ordered list. The list of DNS servers is compiled using either DNS servers entered manually by the user, or DNS servers gathered automatically by means of DHCP or PPP protocols, or both.

The user can also optionally aid the DNS resolver by specifying a list of domain names that the DNS resolver adds as a suffix to non-Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) names, to help resolve them to an IP address.

The DNS resolver feature is intended to provide a backup mechanism for VPN hubs using DNS. For more information about VPNs on the G430, see Configuring IPSec VPN on page 481.

DNS resolver features

The G430 supports the following DNS resolver features:

- Fully compliant with RFC1034, RFC1035, and RFC1123
- Maintains a global DNS database for all interfaces. The database is compiled using:
 - Static (user-defined) DNS servers
 - Automatically-learned DNS servers. DNS servers can be automatically learned by the FastEthernet 10/3 interface when it is configured as a DHCP client or configured for PPP. For more information on DHCP Client, see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

Note:

The following PPP interfaces can be configured to automatically learn the DNS servers in the system:

- FastEthernet with PPPoE
- Dialer interface

The most common application of this configuration is for connecting the G430 to the Internet and getting the DNS server information from the ISP. Therefore, interfaces configured to automatically learn the DNS servers in the system are usually the FastEthernet with PPPoE interface and the Dialer interface.

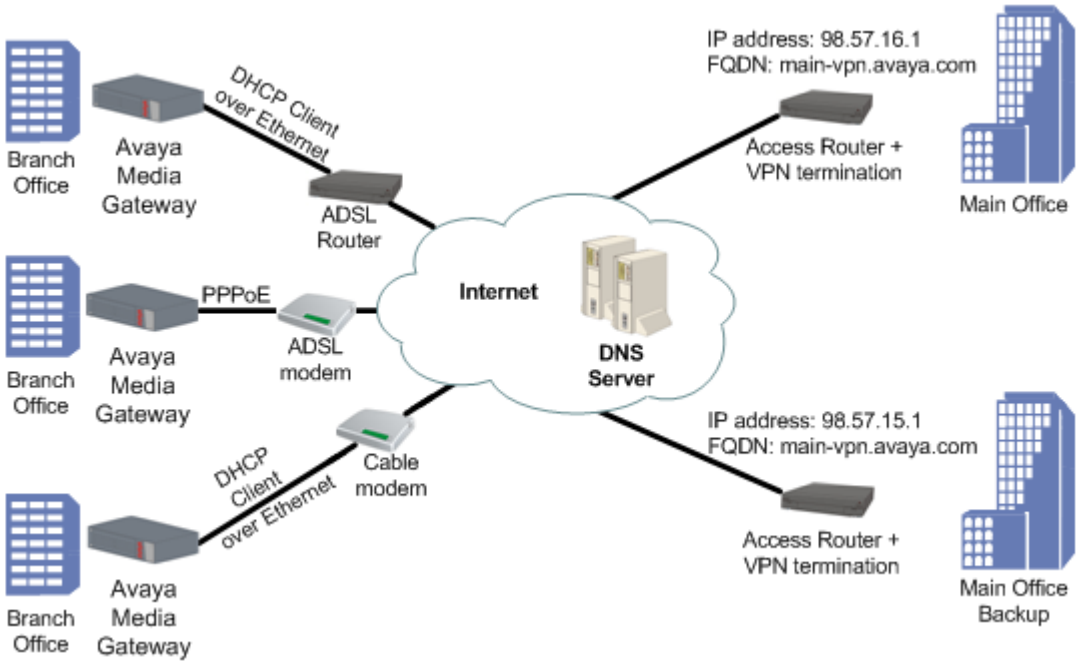
Typical DNS resolver application – VPN failover

In this typical application, the DNS resolver feature is used to provide a VPN failover mechanism between two main offices. The failover mechanism is implemented as follows.

The VPN branch office(s) connect to two main offices (the VPN remote peers) that are configured **with the same FQDN name**, but have different IP addresses. When a branch office makes a DNS query to resolve the VPN remote peer name to an IP address, it receives a list with the IP addresses of both main offices, selects the first one, and builds a VPN tunnel with it. If the first main office fails, the branch office sends another DNS query, and receives the IP address of the second main office in reply. It will then start a VPN tunnel with the second main office.

This typical application is described in full in Failover using DNS on page 542.

Figure 8: VPN DNS topology



Configuring DNS resolver

1. Enter **`ip domain name-server-list 1`** to create the DNS servers list.

```
G430-001(config)# ip domain name-server-list 1
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)#
```

2. Use the **`description`** command to specify a description for the list.

```
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# description "All DNS servers"
Done!
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)#
```

3. Add a DNS server to the DNS servers list using the **`name-server`** command. Configure the following:
 - Assign an index number that ranks the DNS server by priority
 - Specify the IP address of the DNS server

4. Repeat Step 3 to configure additional DNS servers in the list. You can configure up to six DNS servers.

```
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# name-server 1 1.1.1.1
Done!
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# name-server 2 192.100.106.101
Done!
```

5. Use the **ip domain list** command to configure a domain name. This domain name will be used as a suffix to complete non-FQDN names (hostnames that do not end with a dot). Configure the following:
 - Assign an index number that ranks the domain name by priority
 - Specify the domain name
6. Repeat Step 5 to configure additional domain names. You can configure up to six domain names.

```
G430-001(config)# ip domain list 1 avaya.com
Done!
G430-001(config)# ip domain list 2 emea.avaya.com
Done!
```

7. Optionally, configure the number of DNS query retries, using the **ip domain retry** command. The default value is 2.

```
G430-001(config)# ip domain retry 4
Done!
```

8. Optionally, configure the timeout for a DNS query using the **ip domain timeout** command. The default value is 3 seconds.

```
G430-001(config)# ip domain timeout 4
Done!
```

9. The DNS resolver is enabled by default. If it was disabled and you wish to re-enable it, enter **ip domain lookup**.

```
G430-001(config)# ip domain lookup
Done!
```

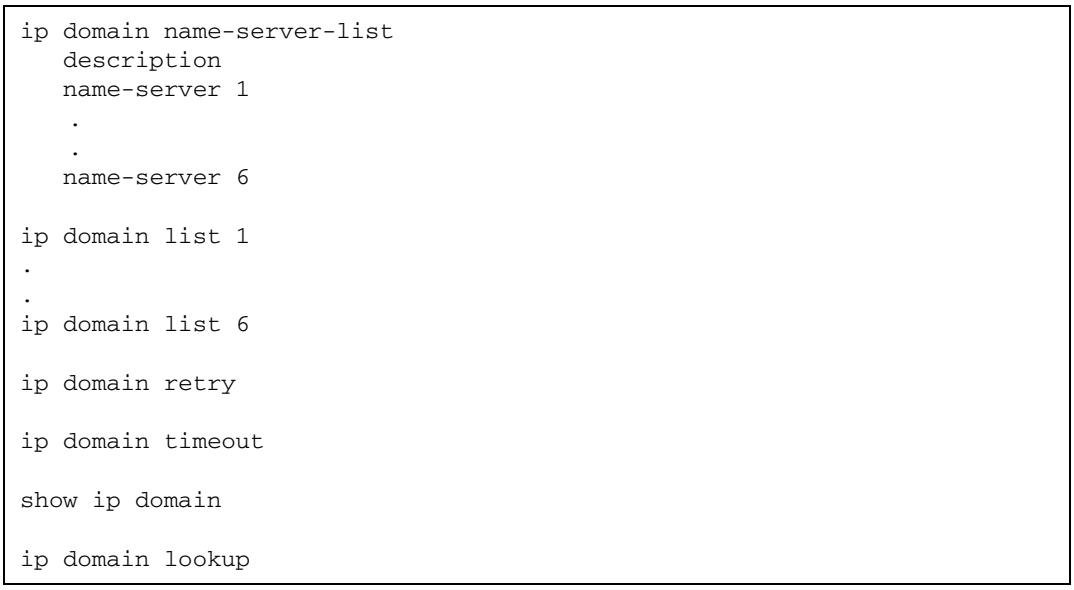
Important:

If either DHCP Client or PPP are configured in the G430, you do not need to configure DNS resolver because the DNS resolver is enabled by default. In addition, the DHCP Client and PPP discover DNS servers automatically, so the list of DNS servers will include the automatically-learned DNS servers.

Instead:

- For DHCP Client, enable DHCP Client by entering **`ip address dhcp`**. For information about DHCP Client see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.
- For PPP, enable automatic discovery of DNS servers by entering **`ppp ipcp dns request`**.

Figure 9: DNS resolver configuration workflow



DNS resolver configuration example

The following example defines three DNS servers for the list of DNS servers, three domain names to add as suffixes to hostnames, a DNS query retry value, and a DNS query timeout value. The final command in the example enables the DNS resolver.

```
G430-001(config)# ip domain name-server-list 1
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# description "All DNS servers"
Done!
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# name-server 1 1.1.1.1
Done!
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# name-server 2 2.2.2.2
Done!
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# name-server 3 3.3.3.3
Done!
G430-001(config-name-server-list:1)# exit
G430-001(config)# ip domain list 1 support.avaya.com
Done!
G430-001(config)# ip domain list 2 global.avaya.com
Done!
G430-001(config)# ip domain list 3 avaya.com
Done!
G430-001(config)# ip domain retry 4
Done!
G430-001(config)# ip domain timeout 5
Done!
G430-001(config)# ip domain lookup
Done!
```

Using DNS resolver to resolve a hostname

Use the **nslookup** command, followed by a hostname, to resolve the hostname to an IP address.

Maintaining DNS resolver

There are various commands you can use to display DNS resolver information, clear DNS resolver counters, and display DNS resolver log messages.

Showing DNS resolver information

You can use the following commands to display information about DNS resolver:

- Enter **show ip domain** to display the DNS resolver's configuration. The output shows the DNS servers that were statically configured and those which were gathered using DHCP or PPP protocols, as well as the list of domain suffixes.

- Enter **show ip domain statistics** to display the DNS resolver's statistics counters
- Use the **show protocol** command to display the status of the DNS-client protocol

Clearing DNS resolver counters

Enter **clear ip domain statistics** to clear the DNS resolver's statistics counters.

Viewing DNS resolver logging

1. Enter **set logging session enable** to enable session logging to the terminal.

```
G430-001# set logging session enable
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session enable
```

2. Enter **set logging session condition DNSC** to view all DNS resolver messages of level Info and above.

```
G430-001# set logging session condition DNSC Info
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session condition DNSC Info
```

Note:

You can also enable logging messages to a log file or a Syslog server. For a full description of logging on the G430, see Configuring logging on page 207.

Summary of DNS resolver configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 18: DNS resolver configuration commands

Root level command	Command	Description
clear ip domain statistics		Clear the DNS resolver's statistics counters
interface {dialer\|FastEthernet\|USB-modem}		Enter the interface configuration mode for a `Dialer`, `FastEthernet`, or `USB-modem` interface

1 of 2

Table 18: DNS resolver configuration commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
	ppp ipcp dns request	Enable or disable requesting DNS information from the remote peer during the PPP/IPCP session
ip domain list		Specify static domain names (suffixes) to complete non-FQDN names (hostnames that do not end with a dot)
ip domain lookup		Enable or disable the DNS resolver
ip domain name-server-list		Enter the context of the DNS servers list, or set up the list
	description	Set a name for the DNS servers list
	name-server	Add a DNS server to the list of up DNS servers
ip domain retry		Set the number of retries for a DNS query
ip domain timeout		Set the timeout for a DNS query
nslookup		Resolve a hostname to an IP address
show ip domain		Display the DNS resolver's configuration
show ip domain statistics		Display the DNS resolver's statistics counters
show protocol		Display the status of a specific management protocol, or all protocols

Viewing the status of the device

To view the status of the Avaya G430 Media Gateway, use the following commands. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Enter **show faults** to view information about currently active faults.
- Use the **show image version** command to display the software version of the image on both memory banks of the device.
- Enter **show mgc** to view information about the Media Gateway Controller with which the G430 is registered. For more information, see Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) on page 78.

- Use the **show mm** command to view information about media modules that are installed on the G430. To view information about a specific media module, include the slot number of the media module as an argument. For example, to view information about the media module in slot 2, enter **show mm v2**. The output of the command shows the following information:
 - Slot number
 - Uptime
 - Type of media module
 - Description
 - Serial number and other hardware identification numbers
 - Firmware version
 - Number of ports
 - Fault messages
- Use the **show module** command or enter **show mg list_config** to view brief information about media modules that are installed in the G430. To view brief information about a specific media module, include the slot number of the media module as an argument. For example, to view information about the media module in slot 2, enter **show module v2**. The output of the command shows the following information:
 - Slot number
 - Firmware version
 - Type of media module
 - Media module code
- Enter **show system** to display the serial number of the G430, the G430's uptime, the firmware version number, MAC addresses, and other system information.
- Enter **show restart-log** to view information about the last time the G430 was reset.
- Enter **show temp** to view the temperature of the G430 CPU. This command also displays the high and low temperatures that will trigger a temperature warning.
- Use the **show timeout** command to display the amount of time in minutes the terminal remains idle before timing out.
- Enter **show voltages** to view the power supply voltages of the G430.
- Use the **show utilization** command to display information about CPU and memory usage on the G430.

 Note:

 Before using this command, you must first use the **set utilization cpu** command to enable CPU utilization measurements.
- Enter **test led** to test the system ALM, MDM and CPU LEDs on the front panel of the G430. The CPU and media module LEDs blink for five seconds.

Summary of device status commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 19: Device status commands

Command	Description
set utilization cpu	Enable CPU utilization measurements
show faults	Display information about currently active faults
show image version	Display the software version of the image on both memory banks of the device
show mg list_config	Display the current hardware and firmware configurations for the installed media gateway equipment
show mgc	Display information about the Media Gateway Controller with which the G430 is registered
show mm	Display information about media modules that are installed on the G430
show module	Display brief information about the media modules installed in the G430
show restart-log	Display information about the last time the G430 was reset
show system	Display information about the G430
show temp	Display the device temperature
show timeout	Display the amount of time in minutes the terminal remains idle before timing out
show utilization	Display information about CPU and memory usage on the G430
show voltages	Display power supply voltages
test led	Test the system ALM, MDM and CPU LEDs on the front panel of the G430

Software and firmware management

You can manage G430 software and firmware, either:

- Remotely, using an FTP, TFTP, or SCP server

 Or

- Locally, using a USB mass storage device connected to the G430 USB port

File transfer

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway can be a client for the FTP and TFTP protocols. Use either a USB device or the FTP or TFTP protocols to transfer files between the Avaya G430 Media Gateway and other devices. You can use file transfer to:

- Install software and firmware upgrades on the G430
- Install firmware upgrades on media modules
- Back up and restore configuration settings

To use FTP/TFTP file transfer, you need to have an FTP server or TFTP server on your network.

Note:

If you use an FTP server, the G430 prompts you for a username and password when you enter a command to transfer a file. Also, when opening an FTP connection to the S8300, all anonymous FTP file transfers are restricted to the `/pub` directory. Permission for anonymous FTP users to create files in other directories is denied.

Software and firmware upgrades

You can upgrade software on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. Software used to control the Avaya G430 Media Gateway itself and media modules installed on the G430 is called firmware. Use a USB device or the FTP or TFTP protocol to download a new version of software or firmware. You can upgrade the following types of software and firmware:

- Firmware for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway
- Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager
- Firmware for media modules

Note:

You can also use the G430 to upgrade the firmware and configuration files for IP phones. For details, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

Managing the firmware banks

The G430 has two firmware banks:

- Bank A
- Bank B

Each firmware bank contains a version of the G430 firmware. These may be different versions. The purpose of this feature is to provide software redundancy. If one of the versions becomes corrupted, you can reset the G430 using the other version. This is particularly important when downloading new versions.

Displaying firmware versions in the banks

Use the **`show image version`** command to display the firmware version of the image on both memory banks of the device.

Changing the default bank

By default, when you turn on or reset the G430, the G430 loads firmware from Bank B. To change the default bank from which firmware is loaded during startup, use the **`set boot bank`** command. For example, to configure the G430 to load firmware from Bank A on startup, enter **`set boot bank bank-A`**. Now, when you reset the G430, it will load firmware from Bank A.

To display the bank from which the G430 is currently set to load its firmware upon startup or reset, use the **`show boot bank`** command.

Loading firmware from the non-default bank

You can use the **ASB** button on the G430 front panel to load firmware from a bank other than the default bank during startup:

1. Press and hold the **reset** button.
2. Press and hold the **ASB** button.
3. Release the **reset** button.
4. Release the **ASB** button.

For example, if the G430 is configured to load firmware from Bank B, use the steps listed above to reset the G430 to load the firmware from Bank A instead.

Upgrading software and firmware using FTP/TFTP

To upgrade software or firmware, you must obtain an upgrade file from Avaya. Place the file on your FTP or TFTP server. Then, use one of the following commands to upload the file to the G430. For each of these commands, include the full path of the file and the IP address of the FTP or TFTP host as parameters. When you enter the command, the CLI prompts you for a username and password.

Note:

In addition to using the CLI to upgrade software and firmware, you can use the Avaya IW and the GIW. See Accessing Avaya IW on page 41 and Accessing GIW on page 44.

- Use the **copy ftp module** command, followed by the module number of the module you want to upgrade, to upgrade the firmware on a media module from an FTP server.
- Use the **copy ftp SW_imageA** command to upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank A from an FTP server.
- Use the **copy ftp SW_imageB** command to upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank B from an FTP server.
- Use the **copy ftp EW_archive** command to upgrade the Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager software from an FTP server.
- Use the **copy tftp module** command, followed by the module number of the module you want to upgrade, to upgrade the firmware on a media module from a TFTP server.
- Use the **copy tftp SW_imageA** command to upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank A from a TFTP server.
- Use the **copy tftp SW_imageB** command to upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank B from a TFTP server.
- Use the **copy tftp EW_archive** command to upgrade the Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager software from a TFTP server.

When using FTP or TFTP commands, you must use the specific path of the file on the FTP or TFTP server according to the home directory of the service (FTP or TFTP) that you are using. For example, to upgrade the firmware of an MM710 media module in slot 2 from a TFTP server with the IP address 192.1.1.10, where the home directory is `c:\home\ftp\` and the upgrade file is located in the directory `c:\home\ftp\version`, use the following command:

```
copy tftp module \version\mm710v3.fdl 192.1.1.10 2
```

Note:

When downloading firmware from the S8300, use only the file name, without the directory path, in the command line. Otherwise, the procedure will fail. For instance, in the example above, you must use the following command:

```
copy tftp module mm710v3.fdl 192.1.1.10 2
```

When downloading firmware from the S8300 using TFTP, you may need to enable the TFTP service in the Set LAN Security parameters of your web server.

The following example downloads a firmware version with the path and file name `C:\g430.net` from an FTP server with the IP address 149.49.134.153 to Bank A of the G430:

```
copy ftp SW_imageA C:\g430.net 149.49.134.153
```

Upgrading software and firmware using a USB mass storage device

You can upgrade software and firmware using a USB mass storage device.

1. Obtain an upgrade file from Avaya and place it on your PC.
2. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port, and copy the software or firmware file(s) to the USB mass storage device.
3. Remove the USB storage device from the PC, and insert it in the G430 USB port.
4. Copy the software or firmware file(s) to the G430 using one of the following commands:
 - Use the **`copy usb SW_imageA`** command to upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank A from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb SW_imageB`** command to upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank B from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb EW_archive`** command to upgrade the Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager software from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb module`** command, followed by the slot number of the module you want to upgrade, to upgrade the firmware on a media module from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb phone-imageA`** (or **`imageB`**, or **`imageC`**, or **`imageD`**) to upgrade IP phone firmware from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb phone-scriptA`** (or **`phone-scriptB`**) to upgrade IP phone scripts from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb announcement-file`** to upgrade announcements files from the USB mass storage device.
 - Use the **`copy usb auth-file`** to upgrade the authentication file from the USB mass storage device.

- Use the **copy usb startup-config** to upgrade the startup configuration file from the USB mass storage device.

5. Use the **show download software status** command to display the status of the firmware download process.

Upgrading firmware using the USB mass storage device "restore" command

The primary use of the **restore usb** command is to restore the entire gateway. If you use the command to upgrade firmware, take care to follow instructions carefully.

1. Back up the gateway by entering **backup config usb usbdevice0 *backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the backup directory path and file name you are creating on the USB mass storage device.

 A backup directory is created on the USB mass storage device, with a directory structure as detailed in Table 21.

2. Obtain the firmware upgrade file(s) from Avaya and place them on your PC.
3. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port, and copy the firmware file(s) to the USB mass storage device as follows:
 a. Copy G430 firmware files to the root directory.
 b. Copy the G430 Device Manager firmware file to the root directory.
 c. Copy media modules' firmware files to the `MM` subdirectory.
 d. Copy IP phone firmware files to the `IPPHONE` subdirectory.
4. Remove the USB mass storage device from the PC, and insert it in the G430 USB port.
5. Enter **restore usb usbdevice0 *backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the root directory path and name on the USB mass storage device.
6. Enter **show restore status** to check the status of the restore operation. The report lists the upgraded files.

Uploading software and firmware from the gateway

Copying files to a USB mass storage device

You can use a USB mass storage device inserted into the G430 USB port to copy individual files to a USB mass storage device.

Use the **copy *file* usb** command to upload a specific file from the gateway to the USB mass storage device, where ***file*** can be any of the following:

- `announcement-file`. Announcements files
- `auth-file`. Authentication file
- `phone-scriptA`. Phone script bank A in the gateway's TFTP directory
- `phone-scriptB`. Phone script bank B in the gateway's TFTP directory

- `startup-config`. The startup configuration file
- `capture-file`. The packet sniffing buffer
- `dhcp-binding`. The DHCP binding file
- `syslog-file`. The syslog file
- `cdr-file`. A Call Detail Recording (CDR) file

Copying files to an FTP/SCP/TFTP server

- Use the **`copy file ftp`** command to upload a specific file from the gateway to an FTP server, where ***`file`*** can be any of the following:
 - `announcement-file`. Announcements files
 - `auth-file`. Authentication file
 - `capture-file`. The packet sniffing buffer
 - `cdr-file`. A Call Detail Recording (CDR) file
 - `dhcp-binding`. The DHCP binding file
- Use the **`copy file scp`** command to upload a specific file from the gateway to an SCP server, where ***`file`*** can be any of the following:
 - `announcement-file`. Announcements files
 - `auth-file`. Authentication file
 - `capture-file`. The packet sniffing buffer
 - `capture-file`. The packet sniffing buffer
 - `cdr-file`. A Call Detail Recording (CDR) file
 - `dhcp-binding`. The DHCP binding file
- Use the **`copy file tftp`** command to upload a specific file from the gateway to a TFTP server, where ***`file`*** can be any of the following:
 - `announcement-file`. Announcements files
 - `capture-file`. The packet sniffing buffer
 - `auth-file`. Authentication file
 - `capture-file`. The packet sniffing buffer
 - `cdr-file`. A Call Detail Recording (CDR) file
 - `dhcp-binding`. The DHCP binding file

Summary of software and firmware management commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 20: Software and firmware management CLI commands

Command	Description
copy *file* ftp	Upload a specific file from the gateway to an FTP server
copy *file* scp	Upload a specific file from the gateway to an SCP server
copy *file* tftp	Upload a specific file from the gateway to a TFTP server
copy *file* usb	Upload a specific file from the gateway to the USB mass storage device
copy ftp EW_archive	Upgrade the Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager software from an FTP server
copy ftp module	Upgrade the firmware on a media module from an FTP server
copy ftp SW_imageA	Upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank A from an FTP server
copy ftp SW_imageB	Upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank B from an FTP server
copy tftp EW_archive	Upgrade the Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager software from a TFTP server
copy tftp module	Upgrade the firmware on a media module from a TFTP server
copy tftp SW_imageA	Upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank A from a TFTP server
copy tftp SW_imageB	Upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank B from a TFTP server
copy usb announcement-file	Upgrade announcements files from the USB mass storage device
copy usb auth-file	Upgrade the authorization file from the USB mass storage device
copy usb EW_archive	Upgrade the Java applet for Avaya G430 Manager software from the USB mass storage device
copy usb module	Upgrade the firmware on a media module from the USB mass storage device
copy usb phone-image	Upgrade phone images from the USB mass storage device
copy usb phone-script	Upgrade phone scripts from the USB mass storage device
copy usb startup-config	Upgrade the startup configuration file from the USB mass storage device

1 of 2

Table 20: Software and firmware management CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
copy usb SW_image	Upgrade the G430 firmware into Bank A or into Bank B, from the USB mass storage device
dir	List all files in the USB mass storage device connected to the G430
set boot bank	Set the default bank from which firmware is loaded during startup
show boot bank	Display the bank from which the G430 is currently set to load its firmware upon startup or reset
show download software status	Display the status of the firmware download process
show image version	Display the firmware version of the image on both memory banks of the device

2 of 2

Backing up and restoring the G430 using a USB mass storage device

The G430 USB ports support a USB flash drive and a USB externally powered hub. The ports also support USB 2.0 high speed (480 Mbits/sec) for faster file transfer between the media gateway and USB mass storage devices.

Note:

An external USB hub is supported on G430 gateways with hardware suffix.vintage `C.1` or above.

To check the hardware suffix and vintage, enter **`show system`** and check the `HW suffix` and `HW vintage` values.

CLI commands for backing up and restoring files to or from a USB mass storage device enable you to use a USB port for efficient restoration or replication of a G430 media gateway and for replacing and upgrading media modules. Using the USB port you can back up or restore multiple files with one CLI command, which is simpler than the alternative TFTP/FTP/SCP method, in which files are copied and restored individually.

A single CLI command backs up all the administration and configuration files of a gateway onto a USB mass storage device. Another single command restores all of the backed up files. If you need to completely replicate a media gateway, you can also download the G430 firmware, media modules' firmware, IP phone firmware, and Device Manager firmware to the USB mass storage device, and use the **restore usb** command to restore these files as well as the administration and configuration files.

Note:

The CLI **backup config usb** and **restore usb** commands (for efficient backup/restore via a USB mass storage device) only run on gateways R4.0 and higher.

You can also use the USB mass storage device to copy individual gateway files to or from the gateway. Refer to Upgrading software and firmware using a USB mass storage device on page 97 and Uploading software and firmware from the gateway on page 98.

Tip:

It is recommended to use a USB mass storage device with LED indication.

Backing up administration and configuration files using a USB mass storage device

The following procedure backs up all the gateway configuration and administration files, but does not back up any firmware files.

Back up the gateway regularly to a USB mass storage device. This backup can be very helpful in restoring the gateway's configuration if it becomes faulty, or in restoring the entire gateway.

1. Connect a USB mass storage device to a G430 USB port.
2. Type **s** to commit the current configuration to NVRAM.
3. Enter **backup config usb usbdevice0** ***backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the backup directory path and file name you are creating on the USB mass storage device.

Note:

Before unplugging the USB mass storage device, use the **safe-removal usb** command to safely remove the USB mass storage device.

A backup directory is created on the USB mass storage device, with the following sample structure and file types:

Table 21: Backup file and directory structure on a USB mass storage device

Root directory	Sub-directory	Files	Comments
backup-25-Nov-2005			Backup directory name
		readme.txt	File with backup information
		startup_config.cfg	Configuration file
		audio.bin	Customer-specific VoIP parameters
		auth-file.cfg	Authentication file
	IPPHONE		IP phone scripts and images directory
		46xxupgrade.scr	
		46xxsettings.txt	
	MM		Media modules file directory
	GWANNC		Gateway announcements and music-on-hold file
		GeorgeAnnouncement.wav	
		GeorgiaAnnouncement.wav	

Note:

It is recommended to use at least a 128MB USB mass storage device since it can hold two full backup directories with all images and configuration files. You can create multiple backup directories as long as there is space in the USB mass storage device.

Note:

You can use the **show backup status** command to display information regarding the status of a backup of the gateway configuration to a USB mass storage device.

Restoring backed up configuration and administration files to a gateway using a USB mass storage device

1. Make sure you have a backup of the G430 on a USB mass storage device. Refer to Backing up administration and configuration files using a USB mass storage device on page 102.
2. Connect the USB mass storage device to a G430 USB port.
3. Enter **restore usb usbdevice0** ***backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the backup directory path and file name on the USB mass storage device.

Note:

Before unplugging the USB mass storage device, use the **safe-removal usb** command to safely remove the USB mass storage device.

Replicating a G430 using a USB mass storage device

The following procedure is useful for replicating a G430 that has become faulty. Since the **backup** command backs up all the gateway configuration files, but does not back up any firmware files, the main task is to add the various firmware files before running **restore**.

Important:

When adding files to a backup directory on a USB mass storage device, follow the file and directory naming convention, detailed in Table 22, to enable a successful restore.

1. Make sure you have a backup of the faulty G430 on a USB mass storage device. Refer to Backing up administration and configuration files using a USB mass storage device on page 102.
2. Transfer the media modules, including the S8300 if installed, from the faulty G430 into the corresponding slots of the new G430.
3. Connect the new G430 to a power source.
4. In the new G430, enter **show image version** to find out which of the two image banks holds the older gateway firmware version, and what version it is.
5. If the new G430 firmware version is below 26.x.y, you must replace it with firmware version 26.x.y or higher, in order to enable the `restore` option. To do so:
 a. Download the G430 firmware from the Avaya support website (http://www.avaya.com/support) to an FTP/TFTP server.
 b. Download the G430 firmware from the FTP/TFTP server to the new G430. Assuming that Bank A holds the older firmware version, enter **copy ftp sw_imageA** ***filename ip***, where ***filename*** is the full path and file name of the firmware file, and ***ip*** is the IP address of the FTP server. Alternatively, enter **copy tftp sw_imageA** ***filename ip*** if you are downloading from a TFTP server.

6. If the new G430 firmware version is 26.x.y or above, add a G430 firmware to the USB mass storage device, as follows:
 a. From the Avaya support website, download to your PC the same version of G430 firmware as was running in the faulty G430.
 b. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port.
 c. Copy the G430 firmware file to the root backup directory in the USB mass storage device.
7. Add the firmware files of the media modules to the USB mass storage device, as follows:
 a. From the Avaya support website, download to your PC the firmware files of the media modules installed in the gateway. For each media module, download all firmware corresponding to the various hardware vintage/suffix versions available for that module. If you are not sure which media modules you have, you can download the firmware files of all media modules. The restore operation uses only the files needed.
 b. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port.
 c. Copy the firmware files from the PC to the `MM` subdirectory in the USB mass storage device. Do not change the firmware file names.
8. You can optionally add the firmware files of the IP phones to the USB mass storage device, as follows:
 a. From the Avaya support website, download to your PC the firmware files (booter and application) of up to two supported IP phones, as well as the `46xxupgrade.txt` or `46xxupgrade.scr` file.
 b. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port.
 c. Copy the IP phone files from the PC to the USB mass storage device. Place them in the `IPPHONE` subdirectory under the root backup directory. Do not change the names of the downloaded files.

 Note:

 You will need to reset the IP phones after the restore operation on the gateway.
9. You can optionally restore or add the G430 Device Manager, as follows:
 a. From the Avaya support website, download to your PC the firmware file of the Device Manager.
 b. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port.
 c. Copy the Device Manager firmware file from the PC to the USB mass storage device. Place it in the root backup directory. Do not change the name of the firmware file.

10. View the backup directory on the USB mass storage device. The file types and directory structure should match the following convention:

Table 22: Backup file and directory naming convention on a USB mass storage device

Root directory	Sub-directory	Files	Comments
backup-25-Nov-2005			Backup directory name
		readme.txt	File with backup info
		startup_config.cfg	Configuration file
		audio.bin	Customer-specific VoIP parameters
		auth-file.cfg	Authentication file
		g50430_sw_24_21_1.bin	Gateway image
		g50430_emweb_3_0_5.bin	Embedded web image
	IPPHONE		IP phone scripts and images directory
		46xxupgrade.scr	
		46xxsettings.txt	
		4601dape1_82.bin	
		4601dbte1_82.bin	
	MM		Media modules file directory
		mm722v2.fdl	
		mm714v67.fdl	
		mm711h20v67.fdl	
		mmanalogv67.fdl	
	GWANNC		Gateway announcements and music-on-hold file directory
		DanAnncouncement.wav	
		DanaAnncouncement.wav	

11. Enter **key config-key password-encryption** followed by the same passphrase that was used to create the Master Configuration Key (MCK) in the faulty gateway. This creates on the new gateway an MCK identical to the MCK in the faulty gateway, which enables the restore operation to decrypt the secrets in the configuration file.

 The restored configuration file will include all the configuration of the gateway, including user's names and passwords, IKE pre-shared keys, etc.

12. Insert the USB mass storage device in the new G430 USB port.
13. Enter **restore usb usbdevice0** ***backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the backup directory path and file name on the USB mass storage device.
14. Enter **show restore status** to check the status of the restore operation. The report lists the files restored.
15. Update the S8300 on the new G430 with the serial number of the new gateway, otherwise the gateway is not able to register in the Avaya Aura Communication Manager. See *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 555-233-506.

 The new G430 is now a restored, fully-operational G430.

Note:

Before unplugging the USB mass storage device, use the **safe-removal usb** command to safely remove the USB mass storage device.

Replacing/adding/upgrading media modules using a USB mass storage device

1. Backup the gateway by entering **backup config usb usbdevice0** ***backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the backup directory path and file name you are creating on the USB mass storage device.

 A backup directory is created on the USB mass storage device, with a directory structure as detailed in Table 21.

2. From the Avaya support website, download to your PC the firmware files of the media modules you are adding or upgrading. For each media module, download all firmware corresponding to the various hardware vintage/suffix versions available for that module. If you are not sure which files you need, you can download the firmware files of all media modules. The restore operation uses only the files needed.
3. Insert the USB mass storage device into the PC's USB port, and copy the media modules' firmware files to the MM subdirectory under the root backup directory.

 Important:

 When adding files to a backup directory on a USB mass storage device, it is important to follow the file and directory naming convention, in order to enable a successful restore.

4. Insert the USB mass storage device into a G430 USB port.

5. Enter **restore usb usbdevice0 *backup-name***, where ***backup-name*** is the backup directory path and file name on the USB mass storage device.
6. If you changed the placement of media modules in the slots, update the MGC managing the media gateway. See *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 555-233-506.

Note:

Before unplugging the USB mass storage device, use the **safe-removal usb** command to safely remove the USB mass storage device.

Additional USB commands

The following USB commands are available:

- Use the **erase usb** command to erase a file or directory on the USB mass storage device.
- Use the **show usb** command to display the USB devices connected to the gateway.

Summary of USB backup, restore, and replication commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 23: USB backup, restore, and replication CLI commands

Command	Description
backup config usb	Back up the gateway configuration to a USB mass storage
copy ftp sw_imageA	Download a software image from an FTP server into Bank A
copy tftp sw_imageA	Download a software image from a TFTP server into Bank A
dir	Display information regarding the status of a restore operation of gateway files from a USB mass storage device
erase usb	Erase a file or directory on the USB mass storage device
key config-key password-encryption	Change the default Master Key of the gateway, which is used to encrypt gateway secrets in the gateway configuration file
restore usb	Restore gateway files from a USB mass storage device
safe-removal usb	Safely remove the USB mass storage device
show backup status	Display information regarding the status of a backup of the gateway configuration to a USB mass storage device

1 of 2

Table 23: USB backup, restore, and replication CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
show image version	Display the software version of the image on both memory banks of the device
show system	Display information about the device
show usb	Display the USB devices connected to the gateway
	2 of 2

Backing up and restoring configuration files

A configuration file is a data file that contains a complete set of configuration settings for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. You can use configuration files to back up and restore the configuration of the G430. You can back up either the running configuration or the startup configuration to the server as a configuration file. When you restore a configuration file from a server, it becomes the startup configuration on the G430. For more information about running configuration and startup configuration, see Saving configuration changes on page 35.

Note:

The startup configuration file stores gateway secrets (passwords, etc.) in an encrypted format. Thus, secrets do not have to be re-entered if you are copying a configuration file from one G430 to another. For more information, see Managing gateway secrets on page 64.

You can:

- Use the FTP/TFTP/SCP copy commands to transfer a configuration file between the G430 and a server on the network.
- Use a USB mass storage device connected to a G430 USB port to upload or download the startup configuration file of the G430. You can use either the USB copy commands, or use the USB backup and restore commands for a full backup and restore of the gateway (refer to Backing up and restoring the G430 using a USB mass storage device on page 101).

Backing up/restoring a configuration file using FTP/TFTP/SCP

- Use the **copy ftp startup-config** command to restore a configuration file from an FTP server. The configuration file becomes the startup configuration on the G430.
- Use the **copy tftp startup-config** command to restore a configuration file from a TFTP server. The configuration file becomes the startup configuration on the G430.
- Use the **copy scp startup-config** command to restore a configuration file from an SCP server. The configuration file becomes the startup configuration on the G430.

Note:

You can use the **show download status** command to display the status of the current configuration file download process, as the file is being loaded into the device.

- Use the **copy running-config ftp** command to back up the running configuration on the G430 to an FTP server.
- Use the **copy running-config tftp** command to back up the running configuration on the G430 to a TFTP server.
- Use the **copy running-config scp** command to back up the running configuration on the G430 to a SCP server.
- Use the **copy startup-config ftp** command to back up the startup configuration on the G430 to an FTP server.
- Use the **copy startup-config tftp** command to back up the startup configuration on the G430 to a TFTP server.
- Use the **copy startup-config scp** command to back up the startup configuration on the G430 to a SCP server.

Backing up/restoring a configuration file using a USB mass storage device

- Use the **copy startup-config usb** command to back up the startup configuration from the G430 to the USB mass storage device.
- Use the **copy usb startup-config** command to restore the startup configuration from the USB mass storage device to the G430.

Note:

You can use the **show download status** command to display the status of the current configuration file download process, as the file is being loaded into the device.

Summary of configuration file backup and restore commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 24: Configuration file backup and restore CLI commands

Command	Description
copy ftp startup-config	Download a G430 configuration file from an FTP server to the Startup Configuration NVRAM
copy scp startup-config	Download a G430 configuration from an SCP server to the Startup Configuration NVRAM
copy tftp startup-config	Download a G430 configuration file from a TFTP server to the Startup Configuration NVRAM
copy usb startup-config	Download a G430 configuration file from a USB mass storage device to the Startup Configuration NVRAM
copy running-config ftp	Upload the current G430 running configuration to a file on an FTP server
copy running-config scp	Upload the current G430 running configuration to a file on an SCP server
copy running-config tftp	Upload the current G430 running configuration to a file on a TFTP server
copy startup-config ftp	Upload the current G430 startup configuration to a file on an FTP server
copy startup-config scp	Upload the current G430 startup configuration to a file on a SCP server
copy startup-config tftp	Upload the current G430 startup configuration to a file on a TFTP server
copy startup-config usb	Upload the current G430 startup configuration to a file on a USB mass storage device
show download status	Display the status of the current G430 configuration file download process, as the file is being loaded into the device

Listing the files on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway

Use the **dir** command to list all G430 files. When you list the files, you can see the version numbers of the software components. The **dir** command also shows the booter file, which cannot be changed.

You can also use the **dir** command to list all files in the USB mass storage device connected to the G430.

Summary of file listing commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 25: File listing CLI commands

Command	Description
dir	List all G430 files or display files on the USB mass storage device

Chapter 6: Configuring Standard Local Survivability (SLS)

Standard Local Survivability (SLS) provides a local G430 with a limited subset of MGC functionality when there is no IP-routed WAN link available to an MGC, or no MGC is available.

SLS is not a replacement for ELS or LSP survivability, which offer full call-feature functionality and full translations in the survivable mode. Instead, SLS is a cost-effective survivability alternative offering limited call processing in survivable mode. Although the G430 can host an S8300 Server in ICC or LSP mode, SLS offers both local survivability and call control.

In contrast to the server-based survivability features, SLS operates entirely from the media gateway and requires a data set comprised of Avaya Aura Communication Manager translations (survivable ARS analysis and configuration data). This data set is compiled and distributed to a group of devices using the Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM). In the absence of the PIM, the data set can be configured manually from individual media gateways using CLI commands. For instructions on configuring SLS, see Configuring SLS on page 129.

Media module compatibility with SLS

SLS works on the G430 and its media modules only if they satisfy the minimum hardware vintage and firmware version requirements listed in Table 26.

Table 26: G430 media module firmware version required to support SLS

Media module	Minimum firmware version required
MM710	Vintage 16
MM711, hw v20+	Vintage 69
MM711, hw v30+	Vintage 84
MM712	Vintage 8
MM714, hw v1-v5	Vintage 69
MM714, hw v10+	Vintage 84
MM716	Vintage 84
MM717	Vintage 8

1 of 2

Table 26: G430 media module firmware version required to support SLS

Media module	Minimum firmware version required
MM720	Vintage 7
MM722	Vintage 7
	2 of 2

SLS service

- Call capability for analog, DCP, and IP phones
- ISDN BRI/PRI trunk interfaces
- Non-ISDN digital DS1 trunk interfaces
- Outbound dialing through the local PSTN (local trunk gateway) from analog, DCP, and IP phones
- Inbound calls from each trunk to pre-configured local analog or IP phones that have registered
- Direct inward dialing
- Multiple call appearances
- Hold and call transfer functions
- Contact closure feature
- Local call progress tones (dial tone, busy, etc.)
- Emergency Transfer Relay (ETR) in cases of power loss
- Auto fallback to primary MGC
- IP station registration

Avaya phones supported in SLS

Table 27: Avaya phones supported in SLS

Analog	DCP	IP
2500	2402	4601
	2410	4602
		1 of 2

Table 27: Avaya phones supported in SLS (continued)

Analog	DCP	IP
	2420	4602sw
	6402	4610sw
	6402D	4612
	6408	4620
	6408+	4620sw (default)
	6408D (default)	4621
	6408D+	4622
	6416D+	4624
	6424D+	4625
	8403B	
	8405B	
	8405B+	
	8405D	
	8405D+	
	8410B	
	8410D	
	8411B	
	8411D	
	8434D	
		2 of 2

The 96xx family and 16xx family of IP phones are not directly referenced in the G430 CLI. When you administer these phones via the CLI, use the following mapping:

Table 28: Mapping Avaya 96xx and 16xx IP phones for CLI administration

Module name	CLI interface name
1603	4610
1608	4610
1616	4620
9610, FW V2.0 +	4606*
9620, FW V2.0 +	4610*
9630, FW V2.0 +	4620*
9640, FW V2.0 +	4620*
9650, FW V2.0 +	4620*

* For R4.0, the firmware must be build 26_39 or newer.
For R5.0, the firmware must be build 27_27 or newer.

Call processing in SLS mode

In survivable mode, SLS provides only a limited subset of Avaya Aura Communication Manager call processing functionality:

- Limited call routing through a Survivable ARS Analysis Table (in the PIM application or through the CLI) and COR calling permissions
- Inbound calls are directed in one of three ways:
 - Using the **Incoming-Routing** form
 - Using the **Set Incoming-Destination** on the **Trunk group** form, which enables mapping to a given station
 - Inbound calls are directed to a previously-administered pool of available stations (the **Survivable Trunk Dest?** field is **y** on the **Station** form). The search algorithm is circular so that the incoming calls are fairly distributed.

Important:

SLS permits 911 calls, but the specific location information is not transmitted to the Public Service Answering Point (PSAP). Only the general trunk-identifying information is transmitted. Emergency personnel will have a general location associated with the trunk (for example, a building address), but nothing more specific (for example, a room or office number). Also, if a 911 call disconnects for any reason, emergency personnel cannot reliably call the originator back.
A small business office's address is sufficient from the perspective of emergency routing.

- Communication Manager Feature Access Codes for ARS, contact closure, and Hold
- Acts as an H.323 Gatekeeper that enables IP endpoints to register simultaneously
- Direct Inward Dialing
- Multiple call appearances
- Hold and Call Transfer functions
- Contact closure feature
- Call Detail Recording (CDR, see SLS logging activities on page 127)
- Trunk Access Code (TAC) dialing
- Non-ISDN DS1 trunks (with in-band signaling)
- ISDN PRI/BRI trunks:
 - **T1 robbed-bit**. All 24 channels serve as trunks without full 64 kbps transmission
 - **E1 CAS**. All 31 channels serve as trunks with full 64 kbps transmission

Call processing not supported by SLS

- Many small business customers employ custom calling features such as call waiting, from the BOC/LEC, attempting a more PBX-like capability. These features are not supported by SLS.
- Non-ISDN signaling:
 - DMI BOS signaling for T1 and E1
 - R2-MFC signaling for E1
- Calling party name/number information to digital station displays
- Caller ID on outgoing analog station calls
- Caller ID on incoming analog loop-start trunk calls
- Three party conferences
- Last Number Redial

- Call Forwarding-Busy/Don’t Answer
- No Music On Hold source or announcement playback
- Call Center features, including ASAI
- Connection Preserving Failover/Failback for H.248 Gateways

Provisioning data

SLS requires that the G430 has connected to an MGC at least once and has received provisioning information, including:

- Avaya Aura Communication Manager port information sent through the H.248 control channel:
 - Tone sources, including a distinctly different dial tone to inform users that the system is operating in survivable mode
 - Loss plan
- Avaya Aura Communication Manager provisioning information for the options in the station and trunk media modules is sent through the CCMS channel
- Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) queries Avaya Aura Communication Manager for station/trunk configuration and dial plan routing administration data through SNMP. Alternatively, the provisioning may be entered manually via an SNMP MIB browser or via the local gateway’s CLI interface.

These data sources and communication links are illustrated in Figure 10.

Figure 10: Standard Local Survivability data sources and communication paths

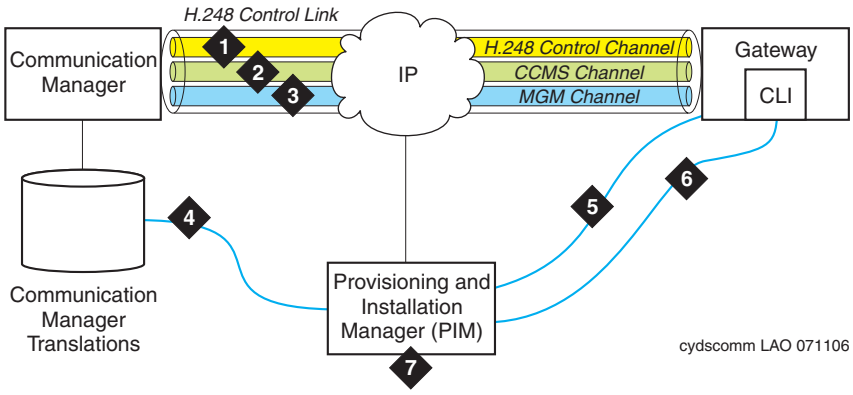


Figure notes:

1. **H.248 call signaling and configuration data**
2. **CCMS messages through Clear Channel**
3. **Media Gateway Maintenance Channel**
4. **PIM extracts Communication Manager translation subset through OSSI**

 NOTE: The SLS data must be configured manually in the gateway if the PIM is not available.
5. **PIM data set and SLS MIB delivered to the gateway through SNMP**
6. **Security codes (passwords) sent over SSH connection to CLI**
7. **Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) for remotely provisioning gateways, network-wide. PIM is installed on an enterprise management server, not on the primary Communication Manager server.**

The required Communication Manager translations for SLS include fields on the **Station** and **Media Gateway** forms. See Configuring Communication Manager for SLS on page 130 for more information about the information types and how to administer Communication Manager for SLS.

PIM configuration data

SLS also requires PIM configuration data, some of which the G430 extracts from the Avaya Aura Communication Manager translations. PIM aggregates the required data and copies the provisioning data over a secure communication path to non-volatile RAM (NVRAM) on the G430. After the initial data collection, PIM retains a copy of the data set for each G430. This set is compared with subsequent data sets to determine if anything has changed:

- If the data set changes, the newer data set is pushed down to the media gateway
- If the data set does not change, the data set in NVRAM remains unchanged

Users can schedule when to collect and push data, perform scheduled and manual backups, and enable and disable SLS, as well as display (but not change) the data to ensure correct information. See Using PIM to manage SLS administration on the gateway on page 135.

If PIM is unavailable, the SLS data set can be manually configured in the G430 CLI. For information on configuring SLS, both manually and via PIM, see Configuring SLS on page 129.

Entering SLS mode

When SLS is enabled, the MGC list displays a fifth element called *SLS*. This element is always past the Transition Point. After the Link Recovery search concludes for the primary MGC list (entries above the Transition Point), it searches the alternate MGC list (entries below the Transition Point), ending with *SLS*, the last choice for the G430.

When the Link Recovery search settles on the *SLS* entry in the MGC list, the G430 registers with SLS (resident on the G430) for its call control.

SLS transitions between four possible SLS states: Unregistered, Setup, Registered, and Teardown.

Unregistered state

This is the normal state in which SLS waits for an H.248 registration request from the G430. When SLS receives the request, it registers the G430 and transitions to the Setup state.

Setup state

In this transitional state, SLS performs the following activities:

1. Checks for proper provisioning data. If there is insufficient provisioning, the registration request is denied, and SLS returns to the Unregistered state.
2. Initializes SLS components, such as gatekeeper data (for example, IP endpoint's E.164 addresses and passwords), dial plan, and ARS routing.
3. Registers with the media gateway.
4. Creates the H.323 Gatekeeper socket after successful registration.

When Setup is complete, SLS transitions to the Registered state.

Registered state

SLS can only process calls while it is in the Registered state in which it performs the following:

1. Constructs endpoint objects based on board insertion and IP registration.
2. Tears down endpoint objects based on board removal and IP unregistration.

3. Handles registration requests from H.323 endpoints that properly authenticate by using their extension number as a 'terminal alias', and the password as the registration encryption key.
4. Handles stimuli from all interfaces to establish and remove calls.

SLS remains in the Registered state as long as the socket to SLS is open.

Teardown

SLS transitions to the Teardown state whenever the following occur:

- The G430 administrator uses the **`set sls disable`** command from the G430 CLI or manual MIB browser using the SNMP read/write attribute avSurvAdminState.
- The G430 closes the SLS socket after maintenance determines that it has completed an H.248 registration with the primary MGC.
- SLS determines that it needs to unregister with the G430 due to internal error conditions.

Teardown state activities

1. Tears down endpoint objects.
2. Sends unregistration requests to IP endpoints that are not on active calls. IP endpoints lose registration with SLS and display the discovered IP address during re-registration with an MGC.
3. Closes the H.323 Gatekeeper socket.

After Teardown is complete, SLS transitions to the Unregistered state and starts searching at the top of the MGC list for a controller.

SLS interaction with specific G430 features

SLS interacts differently with the various G430 features.

Direct Inward Dialing in SLS mode

Direct Inward Dial (DID) is a service offered by telephone companies that enables callers to dial directly into an extension on a PBX without the assistance of an operator or automated call attendant.

Note:

DID is a method of routing calls that applies to both analog and digital (T1/E1) lines. However, while the method is typically referred to as DID in the analog world, it is usually called Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS) in the digital world. Despite the difference in names, the concept is the same.

The gateways support DID central office trunk interfaces, and the digit transmission from the central office is configurable when ordering the service:

- **Immediate**. The DID signaling starts immediately after the central office seizes the analog DID trunk by closing the loop (across tip and ring). In addition, analog DID trunk lines only support inbound calls. For this reason, Customer Premise Equipment (CPE) utilizing DID trunk lines for inbound routing may utilize loop-start lines for outbound transmission.
- **Wink**. The DID signaling starts after the gateway's analog trunk interface reverses the battery polarity and sends a "wink" to the central office.

WARNING:

An analog two-wire DID trunk line is different from a standard analog loop-start line. With analog DID trunk lines, the battery (power feed) to the line is supplied by the gateway's analog trunk interface. With a standard loop-start line, the power is supplied by the central office, which is why damage can occur from connecting a loop-start PSTN trunk to the DID port.

The number of sent digits (3-4 typically) and signaling type (Pulse/DTMF) are also configurable at ordering time.

Multiple call appearances in SLS mode

When a gateway is in SLS mode, three call appearances, each with limitations, are supported:

- The first two call appearances are for incoming or outgoing calls. The first call appearance is the default.
- The third call appearance is for outgoing calls only.

Note:

"First", "second", and "third", refer to the order in which you use call appearances, not the order of the Call Appearance buttons on your phone.

For example, User A chooses the third call appearance to dial User B, and then User C calls User A, which is sent to the first call appearance. In this situation, a subsequent inbound call to User A will be denied (busy) because the first and third call appearances are in use, and the second call appearance is only available for outbound calls.

Hold in SLS mode

Using the Hold feature differs by user and by phone type, and the same is true of the Hold feature in Standard Local Survivability (SLS) mode. Some users return to a call on Hold by pressing the Call Appearance button, however, Communication Manager has an administrable parameter that allows users to release a call on hold by pressing the Hold button a second time (if only one call is held). The Hold feature also works differently in DCP and IP phones and Analog phones in the survivable mode.

The Hold feature in SLS does not support:

- Music on Hold

- Local mute on analog phones
- Specialized treatment of E-911 calls
- Call Hold indicator tones

DCP and IP phones

When a media gateway is in the survivable mode, you can release calls on Hold on all DCP and IP phones by either:

- Pressing the Hold button a second time (if only one call is held)
- Pressing the held Call Appearance button

Analog phones

Newer analog phones (for example, Avaya 62xx series) have buttons with specific functions for placing a call on Hold:

- **Hold button**. A hold function that is local to the phone

 Pressing the Hold button causes the analog station to place a hold bridge in both directions at the telephone set. No signaling notification is sent to the SLS call-engine and, therefore, there is no ability to notify the other party that they have been placed on hold. Pressing the Hold button a second time causes the analog phone to remove the hold bridge and the call path is restored. In essence, this hold operation is equivalent to using the Mute button on station sets.
- **Flash button**. A function that sends a switchhook signal to the server
- **Switchhook** (receiver on/off hook). A function that sends a disconnect signal to the server

Using the Flash button

1. Press the Flash button on the analog phone.

 You hear a dial tone; the other party hears nothing.

 You can leave the call on Hold or transfer the call. Press the Flash button twice to return to the call.
2. Dial the Feature Access Code (FAC) for Hold.

 At this point you can leave the call on Hold or transfer the call.
3. To return to the call, press the Flash button again.

 The call is re-established.

Note:

Either party can put the call on Hold or return to the call.

Using the switchhook button

1. Press the switchhook once.

 You hear a dial tone.

2. Dial the FAC for Hold.

 This places the call on Hard Hold which prevents you from transferring the call. To return to the call, dial the FAC for Hold.

3. Do one of the following:

 - Return to the call by dialing the FAC for Hold.

 The call is re-established.

 - Dial a third party by dialing the number and flashing the switchhook once (you will hear a stutter dial tone). Dial the FAC for Hold (the second call is now on Hold and the first call is re-established). If you want to toggle between the first and second calls, press the switchhook and dial the FAC for Hold once each time you want to change calls.

 - Hang up.

 Your phone will ring to notify you that you have a call on Hold. When you lift the receiver you will hear a dial tone and can perform any of the activities listed in Step 3.

Call Transfer in SLS mode

Using the Call Transfer feature differs by user and by phone type. The same is true of the Hold feature in Standard Local Survivability (SLS) mode. Call Transfer also works differently in DCP/IP phones and analog phones in the survivable mode. Some limitations of the Call Transfer feature are:

- The established call must be initiated from a local station (administered on this gateway) or from an incoming trunk. You can make only point-to-point call transfers to a phone that is local to the same gateway.
- Does not support E-911 calls
- Does not support the Conference button on any phone
- Does not support trunk-to-trunk transfer (for example, for voice messaging)

Transferring a call on DCP and IP phones

1. While talking on a call or while you have a call on Hold, press the Transfer button on your phone.

 You hear a dial tone; the other party hears nothing.

2. Dial the third party’s number on your phone.
3. You can either:

 - Wait for the third party to answer and announce the call, then either press the Transfer button again or hang up.
 - Transfer the call before the third party answers by pressing the Transfer button again.

 The person you were talking to is transferred to the third party.
 A message appears on your phone display to indicate that the call transfer is complete.

Note:

If you do not completely dial the string or if you hear a fast-busy or re-order (French siren) tone, only a Hard Hold call connection (if present) remains at the station.

If the third party does not answer, the call does not ring back to the originating party. If a transfer does not complete, the event is logged.

Transferring an established call from an analog phone

Newer analog phones (for example, Avaya 62xx series) have buttons with specific functions for transferring a call. The switchhook (receiver on/off hook) sends a disconnect signal to the server, and the Transfer/Flash button sends a transfer message to the server.

1. While on a call, press the switchhook once or press the Transfer/Flash button.

 You hear a dial tone; the other party will hear nothing.

2. Dial the third party's number on your phone.
3. You can either:
 - Wait for the third party to answer and announce the call, then hang up.
 - Transfer the call before the third party answers by hanging up.

 The person you were talking to is transferred to the third party.

 A message appears on your phone display to indicate that the call transfer is complete. If the necessary call processing resources are not available, the transfer does not complete and the event is logged.

Note:

Displays are not supported on analog phones unless they are supported locally by an analog phone.

Using contact closure in SLS mode

When the media gateway is in survivable mode, contact closure works as follows:

1. Lift the phone receiver and listen for the survivability dial tone.
2. Dial the appropriate contact closure FAC (open, close, or pulse) on the phone.
 - If you dial an invalid FAC code, then SLS plays an intercept tone and terminates the session.
 - If you dial a valid FAC code, then you will hear a standard dial tone and can proceed to Step 3.
3. Dial the media gateway number (three digits).
 - If you enter fewer than three digits, then SLS times out and you must restart this procedure from the beginning.

- If the media gateway number matches the local media gateway number, then SLS plays a standard dial tone and you can proceed to Step 4.
- If the media gateway number does not match the local media gateway number, SLS plays an intercept tone and terminates the session.

4. Dial the contact closure code, for example **1** for contact pair #1, and **2** for contact pair #2.

 You hear stutter tone and then silence, confirming these valid codes. If you dial an invalid contact closure number, you will hear an intercept tone.

 - Contact closure feature activations appear in the CDR log (see Figure 12).

 Note:

 If the contact closures are set to manual operation, the FAC operation will not work even though the confirmation tone is heard. However, an event will be logged.

Contact closure / SLS feature interactions

- There is no screening to authorize the use of the contact closure feature in SLS mode. Security is provided by limiting the number of users who know the correct key sequence required for the contact closure feature.
- You cannot use the Hold or Transfer features while dialing the contact closure FAC key sequence.
- Contact closure will not work until you dial the full digit sequence and it is processed.
- If two users try to simultaneously use contact closure, whoever dials the full FAC key sequence first gets precedence.
- Interdigit timing rules apply to the contact closure feature, so if you pause too long during the FAC key sequence, the feature times out.
- Call appearances are not released (available for calls) until you hang up.
- You cannot use the contact closure feature from outside trunk lines.

Note:

For more information on contact closure, refer to Configuring contact closure on page 311.

IP Softphone shared administrative identity in SLS mode

The SLS mode supports shared administrative identity with the Avaya Softphone application, but requires specific station administration.

1. Access the CM administrative SAT interface. For instructions on accessing the Avaya Aura Communication Manager through the G430, see Accessing the registered MGC on page 83.
2. At the SAT interface, enter **`change station extension`** to display the **Station** form.

3. Set the **Terminal Type** field to a 46xx IP phone.
4. Save the changes.

Note:

If you administer the **Terminal Type** field as a DCP phone, shared administrative identity functionality in SLS mode is not supported.

SLS logging activities

SLS exports call-recording data in survivability mode. The Call Detail Record (CDR) log contains detailed information about each outgoing call that uses a trunk. This information can be stored in flash NVRAM or directed to an external server for later processing. It includes data for:

- Merged outgoing Trunk Access Codes (TACs), indicating successfully completed dialing
- Successfully completed ARS calls, as shown in Figure 11

Note:

The Syslog information is stored in a memory file that is configured as a FIFO with a length of 50 KB. Once the last entry in the memory is full, the newest log event overwrites the oldest entry. This provides for a storage of 667 call records that may be saved during SLS operation. If you have a Syslog server on a PC connected to the local area network of the branch office, then these Syslog messages can be immediately transported from the gateway to the Syslog server. This enables the capture period to run for an extended period of time.

- Contact closure, as shown in Figure 12

Example of CDR log entries and format

Figure 11: CDR log example

```
G430-SLS(super)# show logging cdr file content

02/18/2005,10:46:35:CDR-Informational: 10:46 00:00 A 700 50029555 52001 v301

02/18/2005,10:45:46:CDR-Informational: 10:45 00:00 A 700 50029 52001 v301

02/18/2005,10:45:14:CDR-Informational: 10:45 00:00 A 700 52 52001 v301

02/18/2005,10:44:35:CDR-Informational: 10:44 00:00 A 700 445200 52001 v301

02/10/2005,13:20:23:CDR-Informational: 13:20 00:00 A 700 50029 52001 v301

02/10/2005,13:20:15:CDR-Informational: 13:20 00:00 A 700 50029 52000 v301

02/10/2005,13:20:05:CDR-Informational: 13:20 00:00 A 700 44 52000 v301

02/10/2005,13:19:59:CDR-Informational: 13:19 00:00 A 700 44500 52000 v301
```

An interpretation of the first entry in Figure 11 is:

- **02/18/2005** is the date of the log entry
- **10:46:35** is the time of the log entry
- **CDR-Informational** is the category (to aid sorting)
- **10:46** is the time the call was placed
- **00:00** is the duration of the call in hours and minutes or **99:99** if the duration is greater than 99 hours
- **A** is the condition code. Possible values are:
 - 7. Outgoing call
 - 9. Incoming call
 - A. Outgoing TAC call or emergency call
 - B. Used for contact closure
- **700** is the FAC or TAC number
- **50029555** is the dialed number
- **52001** is the extension that originated the call
- **v301** indicates the port through which the call was routed

Example of CDR log with contact closure

Figure 12: CDR log example, contact closure

```
G430-SLS(super)# show logging cdr file content

07/27/2005,03:59:24:(0 0 0:15:5)CDR-Informational: July 27 03:59 B 15840 PULSE 003 2
```

An interpretation of the entry in Figure 12 is:

- Date (**07/27/2005**) and time (**03:59:24**) record when the feature was activated
- **B** is the condition code. Possible values are:
 - 7. Outgoing call
 - A. Outgoing TAC call or emergency call
 - B. Used for contact closure
- **15840** is the extension that activated the feature
- **PULSE** indicates the contact closure operation (could also be **OPEN** or **CLOSE**)
- **003** is the media gateway number
- **2** is the contact closure number

Configuring SLS

SLS is included as part of the resident gateway firmware package that is installed as part of the G430 gateway firmware upgrade. However, for SLS to function correctly, the following conditions must be met:

- Avaya Aura Communication Manager must be configured for SLS and Auto Fallback. For instructions on configuring SLS in Avaya Aura Communication Manager, see Configuring Communication Manager for SLS on page 130.
- Provisioning data from the PIM tool must be gathered from Avaya Aura Communication Manager and delivered to the G430 using PIM. For instructions on gathering and delivering the provisioning data, see Using PIM to manage SLS administration on the gateway on page 135.
 If PIM is not available, the G430 can be manually configured for SLS and Auto Fallback via the CLI. See Using the CLI to manually configure SLS administration on the gateway on page 141.
- SLS must be enabled on the G430. See Enabling and disabling SLS on page 140.

- To activate any saved changes within SLS, the disable and enable SLS commands must be used together. See Activating changes in SLS on page 141.

Configuring Communication Manager for SLS

You must configure the Avaya Aura Communication Manager for SLS whether you will be using PIM provisioning or manual CLI entry of SLS administration. Perform the configuration during the initial administration of the host CM server.

1. Access the CM administrative SAT interface. For instructions on accessing the Avaya Aura Communication Manager through the G430, see Accessing the registered MGC on page 83.
2. At the SAT, enter **`change node-names ip`** to display the **IP Node Names** form. For example:

```
change node-names ip                                          Page   1 of   1
                                  IP NODE NAMES
    Name              IP Address          Name              IP Address
Denver Gateway1     192.168.1  .200                          .   .   .
procr               192.168.1  .201                          .   .   .
(X of X administered node-names were displayed )
Use 'list node-names' command to see all the administered node-names
Use 'change node-names ip xxx' to change a node-name 'xxx' or add a node-name
```

3. In the **Name** field, type the gateway name; that is, the name of the survivable gatekeeper node that corresponds to the IP address in Step 4.

Note:

Set the name of the media gateway consistently with the **Name** field on the **Media Gateway Administration** form in Communication Manager (**`add media-gateway`**) and with the name used in the **`set system name`** command (gateway CLI).

4. Type the IP address of the gateway in the **IP Address** field.
5. Submit the form.

6. At the SAT, enter **change system-parameters mg-recovery-rule 1** to display the **System Parameters Media Gateway Automatic Recovery Rule** form. For example:

```
change system-parameters mg-recovery-rule 1                    Page   1 of   1
             SYSTEM PARAMETERS MEDIA GATEWAY AUTOMATIC RECOVERY RULE
 Recovery Rule Number: 1
 Rule Name: _______________
 Migrate H.248 MG to primary: immediately
 Minimum time of network stability: 3
 WARNING: The MG shall be migrated at the first possible opportunity. The MG may
be migrated with a number of active calls.  These calls shall have their talk
paths preserved, but no additional processing of features shall be honored. The
user must hang up in order to regain access to all features.



 NOTE: set 'Migrate H.248 MG to primary' to Blank to disable rule.
```

7. Type a description of the rule in the **Rule Name** field.
8. Set the **Migrate H.248 MG to primary** field to **immediately**.

Note:

The **immediately** field value is only one of the four possible choices. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509 for more information on the values for this field.

9. Submit the form.

10. At the SAT, enter **`display media-gateway 1`** to display the **Media Gateway** form. For example:

```
display media-gateway 1
                               MEDIA GATEWAY
         Number: 27                              Registered?  y
           Type: g430                  FW Version/HW Vintage: 29 .17 .0  /0
           Name: g430b                        MGP IP Address: 135.9  .75 .214
      Serial No: 08IS15186439         Controller IP Address: 135.9  .75 .210
   Encrypt Link? y                               MAC Address: 00:07:3b:e4:66:d1
 Network Region: 1          Location: 1           Enable CF? n

                                                  Site Data:
  Recovery Rule: 1

Slot    Module Type             Name                      DSP Type  FW/HW version
 V1:    S8300                   ICC MM                    MP20       15  0
 V2:    MM716                   ANA MM                    MP10       15  0
 V3:    MM712                   DCP MM

 V5:                                                      Expansion Type HW version
 V6:    mm710                   DSI MM                    EM200           0
 V7:
 V8:                                                      Max Survivable IP Ext: 8
 V9:

Command:
F1=Cancel F2=Refresh F3=Submit F4=Clr Fld F5=Help F6=Update F7=Nxt Pg F8=Prv Pg
```

11. Verify the following fields:

 - **Name** field (20 characters maximum) must match the administered name of the gateway (see Step 2 of Configuring the SLS data through the CLI on page 156).
 - **Max Survivable IP Ext** field only appears when the Type field is **G430**. The current maximum product limits enforced by the SLS gateway's firmware module is 150.

 These limits are enforced due to resource considerations in the given gateway.

 Important:

 Since the VoIP resources on the gateway are limited, the **Max Survivable IP Ext** field should not exceed these values.

12. At the SAT, enter **`change station`** ***`extension`*** to display the **Station** form. For example:

```
change station 8003                                        Page   1 of   4
                                    STATION

Extension: 8003                        Lock Messages? n           BCC: 1
     Type: 4620                        Security Code:              TN: 1
     Port: IP                          Coverage Path 1:           COR: 1
     Name:                             Coverage Path 2:           COS: 1
                                       Hunt-to Station:

STATION OPTIONS
              Loss Group: 19          Personalized Ringing Pattern: 1
                                                Message Lamp Ext: 8003
            Speakerphone: 2-way               Mute button enabled? y
        Display Language? English                Expansion Module? n

  Survivable GK Node Name:                         Media Complex Ext:
          Survivable COR: internal                      IP SoftPhone? N
    Survivable Trunk Dest? y
```

13. Verify the following fields:

- **Survivable GK Node Name**. Names the gatekeeper to register with when the gateway unregisters (loses call control) with the main server. The media gateway delivers the gatekeeper list to IP endpoints, allowing them to register and subsequently originate/receive calls from other endpoints in this survivable calling zone. This field must be set equal to the IP Node Name of the media gateway that will support this station in survivable mode.
- **Survivable COR.** Places a restriction level for stations to limit certain users to only certain types of calls:
 - `Emergency`. This station can only be used to place emergency calls which are defined
 - `Internal`. This station can only make intra-switch calls (default)
 - `Local`. This station can only make calls that are defined as **locl**, **op**, **svc**, or **hnpa** on the Survivable ARS Analysis Table
 - `Toll`. This station can place any national toll call which are defined as **fnpa** or **natl** on the Survivable ARS Analysis Table
 - `Unrestricted`. This station can place a call to any number defined in the Survivable ARS Analysis Table. Those strings administered as **deny** are also denied to these users as well.

Figure 13 shows the hierarchical relationship among the calling-restriction categories.

Figure 13: Inherited Class of Restriction (COR) permissions

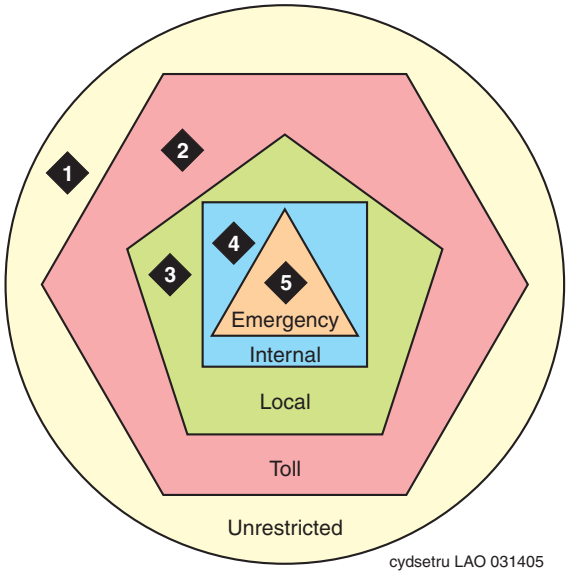


Figure notes:

1. **Unrestricted**: Users can dial any valid routable number, except an ARS pattern specifically administered as **deny** (see Figure 14). ETR functionality and calls through the CO are permitted in this class.
2. **Toll**: Users can only dial these call types:
 - **fnpa** (10-digit NANP call)
 - **natl** (non-NANP call)
3. **Local**: Users can only dial these call types:
 - **locl** (public-network local number call)
 - **op** (operator)
 - **svc** (service)
 - **hnpa** (7-digit NANP call)
4. **Internal**: Users can only dial other stations within the media gateway and the emergency external number (default)
5. **Emergency**: Users can only dial the emergency external number

- **Survivable Trunk Dest?** Enables stations to receive/not receive incoming trunk calls in survivable mode (default is receive). PIM extracts the Communication Manager information, pushes it to the media gateway, and stores it in NVRAM. This feature is an alternative technique for answering central office trunks (analog and digital non-ISDN) by routing directly to a station upon the action of inward trunk seizure. This operates equivalently to analog DID or ISDN trunk calls that have the ability to forward digit information regarding the called party.

14. Submit the form.

Using PIM to manage SLS administration on the gateway

Before enabling SLS, you must gather provisioning data from PIM and deliver it to the G430. Run PIM's Device Profile Wizard to perform this task. The Device Profile Wizard gathers a subset of the Communication Manager translations (dial plan analysis and destination routing instructions) and delivers them to the G430. If PIM is not available, this translation subset (the SLS data set) can be created manually, using the procedure described in Using the CLI to manually configure SLS administration on the gateway on page 141.

PIM must be installed on and launched from the Avaya Network Management Console. For information about PIM, see Accessing PIM on page 46.

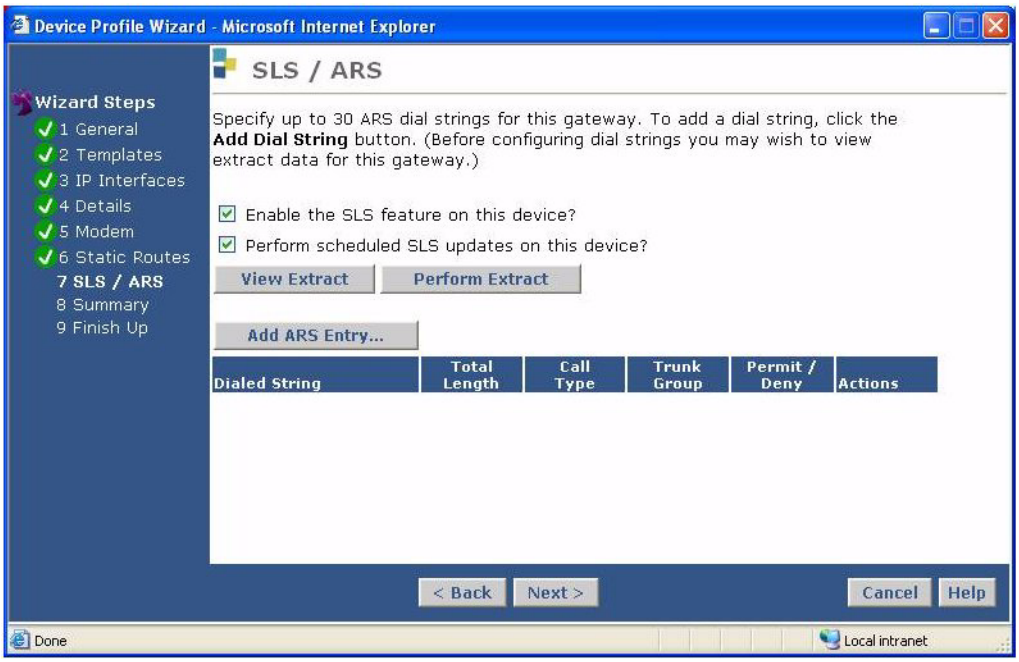
1. Ensure that the Network Management Console (NMC) has discovered the media gateway.
2. Before PIM's automatic scheduled SLS updates will work as expected, set the device parameters for both the server and the gateway in the NMC:
 - **Server**. Communication Manager login and password

 Note:

 The server must be the first listing in NMC's discovery output. If an ESS node is discovered and listed prior to the main server, the main server's login/password will not permit access to the ESS node.

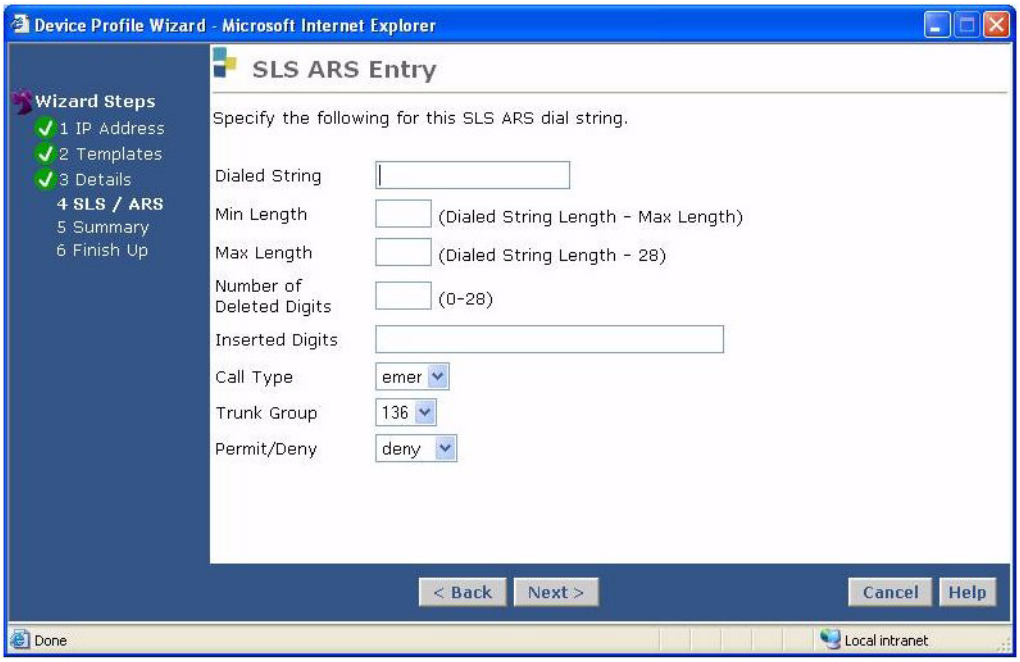
 - **Gateway**. SNMPv1/v3 access parameters
 - **Gateway**. NMC has discovered the gateway's IP address
3. Make sure the Communication Manager has been configured for SLS as described in Configuring Communication Manager for SLS on page 130.
4. Click the **Device Profiles** icon/link in the top-level toolbar of the main PIM window. Alternatively, select **PIM Objects > Device Profiles** from the left panel.
5. Click the **New** icon on the **Device Profile list** page that appears in the right panel of the main PIM window. If this is not a new profile, open the existing profile from the left panel or from the **Device Profile list** page.
6. Proceed through the Device Profile Wizard to the **Details** page. Set the **CM version** field to 4.0.
7. Proceed through the Device Profile Wizard to the **SLS / ARS** page (Figure 14) and perform the following:
 a. Select the **Enable the SLS feature on this device?** checkbox to enable SLS on the G430. A cleared checkbox means that SLS is disabled.
 b. Select the **Perform scheduled SLS updates on this device?** checkbox to send the SLS administration data set to the gateway according to the settings on the **SLS Update Schedule** form (Figure 16).

Figure 14: SLS / ARS page



8. Optionally click the following buttons:
 - **View Extract** displays the current SLS administration data set for this gateway.
 - **Perform Extract** extracts the SLS information from the controlling Communication Manager server for this Media Gateway.
 - **Actions** enables you to edit or delete a previously-administered entry:
 - The paper/pencil icon is the **edit** icon, which opens the **ARS Entry** page (Figure 15).
 - The trash can icon is the **delete** icon, which removes the ARS Entry from the table. The **Add ARS Entry** option may be used to create/edit a maximum of 30 ARS dial pattern entries.
9. If this gateway has not been previously provisioned, click **Add ARS Entry** to open the **ARS Entry** page (Figure 15).

Figure 15: SLS ARS Entry page



10. Use the **SLS ARS Entry** page (Figure 15) to administer an Automatic Route Selection in SLS. Refer to Table 30.

Table 30: SLS ARS Entry page field options

Field	Description
Dialed String	The maximum length of the dialed string is 18 characters. The allowed characters include 0-9, '*' and 'X' or 'x' as a pre-string or mid-string replacement. 'X' cannot be at the end of a dialed string.
Min Length	The minimum length of the user-dialed number that the SLS call engine collects to match to the dialed-string. The default is the length of the specified dialed-string element.
Max Length	The maximum length of the user-dialed number that the SLS call engine collects to match to the dialed-string. The default is the length of the specified dialed-string element.
Number of Deleted Digits	The number of dialed digits to be deleted from the beginning of the dialed string. Default: 0.
Inserted Digits	The digit string to be inserted at the beginning of the dialed string. Default: blank.

1 of 2

Table 30: SLS ARS Entry page field options (continued)

Field	Description
Call Type	Can be one of the following: **emer** (emergency call)* **fnpa** (10-digit NANP call) **hnpa** (7-digit NANP call) **intl** (public-network international number call) **iop** (international operator call) **locl** (public-network local number call) **natl** (non-NANP call) **op** (operator) **svc** (service)
Trunk Group	Trunk-group number (1-2000), which you can select from the drop-down choices of trunk groups found in the SLS extract from the controlling Communication Manager server
Permit / Deny	Indicates whether the call should be permitted or denied

2 of 2

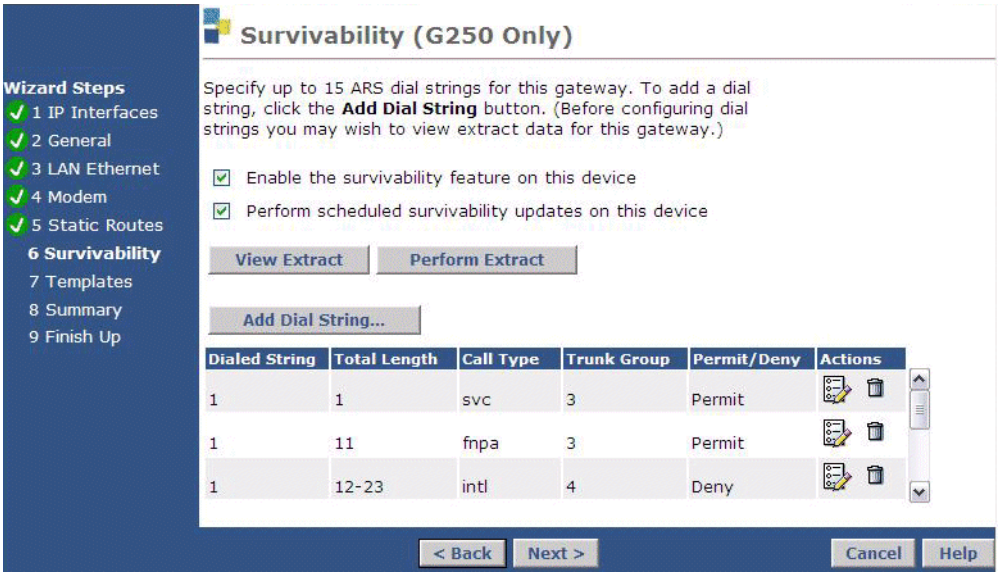
* Any active, in-service station can dial the emergency access number while in survivable mode. Define the emergency access number on the **SLS / ARS** page (Figure 14).

Important:

SLS permits 911 calls, but the specific location information is not transmitted to the Public Service Answering Point (PSAP). Only the general trunk-identifying information is transmitted. Emergency personnel will have a general location associated with the trunk (for example, a building address), but nothing more specific (for example, a room or office number). Also, if a 911 call disconnects for any reason, emergency personnel cannot reliably call the originator back.

11. Use the **SLS Update Schedule** page (Figure 16) to administer up to six SLS updates per day.

Figure 16: SLS Update Schedule page



a. Check the **Enable SLS Updates** box.

b. Set as many as six Daily Updates.

Note:

The Daily Updates must be at least four hours apart.

c. Click **Submit**.

12. Use the **Backup/Restore** page (Figure 17) to backup the PIM database backup schedule.

Figure 17: Backup/Restore page



Note:

Step 12 backs up the PIM database. Avaya encourages users to set a PIM backup schedule/policy independent of the SLS implementation.

Note:

If you require the use of the Incoming Call Handling Treatment option for adding/deleting the incoming dial pattern on incoming trunk calls, this route pattern must be modified using the CLI. There are NO equivalent commands in the PIM wizard screens.

Enabling and disabling SLS

To enable SLS on the G430, enter **`set sls enable`**. The G430 responds with the message `Survivable Call Engine is enabled`.

To disable SLS on the G430, enter **`set sls disable`**. The G430 responds with the message `Survivable Call Engine is disabled`.

Note:

If you enable SLS and then performed additional administration, you must first disable SLS and then re-enable it. This will cause the SLS application to resynchronize its administrative database with the gateway's global CLI command database.

Activating changes in SLS

To activate changes you make in SLS, you must use the disable and enable SLS commands together. Thus, to activate changes in SLS, perform the following steps:

1. Make any changes to SLS administration desired.
2. While still in SLS mode, enter **`set sls disable`**.

 The G430 responds with the message `Survivable Call Engine is disabled`.
3. Enter **`set sls enable`**.

 The G430 responds with the message `Survivable Call Engine is enabled`.

Using the CLI to manually configure SLS administration on the gateway

It is recommended to use PIM to configure the SLS data. However, if PIM is unavailable, you can also configure the SLS data from the G430 itself.

Note:

Care should be taken not to run two SLS data update sessions concurrently. The SLS data can be administered locally via CLI, and centrally via PIM or an SNMP MIB browser. This can cause a situation where one administrator can unknowingly undo the work of the other. For example, if a local administrator enters trunk-group context just before a remote administrator performs an SNMP write operation to change a trunk-group parameter, that parameter will be overwritten with the current CLI values when the local administrator exits the trunk-group context.

Prerequisites

- The Communication Manager Release 4.1 is running on the host server
- PIM or configuration of the G430 through its CLI
- The G430 is registered with Avaya Aura Communication Manager
- The SLS is enabled on the G430 through its CLI
- S8300 is not serving as an LSP
- G430 is not subtending to another external server (including ESS or another LSP in another gateway)

Planning and preparing the SLS data set

It is recommended to plan the SLS coverage and gather information from Avaya Aura Communication Manager before creating the SLS administration data set at the gateway command line. Strategic selection of the stations and trunks that participate in SLS can ensure that vital communications are spared interruptions caused by network outages.

Important:
Since you can administer your system for SLS either from the SAT or from the gateway CLI, the two administration tasks must be synchronized with common data and port usage as well as system-defined capacities. For example, if a physical DCP station port number 10 is not administered on the Communication Manager server, even though the gateway's SLS engine has that port administered, the port is unusable during SLS operation on the gateway. This is because the hardware port configuration on the media modules is initially configured by CM in subtending gateway mode, by using the H.248 control channel to push information down to the gateway.

SLS capacities

The following table lists the SLS capacities:

Table 31: SLS capacities

Gateway model	IP stations	Analog stations	DCP stations	Analog trunks	BRI trunks	DS1 trunks
G430	150	The maximum number of legacy stations/trunks that may be supported is dependent upon the slot-module configuration of what is installed.				

You can collect the Communication Manager data using the CM administrative SAT interface. For instructions on accessing the Avaya Aura Communication Manager through the G430, see Accessing the registered MGC on page 83.

Collecting analog stations data

1. At the SAT, enter **`list media-gateway`** to display a list of administered gateways.

2. Look for supported gateways in the **Type** field.
3. Once you know the media gateway of interest, match the gateway model with the analog station ports:

Table 32: Matching the gateway with the analog station ports

Gateway model	Media module (if applicable)	Slot configuration
G430	MM711 MM714 MM716	

4. At the SAT, enter **`display port`** ***`port-number`***, where ***`port-number`*** is the analog station port on the gateway.

 The system displays the extension number assigned to the port.
5. Once you know the extension, enter **`display station`** ***`extension`*** to display the **Station** form for this extension.
6. Gather the necessary information from Table 33.

Table 33: Analog station form data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Extension	
1	Port	The port address correlates the analog stations that belong to a particular media gateway. If the port ID includes the media gateway number, then it is accepted. A new station slot/port entry must include the "V", as in "V305".
1	Type	Only `2500` is the accepted Type
1	Survivable COR	Class of Restriction while in SLS mode
1	Survivable Trunk Dest	Trunk destination while in SLS mode
2	Switchhook Flash	This field appears when Type is `2500`
1	Name	This is the user's name

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

Collecting DCP stations data

1. At the SAT, enter **`list media-gateway`** to display a list of administered gateways.

2. Look for supported gateways in the **Type** field.
3. Once you know the media gateway of interest, match the gateway model with the digital station ports:

Table 34: Matching the gateway with the digital station ports

Gateway model	Media module (if applicable)	Slot configuration
G430	MM712 MM717	

4. At the SAT, enter **`display port`** ***`port-number`***, where ***`port-number`*** is the DCP station port on the gateway.

 The system displays the extension number assigned to the port.
5. Once you know the extension, enter **`display station`** ***`extension`*** to display the **Station** form for this extension.
6. Gather the necessary information from Table 35.

Table 35: DCP station form data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Extension	
1	Port	The port address correlates the DCP stations that belong to a particular media gateway. If the port ID includes the media gateway number, then it is accepted. A new station slot/port entry must include the "V", as in "V301".
1	Security Code (Optional)	This value is the shared secret between Communication Manager and the media gateway, and is used for the registration of an IP Softphone (RoadWarrior)

1 of 2

Table 35: DCP station form data to assemble for SLS (continued)

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Type	2402 2410 2420 6402 6402D 6408 6408+ 6408D 6408D+ 6416D+ 6424D+ 8403B 8405B 8405B+ 8405D 8405D+ 8410B 8410D 8411B 8411D 8434D
1	Survivable COR	Class of Restriction while in SLS mode
1	Survivable Trunk Dest	Trunk destination while in SLS mode
1	Expansion Module	Determines if optional CA module is connected to this phone model
1	Name	This is the user's name
		2 of 2

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

Collecting IP stations data

1. At the SAT, enter **`list media-gateway`** to display a list of administered gateways.
2. Look for supported gateways in the **Type** field.
3. Enter **`display media-gateway`**.
4. Read the reported IP address for this gateway.

5. Enter **list node-name** and compare the IP address of the media gateway in the list with the IP address of the gateway that you are administering for SLS. When you find a match in the **node-name** form, read the assigned node-name. This will be used to do a pattern match with a field on the **IP Station** form in Step 6.
6. Enter **list station type *type***, where ***type*** is one of the supported IP stations.

 The report lists all IP phones that could have the **Survivable GK Node-Name** administered to the target media gateway. The **Survivable GK Node-Name** uniquely associates an IP phone with a particular media gateway.
7. Once a match is made between the station form's Survivable GK Node-Name and the target gateway's Node-Name, gather the values for the given IP station per Table 36.

Table 36: IP station form data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Extension	
1	Security Code (IP only)	This value is the shared secret between Communication Manager and the media gateway used for the registration of the IP endpoint
1	Type	4601 4602 4602SW 4606 4610SW 4612 4620 4620SW 4621 4622 4624 4625
1	Survivable COR	Class of Restriction while in SLS mode
1	Survivable Trunk Dest	Trunk destination while in SLS mode
1	Expansion Module	Determines if optional CA module is connected to this phone model
1	Name	This is the user's name

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

Collecting trunk groups data

1. At the SAT, enter **`list media-gateway`** to display a list of administered gateways.
2. Look for supported gateways in the **Type** field.
3. At the SAT, enter **`display media gateway`** to view the media modules that are assigned to the various slots. Use Table 50 as a reference to identify how the particular media module has been configured for serving as a trunk port, and then use the various **`list`** commands on CM to look for physical port matches in the various trunk SAT forms in order to discover what translation information is needed.
4. Identify the analog trunk ports. Refer to Table 51.
5. Identify the BRI trunk ports. Refer to Table 52.
6. Identify the digital DS1 trunk ports. Refer to Table 52.
7. Identify the G430 modules and check for provisioned trunk ports.
8. At the SAT, enter **`display port`** ***`portid`***, where ***`portid`*** is the trunks port on the target gateway.

 The system reports the Trunk Group Number/Member Number for this particular port.
9. Once you know the Trunk Group Number, gather trunk-group information according to Table 37.

Table 37: Trunk group data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Group Type	This field specifies the type of trunks associated with this trunk group
1	Outgoing Dial Type	The only acceptable values are `tone` and `rotary`. If the field is set to `automatic` or `mf`, then the value of `tone` is used instead. Note that this does not apply to DS1 PRI links.
1	Trunk Group Number	This value is used in the routing table
1	TAC	This value is only necessary if the **Dial Access?** field is set to `y`. If that field is set to `n`, the TAC value is not pushed down to the media gateway.
4	Port	There may be more than one port within a trunk group definition that pertains to a given media gateway
1	Digit Treatment	This only applies for DID analog trunks or for DS1 tie trunks. Note that this does not apply to DS1 PRI tie trunks.

1 of 3

Table 37: Trunk group data to assemble for SLS (continued)

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Digits	This field contains a value only when the **Digit Treatment** field is set to `insert1`, `insert2`, `insert3`, or `insert4`
1	Trunk Type	Depends on trunk signaling type: • Analog trunks: - Loop-start - Ground-start - DID • In-Band DS1 trunks with CO Group-Type: - Loop-start - Ground-start • In-Band DS1 trunks with Tie Group-Type: - Wink/wink - Wink/immediate - Wink/auto - Immediate/Immediate - Auto/auto - Auto/wink
1	Group Name	Customer identification of trunk group
1	Codeset to Send Display	Describes which Q.931 code-sets are allowed to send Display IEs
1	Codeset to Send National IEs	Describes which Q.931 code-sets are allowed to send National supported IEs
2	Outgoing Channel ID Encoding	Used for encoding Channel ID IE
1	Digit Handling (in/out)	Defines overlap receiving and transmitting rules
2	Network (Japan) Needs Connect Before Disconnect	Sends a CONNECT message before sending a DISCONNECT message, if enabled
2	Send Name	Specifies whether the Group Name is to be specified with the message sent while connecting to the network

2 of 3

Table 37: Trunk group data to assemble for SLS (continued)

Page*	Field Name	Notes
2	Send Calling Number	Specifies whether the Trunk Group Number is to be specified with the message sent while connecting to the network
2	Incoming Calling Number - Format	Specifies how to fill the Calling Party Number and Called Party Number IEs
1	Incoming Destination	Sets a destination station for routing incoming trunk group calls
1	Trunk Hunt	Determines the method in which the survivable-call-engine selects an available trunk from the trunk group pool
6	Sig Grp	Specifies the Signaling Group Number that is the manager of this ISDN trunk member
		3 of 3

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

Collecting DS1 trunks data

1. At the SAT, enter **`display ds1 location`** to display the DS1 administration for a particular circuit pack ***`location`***.
2. Gather DS1 information according to Table 38 for each DS1 facility.

Table 38: DS1 circuit pack data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Name	Descriptive name often of the Service Provider or destination of the DS1 facility
1	Bit-Rate	Selects the maximum transmission rate of the DS1 facility
1	Signaling Mode	Selects the signaling method deployed on the given DS1 facility
1	Channel Numbering	E1 interface for ETSI and QSIG require sequential encoding from 1 to 30 This field appears when **Signaling Mode** = **isdn-pri** **Bit Rate** = **2.048** **Connect** = **pbx**
		1 of 2

Table 38: DS1 circuit pack data to assemble for SLS (continued)

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Connect	Specifies what is connected at the far-end of the DS1 facility
1	Interface	Determines glare handling
1	Side	Specifies QSIG glare handling when the **Interface** field is set to **peerslave**
1	Country Protocol	Specifies the Layer 3 signaling protocol used by the country-specific service provider
1	Protocol Version	Used in countries whose public networks allow multiple Layer 3 signaling protocols for ISDN PRI service
1	DCP/Analog Bearer Capability	Sets the Information Transfer capability in the Bearer Capability IE of the SETUP message
1	Interface Companding	Specifies the companding mode used by the far-end switch
1	ITN-C7 Long Timers	Specifies whether the duration of Q.931 timers (T302 and T302) is to be extended. This is only required for Russian telecom applications or if **Signaling Mode** = **isdn-pri**.
		2 of 2

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

3. Repeat the **`display ds1 location`** command and press **Enter** for each circuit pack that you want to included in the SLS data set.

Collecting signaling groups data

Collect the information from the **Communication Manager Signaling Group** form (Table 39) for ISDN-PRI administration only.

Table 39: ISDN-PRI administration data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Trunk Group for Channel Selection	Trunk group reference number association with trunk group table
1	Associated Signaling	Specifies whether the D-channel is physically associated in the DS1 facility. The ‘enabled’ setting is when there is a D-channel present.
		1 of 2

Table 39: ISDN-PRI administration data to assemble for SLS (continued)

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Primary D-channel	Specifies the gateway port ID where the D-channel is located. For the gateways, the first component is the three digit gateway number, followed by a 'v', the slot number, and 24 (T1) or 16 (E1).
1	Trunk Board	This is needed only if the Associated Signaling is set to **no**. Specifies the gateway port ID where the D-channel is located. For the gateways, the first component is the three digit gateway number, followed by a 'v', and one numeric character for the slot number.
1	Interface Id	This is needed only if the Associated Signaling is set to **no**. Specifies the channel of the DS1 circuit that carries the D-channel for ISDN signaling. This is an integer from **0** through **31**.
		2 of 2

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

Collecting administered ISDN-BRI trunks data

1. At the SAT, enter **`display bri-trunk-board`** ***`location`*** to display the DS1 administration for a particular circuit pack ***`location`***.
2. Gather ISDN-BRI administration information in Table 40 for each ***`location`***.

Table 40: ISDN-BRI administration data to assemble for SLS

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	Name	Descriptive name often of the Service Provider or destination of BRI facility
1	Interface	Determines glare handling
1	Side	QSIG glare handling, when the **interface** field is peerSlave
1	Country Protocol	Specifies the Layer 3 signaling protocol used by the country-specific service provider
1	DCP/Analog Bearer Capability	Sets the Information Transfer capability in the Bearer Capability IE of the SETUP message
2	Companding Mode	Specifies the companding mode used by the far end switch
		1 of 2

Table 40: ISDN-BRI administration data to assemble for SLS (continued)

Page*	Field Name	Notes
1	TEI	LAPD address assignment for the **TEI** field
2	Directory Number A	Channel B1's directory number
2	Directory Number B	Channel B2's directory number
2	SPID-A	Service Profile Identifier required for Country Code (USA)
2	SPID-B	Service Profile Identifier required for Country Code (USA)
2	Endpt Init	Determines whether the far end supports endpoint initialization
1	Layer 1 Stable	Determines whether to expect the network to drop BRI Layer 1 when no calls are active
		2 of 2

* Page numbers might vary for your system.

Collecting Feature Access Codes data

1. At the SAT, enter **`display system-parameters customer-options`** to display the **Customer Options** form.
2. Scroll to page 5 and determine how the **Multinational Locations** or **Multiple Locations** fields are set:
 - If either of these fields is set to **y** (enabled), then proceed to Step 3.
 - If these fields are set to **n** (disabled), at the SAT, enter **`display feature-access-codes`** and gather the FAC information listed in Table 41.
3. Look up the location of the gateway, as follows:
 a. At the SAT, enter **`list media-gateway`** to get the gateway's number.
 b. At the SAT, enter **`display media gateway number`**, where ***number*** is the gateway number you obtained in Step a. This provides you with the **location** field value.
 - If the gateway has an administered location, at the SAT, enter **`display locations number`**, where ***number*** is the administered location number. If there is an ARS entry for the given location, you must use this value exclusively in the SLS data set.
 - If there is no administered location, at the SAT, enter **`display feature-access-codes`** and gather the FAC information listed in Table 41.

Table 41: Feature Access Codes to assemble for SLS

Page	Field Name	Notes
1	Contact Closure Open Code	Used to open a contact closure relay
1	Contact Closure Close Code	Used to close a contact closure relay
1	Contact Closure Pulse Code	Used to pulse a contact closure relay
1	Auto Route Selection (ARS) Access Code1	Specifies the first access code for ARS table routing
1	Auto Route Selection (ARS) Access Code2	Specifies the second access code for ARS table routing
1-16	ARS FAC	This is used instead of the **Features** form ARS FAC entry if the “Loc No.” that correlates to the gateway has an entry in this form, which overrides the general ARS FAC(s)
1	CAS Remote Hold/ Answer Hold-Unhold Access Code	Specifies the dial access code to provision a hold bridge on the call involving this station user. Successive access to this dial code causes the feature to toggle between the Hold and the Unhold states.

Collecting System parameters data

1. At the SAT, enter **`list media-gateway`** to display a list of administered gateways.
2. Look for supported gateways in the **Type** field.
3. Once you have determined the media gateway of interest, note its IP-Network-Region.
4. At the SAT, enter **`display ip-network-region n`**, where ***n*** is the gateway’s administered IP-Network-Region.

 Read the **Codec-set** field value from the **IP Network Region** form.
5. At the SAT, enter **`display ip-codec-set n`**, where ***n*** is the **Codec-set** field value from the **IP Network Region** form.

 The report lists the supported codes in the **Audio Codec** field (summarized in Table 42).

Note:

SLS only supports G.711 mu/A-law.

6. At the SAT, enter **`display system-parameters features`** to display the **Feature Related System Parameters** form.
7. Scroll to page 10 and read the value of the **Date Format on Terminals** field (summarized in Table 42).

8. At the SAT, enter **display media-gateway *n***, where ***n*** is the administered number of the media gateway of interest, to display the **Media Gateway** form.
9. Read the **Max Survivable IP Ext** field value (summarized in Table 42).

Table 42: General system parameters data to assemble for SLS

CM Form	Page	Field Name	Notes
Ip-codec-set	All	All fields	There can be up to 7 distinct codec-sets in use in the system. However, only one codec set is active for the network region in which the gateway is located. SLS only supports two codecs: • G.711 A-law • G.711 U-law
System-parameter features	10	Date Format on Terminals	Applies to 64xx and 24xx DCP terminals, and to 46xx IP terminals
Media Gateway	1	Max Survivable IP Ext	Maximum IP phone registrations allowed

Collecting ARS dial patterns data

To gather the route patterns and ARS analysis in Communication Manager, you must first know which trunk groups are assigned to the gateway of interest. After verifying this information, perform the following steps:

1. At the SAT, enter **list route-pattern *trunk-group n***, where ***n*** is an administered trunk group, to display the administered route pattern(s).
2. For the first preference for this route-pattern entry, read the values of the following fields (described in Table 43):
 - **No Deleted Digits**
 - **Inserted Digits**
3. At the SAT, enter **list ars analysis** to search the ARS Analysis table for row entries whose **Route Pattern** field matches the route-pattern value(s) that were obtained in Step 1. Once you discover a match with **Route Pattern**, use the entries from this row in the ARS Analysis table to complete the following three entries for the SLS Dial-Pattern table (see Table 43):
 - **Min**
 - **Max**

- **Dialed String**

Table 43: ARS Dial Patterns for SLS

CM Form	Page	Field Name	Notes
Route-Pattern	1	No. Del Digits	Specifies the number of dialed digits to be deleted from the beginning of the dialed string. The default is 0.
Route-Pattern	1	Inserted Digits	Specifies the digit string to be inserted at the beginning of the dialed string. The default is blank.
ARS Analysis	1	Dialed String	Dial string entry that is used to match a pattern within the user-dialed number
ARS Analysis	1	Min	Minimum length of the user-dialed number that the SLS call engine collects to match to the dialed-string. The default is the length of the specified dialed-string element.
ARS Analysis	1	Max	Maximum length of the user-dialed number that the SLS call engine collects to match to the dialed-string. The default is the length of the dialed-string element.

Collecting Incoming Call Handling data

To gather the Incoming Call Handling Treatment and ARS Digit Conversion information in Communication Manager, you must first know which trunk groups are assigned to the gateway of interest. After verifying this information, perform the following steps:

1. At the SAT, enter **`display inc-call-handling-trmt trunk-group n`**, where ***n*** is an administered trunk group.
2. For each entry, read the values of the following fields (see Table 44):
 - **Called Number**
 - **Called Length**
 - **Del**
 - **Insert**

Table 44: Incoming call handling data to gather for SLS

CM Form	Page	Field Name	Notes
Incoming Call Handling Treatment	1	Called Number	Dial string entry that is used to match a pattern on inbound trunk calls
Incoming Call Handling Treatment	1	Called Len	Maximum length of the user-dialed number that the SLS call engine collects to match to the dialed string. The default is that the minimum length is defined to be equal to the length of the dialed string.
Incoming Call Handling Treatment	1	Del	Specifies the number of dialed digits to be deleted from the beginning of the string. The default is 0.
Incoming Call Handling Treatment	1	Insert	Specifies the digit string to be inserted at the beginning of the dialed string. The default is blank.
Trunk Group	1	Digit Handling (In/Out)	Defines the overlap receiving rules. Needed to set the **mode** field in the IncomingRouting table. The default is enbloc.

Configuring the SLS data through the CLI

The command line interface (CLI) has a root-level context of `sls` for administering the SLS data set. After you enter **`sls`** at the CLI prompt, the prompt changes to indicate that you are in the `sls` context. Once in this context, seven additional sub-contexts provide for station and trunk administration, minimizing the need to type in a long command string:

- `station` context that is invoked by entering **`station`** ***`extension class`*** to enter a second-level sub-context for administering stations
- `trunk-group` context that is invoked by entering **`trunk-group`** ***`tgnum group-type`*** to enter the second-level sub-context for administering trunk groups
- `ds1` context that is invoked by entering **`ds1`** ***`port-address`*** to enter the second-level sub-context for administering DS1 trunks
- `sig-group` context that is invoked by entering **`sig-group`** ***`sgnum`*** to enter the second-level sub-context for administering signaling groups

- `bri` context that is invoked by entering **bri *port-address*** to enter the second-level sub-context for administering ISDN BRI links
- `dial-pattern` context that is invoked by entering **dial-pattern *dialed-string*** to enter the second-level sub-context for administering dial pattern strings
- `incoming-routing` context that is invoked by entering **incoming-routing *tgnum mode pattern length*** to enter the second-level sub-context for administering incoming routing

Enter **exit** to leave the second-level sub-contexts and return to the `(super-sls)#` context. See Table 53 for a complete hierarchical listing of all SLS CLI commands.

Note:

Review Table 53 in its entirety before proceeding with SLS administration. This summary of SLS commands guides you in understanding the various sub-commands of each sub-context.

Creating the SLS administration data set on the media gateway

1. Log on to the gateway.
2. To administer the name, enter **set system name *name***, where ***name*** is typed inside quotation marks (""). To remove the administered name, enter **set system name**, and then rename the gateway using the **set system name** command.

 Note:

 The gateway's administered name must match the name in the Communication Manager administration.

3. At the gateway command prompt, enter **sls** to begin entering SLS data.

 The command line prompt changes to (`super-sls)#` to indicate that you are in SLS data entry mode. Entering **exit** ends the SLS data entry mode session, and the command line prompt returns to its original state.

4. Enter **set pim-lockout yes** to prevent Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) updates while you are working on SLS administration of the gateway.
5. If you want to change the maximum allowable IP registrations from the default, enter **set max-ip-registrations *n***, where ***n*** is from `1` to `150`.
6. Use the **set date-format** command to set a date format for the SLS data set.
7. Use the **set ip-codec-set** command to select the country-specific G.711 codec set within the SLS data set: `g.711mu` or `g.711a`.

8. Administer the slot configuration information by entering **`set slot-config`** ***`slot-number board-type`***, where ***`slot-number`*** is the slot where the Media Module is located and ***`board-type`*** is the Media Module type (see Table 45).

Table 45: Media Modules supporting SLS for the G430

Media Module	Description	Permitted Slots
MM710	One T1/E1 trunk port	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM711	Eight universal analog ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM712	Eight DCP telephone ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM714	Four analog trunk ports and four analog station ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM714B	Four analog trunk ports, four analog station ports, and an emergency transfer relay	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM716	24 analog telephone/DID trunk ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM717	24 high-density DCP telephone ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM720	Eight BRI trunk ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8
MM722	Two BRI trunk ports	v1, v2, v3, v5, v6, v7, v8

9. Administer the station information. Refer to Administering Station parameters on page 160.
10. Administer DS1 trunks as required. Refer to Administering DS1 parameters on page 163.
11. Administer BRI links as required. Refer to Administering BRI parameters on page 168.
12. Administer the trunk groups. Refer to Administering trunk-group parameters on page 170. Note that you can add members to the trunk group only after you administer the signaling group information.
13. Administer the signaling groups. Refer to Administering signaling-group parameters on page 177.
14. Administer ARS dial patterns for outgoing calls. Refer to Administering dial-pattern parameters on page 178.
15. Administer digit treatment for incoming routed calls. Refer to Administering incoming-routing parameters on page 180.

16. Optionally administer the attendant feature for the purpose of call routing by entering **set attendant *access-code extension***, where ***access-code*** specifies the dial access code for the attendant feature, and ***extension*** specifies the station which serves as the branch office attendant position. Incoming trunk calls that have dialed strings that cannot be completely routed, will now be routed by SLS to this attendant position. In addition, stations in the branch office may directly dial the attendant using the ***access-code***.
17. Administer the Feature Access Codes (FACs) by entering **set fac *feature fac***, where ***feature*** is one of the following:
 - ars1
 - ars2
 - hold
 - contact-open
 - contact-close
 - contact-pulse

 and ***fac*** is a 1-4 digit string that includes the digits 0 through 9 (excluding * and # for analog rotary phones). The ***fac*** string must be unique and must not conflict with station extension numbers and Trunk Access Codes (TACs).

 Examples

 - **set fac *ars2 *9***
 - **set fac *contact-close 8***

 Note:

 The "*" and "#" characters are not available on rotary-dial, analog phones.
18. Enter **set pim-lockout no** to allow Provisioning and Installation Manager (PIM) updates, since you finished SLS administration of the gateway.
19. At the gateway command prompt, enter **exit** to leave the sls context.

 The gateway command prompt reverts to that of the original login.
20. After all of the SLS features are administered, at the gateway command prompt enter **set sls enable** to enable SLS on the gateway.

 Note:

 If you enabled SLS and then entered additional administration, you must first disable SLS by entering **set sls disable**, and then re-enable it by entering **set sls enable**. This will cause the SLS application to resynchronize its administrative database with the gateway's CLI command database.
21. At the gateway command prompt, enter **copy running-config startup-config** to save the changes.

Administering Station parameters

1. At the gateway command prompt, enter **station *extension class*** to enter a second-level sub-context to administer each phone that you want covered by SLS. In this command, ***extension*** is a 1-13 digit numeric string that may begin with `0`, and ***class*** is `analog`, `dcp`, or `ip`.

 The command line prompt changes to `sls-station <extension>` to indicate that you are in the `station` context for SLS administration. Entering **exit** ends the station configuration mode, and the command line prompt returns to its original state. If you want to remove the station from the SLS administration, enter **clear station *extension*** at the command line interface. Enter **exit** to leave the second-level `station` context to return to the `(super-sls)#` context.

 Example

 - **station *1234567 ip*** administers an IP phone with the extension "1234567".

2. Depending on the class (`analog`, `dcp`, or `ip`, set in Step 1), enter **set type *model***, where ***model*** is a value from Table 46.

Table 46: Class values in SLS station context

analog	dcp	ip
analog2500*	dcp2402	ip4601
	dcp2410	ip4602
	dcp2420	ip4602sw
	dcp6402	ip4610sw
	dcp6402D	ip4612
	dcp6408	ip4620
	dcp6408+	ip4620sw (default)
	dcp6408D (default)	ip4621
	dcp6408D+	ip4622
	dcp6416D+	ip4624
	dcp6424D+	ip4625
	dcp8403B	
	dcp8405B	
	dcp8405B+	

1 of 2

Table 46: Class values in SLS station context (continued)

analog	dcp	ip
	dcp8405D	
	dcp8405D+	
	dcp8410B	
	dcp8410D	
	dcp8434D	
		2 of 2

* Since there is just one entry, the ***model*** is optional; **analog2500** is the default value.

Example

- **`set type ip4620`** sets the previously-administered extension "1234567" as an Avaya 4620 IP phone.

3. For `analog` and `dcp` classes only (set in Step 1), enter **`set port`** ***`module-port`*** for this station, where ***`module-port`*** is a value in Table 47.

Note:

This command is only required for stations that support physical media module ports.
If the class is `ip` (set in Step 1), you cannot run this command.

Table 47: Module-port values in SLS station configuration mode

Gateway	Media module	Analog station ports*	DCP
G430	MM711	8 possible ports	
	MM712		8 possible ports
	MM714	4 possible ports (ports 1-4)	
	MM714B	4 possible ports (ports 1-4)	
	MM716	24 possible ports	
	MM717		24 possible ports

* You cannot select these modules/ports if they are already assigned as DID trunks.

Examples

- If an MM711 is inserted into slot V3 and an analog station is to be administered for port #5, then **set port *v305*** sets the previously-administered analog station "1234567" to the fifth physical analog station port on the gateway's media module.
- If an MM712 is inserted into slot V2 and a DCP station is to be administered for port #1, then **set port *v201*** sets the previously-administered dcp station "1234567" to the first physical DCP station port on the gateway's media module.

4. Enter **set cor *cor*** to set the class of restriction (COR) for this extension, where ***cor*** is one of the following:

 - `emergency`
 - `internal` (default)
 - `local`
 - `toll`
 - `unrestricted`

 There exists a hierarchical relationship among the calling-restriction categories. As you move from the most restricted COR (`emergency`) to the least restricted (`unrestricted`), each level increases the range of dialing abilities. For example, `toll` includes the dialing privileges of `local`, `internal`, and `emergency`. See Figure 13 for the hierarchical relationship among the COR permissions.

 Example

 - **set cor *unrestricted*** gives a station unrestricted dialing.

5. If this station is administered to be included into a pool of stations that are allowed to receive incoming analog loop-start trunk calls, enter **set trunk-destination yes**.
6. If this is an IP phone (set in Step 1), enter **set password *password***, where ***password*** is from four to eight digits in length, to administer a password. The phone will automatically register to the gateway upon failure if the password and the extension number are the same as those administered in the CM.

 Note:

 Passwords are not required for analog or DCP phones unless an IP Softphone is using the administrative identity of a DCP phone, in which case the password is required.

 Example

 - **set password *53136*** establishes the password "53136" on a previously-administered IP phone.
7. To enable DCP or IP phones (set in Step 1) to have an expansion module, enter **set expansion-module yes**.
8. For analog phones (set in Step 1) that you want SLS to recognize the switchhook flash signal (which offers subsequent transfer features), enter **set swhook-flash yes**.
9. Enter **set name *name*** to identify the user name for the station. Use the 1-27 character name as specified on the **Communication Manager** form. Type the name string inside double quotes.
10. Enter **show** to check the station administration of the station being programmed.

 The report lists the station parameters. For example:

```
Extension   Type     Port   Cor   Trunk-Des   Exp-Mod     Flash     Password
---------   ----     ----   ----- ---------   -------     -------   --------
49139       ip4620   IPaddr local y           n           -         ********
            ip station registered at address 'aaa.bbb.ccc.ddd'
```

 Note:

 For currently-registered IP phones or IP Softphones, the IP address is displayed.
11. Enter **exit** to leave the `station` context in SLS.

Administering DS1 parameters

1. Enter **ds1 *slot-address***, where ***slot-address*** is any permitted port.

 The command line prompt changes to `super-sls/ds1-<port-address>`. If you want to remove the ds1 trunk from the SLS administration, enter **exit** to leave the second-level `ds1` context and return to the `(super-sls)#` context, and then enter **clear ds1 *slot-address***.

Note:

If configuration changes affecting trunk provisioning (such as, signaling and bit-rate) are made to a DS1 trunk where the trunk and its associated signaling group have already been provisioned, an error message instructs you that the "Administrative change is in violation with existing trunk member provisioning", and the configuration change is rejected.

2. Enter **set name *name*** to identify the user name for the DS1 trunk. Use the 1-27 character name as specified on the **Communication Manager** form (**add trunk-group *n***). Type the name string inside double quotes.
3. Enter **set bit-rate *rate*** to set the maximum transmission rate in Mbps for the DS1 facility. The rate can be either `1544` (T1) or `2048` (E1).
4. Enter **set signaling-mode *mode-type*** to set the signaling mode for the DS1 facility, where ***mode-type*** is one of the following values:
 - `cas`. Out-of-band signaling for E1 service, yielding thirty 64 kbps B-channels for voice transmission
 - `robbed bit`. In-band signaling for T1 service, yielding twenty-four 56 kbps B-channels for voice transmission
 - `isdnpri`. T1 or E1 ISDN Primary Rate service (supports both FAS and NFAS)
 - `isdnext`. NFAS T1 or E1 ISDN service for:
 - T1 facility, in which all 24 channels are for bearer transport
 - E1 facility, in which all 31 channels are for bearer transport
5. Enter **set channel-numbering *method*** to select the channel-numbering method for B-channels on an E1 interface, where ***method*** is one of the following values:
 - `seq`. Sequential codes of B-channels 1-30 in the ISDN Channel Identification IE
 - `tslot`. Timeslot method
6. Enter **set connect *far-end*** to specify the equipment at the far-end of the DS1 link, where ***far-end*** is one of the following values:
 - `host`. Data application (computer or server)
 - `lineside`. Terminal equipment (video multiplexer)
 - `network`. Central office
 - `pbx`. Private communication system (another pbx)
7. If the far-end equipment is specified as ***pbx*** (set in Step 6), enter **set interface *glare-mode*** to specify the glare-handling convention, where ***glare-mode*** can be one of the following values:
 - For non-QSIG calls:
 - `network`. If the gateway is connected to a host computer and encounters glare, it overrides the far-end

- `user`. If the gateway is connected to a public network and encounters glare, it releases the circuit

- For QSIG calls:
 - `peerMaster`. SLS overrides the other end when glare occurs
 - `peerSlave`. SLS releases the circuit when glare occurs

8. If the DS1 link is employed with ISDN, and the glare-handling convention is specified as ***peerMaster*** or ***peerSlave*** for the ISDN link (set in Step 7), enter **set side *side*** to specify the glare mode: either `a` or `b`.
9. If the DS1 link is employed with ISDN, enter **set country-protocol *country-code*** to specify the ISDN Layer 3 country protocol type, where ***country-code*** is one of the values in Table 48:

Table 48: ISDN Layer 3 country codes

Country Code	Country
1	United States (AT&T mode, also known as 5ESS)
2	Australia (Australia National PRI)
3	Japan
4	Italy
5	Netherlands
6	Singapore
7	Mexico
8	Belgium
9	Saudi Arabia
10	United Kingdom (ETSI)
11	Spain
12	France (ETSI)
13	Germany (ETSI)
14	Czech Republic
15	Russia
16	Argentina

1 of 2

Table 48: ISDN Layer 3 country codes (continued)

Country Code	Country
17	Greece
18	China
19	Hong Kong
20	Thailand
21	Macedonia
22	Poland
23	Brazil
24	Nordic countries
25	South Africa
etsi	ETSI (no use of RESTART message)
qsig	QSIG
	2 of 2

10. For countries whose public networks allow for multiple ISDN Layer 3 country protocols for ISDN Primary Rate service, enter **`set protocol-version option`** to specify the mode (see Table 49). Verify that the protocol version matches the country specified in **`set country-protocol`** (set in Step 9).

Table 49: ISDN Layer 3 country protocols for ISDN Primary Rate service

Country code	Description	Possible Values
Country 1 (United States)	AT&T mode (also known as 5ESS)	a
	National ISDN-1	b
	Nortel mode (also known as DMS)	c
	Telecordia (NI-2)	d
Country 2 (Australia)	Australia National PRI	a
	ETSI	b
	invalid	c
	invalid	d
		1 of 2

Table 49: ISDN Layer 3 country protocols for ISDN Primary Rate service (continued)

Country code	Description	Possible Values
Country 10 (United Kingdom)	DASS	a
	ETSI	b
	invalid	c
	invalid	d
Country 12 (France)	French National PRI	a
	ETSI	b
	invalid	c
	invalid	d
Country 13 (Germany)	German National PRI	a
	ETSI	b
	invalid	c
	invalid	d
ETSI	Full message set, including RESTART	a
	No RESTART message	b
	invalid	c
	invalid	d

2 of 2

11. If the DS1 link is employed with ISDN, enter **`set bearer-capability`** ***`bearer`*** to set the **Information Transfer Rate** field of the Bearer Capability IE, where ***`bearer`*** is one of the following values:
 - `3khz`. 3.1 kHz audio encoding
 - `speech`. Speech encoding
12. Enter **`set interface-companding`** ***`type`*** to set the interface to agree with the companding method used by the far-end of the DS1 circuit for SLS mode, where ***`type`*** is one of the following values:
 - `alaw`. A-law companding
 - `ulaw`. U-law companding
13. Enter **`set long-timer yes | no`** to increase the duration of the T303 (call establishment) timer, where:
 - `yes`. The T303 timer is extended from 4 seconds to 13 seconds
 - `no`. The T303 timer remains at 4 seconds

14. Enter **show** to check the DS1 administration.

 The report lists the DS1 parameters. For example:

```
     Name = 'Willow Steet 2'
DS1  Rate Signaling Channel Connect Interface Side Protocol Ver Bearer Cmpd Ltm
---- ---- --------- ------- ------- --------- ---- -------- --- ------ ---- ---
  v3 1544   isdnpri     seq network      user    a country1   a speech ulaw  no
```

15. Enter **exit** to leave the ds1 context in SLS.

Administering BRI parameters

1. Enter **bri *slot-address***, where ***slot-address*** is any permitted port.

 The command line prompt changes to sls-bri <slot-address>. If you want to remove the BRI link from the SLS administration, enter **exit** to leave the second-level bri context and return to the (super-sls)# context, and then enter **clear bri *slot-address***.

2. Enter **set name *name*** to identify the user name for the DS1 trunk. Use the 1-27 character name, as specified on the **Communication Manager** form (**add trunk-group *n***). Type the name string inside double quotes.

3. Enter **set interface *glare-mode*** to specify the glare-handling convention. ***glare-mode*** can be one of the following values:

 - For non-QSIG calls:
 - network. If the gateway is connected to a host computer and encounters glare, it overrides the far-end
 - user. If the gateway is connected to a public network and encounters glare, it releases the circuit
 - For QSIG calls:
 - peerMaster. SLS overrides the other end when glare occurs
 - peerSlave. SLS releases the circuit when glare occurs

4. If the BRI link is employed with ISDN, and the glare-handling convention is specified as ***peerMaster*** or ***peerSlave*** for the ISDN link (set in Step 3), enter **set side *side*** to specify the glare mode: either a or b.

5. If the BRI link is employed with ISDN, enter **set country-protocol *country-code*** to specify the ISDN Layer 3 country protocol type, where ***country-code*** is any the values listed in Table 48.

6. If the BRI link is employed with ISDN, enter **set bearer-capability *bearer*** to set the **Information Transfer Rate** field of the Bearer Capability IE, where ***bearer*** is one of the following values:

 - 3khz. 3.1 kHz audio encoding

- speech. Speech encoding

7. Enter **set interface-companding *type*** to set the far-end companding method, where ***type*** is one of the following values:
 - alaw. A-law companding
 - ulaw. U-law companding
8. If the BRI link is employed with ISDN, enter **set tei-assignment *tei*** to select the method by which the Layer 2 (LAPD) protocol obtains its Terminal Endpoint Identification (TEI) address. ***tei*** is one of the following values:
 - auto. TEI is assigned by the network provider
 - zero. TEI is fixed administratively
9. Enter **set directory-number-a *number*** to assign a directory number to the B1 channel of the BRI link. ***number*** is the provisioned number received from the network provider. The ***number*** value must be identical to the number the network provider has assigned to the circuit.
10. Enter **set directory-number-b *number*** to assign a directory number to the B2 channel of the BRI link. ***number*** is the provisioned number received from the network provider. The ***number*** value must be identical to the number the network provider has assigned to the circuit.
11. Enter **set spid-a *number*** to assign an SPID to the B1 channel of the BRI link.
12. Enter **set spid-b *number*** to assign an SPID to the B2 channel of the BRI link.

Note:

All BRI links must have SPIDs properly configured for the link to function. SPIDs are received from the network service provider.

13. If the BRI link is employed with ISDN, enter **set-endpoint-init {yes | no}** to determine whether or not the far-end supports endpoint initialization.
14. If the BRI link is employed with ISDN, enter **set layer1-stable {yes | no}** to determine whether or not to keep the physical layer active (stable) between calls. Some European countries require that the physical layer is deactivated when there is no active call.
15. Enter **show** to check the BRI administration.

 The report lists the BRI parameters. For example:

```
Name = BRI-SLS1
BRI   Interface    Side   Country   Bearer   Compand   Endpt-Init   Layer1-Stable
---   ---------    ----   --------  ------   -------   ----------   -------------
v301       user       a   country1  speech      ulaw          yes             yes

Dir-NumberA Dir-NumberB Spid-A          Spid-B
----------- ----------- --------------- --------------
 3033234567  3033234568 30332345671111 30332345681111
```

16. Enter **exit** to leave the bri context in SLS.

Administering trunk-group parameters

1. Enter **trunk-group *tgnum group-type***, where ***tgnum*** is any number from 1 to 2000 and ***group-type*** can be one of the following:
 - loop-start (analog)
 - did (analog)
 - ground-start (analog)
 - bri (ISDN basic rate)
 - t1-isdn (ISDN primary rate on 1.544 Mbps facility)
 - e1-isdn (ISDN primary rate on 2.048 Mbps facility)
 - t1-inband (non-ISDN rate on 1.544 Mbps facility)
 - e1-inband (non-ISDN rate on 2.048 Mbps facility)

 The command line prompt changes to super-sls/trunk-group-<tgnum>. If you want to remove the trunk group from the SLS administration, enter **exit** to leave the second-level trunk-group context and return to the (super-sls)# context, and then enter **clear trunk-group *tgnum***.

 You can create a trunk group that does not have any assigned members. Once a valid port is assigned as a trunk group member, this trunk group then becomes active and may be employed by SLS call processing for incoming/outgoing trunk operation. The slot-configuration table is used, together with the port capacity for the given module, to determine the validity of a port assignment at administration time.

 As a result, there may not be more active trunk groups than there are physical trunk members within a given gateway. In addition, a combo-port may only be used for one active assignment. For example, the analog station/DID trunk ports may be either allocated to serve as an analog station or as an analog DID trunk, but not both.

The maximum limits for a given trunk type are defined by the slot-configuration assignment for the G430. The maximum number of ports allowed per interface module is defined in Table 50.

Table 50: G430 SLS group type assignments

Group type	Media module	Number of ports/channels	Description of trunks that may be assigned
loop-start ground-start did	MM711	8	Ports 1-8
loop-start ground-start	MM714 or MM714B	4	Ports 5, 6, 7, 8
did	MM714or MM714B	4	Ports 1, 2, 3, 4
did	MM716	24	Ports 1-24
bri	MM720	16	Eight physical ports, each offering B1 and B2 channels
bri	MM722	4	Two physical ports, each offering B1 and B2 channels
t1-isdn	MM710	23	D-channel is associated with this facility (FAS)
t1-isdn	MM710	24	D-channel is not associated with this facility (NFAS), and the DS1's signaling-mode is set to **isdnext**
e1-isdn	MM710	30	D-channel is associated with this facility (FAS)
e1-isdn	MM710	31	D-channel is not associated with this facility (NFAS), and the DS1's signaling-mode is set to **isdnext**
t1-inband	MM710	24	T1 Robbed-bit signaling application
e1-inband	MM710	30	E1 CAS signaling application

Example

- **`trunk-group 1 loop-start`** establishes an analog loop-start trunk group number 1.

2. Enter **`set dial dial-type`**, where ***`dial-type`*** is either `rotary` or `dtmf`.

Example

- **set dial *dtmf*** establishes that the trunk group uses DTMF signaling.

3. Enter **set tac *tac***, where ***tac*** is a 1-4 digit numeric value (plus initial # and * on all but rotary dial phones) for this trunk's access code (TAC). The TAC value must be unique among all trunk groups, extension numbers, and ARS Feature Access Code (FAC) strings.

 Example

 - **set tac *88*** establishes access to this trunk group by dialing "88".

4. Enter **add port *module port sig-group*** to specify the G430 port or media module port that is compatible with the device and/or media module (see Table 51 for G430 analog trunks, and Table 52 for G430 digital trunks).
 The ***sig-group*** argument is necessary for a digital ISDN-PRI trunk. It is an integer number from 1 to 650 that specifies the signaling group associated with the management of this trunk member.

Note:

You must administer the signaling group and DS1 information before you can add any ports to the trunk group.

Note:

You can assign the following maximum number of members to a trunk group:

- **G430 analog trunks** = 255 members
- **G430 digital trunks** = 255 members

Table 51: Media Module-port values in SLS trunk-group context for the G430 (Analog Trunks)

Group Type	Media Module	Number of Ports/Channels	Description
loop-start did ground-start	MM711	8	ports 1-8
loop-start ground-start	MM714 or MM714B	4	ports 5,6,7,8
did	MM714 or MM714B	4	ports 1,2,3,4
did	MM716	24	ports 1-24

Table 52: Trunk port values in SLS trunk-group context for the G430 (Digital Trunks)

Group Type	Media Module	Maximum Ports/Channels
bri	MM720	16
bri	MM722	4
t1-isdn	MM710	23 (FAS) 24 (NFAS)
e1-isdn	MM710	30 (FAS) 31 (NFAS)
t1-inband	MM710	24
e1-inband	MM710	30

Example

- If an MM711 is inserted into slot V3 and an analog loop-start trunk is to be administered for port 4, then **`add port V304`** administers an analog loop-start trunk through port V304.

Example

- If an MM722 is inserted into slot V2 and an ISDN BRI trunk is to be administered for port 1, then **`add port v201`** adds a BRI trunk for the first physical port of the gateway's media module to a trunk group using one B-channel of the BRI link.

Note:

You cannot mix BRI and PRI trunks within the same trunk group. If you attempt to assign more than the maximum number of trunks to a trunk group, an error message instructs you to delete a trunk member before adding a new trunk. A physical trunk can be a member of only one trunk group.

5. For an analog DID trunk group, enter **`set supervision`** ***`sup-type`*** to set the incoming signaling supervision mode. ***`sup-type`*** can be either `immediate` or `wink`.

 Example

 - **`set supervision`** ***`wink`*** assigns wink-start incoming signaling supervision to a DID trunk group

6. For a non-ISDN digital trunk (t1-inband or e1-inband), enter **`set supervision`** ***`sup-type`*** to set the incoming signaling supervision mode, where ***`sup-type`*** can be one of the following:

 - `loop-start`

- ground-start
- wink-wink
- wink-immediate
- wink-auto
- immediate-immediate
- auto-auto
- auto-wink

7. For an analog DID trunk group or DS1 non-ISDN tie trunk group, enter **set digit-treatment *digit-treat***, where ***digit-treat*** can be one of the following values:
 - blank (use this value to prevent any absorb or insert digit treatment from being applied)
 - absorb1
 - absorb2
 - absorb3
 - absorb4
 - absorb5
 - insert1
 - insert2
 - insert3
 - insert4

 Examples

 - **set digit-treatment *absorb1*** removes the first digit from the incoming DID trunk
 - **set digit-treatment *blank*** removes any digit treatment from the trunk group
8. For analog DID trunk groups or DS1 tie trunk groups, enter **set digits *digits*** to define the inserted digit string, where ***digits*** is the number of digits.

 Note:

 The number of digits must comply with the ***digit-treat*** parameter in the **set digit-treatment** command. If the digit-treat parameter is ***insert3***, then the digits parameter for this command must be three digits in length.
9. Enter **set name *name*** to identify the user name for the trunk group. Use the 1-27 character name as specified on the **Communication Manager** form (**add trunk-group *n***). Type the name string inside double quotes.

10. For ISDN trunks, enter **set codeset-display *codeset*** to identify which Q.931 codesets are allowed to send display information to the user phone: codeset0, codeset6, or codeset7.
11. For ISDN trunks, enter **set codeset-national *codeset*** to identify which Q.931 codesets are allowed to send National Information Elements (IEs, or display information) to the user phone: codeset6 or codeset7.
12. For ISDN trunks, enter **set channel-preference *type*** to define how the **Channel Identification IE** field is encoded, where ***type*** can be one of the following:
 - **exclusive**. The central office must have the ability to grant a call on this channel or reject the call attempt
 - **preferred**. The central office might offer the call request on another available channel
13. For ISDN trunks, enter **set digit-handling *method*** to define the order of reception/transmission to be considered with the flow of inbound/outbound:
 - enbloc-enbloc
 - enbloc-overlap
 - overlap-enbloc
 - overlap-overlap

 Enbloc requires sending the entire collected digit string in one block. Overlap sends the digits one at a time as they are collected.
14. For ISDN trunks, enter **set japan-disconnect *yes* | *no*** to specify whether to perform a disconnect sequence (CONNECT message followed by a DISCONNECT message).
15. For ISDN trunks, enter **set send-name *method*** to define whether or not the calling, connected, called, or busy party's administered name is sent to the network on outgoing or incoming calls. ***method*** can be one of the following:
 - no. The name is not sent to the network for incoming or outgoing calls
 - yes. The name is sent to the network for incoming or outgoing calls
 - restricted. The name is sent to the network as "Presentation restricted"

 Note:

 For this release, specify ***method*** as **no**, since sending a Calling Party Name is a future feature.
16. For ISDN trunks, enter **set send-number *method*** to define whether or not the calling, connected, called, or busy party's administered number is sent to the network on outgoing or incoming calls. ***method*** can be one of the following:
 - no. The number is not sent to the network for incoming or outgoing calls
 - yes. The number is sent to the network for incoming or outgoing calls

- `restricted`. The number is sent to the network as ”Presentation restricted”

Note:

For this release, specify ***method*** as **no**, since sending a Calling Party Number is a future feature.

17. For ISDN trunks, enter **set numbering-format *type*** to specify the numbering plan for this trunk in Standard Local Survivability (SLS). The numbering plan encodes the **Numbering Plan Indicator** and **Type of Number** fields in the Calling/Connected Party Number IE in the ISDN protocol. ***type*** can be one of the following:

 - `unknown`. Both the Numbering Plan Indicator and Type of Number are unknown
 - `public`. The Numbering Plan Indicator meets the E.164 standard and the Type of Number is national

 Note:

 The SLS application is intended to operate into PSTN trunk interfaces. For this reason, the only two choices for network numbering plans identification are `public` (E.464) and `unknown` (no particular plan).
 For this release, specify ***type*** as `unknown` since SLS does not currently support an administrative table to calculate the Calling Party Number that is consistent with the numbering plan of the PSTN service provider.

18. For non-ISDN digital trunks, analog loop-start and analog ground-start trunks, enter **set incoming-destination *extension*** to identify an extension to directly receive an incoming trunk call, for example, an attendant or a voice response/recording system.
19. For non-ISDN digital trunks, enter **set incoming-dialtone yes | no** to specify whether to provide a dial tone in response to far-end trunk group seizures.
20. For a DS1 circuit, enter **set trunk-hunt *type*** to specify the trunk-hunting search within a facility in an ISDN trunk group or through a non-ISDN digital trunk group, where ***type*** is one of the following:

 - `ascend`. A linear search from the lowest to the highest numbered available channels
 - `circular`. A circular search beginning with the point at which the search previously ended. When the search has reached the top of the channel list, it resumes at the bottom of the list in wrap-around fashion
 - `descend`. A linear search from the highest to the lowest numbered available channels

21. Enter **show** to check the trunk-group administration.

 The report lists the trunk-group parameters.

- The following example shows a gateway that has all four trunk members assigned to one trunk-group:

```
Group Type       Dial   Tac  Supervision         Treat   Insert
----- ---------- ------ ---- ------------------- ------- ------
    1        bri      -  *99                   -       -      -
    Name = Willow Street 2
Ports = v201,v202,v217,v218
Codeset  Codeset  Channel    Digit           Japan  Send Send   Number Trunk
Display  National Preference Handling        Discon Name Number Format Hunt
-------- -------- ---------- --------------- ------ ---- ------ ------ --------
codeset6 codeset6 exclusive  enbloc-enbloc   no     yes  yes    public ascend
```

- The following example shows a gateway that has twelve port members assigned as t1-inband signaling:

```
Group Type       Dial   Tac  Supervision         Treat   Insert
----- ---------- ------ ---- ------------------- ------- ------
    1   t1inband   dtmf  *96      wink/immediate       -      -
    Name = Willow Street 2
Ports = v201,v202,v203,v204,v205,v206,v207,v208,v209,v210,v211,v212
Incoming-Dest Incoming-Dial Trunk-Hunt
------------- ------------- ----------
            -             no     ascend
```

22. Enter **exit** to leave the `trunk-group` context in SLS.

Administering signaling-group parameters

1. Enter **sig-group *sgnum***, where ***sgnum*** is any number from `1` to `650`.

 The command line prompt changes to `sls-sig-group <sgnum>`. If you want to remove the signaling group from the SLS administration, enter **exit** to leave the second-level `sig-group` context and return to the `(super-sls)#` context, and then enter **clear sig-group *sgnum***.

2. Enter **set trunk-group-chan-select *tgnum*** to specify the trunk-group number that accepts incoming calls where the **Information Channel Selection** field does not specify a preferred channel for bearer transport. This is useful if the signaling group controls more than one trunk group (in cases where you wish to manage a DS1 facility with more than one trunk group).

3. Enter **set primary-dchannel *circuit-number***, where ***circuit-number*** is an identifier for a gateway, slot, or T1/E1 circuit, to select the primary D-channel number. For the value of ***circuit-number***, you can use a 3-digit gateway identifier (for example, 005), a 2-character slot identifier (for example, v2), or a 2-digit circuit number (24 for T1-ISDN, 16 for E1-ISDN).

4. If your trunk is provisioned without a D-channel for signaling, enter **set associated-signaling *no*** to use Non-Facility Associated Signaling (NFAS).

 Note:

 NFAS is primarily a feature for ISDN-T1 connections offered by service providers in North America and Hong Kong. However, it can also be used on private-network connections, and in that context it is possible to set up NFAS using ISDN-E1 interfaces.

 If you are using NFAS, enter **add nfas-interface *gateway module interface-id***, where ***gateway*** is the 3-digit gateway identifier, ***module*** is the 2-character slot identifier, and ***interface-id*** is the DS1 circuit number associated with the NFAS group. The value of ***interface-id*** is received from the network service provider.

 Note:

 The North American Public Network Service Providers do not allow any part of a T1 to be shared outside of this NFAS-trunk group. In other words, they do not allow one of the T1 interfaces (of this NFAS group) to be fractionalized into two or more uses. It must be dedicated to this given customer. Therefore, the following usage rules apply:

 - All members of an NFAS DS1 (that are administered) must belong to the same trunk-group
 - All members of this trunk-group must belong to a single signaling group

5. Enter **show** to check the signaling groups administration.

 The report lists the signaling groups parameters. For example:

```
Sig-group Tg-Select Assoc-Sig Prime-Dchan Nfas-Modules/Nfas-Id
--------- --------- --------- ----------- ------------------------------------
       10        98       yes     005v424                                    -
```

6. Enter **exit** to leave the `sig-group` context in SLS.

Administering dial-pattern parameters

1. Enter **dial-pattern *dialed-string***, where ***dialed-string*** is a dial pattern to be used on outgoing calls.

 The command line prompt changes to `super-sls/dial-pattern <dialed-string>`. If you want to remove the incoming routing treatment from the SLS administration, enter **exit** to leave the second-level `dial-pattern` context and return to the `(super-sls)#` context, and then enter **clear dial-pattern *dialed-string***.

2. Enter **set type *dial-type***, where ***dial-type*** specifies the type of outbound call and the dialing privileges available for outbound calls. The following call types are available:
 - `emer`. Emergency calls only
 - `fnpa`. 10-digit North American Numbering Plan calls
 - `hnpa`. 7-digit North American Numbering Plan calls
 - `intl`. Public-network international number calls
 - `iop`. International operator calls
 - `locl`. Public-network local number calls
 - `natl`. Non-North American Numbering Plan calls
 - `op`. Operator calls
 - `svc`. Service calls

 Note:

 Each level of call includes the previous level's dialing privileges. For example, ***locl*** has the calling privileges of ***iop***, ***intl***, etc. See Figure 13 for an illustration of the relationship between the various dial types and the COR permissions.
3. Enter **set max-length *length*** to define the maximum length of the dialed string. This must be set prior to the minimum length if the minimum length is larger than the default value.
4. Enter **set min-length *length*** to define the minimum length of the dialed string.
5. Enter **set tgnum *tgnum*** to designate a trunk-group for which this dialed string is assigned.
6. Enter **set deny *no*** to permit stations to originate outgoing trunk calls.
7. At the command-line enter **set insert-digits *digits*** to define the digits to insert into a dialed string, if required.
8. Enter **set delete-digits *digits*** to define the number of digits to be deleted from a dialed string, if required.

 Note:

 You may either insert or delete digits, but not both.
9. Enter **show** to check the outbound dial-pattern string administration.

 The report lists the dial-pattern parameters. For example:

```
                      Min/Max          Trunk   Delete/Insert
Dialed-String/Deny    Length   Type    Group   Digits
------------------    ------   ----    -----   ----------------------
         5381000/n       9/9   locl        2   1/303
         5385000/n       9/9   locl        3   1/720
```

10. Enter **exit** to leave the `dial-pattern` context in SLS.

Administering incoming-routing parameters

The incoming-routing parameters are useful for mapping DNIS numbers directly into the station extension numbers when the Service Provider's DNIS plan does not directly reflect the station extension number length used in the gateway's dial plan.

Note:

Since the PIM application does not automatically extract this information from the CM's **SAT** screen for Incoming-Digit-Treatment-Handling, you must enter this SLS information via the gateway CLI interface.

1. Enter **incoming-routing *tgnum mode***, where ***tgnum*** is an existing ISDN trunk group number and ***mode*** is the protocol used for receiving incoming digits. ***mode*** can be either `enbloc` or `overlap`.

 The command line prompt changes to `sls-incoming-routing <tgnum>`. If you want to remove the incoming routing treatment from the SLS administration, enter **exit** to leave the second-level `incoming-routing` context and return to the `(super-sls)#` context, and then enter **clear internal-routing *tgnum mode***.
2. Enter **set match-pattern *pattern*** to define the beginning digit pattern of an incoming alphanumeric dial string to be matched against.
3. Enter **set length *length*** to define the length of the dialed string.
4. If the ***mode*** is set to ***enbloc*** (in Step 1), you must:
 - Enter **set delete-digits *digits*** to define the number of digits to be deleted from a dialed string.
 - Enter **set insert-digits *digits*** to define the number of digits to be inserted at the beginning of a dialed string.
5. (**Optional**) If the ***mode*** is set to ***overlap*** (in Step 1), you may configure only one of the following options:
 - Enter **set delete-digits *digits*** to define the number of digits to be deleted from a dialed string.

 Or
 - Enter **set insert-digits *digits*** to define the number of digits to be inserted at the beginning of a dialed string.

 Note that this action takes place after the deletion task has been completed for the enbloc-receiving mode.
6. Enter **exit** to leave the `incoming-routing` context in SLS.

7. Enter **show** to check the incoming-routing administration.

 The report lists the incoming-routing parameters for all dial patterns that have been administered. For example:

```
Match_pattern   Length   Del   Insert-digits   Mode     tgnum
-------------   ------   ---   -------------   ------   -----
          234        7     3         5381000   enbloc      98
          235        7     3         5381001   enbloc      99
```

Summary of SLS configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
set sls			Enable or disable SLS
show sls			Display SLS status: `enabled` or `disabled`
sls			Enter the `sls` context
	bri		Administer an ISDN Basic Rate Interface (BRI) port for SLS
		set bearer-capability	Set the **Information Transfer Rate** field of the Bearer Capability IE in SLS
		set country-protocol	Specify the ISDN Layer 3 country protocol type in SLS
		set directory-number-a	Assign a directory number to the B1 channel of the BRI interface in SLS
		set directory-number-b	Assign a directory number to the B2 channel of the BRI interface in SLS
		set endpoint-init	Determine whether or not the far-end supports endpoint initialization in SLS
		set interface	Specify the glare-handling convention for a BRI link in SLS
		set interface-companding	Set the interface to agree with the companding method used by the far-end of the DS1 circuit for SLS mode

1 of 9

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
		set layer1-stable	Determine whether or not to keep the physical layer active (stable) between calls in SLS
		set name	Identify the user name for an ISDN facility in SLS
		set side	Specify the glare-handling conditions when the **set interface** command has been administered as ***peerMaster*** or ***peerSlave*** for the ISDN link in SLS
		set spid-a	Assign a Service Profile Identifier (SPID) to the B1 channel of the BRI link in SLS
		set spid-b	Assign a Service Profile Identifier (SPID) to the B2 channel of the BRI link in SLS
		set tei-assignment	Select the method by which the Layer 2 (LAPD) protocol obtains its Terminal Endpoint Identification (TEI) address in SLS
		show	List all BRI SLS parameters for this BRI port
	clear attendant		Delete the administered attendant provisioning in SLS
	clear bri		Delete the administration for a given BRI channel in SLS
	clear dial-pattern		Delete a single dialed string pattern entry in the SLS data set
	clear ds1		Delete the administration for a specific DS1 channel in SLS
	clear fac		Delete an administered Feature Access Code for SLS
	clear incoming-routing		Delete an entry for a particular incoming routed string that is associated with a given trunk group in SLS
	clear sig-group		Delete the administration for a given ISDN signaling group in SLS
	clear slot-config		Delete the slot and the board administration in the G430 for SLS
	clear survivable-config		Set the SLS parameters to their default values

2 of 9

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
	clear station		Delete a particular extension number in the SLS data set
	clear trunk-group		Delete a trunk group entry from the SLS data set
	dial-pattern		Administer ARS dial patterns for SLS
		set delete-digits	Specify the number of digits to be deleted from the beginning of the dialed string for an outbound call in SLS
		set deny	Permit or deny access to an outbound trunk in SLS
		set insert-digits	Specify the number of digits to be inserted at the beginning of the dialed string for an outbound call in SLS
		set max-length	Establish the maximum length of the dialed string in SLS
		set min-length	Establish the minimum length of the dialed string in SLS
		set tgnum	Designate the trunk-group number in SLS
		set type	Administer the type of outbound call in SLS
		show	List all dial-pattern SLS parameters
	ds1		Administer DS1 trunks for SLS
		set bearer-capability	Set the **Information Transfer Rate** field of the Bearer Capability IE in SLS
		set bit-rate	Set the maximum transmission rate for the DS1 facility in SLS
		set channel-numbering	Select the channel-numbering method for B-channels on an E1 interface in SLS
		set connect	Specify the equipment at the far-end of the DS1 link in SLS
		set country-protocol	Specify the ISDN Layer 3 country protocol type in SLS
		set interface	Specify the glare-handling convention for a DS1 link in SLS

3 of 9

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
		set interface-companding	Set the interface to agree with the companding method used by the far-end of the DS1 circuit for SLS mode
		set long-timer	Increase the duration of the T303 (call establishment) timer in SLS
		set name	Identify the user name for a DS1 facility in SLS
		set protocol-version	Specify country protocol for countries whose public networks allow for multiple ISDN Layer 3 country protocols for ISDN Primary Rate service in SLS
		set side	Specify the glare-handling conditions when the **set interface** command has been administered as ***peerMaster*** or ***peerSlave*** for the ISDN link in SLS
		set signaling-mode	Set the signaling mode for the DS1 facility in SLS
		show	List all SLS parameters for this DS1 interface
	Incoming-routing		Administer digit-treatment for incoming routed calls in SLS
		set delete-digits	Specify number of digits to be deleted from the beginning of the dialed string for an inbound trunk call in SLS
		set insert-digits	Specify number of digits to be inserted at the beginning of the dialed string for an inbound trunk call in SLS
		set length	Specify the length of the dialed string in SLS
		set match-pattern	Specify the beginning digit pattern of the incoming alphanumeric dial string to be matched against in SLS
		show	List all incoming-routing SLS parameters
	set attendant		Specify the dial access code for the attendant feature, and specify the station which serves as the branch office attendant position

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
	set date-format		Set a date format for the SLS data set
	set fac		Administer the Feature Access Code for SLS
	set ip-codec-set		Configure an IP codec set within the SLS data set
	set max-ip-registrations		Configure the maximum number of IP registrations allowed in the SLS data set
	set pim-lockout		Prevent or enable PIM updates while working on SLS administration of the G430
	set slot-config		Define the slot and the board type in the G430 for SLS
	show attendant		Display the administered attendant provisioning
	show bri		List the administered BRI parameters for SLS
	show date-format		Display the current date format for the SLS data set
	show dial-pattern		List all dial-pattern strings in the SLS data set
	show ds1		List the administered DS1 parameters for SLS
	show fac		List the administered Feature Access Codes for SLS
	show incoming-routing		Show all of the administered dial patterns in SLS for trunk groups
	show ip-codec-set		List the codec set entries for SLS
	show last-pim-update		Display when the last PIM update of SLS data occurred
	show max-ip-registrations		Display the maximum IP registration administration in the SLS data set
	show pim-lockout		Display the current status of the setting for the PIM lockout feature
	show sig-group		List all administered signaling groups in SLS

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
	show slot-config		Define the slot and the board administration in the G430 for SLS
	show station		Display extension-specific SLS data parameters
	show trunk-group		Display trunk group administration in SLS
	sig-group		Administer signaling groups for SLS
		add nfas-interface	Identify a list of DS1 modules that are controlled by the primary D-channel in SLS
		remove nfas-interface	Remove a member from a NFAS-managed DS1 group in SLS
		set associated-signaling	Specify whether the D-channel is physically present in the DS1 interface in SLS
		set primary-dchannel	Identify the D-channel number in SLS
		set trunk-group-chan-select	Specify the trunk-group number that can accept incoming calls in cases where the **Information Channel Selection** field does not specify a preferred channel for bearer transport in SLS
		show	List all SLS parameters for this signaling-group
	station		Administer stations for SLS
		set cor	Administer the class-of-restriction values for each station that uses SLS
		set expansion-module	Administer a DCP or IP station for an expansion module in SLS
		set name	Identify the user name for a station in SLS
		set password	Administer a station password in SLS for DCP and IP station sets
		set port	Administer the port on a station for SLS

6 of 9

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
		set swhook-flash	Enable SLS to recognize the switchhook flash signal from a particular analog station and to provide a subsequent transfer service
		set trunk-destination	Administer a station extension to be included in a pool of stations that can receive incoming analog loop-start trunk calls in circular queuing in SLS
		set type	Administer specific phone models for SLS
		show	List all Station SLS parameters for this station
	trunk-group		Administer trunks for SLS
		add port	Administer the port appropriate for SLS
		clear tac	Remove a trunk access code (TAC) assignment from a trunk group in SLS
		remove port	Remove the port assignment from a trunk group in SLS
		set busy-disconnect	Specify whether the SLS analog trunk call state machine will monitor the trunk for the presence of a busy tone, and disconnect the call if a busy tone is detected
		set cbc	Specify whether the ISDN trunk group will operate by declaring the service type explicitly on a call-by-call basis
		set cbc-parameter	Specify the type of service or feature being declared in the Network Services Facility information element
		set cbc-service-feature	Define what class of service is being specified, as part of the **scocs** service declared in the Network Services Facility information element
		set channel-preference	Define how the **Channel Identification IE** field is encoded in SLS
		set codeset-display	Specify which Q.931 codesets are allowed to send display information to the user phone in SLS

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
		set codeset-national	Specify which Q.931 codesets are allowed to send National Information Elements to the user phone in SLS
		set dial	Define the method for sending outbound digits in SLS
		set digit-handling	Define how the inbound/outbound calls handle the transmission/reception of the dialed pattern in SLS
		set digits	Define the inserted dial string that is added to the beginning of the received DID incoming dial string for analog DID trunks or for DS1 TIE trunks using in-band signaling in SLS
		set digit-treatment	Define the incoming digit treatment for analog DID trunks or for DS1 TIE trunks using in-band signaling in SLS
		set incoming-destination	Identify an extension to directly receive an incoming trunk call in SLS
		set incoming-dialtone	Provide a dial tone in response to far-end trunk group seizures in SLS
		set japan-disconnect	Perform a disconnect sequence (CONNECT message followed by a DISCONNECT message) in SLS
		set name	Identify the user name for a trunk group in SLS
		set numbering-format	Specify the numbering plan for this trunk in SLS
		set send-name	Define whether or not the calling, connected, called, or busy party's administered name is sent to the network on outgoing or incoming calls in SLS
		set send-number	Define whether or not the calling, connected, called, or busy party's administered number is sent to the network on outgoing or incoming calls in SLS
		set supervision	Define the incoming signaling supervision mode for analog DID trunks or DS1 tie trunks only in SLS

8 of 9

Table 53: SLS CLI command hierarchy (continued)

Root Level Commands	First Level Context Commands	Second Level Context Commands	Description
		set tac	Administer the trunk-access codes for SLS
		set trunk-hunt	Specify the trunk-hunting search within a facility in an ISDN trunk group or through a non-ISDN digital trunk group in SLS
		show	List all trunk-group SLS parameters for this trunk-group
			9 of 9

Chapter 7: Configuring Ethernet ports

This chapter provides information about configuring Ethernet ports on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway.

Ethernet ports on the G430

The switch and router on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway have various Ethernet ports.

Ethernet ports on the G430 Media Gateway switch

- The 10/100 Mbps fixed switch ports on the front panel (ports 10/3 and 10/4)

Ethernet ports on the G430 Media Gateway router

- The 10/100 Mbps fixed router port on the front panel (port 10/3)

Cables used for connecting devices to the fixed router

Use a standard network cable when you connect one of the following devices to the fixed router port:

- WAN endpoint device
- Switch
- Router

Use a crossover network cable when you connect a computer or other endpoint device to the fixed router port. For all other Ethernet ports on the G430, you can use either a standard network cable or a crossover network cable to connect any device.

Configuring switch Ethernet ports

For basic configuration of a switch Ethernet port, use the commands listed below. You can also configure the following features on a switch Ethernet port:

- Advanced switching features, including VLANs. For more information, see Configuring advanced switching on page 321.
- VoIP queuing. To configure VoIP queuing on a switch port, configure a VLAN for the port. Then configure VoIP queuing on the VLAN. For more information about VoIP queuing, see Configuring QoS parameters on page 229.
- Access control policy lists and QoS policy lists. To configure policy lists on a switch port, configure a VLAN for the port. Then configure policy on the VLAN. For more information on policy lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.
- SNMP Link Up and Link Down traps. For more information, see Configuring SNMP traps on page 301.

Switch Ethernet port commands

Use the following commands for basic configuration of switch Ethernet ports. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **`set port disable`** command to disable a port or range of ports.
- Use the **`set port duplex`** command to configure the duplex type of an Ethernet or Fast Ethernet port or range of ports.You can configure Ethernet and FastEthernet interfaces to either full-duplex or half-duplex. The duplex status of a port in auto-negotiation mode is determined by auto-negotiation. When auto-negotiation is enabled, an error message is generated if you attempt to set the transmission type of an auto-negotiation Fast Ethernet port to half-duplex or full-duplex mode.
- Use the **`set port edge admin state`** command to determine whether or not the port is an edge port. Edge port is a treatment assigned to ports for the purposes of RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol). For more information about using this command and RSTP configuration in general, see Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) on page 333. Use the **`show port edge state`** command to display the edge state of one or all ports.
- Use the **`set port enable`** command to enable a port or a range of ports.
- Use the **`set port flowcontrol`** command to set the send/receive mode for flow control frames (IEEE 802.3x or proprietary) for a full-duplex port. Each direction (send or receive) can be configured separately. Use the **`show port flowcontrol`** command to display port flow control information.

- Use the **set port level** command to determine the default packet priority level for untagged packets. Packets traveling through a port set at normal priority should be served only after packets traveling through a port set at high priority are served.
- Use the **set port name** command to configure a name for a port.
- Use the **set port negotiation** command to enable or disable the link negotiation protocol on the specified port. This command applies to the Fast Ethernet port. When negotiation is enabled, the speed and duplex of the Fast Ethernet port are determined by auto-negotiation. If negotiation is disabled, the user can set the speed and duplex of the Fast Ethernet port.
- Use the **set port point-to-point admin status** command, followed by the module and port number of the port, to manage the connection type of the port. Use one of the following arguments with this command:
 - **force-true.** The port is treated as if it were connected point-to-point
 - **force-false**. The port is treated as if it were connected to shared media
 - **auto**. The G430 tries to automatically detect the connection type of the port
- Use the **set port speed** command to configure the speed of a port or range of ports. In auto-negotiation mode, the port's speed is determined by auto-negotiation. An error message is generated if you attempt to set the speed when auto-negotiation is enabled.

Summary of switch Ethernet port configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 54: Switch Ethernet port configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
set port duplex	Configure the duplex type (full or half-duplex) of an Ethernet or Fast Ethernet port or range of ports
set port edge admin state	Determine whether the port is an edge port, for the purposes of RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol)
set port enable \| disable	Enable or disable a port or a range of ports
set port flowcontrol	Set the send/receive mode for flow control frames (IEEE 802.3x or proprietary) for a full-duplex port
set port level	Set the default packet priority level for untagged packets
set port name	Configure a name for a port

1 of 2

Table 54: Switch Ethernet port configuration CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
set port negotiation	Enable or disable auto-negotiation on the port
set port point-to-point admin status	Set the connection type of the port: `force-true`, `force-false`, or `auto`
set port speed	Set the speed of a port or range of ports
show port edge state	Display the edge state of a port
show port flowcontrol	Display port flow control information
	2 of 2

Configuring the WAN Ethernet port

1. Use the **interface fastethernet 10/3** command to enter the context of the port interface.
2. Perform basic configuration of the interface. For more information, see Configuring interfaces on page 421.
3. Use the Ethernet WAN port configuration commands in the context of the port interface. See WAN Ethernet port commands on page 195.

Configuring additional features on the WAN Ethernet port

- Primary Management Interface (PMI). For more information, see Configuring the Primary Management Interface (PMI) on page 76.
- Advanced router features. For more information, see Configuring the router on page 421.
- VoIP queuing. For more information, see Configuring QoS parameters on page 229.
- Access control policy lists and QoS policy lists. For more information, see Configuring policy on page 567.
- SNMP Link Up and Link Down traps. For more information, see Configuring SNMP traps on page 301.

WAN Ethernet port traffic shaping

You can use traffic shaping to determine the data transfer rate on the WAN Ethernet port. To set traffic shaping, use the **traffic-shape rate** command in the interface context. To disable traffic shaping, use the **no** form of the **traffic-shape rate** command. Traffic shaping works in tandem with the configured bandwidth. If you change the traffic shape rate, this automatically changes the bandwidth. Similarly, if you change the bandwidth, this automatically changes the traffic shape rate.

Note:

The traffic shape rate is determined in bits. The bandwidth is determined in kilobytes.

For information on traffic shaping in general, see Configuring QoS parameters on page 229.

Backup interfaces

You can configure backup relations between a pair of any Layer 2 interfaces, except the VLAN interface. For instructions on how to configure backup interfaces, see Backup interfaces on page 246.

WAN Ethernet port commands

Use the following commands in `FastEthernet 10/3` context for basic Ethernet configuration of the WAN Ethernet port:

- Enter **autoneg** to set the port speed and duplex to auto-negotiation mode for the external Fast Ethernet port. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the auto-negotiation mode.
- Use the **duplex** command to control the duplex setting for the interface.
- Use the **keepalive-track** command to bind the interface status to an object tracker. When activated, the object tracker sends health check packets at defined intervals to the other side of the interface. If the configured number of consecutive keepalive requests are not answered, the interface track state changes to down. The object tracker continues monitoring the interface, and when its track state changes to up, the interface state changes to up.
- Enter **shutdown** to set the administrative status of the current interface to `down`. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the administrative status of the interface to `up`.
- Use the **speed** command to set the port speed.

Summary of WAN Ethernet port configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 55: WAN Ethernet port configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface fastethernet		Enter interface fastethernet configuration mode
	autoneg	Set the port speed and duplex to auto-negotiation mode
	duplex	Set the duplex setting (full or half) for the interface
	keepalive-track	Bind an object tracker to the interface to check whether it is up
	shutdown	Set the administrative status of the current interface to `down` or `up`
	speed	Set the speed for the interface
	traffic-shape rate	Configure traffic shaping for outbound traffic on the current interface

Configuring DHCP client

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway can be configured to function as a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) client.

DHCP client enables the G430 to receive an IP address from a DHCP server, according to the DHCP client-server protocol. The DHCP server grants the G430 DHCP client an IP address for a fixed amount of time, called the lease. After the lease expires, the G430 DHCP client is required to stop using the IP address. The G430 DHCP client periodically sends requests to the server to renew or extend the lease.

In addition to receiving an IP address, a G430 DHCP client can optionally request to receive a domain name, a list of default routers, and a list of available DNS servers.

Note:

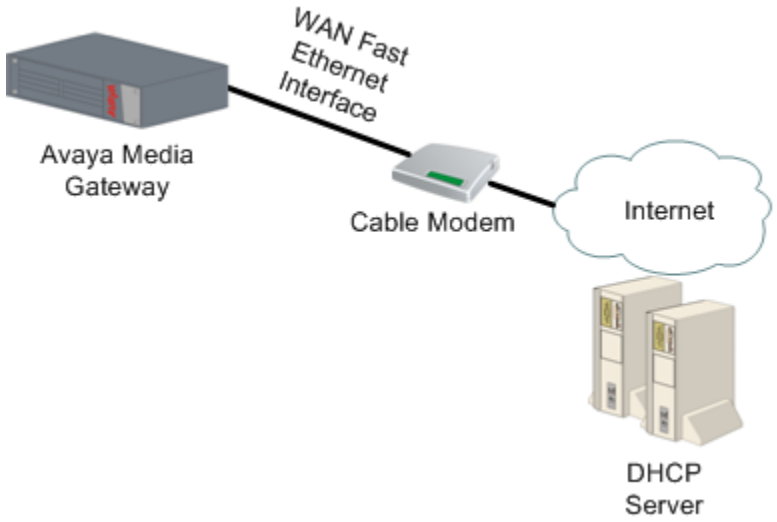
The Avaya G430 Media Gateway can function as both a DHCP server and a DHCP client simultaneously. That is, you can connect a cable modem for an Internet connection to the WAN Fast Ethernet in order to use the G430 as a DHCP client. At the same time, you can activate the DHCP server on the G430 for use by clients, such as, IP phones and PCs connected to the LAN ports. The DHCP server on the G430 does *not* serve Internet devices connected over the WAN Fast Ethernet port.

For information on configuring the G430 as a DHCP server, see Configuring DHCP server on page 447.

DHCP client applications

The typical application of DHCP client in the G430 involves requesting and receiving an IP address from the service provider's DHCP server, to enable a broadband Internet connection via cable modem.

Figure 18: Fixed connection to broadband Internet using G430 as DHCP client



DHCP client configuration

1. Enter the context of the FastEthernet interface. For example:

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#
```

2. Optionally, configure DHCP client parameters. If you do not configure these parameters, their default values are used:

 - Use the **ip dhcp client client-id** command to set the client identifier for the DHCP client. By default, the client identifier is usually the MAC address of the G430 FastEthernet interface.
 - Use the **ip dhcp client hostname** command to set the hostname for the DHCP client. By default, the DHCP client uses the G430's hostname.
 - Use the **ip dhcp client lease** command to set the lease requested by the DHCP client. The lease is the length of time that the IP address provided by the DHCP server remains in effect. By default, the client does not request a specific lease from the DHCP server and uses the lease set by the DHCP server.
 - Use the **ip dhcp client request** command to determine which DHCP options the DHCP client requests from the DHCP server. By default, the DHCP client requests all DHCP options. For information on the specific options, see Table 111.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip dhcp client client-id hex
01:00:04:0D:29:DC:68
Done!

G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip dhcp client hostname "G430-A"
Done!

G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip dhcp client lease 1 4 15
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# no ip dhcp client request domain-name
Done!
```

3. Optionally, use the **ip dhcp client route track** command to apply an object tracker to monitor the DHCP client's default route. The object tracker continuously checks the validity of the default route, that is, whether data can be transmitted over the default route. Whenever the object tracker determines that the default route has become invalid, the route is dropped from the routing table and traffic is routed to alternate routes. If the default route becomes valid again, it is added back to the routing table.

 To define an object tracker, see Object tracking configuration on page 275.

 For an example of how to track the DHCP client default route, see Typical application – tracking the DHCP client default route on page 289.

 Note that if several default routers are learned from a specific interface, the object tracker tracks only the first one.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#ip dhcp client route track 3
Done!
```

4. Enable the DHCP client by entering **ip address dhcp**.

 A message appears, displaying the IP address and mask assigned by the DHCP server. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip address dhcp
Done!
Interface FastEthernet 10/3 assigned DHCP address 193.172.104.161, mask
255.255.255.0
```

Note:

Whenever you change the value of a DHCP client parameter (such as, client-id, or client hostname), enter **ip address dhcp** again to re-initiate DHCP address negotiation using the new values.

5. You can use the **show ip dhcp-client** command to view the DHCP client parameters. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# show ip dhcp-client

DHCP Client Mode          : Enable
Status                    : Bound
IP Address                : 193.172.104.161
Subnet Mask               : 255.255.255.0
Default Router            : 193.172.104.162
DHCP Server               : 192.100.106.163
DNS Server                : 192.100.106.101
Domain Name               : avaya.com
Lease Received  (D:H:M:S) : 0:0:10:0
Lease Remains   (D:H:M:S) : 0:0:9:32
Lease Rebind    (D:H:M:S) : 0:0:8:45
Lease Renew     (D:H:M:S) : 0:0:5:0
Lease Requested (D:H:M:S) : 1:3:4:0
Host Name                 : G430-A
Client Identifier         : 01:00:04:0D:29:DC:68
Requested Options         :
                            subnet-mask (1)
                            routers (3)
                            domain-name (15)
                            domain-name-servers (6)
Track-id                  : 3
```

Releasing and renewing a DHCP lease

- Use the **release dhcp** command to release a DHCP lease for an interface. This effectively releases the client IP address, and no IP address is allocated to the specified interface. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# release dhcp FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
```

- Use the **renew dhcp** command to renew a DHCP lease for an interface. This is effectively a request to renew an existing IP address, or the start of a new process of allocating a new IP address. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# renew dhcp FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
```

 A message appears displaying the IP address and mask assigned by the DHCP server. For example:

```
Interface FastEthernet 10/3 assigned DHCP address 193.172.104.161, mask
255.255.255.0
```

Maintaining DHCP client

For a full description of the commands and their output fields see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference,* 03-603234.

- Use the **`show ip dhcp-client`** command to show the configuration of the DHCP client.
- Enter **`show ip dhcp-client statistics`** to show the DHCP client statistics counters.
- Enter **`clear ip dhcp-client statistics`** to clear the DHCP client statistics counters.

Configuring DHCP client logging messages

1. Enter **`set logging session enable`** to enable logging to the CLI terminal.

```
G430-001# set logging session enable
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session enable
```

2. Use the **`set logging session condition dhcpc`** command to view all DHCP client messages of level Info and above. For example:

```
G430-001# set logging session condition dhcpc Info
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session condition dhcpc Info
```

Note:

You can also enable logging messages to a log file or a Syslog server. For a full description of logging on the G430, see Configuring logging on page 207.

Summary of DHCP client configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 56: DHCP client configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
clear ip dhcp-client statistics		Clear the DHCP client statistics counters
interface fastethernet		Enter interface fastethernet configuration mode
	clear ip dhcp-client statistics	Clear the DHCP client statistics counters
	ip address dhcp	Enable or disable IP address negotiation via DHCP (applies to WAN FastEthernet interfaces only)
	ip dhcp client client-id	Set the client identifier for the DHCP client
	ip dhcp client hostname	Set the client hostname for the DHCP client
	ip dhcp client lease	Set the lease requested by the DHCP client
	ip dhcp client request	Specify which DHCP options the DHCP client requests from the DHCP server
	ip dhcp client route track	Apply object tracking in order to monitor the DHCP client's default route
	show ip dhcp-client	Display the configuration of the DHCP client
	show ip dhcp-client statistics	Display the DHCP client statistics counters
release dhcp		Release a DHCP lease for an interface
renew dhcp		Renew a DHCP lease for an interface

1 of 2

Table 56: DHCP client configuration CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
show ip dhcp-client		Display the configuration of the DHCP client
show ip dhcp-client statistics		Display the DHCP client statistics counters
		2 of 2

Configuring LLDP

IEEE 802.1AB Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) simplifies troubleshooting of enterprise networks and enhances the ability of network management tools to discover and maintain accurate network topologies in multi-vendor environments. It defines a set of advertisement messages, called TLVs, a protocol for transmitting and receiving the advertisements, and a method for storing the information contained in the received advertisements.

The LLDP protocol allows stations attached to a LAN to advertise information about the system (such as, its major capabilities and its management address) and information regarding the station's point of attachment to the LAN (port ID and VLAN information) to other stations attached to the same LAN. These can all be reported to management stations via IEEE-defined SNMP MIBs.

LLDP information is transmitted periodically. The IEEE has defined a recommended transmission rate of 30 seconds, but the transmission rate is adjustable. An LLDP device, after receiving an LLDP message from a neighboring network device, stores the LLDP information in an SNMP MIB. This information is valid only for a finite period of time after TLV reception. This time is defined by the LLDP "Time to Live" (TTL) TLV value that is contained within the received packet unless refreshed by a newly received TLV. The IEEE recommends a TTL value of 120 seconds, but you can change it if necessary. This ensures that only valid LLDP information is stored in the network devices and is available to network management systems.

LLDP information is associated with the specific device that sends it. The device itself is uniquely identified by the receiving party port via chassis ID and port ID values. Multiple LLDP devices can reside on a single port, using a hub for example, and all of the devices are reported via MIB. You can enable (Rx-only, TX-only, and Rx or Tx) or disable LLDP mode of operation on a per-port basis.

Supported TLVs

Mandatory TLVs

- End-of-LDPDU
- Chassis ID
- Port ID
- Time to Live

Optional TLVs

- Port description
- System description
- System name
- System capabilities
- Management address

802.1 TLVs (optional)

- VLAN name
- Port VLAN

LLDP configuration

1. Enable the LLDP agent globally using the **`set lldp system-control`** command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set lldp system-control enable
Done!
```

 The device's global topology information, including all mandatory TLVs, is now available to neighboring devices supporting LLDP.

2. Optionally, configure the administrative LLDP port status using the **set port lldp** command. The default value is rx-and-tx. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set port lldp 10/3 rx-and-tx
Done!
```

 The device now sends LLDP TLVs and accepts LLDP TLVs from neighboring devices supporting LLDP on the specified port.

3. Optionally, configure additional TLVs transmission using the **set port lldp tlv** command. This allows you to advertise additional data about the device's and port's VLAN information, VLANs, and system capabilities. Additional TLVs are disabled by default. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set port lldp tlv 10/3 enable all
Done!
```

 The device now advertises all mandatory and optional TLVs to neighboring network devices supporting LLDP.

4. If required, change any of the following timing parameters:
 - The interval at which the device transmits LLDP frames, using the command **set lldp tx-interval**. The default is 30 seconds.
 - The value of TxHoldMultiplier, using the command **set lldp tx-hold-multiplier**. TxHoldMultiplier is a multiplier on the interval configured by **set lldp tx-interval** that determines the actual TTL value sent in an LLDP frame. The default value is 30. The time-to-live value transmitted in TTL TLV is expressed by: TTL = min(65535, TxInterval * TxHoldMultiplier).
 - The minimal delay between successive LLDP frame transmissions, on each port, using the command **set lldp tx-delay**. The default is 30 seconds.
 - The delay from when a port is set to LLDP "disable" until re-initialization is attempted, using the command **set lldp re-init-delay**. The default is 2 seconds.
5. Verify LLDP advertisements using the **show lldp** command.

Displaying LLDP configuration

- Use the **show lldp config** command to display the global LLDP configuration.
- Use the **show port lldp config** command to display port-level LLDP configuration.
- Use the **show port lldp vlan-name config** command to show the statically bound VLANs that the port transmits in the VLAN Name TLV.

Supported ports for LLDP

Only ports 10/3 and 10/4 can be configured to support LLDP.

Summary of LLDP configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 57: LLDP configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
set lldp re-init-delay	Set the delay from when a port is set to LLDP "disable" until re-initialization is attempted
set lldp system-control	Enable or disable the LLDP application globally per device or stack
set lldp tx-delay	Set the **TxDelay**, which is the minimal delay in seconds between successive LLDP frame transmissions, on each port
set lldp tx-hold-multiplier	Set the **TxHoldMultiplier**, which is a multiplier on the **TxInterval** that determines the actual TTL value sent in an LLDP frame
set lldp tx-interval	Set the **TxInterval**, the interval at which the device transmits LLDP frames
set port lldp	Change the administrative LLDP status of a port
set port lldp tlv	Enable or disable the transmission of the optional TLVs on a per port basis
show lldp	Display the LLDP information received on each port
show lldp config	Display the global LLDP configuration
show port lldp config	Display port-level LLDP configuration
show port lldp vlan-name config	Show the VLANs that are being transmitted on a specific port

Chapter 8: Configuring logging

System logging is a method of collecting system messages generated by system events. The Avaya G430 Media Gateway includes a logging package that collects system messages in several output types. Each of these types is called a sink. When the system generates a logging message, the message can be sent to each sink that you have enabled.

Table 58: Logging sinks

Sink	Description
Syslog	Logging messages are sent to up to three configured servers, using Syslog protocol as defined in RFC 3164. Messages sent to the Syslog server are sent as UDP messages.
Log file	Logging data is saved in the flash memory. These compressed, cyclic files serve as the system logging database.
Session	Logging messages are sent to the terminal screen as follows: • For a local connection, messages appear online on the local terminal. • For a remote Telnet/SSH connection, messages appear online on the remote terminal. This sink is deleted whenever a session ends.

System messages do not always indicate problems. Some messages are informational, while others may help to diagnose problems with communications lines, internal hardware, and system software.

By default, all sinks are disabled. When enabled, log file and Syslog sink settings can be saved by entering **`copy running-config startup-config`** to save the running configuration to the startup configuration. However, the Session sink and its settings are deleted when the session is terminated.

You can define filters for each sink to limit the types of messages the sink receives (see Configuring logging filters on page 215).

The logging facility logs configuration commands entered through the CLI or via SNMP, as well as system traps and informative messages concerning the behavior of various processes. However, a user enabling the log will only see entered commands with a user-level no higher than the user's privileges. For example, a user with read-only privileges will not see entered commands having a read-write user level. In addition, the log does not display entered information of a confidential nature, such as, passwords and VPN pre-shared-keys.

Configuring a Syslog server

A Syslog server is a remote server that receives logging messages using the Syslog protocol. This enables storage of large log files, which you can use to generate reports.

Defining Syslog servers

You can define up to three Syslog servers.

1. Define the Syslog server by entering **`set logging server`** followed by the IP address of the server. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

2. Enable the Syslog server by entering **`set logging server enable`** followed by the IP address of the Syslog server. When you define a new Syslog server, it is defined as disabled, so you must use this command in order to enable the server. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server enable 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

3. Optionally, define an output facility for the Syslog server by typing the **`set logging server facility`** command, followed by the name of the output facility and the IP address of the Syslog server. If you do not define an output facility, the default local7 facility is used. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server facility auth 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

 The following is a list of possible facilities:

 - `auth`. Authorization
 - `daemon`. Background system process
 - `clkd`. Clock daemon
 - `clkd2`. Clock daemon
 - `mail`. Electronic mail
 - `local0` – `local7`. For local use
 - `ftpd`. FTP daemon
 - `kern`. kernel
 - `alert`. Log alert
 - `audi`. Log audit

- `ntp`. NTP subsystem
- `lpr`. Printing
- `sec`. Security
- `syslog`. System logging
- `uucp`. Unix-to-Unix copy program
- `news`. Usenet news
- `user`. User process

4. Optionally, limit access to the Syslog server output by typing the **`set logging server access-level`** command, followed by an access level (`read-only`, `read-write`, or `admin`) and the IP address of the Syslog server. If you do not define an access level, the default read-write level is used. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server access-level read-only 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

 Only messages with the appropriate access level are sent to the Syslog output.

5. Optionally, define filters to limit the types of messages received (see Configuring logging filters on page 215).

Disabling Syslog servers

Enter **`set logging server disable`** followed by the IP address of the Syslog server. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server disable 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

Deleting Syslog servers

You can delete a Syslog server from the Syslog server table. Enter **`clear logging server`** followed by the IP address of the Syslog server you want to delete. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# clear logging server 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

Displaying the status of the Syslog server

Enter **show logging server condition** followed by the IP address of the Syslog server. If you do not specify an IP address, the command displays the status of all Syslog servers defined for the G430.

As the following example illustrates, the command displays whether the server is enabled or disabled, and lists all filters defined on the server:

```
G430-001(super)# show logging server condition 147.2.3.66



*****************************************************
*** Message logging configuration of SYSLOG   sink ***

Sink Is Enabled
Sink default severity: Warning

Server name: 147.2.3.66
Server facility: auth
Server access level: read-only
```

Syslog sink default settings

- **Severity**. Warning
- **Facility**. Local 7
- **Access level**. Read-write

Syslog message format

Syslog messages are arranged chronologically and have the following format:

```
<34> Oct 11 22:14:15 host LINKDOWN [005ms, SWICHFABRIC-Notification:Port 10/3 Link,
ID=1234567890
```

The message provides the following information:

- A priority (`<34>` in this example), which is calculated based on the syslog facility and the severity level.
- A header (`Oct 11 22:14:15 host LINKDOWN` in this example), providing the date and time, the hostname, and a message mnemonic.
- A message (`005ms, SWICHFABRIC-Notification: Port 10/3 Link` in this example), detailing the milliseconds, the application being logged, the severity level, the message text, and an Authentication File Identification number (AFID).

Copying a syslog file

You can copy the syslog file from the gateway to another location via FTP, SCP, or TFTP, or locally to a USB mass storage device.

- Use the **copy syslog-file ftp** command to copy the syslog file to a remote server using FTP.
- Use the **copy syslog-file scp** command to copy the syslog file to a remote server using SCP.
- Use the **copy syslog-file tftp** command to copy the syslog file to a remote server using TFTP.
- Use the **copy syslog-file usb** command to upload the syslog file from the gateway to a USB mass storage device.

Configuring a log file

A log file is a file of data concerning a system event, saved in the flash memory. The log files serve as the system logging database, keeping an internal record of system events.

1. Enter **set logging file enable**.

```
G430-001(super)# set logging file enable
Done!
```

2. Optionally, define filters to limit the types of messages received (see Configuring logging filters on page 215).

Disabling logging system messages to a log file

Enter **set logging file disable**.

```
G430-001(super)# set logging file disable
Done!
```

Deleting current log file and opening an empty log file

Enter **clear logging file**.

```
G430-001(super)# clear logging file
Done!
```

Displaying log file messages

Use the **show logging file content** command. Note that the user enabling the log will only see entered commands with a user-level no higher than the user's privileges. A user with read-only privileges will not see entered commands having a read-write user level. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show logging file content

11/21/2004,15:45:43:CLI-Notification: root: nvram initialize

11/21/2004,15:43:08:CLI-Notification: root: exit

11/21/2004,15:42:20:ROUTER-Warning: Duplicate IP address: 3.3.3.1 from 00:00:021

11/18/2004,16:48:21:CLI-Notification: root: no track 20

11/18/2004,16:48:18:SAA-Debug: Response for ipIcmpEcho timed-out on rtr 6, echo.

11/18/2004,16:48:18:CLI-Notification: root: no rtr-schedule 6

11/18/2004,16:48:18:SAA-Informational: rtr 6 state changed to pending.

11/18/2004,16:48:18:TRACKER-Informational: track 6 state changed to pending.
```

Displaying conditions defined for the file output sink

Enter **show logging file condition**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show logging file condition



*****************************************************
*** Message logging configuration of FILE     sink ***


Sink Is Enabled
Sink default severity: Informational
```

Log file message format

Log file messages appear in first-in, last-out order. They have the following format:

```
01/18/2005,10:55:09:CLI-Notification: root:   set port disable 10/6

01/18/2005,10:49:03:SWITCHFABRIC-Notification: Port Connection Lost on Module 10
port 5
```

Each message provides the following information:

- The date and time (if available)
- The logging application
- The severity level
- The message text

Configuring a session log

A session log is the display of system messages on the terminal screen. It is automatically deleted when a session ends.

1. Enter **`set logging session enable`**.

```
G430-001(super)# set logging session enable
Done!
```

Note:

If the device is connected to several terminals, a separate session log is established for each terminal.

2. Optionally, define filters to limit the types of messages received (see Configuring logging filters on page 215).

Discontinuing the display of system messages

To discontinue the display of system messages to the terminal screen, enter **`set logging session disable`**.

```
G430-001(super)# set logging session disable
Done!
```

Displaying how the session logging is configured

Enter **show logging session condition**. This command displays whether session logging is enabled or disabled, and lists all filters defined for session logging. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show logging session condition



******************************************************
*** Message logging configuration of SESSION sink ***

Sink Is Enabled
Sink default severity: Warning
Session source ip: 172.16.1.231
```

Session logging message format

Session logging messages are arranged chronologically and have the format shown in the following example:

```
01/18/2005,10:49:03:SWITCHFABRIC-Notification: Port Connection Lost on Module 10
port 5 was cleared

01/18/2005,10:55:09:CLI-Notification: root:   set port disable 10/6
```

Each message provides the following information:

- The date and time (if available)
- The logging application
- The severity level
- The message text

Note:

The user enabling the log will only see entered commands with a user-level no higher than the user's own privileges. For example, a user with read-write privileges will not see entered commands having an admin user level.

Configuring logging filters

You can use filters to reduce the number of collected and transmitted messages. The filtering options are based on message classification by severity for each application. For a specified sink, you can define the threshold severity level for message output for each application. Messages pertaining to the specified applications, that have a severity level stronger than or equal to the defined threshold, are sent to the specified sink. Messages with a severity level weaker than the defined threshold are not sent.

Setting the logging filters

For each sink, you can set logging filters by specifying a severity level per application, as follows:

- To create a filter for messages sent to a specified Syslog server, enter **set logging server condition *application severity ip address***.
- To create a filter for messages sent to a log file, enter **set logging file condition *application severity***.
- To create a filter for messages sent to a session log on a terminal screen, enter **set logging session condition *application severity***.

 where:

 - ***application*** is the application for which to view messages (use **all** to specify all applications). For the list of applications see Applications to be filtered on page 217.
 - ***severity*** is the minimum severity to log for the specified application (use **none** to disable logging messages for the specified application). For a list of the severity levels and the default severity settings, see Severity levels on page 216.
 - ***ip address*** is the IP address of the Syslog server.

 For example:

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server condition dialer critical 147.2.3.66
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging file condition dhcps warning
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging session condition ISAKMP Information
Done!
```

You can also filter the **show logging file content** command by severity for each application, using the same variables as in the **set logging file condition** command. In addition, you can limit the number of messages to display.

For example, to display the 50 most recent messages from the QoS application with a severity level of critical or higher, enter the following command:

```
G430-001(super)# show logging file content critical qos 50
```

Severity levels

Table 59: Severity levels

Severity level	Code	Description
emergency	0	System is unusable
alert	1	Immediate action required
critical	2	Critical condition
error	3	Error condition
warning	4	Warning condition
notification	5	Normal but significant condition
informational	6	Informational message only
debugging	7	Message that only appears during debugging

Sinks default severity levels

- **Syslog**. Warning
- **Log file**. Informational
- **Session**
 - **Session from terminal**. Informational
 - **Session from telnet/ssh**. Warning

Applications to be filtered

Filters can be defined for any application listed in Table 60.

Table 60: Logging applications

Application	Description
arp	Address Resolution Protocol mechanism
boot	System startup failures
cdr	Call Detail Recording. Registers the active calls in SLS mode.
cli	CLI
cna-tp	CNA test plugs
config	Configuration changes
dhcp-relay	DHCP requests relaying
dhcpc	DHCP client package
dhcps	DHCP server package
dialer	Dialer interface messages
dnsc	DNS client package
fan	Cooling system
filesys	File system problem (flash)
ids	IDS events, specifically a SYN attack heuristic employed by the SYN cookies feature
iphc	IP header compression
ipsec	VPN IPSEC package
isakmp	VPN IKE package
ospf	Open Shortest Path First protocol
policy	Policy package
ppp	PPP protocol
pppoe	PPP over Ethernet
proxy-arp	Proxy ARP

1 of 2

Table 60: Logging applications (continued)

Application	Description
qos	QoS messages
router	Core routing system failures
rtp-stat	RTP MIB statistics
saa	RTR-probes messages
security	Secure logging (authentication failure)
snmp	SNMP agent
stp	Spanning tree package
supply	Power supply system
switchfabric	Switch fabric failures
system	Operating system failures
tftp	Internal TFTP server
threshold	RMON alarms
tracker	Object tracker messages
usb	USB devices messages
usb-modem	USB modem messages
vj-comp	Van Jacobson header compression messages
vlan	VLAN package
voice	Voice failures
wan	WAN plugged-in expansion

2 of 2

Syslog server example

The following example defines a Syslog server with the following properties:

- IP address 147.2.3.66
- Logging of messages enabled
- Output to the Kernel facility
- Only messages that can be viewed by read-write level users are received

- Filter restricts receipt of messages from all applications to those less severe than error

```
G430-001(super)# set logging server 147.2.3.66
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging server enable 147.2.3.66
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging server facility kern 147.2.3.66
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging server access-level read-write 147.2.3.66
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging server condition all error 147.2.3.66
Done!
```

Log file example

The following example enables the logging of system messages to a log file in the flash memory and creates a filter to restrict the receipt of messages from the ***boot*** application to those with severity level of informational or more severe, and messages from the ***cascade*** application to those with severity level of alert or more severe.

```
G430-001(super)# set logging file enable
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging file condition boot informational
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging file condition cascade alert
Done!
```

Session log example

The following example enables a session log for a user wishing to debug the ISAKMP application, while only receiving messages of severity level error or stronger for all other applications. Therefore, the user sets the default severity level for all applications to error, and then sets the severity of the ISAKMP application to informational. Finally, the user displays the filter settings.

```
G430-001(super)# set logging session enable
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging session condition all Error
Done!
G430-001(super)# set logging session condition ISAKMP Informational
Done!
G430-001(super)# show logging session condition



*****************************************************
*** Message logging configuration of CLI sink ***

Sink Is Enabled
Sink default severity: Error
Application          ! Severity Override
-------------------------------------------
ISAKMP               ! Informational
```

Summary of Logging configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 61: Logging configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
copy syslog-file ftp	Copy the syslog file to a remote server using FTP
copy syslog-file scp	Copy the syslog file to a remote server using SCP
copy syslog-file tftp	Copy the syslog file to a remote server using TFTP
copy syslog-file usb	Upload the syslog file from the gateway to the USB mass storage device

1 of 2

Table 61: Logging configuration CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
clear logging file	Delete the message log file being stored in non-volatile memory (NVRAM), including the history log, and open a new, empty log file
clear logging server	Delete the specified Syslog message server from the Syslog server table
set logging file	Manage the logging of system messages to non-volatile memory (NVRAM)
set logging server	Define a new Syslog output server for remote logging of system messages
set logging server access-level	Set the access level associated with a Syslog server sink
set logging server condition	Set a filter for messages sent to the specified Syslog server. Messages can be filtered by source system, severity, or both.
set logging server enable \| disable	Enable or disable a specific Syslog server
set logging server facility	Define an output facility for the specified Syslog server
set logging session	Manage message logging for the current console session
show logging file condition	Display all conditions that have been defined for the file output sink
show logging file content	Output the messages in the log file to the CLI console
show logging server condition	Display the filter conditions defined for the Syslog output sink
show logging session condition	Display the filter conditions defined for message logging to the current console session

2 of 2

Chapter 9: Configuring VoIP QoS

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway provides voice services over IP data networks using VoIP. VoIP is a group of protocols for transmitting and receiving various types of voice data over an IP network. VoIP includes protocols for transmitting and receiving the following types of information:

- Digitally encoded voice data
- Call signalling information
- Call routing information
- QoS information

VoIP uses the RTP and RTCP protocols to transmit and receive digitally encoded voice data. For more information about configuring RTP and RTCP on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway, see Configuring RTP and RTCP on page 223.

You can use many types of telephones and trunks that do not directly support VoIP. The Avaya G430 Media Gateway translates voice and signalling data between VoIP and the system used by the telephones and trunks.

Configuring RTP and RTCP

VoIP uses the RTP and RTCP protocols to transmit and receive digitally encoded voice data. RTP and RTCP are the basis of common VoIP traffic. RTP and RTCP run over UDP and incur a 12-byte header on top of other (IP, UDP) headers. Running on PPP or frame relay, these protocols can be compressed.

Configuring header compression

Header compression reduces the size of packet headers, thus reducing the amount of bandwidth needed for data. The header compression method is based on the fact that most of the header fields remain constant or change in predictable ways throughout the session. Thus, instead of constantly retransmitting the header, each side keeps a context table of the sessions (the normal headers), and while sending and receiving packets it replaces the full-length headers with one or two bytes CID (context-id) plus unpredictable deltas from the last packet.

The G430 offers both RTP header compression, for reducing the amount of bandwidth needed for voice traffic, and TCP and UDP header compression, for reducing the amount of bandwidth needed for non-voice traffic.

For header compression purposes, any UDP packet with an even destination port within a user-configurable range of ports, is considered an RTP packet.

The G430 enables decompression whenever compression is enabled. However, when enabling header compression on a Frame Relay interface, you must first verify that the remote host is also employing header compression. Header compression on a Frame Relay interface does not check what the remote host is employing. Thus, it may compress headers even when the remote host is not configured to decompress headers.

You can configure how often a full header is transmitted, either as a function of time or of transmitted compressed packets.

Header compression configuration options

The G430 offers two options for configuring header compression:

- IP Header compression (IPHC) method, as defined by RFC 2507. IPHC-type compression applies to RTP, TCP, and UDP headers.
- Van Jacobson (VJ) method, as defined in RFC 1144. VJ compression applies to TCP headers only.

Note:

VJ compression and IPHC cannot co-exist on an interface, and IPHC always overrides VJ compression. Thus, if you define both VJ compression and IPHC, only IPHC is enabled on the interface regardless of the order of definition.

Table 62: Header compression support by interface

Interface type	Supported compression methods
Dialer	IPHC and VJ

Note:

Non-IETF encapsulation is compatible with other vendors.

Configuring IPHC

IHPC applies to RTP, TCP, and UDP headers.

Note:

You cannot specify IPHC for a Frame Relay non-IETF interface.

1. Optionally, configure header compression parameters. If you do not configure these parameters, their default values are used.

 - Use the **ip rtp compression-connections** command to control the number of RTP header compression connections supported on the interface. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value of 16. This command also sets the number of connections in the non-TCP space, not just RTP.
 - Use the **ip tcp compression-connections** command to control the number of TCP header compression connections supported on the interface. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value of 16.
 - Use the **ip rtp max-period** command to set the maximum number of compressed RTP headers that can be sent between full headers.
 - Use the **ip rtp max-time** command to set the maximum number of seconds between full RTP headers.
 - Use the **ip rtp non-tcp-mode** command to set the header compression mode. When set to **ietf**, the command performs IP header compression according to IPHC RFCs. When set to `non-ietf`, the command performs IP header compression compatible with other vendors, which do not strictly follow the RFCs. The default header compression mode is `non-ietf`.

 Note:

 IETF mode is not compatible with non-IETF mode.

 - Use the **ip rtp port-range** command to configure the range of UDP ports for RTP. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip rtp compression-connections 48
Done!
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip tcp compression-connections 48
Done!
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip rtp max-period 512
Done!
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip rtp max-time 20
Done!
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip rtp non-tcp-mode ietf
Done!
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip rtp port-range 40000 50000
Done!
```

2. Use the **ip rtp header-compression** command if you want to enable RTP, TCP, and UDP header compression on the current interface. The compression method employed is IPHC. Alternatively, you can use the following equivalent command:
 ip tcp header-compression iphc-format

 For example:

```
G430-001# interface dialer 1
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip rtp header-compression
Done
```

Note:

Once header compression is enabled, any change to a header compression parameter is effective immediately.

To disable IPHC on an interface, use the **no** form of the command you employed (in the interface context): **no ip rtp header-compression** or **no ip tcp header-compression**.

Summary of IPHC header compression CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 63: IPHC configuration CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Description
clear ip rtp header-compression		Clear IP RTP header compression statistics for all enabled interfaces or for a specific interface
clear ip tcp header-compression		Clear TCP header compression statistics for all enabled interfaces or for a specific interface
interface (dialer)		Enter the `Dialer` interface context
	ip rtp compression-connections	Control the number of Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) connections supported on the current interface
	ip rtp header-compression	Enable both RTP and TCP header compression on the current interface
	ip rtp max-period	Set the maximum number of compressed headers that can be sent between full headers
	ip rtp max-time	Set the maximum number of seconds between full headers
	ip rtp non-tcp-mode	Set the type of IP header compression: **ietf** or **non-ietf**

1 of 2

Table 63: IPHC configuration CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Description
	ip rtp port-range	Set the range of UDP ports considered as RTP on the current interface
	ip tcp compression-connections	Set the total number of TCP header compression connections supported on the current interface
show ip rtp header-compression		Display header compression statistics for a specific interface
show ip rtp header-compression brief		Display a subset of header compression statistics in the form of a table
show ip tcp header-compression		Display TCP header compression statistics for a specific interface
show ip tcp header-compression brief		Display a subset of TCP header compression statistics in the form of a table

2 of 2

Configuring VJ header compression

VJ header compression applies to TCP headers only.

Note:

You cannot specify VJ header compression for a Frame Relay IETF interface.

1. Optionally, use the **ip tcp compression-connections** command to control the number of TCP header compression connections supported on the interface. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value of 16 connections.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip tcp compression-connections 24
Done!
```

2. Use the **ip tcp header-compression** command to enable TCP header compression on the current interface. The compression method employed is the VJ compression.

Note:

The **ip rtp header-compression** command always overrides the **ip tcp header-compression** command. Both commands enable TCP header compression, but they differ in the methods employed.

Note:

The **ip tcp header-compression iphc-format** command always overrides the **ip tcp header-compression** command, and activates IPHC-type compression.

For example:

```
G430-001# interface dialer 1
G430-001(config-if:Dialer 1)# ip tcp header-compression
Done!
```

Note:

Once header compression is enabled, any change to a header compression parameter is effective immediately.

3. To disable VJ TCP header compression on an interface, use the **no ip tcp header-compression** command in the interface context.

Summary of Van Jacobson header compression CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 64: Van Jacobson header compression CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Description
clear ip tcp header-compression		Clear TCP header compression statistics for all enabled interfaces or for a specific interface
interface (dialer)		Enter the `Dialer` interface context
	ip tcp compression-connections	Set the total number of TCP header compression connections supported on the current interface
	ip tcp header-compression	Enable TCP header compression on the current interface
show ip tcp header-compression		Display TCP header compression statistics for a specific interface
show ip tcp header-compression brief		Display a subset of TCP header compression statistics in the form of a table

Displaying and clearing header compression statistics

For a full description of the commands and their output fields, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **show ip rtp header-compression** command to display the RTP header compression statistics for a specific interface. If no interface is specified, statistics for all interfaces are displayed.
- Use the **show ip tcp header-compression** command to display the TCP header compression statistics for a specific interface. If no interface is specified, statistics for all interfaces are displayed. Use this command regardless of which compression method is employed.
- Use the **clear ip rtp header-compression** command to clear RTP header compression statistics either for all enabled interfaces or for a specific interface. To clear RTP compression statistics for all enabled interfaces, do not enter an interface type and number. Clearing the statistics does not cause renegotiation of parameters.
- Use the **clear ip tcp header-compression** command to clear TCP header compression statistics either for all enabled interfaces or for a specific interface. To clear TCP compression statistics for all enabled interfaces, do not enter an interface type and number. Clearing the statistics does not cause renegotiation of parameters.
 Use this command regardless of which compression method is employed.

Configuring QoS parameters

The G430 uses MGCP (H.248) protocol for call signalling and call routing information. Use the following commands to configure QoS for signalling and VoIP traffic.

- Use the **set qos control** command to define the source for QoS control parameters. The source can be either `local`, in which case the user configures the values locally on the G430, or `remote`, in which case the values are obtained from the G430's registered MGC.
- Use the **set qos signal** command to provide the means to set up QoS parameters for MGCP (H.248) communication with the MGC.
- Use the **show qos-rtcp** command to display the local and downloaded QoS parameters.
- Use the **set qos bearer** command to provide the means to set up QoS parameters for the VoIP bearer.

 The parameters you define using the **set qos bearer** command may conflict with the default QoS list (400).

For more information about these commands, including parameters and default settings, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Configuring RTCP QoS parameters

Use the following commands to set the RTCP QoS parameters.

- Use the **`set qos rtcp`** command to permit the setup of RTCP parameters. The parameters that can be set are enabling or disabling RTCP reporting capability, setting the IP address of the monitor, setting the reporting period (the default is five seconds), and defining the listening port number.
- Use the **`show qos-rtcp`** command to display QoS, RSVP, and RTCP parameters.

RSVP parameters

VoIP can use the RSVP protocol to reserve network resources for voice data while communicating with other media gateways and other VoIP entities, such as, IP phones and Softphones.

- Use the **`set qos rsvp`** command to set the current values for the RSVP parameters of the VoIP engines. The parameters that can be set are enabled/disabled, refresh rate (seconds), failure retry (y or n), and service profile (Guaranteed or Controlled).
- Use the **`show qos-rtcp`** command to display QoS, RSVP, and RTCP parameters.

Summary of QoS, RSVP, and RTCP configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 65: QoS, RSVP and RTCP configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
`set qos bearer`	Permit the setting of VoIP QoS-bearer related parameters for the Media Gateway Processor and VoIP engines
`set qos control`	Define the source for QoS control parameters: `local` or `remote`
`set qos rsvp`	Set values for the RSVP parameters of the VoIP engines
`set qos rtcp`	Set values for RTCP parameters

1 of 2

Table 65: QoS, RSVP and RTCP configuration CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
set qos signal	Set QoS signaling parameters (DSCP or 802.1Q) for the Media Gateway Processor
show qos-rtcp	Display QoS, RSVP, and RTCP parameters
	2 of 2

Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ)

Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ) combines weighted fair queuing (WFQ) for data streams and priority VoIP queuing to provide the real-time response time that is required for VoIP.

WFQ is applied to data streams to provide fair bandwidth distribution among different data streams, with faster response times for shorter packets that are typical for interactive applications, such as, telnet. Priority VoIP queuing is applied to VoIP bearer and signaling traffic.

WFVQ is the default queuing mode for all FastEthernet interfaces for which traffic-shaping is enabled.

Configuring Weighted Fair VoIP Queueing (WFVQ)

- Use the **fair-queue-limit** command to specify the maximum number of packets that can be queued in the weighted fair queue. The upper and lower limits of this command depend on the amount of bandwidth configured for the interface.

 Note:

 This command should generally be used only for troubleshooting.

- Use either the **voip-queue** or the **priority-queue** command in interface context to disable WFVQ on an interface, by enabling another queuing mode.
- Use the **fair-voip-queue** command in interface context to re-enable WFVQ on an interface. WFVQ is the recommended queuing mode for interfaces.

 Note:

 The **no** form of the **fair-voip-queue** command does not exist. If you enter the command **no fair-voip-queue**, it will actually enable WFVQ if WFVQ is not already enabled.

- Use the **show queueing** command to display WFVQ configuration.

- Use the **show queue** command to display information about the real-time status of output queues for the current interface.

Summary of WFVQ configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 66: WFVQ configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (fastethernet \| dialer)		Enter the `FastEthernet` or `Dialer` interface configuration context
	fair-queue-limit	Set the maximum number of packets that can be queued in the weighted fair queue
	fair-voip-queue	Enable Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ) on the current interface
	priority-queue	Enable or disable priority queuing mode in a FastEthernet interface. If you disable priority queuing, WFVQ is re-enabled.
	show queue	Display information about the real-time status of output queues for the current interface
	voip-queue	Enable or disable custom queueing for VoIP traffic. If you disable custom queueing, WFVQ is re-enabled.
show queueing		Display the WFVG configuration

Priority queueing

Priority queuing enables you to queue packets according to the priority of each packet. There are four levels of priority. The total number of packets in all queues cannot exceed 5000.

You can enable priority queueing on the following interfaces:

- FastEthernet (L2, L2-L3) - when Traffic Shaping is configured
- Dialer (L2, L2-L3)

Priority queueing is disabled by default, since the default and recommended queueing method is WFVQ.

The high priority queue can be further split into two parts for voice traffic: control packets and bearer packets. This is called VoIP queueing. When VoIP queuing is enabled, the bearer queue size is calculated to meet the estimated queueing delay, which is 20 ms by default. You can reestimate the queueing delay, which results in a change in the bearer queue size.

Configuring priority queuing

- Use the **priority-queue** command to enable priority queuing mode in a FastEthernet interface. By default, priority queuing is off, and Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ) is enabled on all FastEthernet interfaces for which traffic-shaping is enabled. If you disable priority queuing by using the **no** form of the **priority-queue** command, WFVQ is re-enabled.
- Use the **queue-limit** command to set the size of any of the four priority queues, in packets, for a given interface or interface type. The default sizes depend on the bandwidth of the interface. Use the **no** form of the command to restore the packet size to its default value, using the interface bandwidth.
- Use the **voip-queue** command to enable VoIP queueing. If you disable VoIP queueing by using the **no** form of the voip-queue command, WFVQ is re-enabled.
- Use the **voip-queue-delay** command to set the maximum queue delay for which to estimate the high priority queue size necessary to meet the queuing delay for a specific VoIP codec.
- Use the **show queueing** command to display the queueing configuration.

Summary of priority queueing configuration CLI commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 67: Priority queueing configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (fastethernet \| dialer)		Enter the `FastEthernet`, or `Dialer` interface configuration context
	priority-queue	Enable or disable priority queuing mode in a FastEthernet interface. If you disable priority queuing, WFVQ is re-enabled.
	queue-limit	Set the size of any of the four priority queues, in packets, for a given interface or interface type
	voip-queue	Enable or disable custom queueing for VoIP traffic. If you disable custom queueing, WFVQ is re-enabled.
	voip-queue-delay	Set the maximum query delay for which to estimate the high priority queue size necessary to meet the queuing delay
show queueing		Display the priority queue configuration

Chapter 10: Configuring the G430 for modem use

You can connect a USB modem to the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. A USB modem must be connected to the USB port on the G430 chassis.

The USB port requires configuration for modem use. You can configure the port for modem use via the Avaya IW or the GIW. For details on using a modem with the G430, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

Note:

If you have an Avaya Service contract, no configuration of the USB port is necessary for Services personnel to remotely access the gateway through a USB modem.

Configuring the USB-modem interface

By default, the USB interface is enabled. Its default parameter values are:

- **`Interface status`** = up
- **`PPP timeout absolute`** = 10
- **`ppp authentication`** = ras
- **`ip address`** = 10.3.248.253 255.255.255.252

Configuring the USB port for modem use

To set the USB port's parameters, use the following commands in the `USB-modem` interface context:

- Enter **`async reset-modem`** to reset the connected modem. You can use this command from within an active PPP session over the USB modem.
- Use the **`async modem-init-string`** command to change the default modem initialization string.

- Use the **ip address** command to assign an IP address to the USB port. This is the IP address to which a remote user can connect using SSH/Telnet.

 For example, to assign the IP address 192.168.22.33 to the USB port, use the following command:

  ```
  G430-001(if:USB)# ip address 192.168.22.33 255.255.255.0
  ```

 The default IP address for the USB port is 10.3.248.253 255.255.255.252.

- Use the **ppp authentication** command to configure the authentication method used when starting a client session on the PPP server. Use this command with any of the following parameters:
 - pap. Password Authentication Protocol. An unencrypted password is sent for authentication.
 - chap. Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol. An encrypted password is sent for authentication. To configure this password, use the **ppp chap-secret** command.

 Note:

 If the G430 firmware is replaced by an earlier firmware version, the **ppp chap-secret** is erased, and must be re-configured.

 - ras. Remote Access Service mode is being used for authentication. This is the default.
 - none. No password is sent
- Use the **ppp timeout authentication** command to set the maximum time to wait for an authentication response.
- Enter **shutdown** to disconnect an active PPP session and shut down the modem.
- Use the **timeout absolute** command to set the number of minutes until the system automatically disconnects an idle PPP incoming session. By default, the timeout value is 10 minutes.
- Use the **ip peer address** command to change the IP address offered to a requesting calling host during PPP/IPCP connection establishment. By default, the interface offers its own IP address plus one.
- Use the **show interfaces usb-modem** command to display the USB-modem interface parameters, the current status of the USB port, and the identity of any USB modem connected to the USB port.

Summary of CLI commands for configuring the USB port for modem use

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 68: USB port configuration for modem use, CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface usb-modem		Enter `USB-modem` interface configuration context
	async modem-init-string	Change the default modem initialization string
	async reset-modem	Reset the connected modem
	ip address	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface
	ip peer address	Change the IP address offered to a requesting calling host during PPP/IPCP connection establishment
	ppp authentication	Configure the authentication method used when starting a client session on the PPP server
	ppp chap-secret	Configure the shared secret used in PPP sessions with CHAP authentication
	ppp timeout authentication	Set the maximum time to wait for an authentication response
	show ppp authentication	Display PPP authentication status
	shutdown	Disconnect an active PPP session and shut down the modem
	timeout absolute	Set the number of minutes until the system automatically disconnects an idle PPP incoming session
show interfaces		Display interface configuration and statistics for a particular interface or all interfaces

Chapter 11: Configuring WAN interfaces

You can use the Fast Ethernet port on the G430 chassis as the endpoint for a WAN line by configuring the FastEthernet interface for PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE). The G430 serves as a router, as well as the endpoint, for the WAN line. For more information about routing, see Configuring the router on page 421.

The G430 supports the following WAN features:

- **PPPoE**
- **Backup functionality**. Supported between any type of Layer 2 interface except the VLAN interface. For more information, see Backup interfaces on page 246.
- **Dynamic CAC**. For FastEthernet and GRE Tunnel interfaces. For more information, see Dynamic CAC on page 272.
- **Quality of Service** (QoS). The G430 uses Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ) as the default queuing mode for WAN interfaces. WFVQ combines weighted fair queuing (WFQ) for data streams and priority VoIP queuing to provide the real-time response time that is required for VoIP. The G430 also supports the VoIP Queue and Priority Queue legacy queuing methods. For more information, see Configuring Weighted Fair VoIP Queueing (WFVQ) on page 231.
- **Policy**. Each interface on the G430 can have four active policy lists:
 - **Ingress access control list**
 - **Ingress QoS list**
 - **Egress access control list**
 - **Egress QoS list**

 Access control lists define which packets should be forwarded or denied access to the network. QoS lists change the DSCP and 802.1p priority of routed packets according to the packet characteristics. For more information, see Configuring policy on page 567.

 Each interface on the G430 can also have an active policy-based routing list. For more information, see Configuring policy-based routing on page 595.
- **Header Compression**. Use of header compression reduces the size of packet headers, thus reducing the amount of bandwidth needed for data. RTP header compression enhances the efficiency of voice transmission over the network by compressing the headers of Real Time Protocol (RTP) packets, thereby minimizing the overhead and delays involved in RTP implementation. TCP header compression reduces the amount of bandwidth needed for non-voice traffic. For more information, see Configuring header compression on page 223.

Initial WAN configuration

1. Use the Fast Ethernet port on the G430 chassis as the endpoint for a WAN line by configuring this interface for PPPoE. See Configuring PPPoE on page 241.
2. Test the WAN configuration. See Verifying the WAN configuration and testing connectivity on page 245.
3. Enter **`copy running-config startup-config`** to save the configuration.

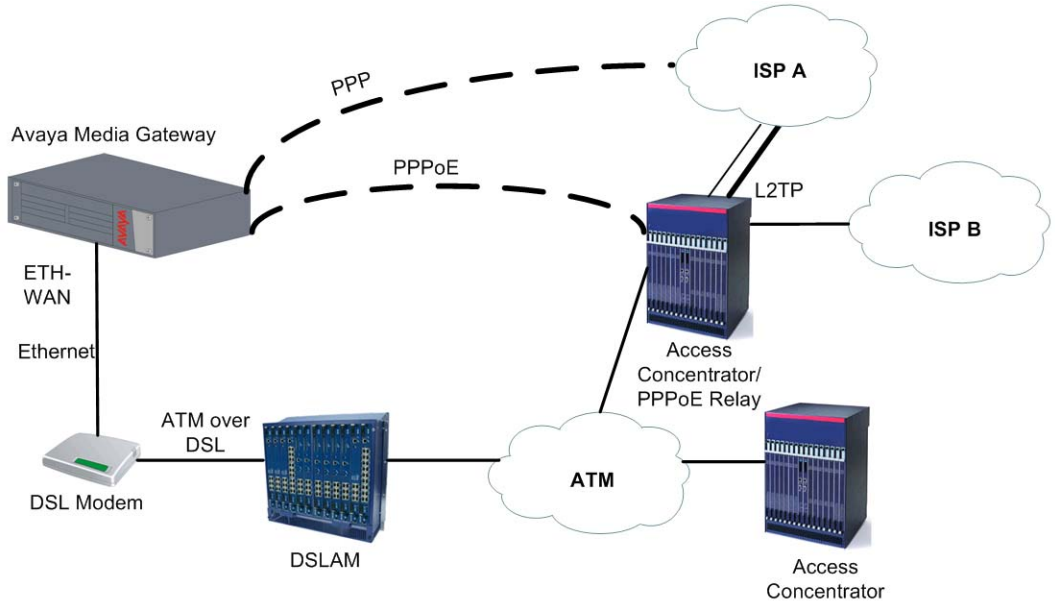
PPPoE overview

You can configure the ETH WAN Fast Ethernet port as a WAN port using PPPoE (PPP over Ethernet). PPPoE offers dialup style authentication and accounting and allows subscribers to dynamically select their ISP.

PPPoE is a client-server protocol used for carrying PPP-encapsulated data over Ethernet frames. A PPPoE client can establish a tunnel that carries PPP frames between a dialing host (the G430) and an access concentrator. This enables the use of PPP authentication protocols (CHAP and PAP). Unlike other tunneling protocols such as L2TP and PPTP, PPPoE works directly over Ethernet rather than IP.

A typical broadband access network is based on ADSL modems configured as transparent Ethernet bridges. ADSL modems use ATM protocol, and the transparent bridging is done to a well known ATM VC. On the other side of the telephone line is a device called a DSLAM. The DSLAM terminates the ADSL physical layer, collects the ATM cells from the various ADSL subscribers, and places them on the SP ATM infrastructure. The Ethernet frames from the customer’s host device can reach one or more access concentrators, which are the remote access servers.

Figure 19: Typical PPPoE Network Topology



Configuring PPPoE

1. Enter the `FastEthernet` interface context with the **`interface fastethernet 10/3`** command.
2. Enter **`encapsulation pppoe`** to change the encapsulation to PPPoE. You must change the encapsulation to PPPoE before configuring an IP address on the interface.

 Note:

 You cannot use PPPoE if:

 – An IP address must not be configured on the interface

 – Dynamic CAC is not enabled on the interface. See Dynamic CAC on page 272.

 – The interface is not part of a primary-backup interface pair. See Backup interfaces on page 246.
3. Use the **`ip address`** command to configure an IP address and subnet mask for the interface. In most cases, PPPoE tunnels require a 32-bit subnet mask.

 Alternatively, you can enter **`ip address negotiated`** to obtain an IP address via PPP/IPCP negotiation.

 Note:

 You cannot configure PPP/IPCP address negotiation if DHCP address negotiation is already configured on the interface (see Configuring DHCP client on page 196).

4. Configure an authentication method and parameters:
 - For PAP authenticating, enter **ppp pap-sent username** followed by a user name and password. For example:

```
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ppp pap-sent username avaya32 password 123456
Done!
```

 - For CHAP authentication, enter **ppp chap hostname** followed by a hostname, and **ppp chap password** followed by a password. For example:

```
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ppp chap hostname avaya32
Done!
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ppp chap password 123456
Done!
```

5. You can use the following commands to change the interface parameters:
 - **pppoe-client service-name**. Force the PPPoE client to connect only to access concentrators that support a specific service name.

 Use the **no** form of this command to deactivate connection to a specific service name. When connection to a specific service name is deactivated, the PPPoe client attempts to automatically discover the service name by initiating PADI frames with a blank service name.
 - **mtu**. Set the interface's MTU to 1492 which ensures that overall packet size for the PPPoE interface does not exceed 1500, which is the MTU for Ethernet.
 - **pppoe-client wait-for-ipcp**. Set the amount of time (in seconds) between establishment of the PPPoE tunnel and establishment of the IPCP tunnel. If this time is exceeded, the PPPoE client terminates the PPPoE tunnel.
 - **pppoe-client persistent delay**. Set the interval between pppoe-client dial attempts.
 - **pppoe-client persistent max-attempts**. Limit the number of consecutive connection establishment retires
 - **ppp chap refuse**. Prevent authentication with CHAP, even when a chap secret is configured.
 - **ppp pap refuse**. Prevent authentication with PAP, even when a pap-sent secret is configured.
 - **ppp timeout ncp**. Set the maximum time to wait for the network layer to negotiate. If this time is exceeded, the G430 restarts the PPP session.
 - **ppp timeout retry**. Set the maximum time to wait for a response during PPP negotiation.
 - **keepalive**. Enable keepalive or change the interval to which keepalive is set. When activated, keepalive performs the initial negotiation and sends health checks at defined intervals to the other side of the interface. To deactivate keepalive, use the **no** form of the command or set the health check interval to 0.

- **keepalive-track**. Bind the interface status to an object tracker. When activated, the object tracker sends health check packets at defined intervals to the other side of the interface. If the configured number of consecutive keepalive requests are not answered, the interface track state changes to down. The object tracker continues monitoring the interface, and when its track state changes to up, the interface state changes to up.
- **shutdown** followed by **no shutdown**. Resume trying to establish connections by shutting down and reopening the interface.

For example:

```
G430-001(super)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# shutdown

interface fastethernet 10/3, changed state to administratively down
Line protocol on FastEthernet 10/3, changed state to down
Done!
```

For more information on the PPoE commands, see Table 69.

6. If the G430 is connected to the Internet via the FastEthernet interface configured for PPPoE, and you define a VPN tunnel which specifies remote hosts by name, it is recommended to use the **ppp ipcp dns request** command. The command requests the list of available DNS servers from the remote peer during the PPP/IPCP session. The DNS servers are used by the DNS resolver to resolve hostnames to IP addresses.
7. Enter **exit** to return to general context. The prompt returns to:

```
G430-001(super)#
```

8. Test the configuration. See Verifying the WAN configuration and testing connectivity on page 245.
9. Enter **copy running-config startup-config** to save the configuration.
10. Optionally, shut down the port and the PPPoE client (if configured) with the **shutdown** command in the interface context.

Summary of PPPoE commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 69: PPPoE CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface fastethernet		Enter the `FastEthernet` interface context
	encapsulation pppoe	Change the encapsulation to PPPoE
	ip address	Configure an IP address and subnet mask for the interface
	ip address negotiated	Obtain an IP address via PPP/IPCP negotiation
	keepalive	Enable PPP keepalive, in order to maintain a persistent connection
	keepalive-track	Bind interface status to an object tracker to check whether the interface is up
	mtu	Set the interface's MTU to 1492, which ensures that overall packet size for the PPPoE interface does not exceed 1500, which is the MTU for Ethernet
	ppp chap hostname	Override the device hostname for PPP CHAP authentication
	ppp chap password	Set the CHAP password for authentication with a remote peer
	ppp chap refuse	Prevent the device from authenticating with CHAP after the device is requested by the remote peer
	ppp ipcp dns request	Enable or disable requesting the list of available DNS servers from the remote peer during the PPP/IPCP session
	ppp pap refuse	Prevent the device from authenticating with PAP after the device is requested by the remote peer
	ppp pap-sent username	Set the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) password for authentication with the remote peer

1 of 2

Table 69: PPPoE CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
	ppp timeout ncp	Set the maximum time, in seconds, that PPP allows for negotiation of a network layer protocol
	ppp timeout retry	Set the maximum time to wait for a response during PPP negotiation
	pppoe-client persistent delay	Set the interval between pppoe-client dial attempts
	pppoe-client persistent max-attempts	Limit the number of consecutive connection establishment retries
	pppoe-client service-name	Set the PPPoE Client service-name
	pppoe-client wait-for-ipcp	Set the amount of time (in seconds) between establishment of the PPPoE tunnel and establishment of the IPCP tunnel. If this time is exceeded, the PPPoE client terminates the PPPoE tunnel.
	shutdown	Shut down the port, and the PPPoE client, if configured

2 of 2

Verifying the WAN configuration and testing connectivity

After configuring the new interface, you can perform the following tests to verify that the new interface is operating correctly.

- For the USB-modem interface and the Fast Ethernet interface, use the **show interfaces** command to verify that all line signals are up. For example:

```
DCD = up DSR = up DTR = up RTS = up CTS = up
```

- Use the **show traffic-shape** command to view traffic shaping configuration parameters for all interfaces.
- Use the **show ip interface** command to display information about IP interfaces. To display information about a specific interface, include the name of the interface as an argument. To display information about the interface of a specific IP address, include the IP address as an argument.

- Enter **show running-config** to display the configuration running on the device.
- Enter **show startup-config** to display the configuration loaded at startup.
- Use the **ping** command to send ICMP echo request packets to another node on the network. Each node is periodically pinged and checked if an answer was received. This checks host reachability and network connectivity.

Summary of WAN configuration verification commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 70: WAN configuration verification CLI commands

Command	Description
ping	Check host reachability and network connectivity
show interfaces	Display interface configuration and statistics for a particular interface or all interfaces
show ip interface	Display information about an IP interface
show traffic-shape	Display traffic shaping configuration information

Backup interfaces

You can configure backup relations between a pair of any Layer 2 interfaces, except the VLAN interface. A backup interface is activated when the primary interface fails. The backup interface is deactivated when the primary interface is restored. A Dialer interface, FastEthernet interface, GRE tunnel interface, or Loopback interface can serve as a backup interface to a FastEthernet interface, GRE tunnel interface, or Loopback interface on the same module.

Note:

If the FastEthernet interface serving as a backup interface is configured as a DHCP client, it sends no DHCP packets. Therefore, its IP address is not renewed until it becomes the primary interface.

If the FastEthernet interface serving as a primary interface is configured as a DHCP client, the expiration of the leases on its IP address or no reception of an IP address does not cause activation of the backup interface.

Configuring backup delays

Configurable activation and deactivation delays provide a damping effect on the backup interface pair. This eliminates primary-to-backup switching in case of fluctuating underlying Layer 2 interfaces. You can configure the following backup delays with the **backup delay** command:

- ***failure delay***. The time in seconds between the primary interface going down and the backup interface activation. The default is 0 seconds. The maximum is 3600 seconds.
- ***secondary disable delay***. The time in seconds between the primary interface restoration and the backup interface deactivation. The default is 0 seconds. The maximum is 3600 seconds. Both interfaces are active during this time to enable a smooth transition for the routing protocols. To keep the backup interface active indefinitely, use ***never*** as the secondary disable delay.

For example, you can use the following command to switch over immediately to the backup interface in case of failure, and pause 60 seconds before reverting to the primary interface:

```
G430-001(super)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# backup delay 0 60
Done!
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#
```

Interface backup relations rules

- Each interface can have only one backup interface.
- A backup interface can serve as a backup for only one other interface.
- Only one member of a primary and backup pair is active at any given time. An interface is automatically deactivated when configured as backup.
- The backup implementation does not protect against the failure of both interfaces. Therefore, if a backup interface fails while active, no switch to the primary interface is attempted.

Note:

The backup interface is not activated when the primary interface is administratively disabled.

Backup commands

- Enter **backup interface**, followed by the interface type and number, to set a backup interface. You must use this command from the context of the interface for which you are setting a backup interface.
- Use the **backup delay** command to set the time to wait before switching over to the backup interface, in case of failure. You can also use this command to set a delay before reverting back to the primary interface.

 For example, the following command causes the G430 to switch immediately to the backup interface in the event of primary interface failure, and to delay 60 seconds before reverting back to the primary interface once the primary interface is restored to service:

```
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# backup delay 0 60
```

Summary of backup interfaces commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 71: Backup interfaces CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (fastethernet \|loopback\| tunnel)		Enter `FastEthernet`, `Loopback`, or `Tunnel` interface configuration context
	backup delay	Set the time to wait before switching to the backup interface, in case of failure
	backup interface	Set a backup interface for the current interface

Modem dial backup

The modem dial backup feature allows the Avaya G430 Media Gateway to utilize a modem to provide redundant connectivity between a G430 and IP phones in a small branch office and their primary Media Gateway Controller (MGC) at the headquarters or a regional branch office.

Even if the gateway has Standard Local Survivability (SLS), or Enhanced Local Survivability (ELS) using a local S8300 in LSP mode, it is always preferable to continue working with the primary MGC, since features are lost when the system is fragmented.

Analog modems have limited bandwidth and high latency, and are therefore unfit for carrying VoIP traffic. However, using Dynamic Call Admission Control (CAC), the G430 can be configured to report zero bandwidth for bearer traffic to the MGC when the primary WAN link fails. A matching configuration on the MGC allows it to block new calls, if their bearer is about to go over the modem dial backup interface, and to alert the user with a busy tone. In this case, the user is still able to place external calls manually if local PSTN trunks are available. Furthermore, Avaya Aura Communication Manager 3.0 Inter-Gateway Alternate Routing (IGAR) may be configured to become active in such a case and to use the PSTN for transporting the voice bearer transparently between the sites, transparently to the user. For information about Dynamic CAC in the G430, see Dynamic CAC on page 272. For information about IGAR, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

Modem dial backup is a generic data dial backup feature that can carry not only signalling but every type of IP traffic. However, the low bandwidth of an analog modem would be likely to cause congestion. The administrator must therefore ensure that VoIP signaling has priority over the Dialer interface. This can be performed using access control lists (ACL), QoS lists, and Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ) priority schemes. The administrator should apply these tools in both the G430 and the Remote Access Server (RAS). For information on ACL and QoS lists, see Configuring policy on page 567. For information on WFQ, see Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing (WFVQ) on page 231.

You can configure modem dial backup to dial to an enterprise-owned RAS or to the Internet via an Internet Service Provider (ISP). Most ISPs mandate the use of the internal IPSec VPN gateway process to encrypt the traffic as it goes over the Internet.

Note:

IPSec VPN adds overhead to each packet, further reducing available bandwidth.

Under ideal conditions, the bandwidth of the analog modem can reach 56 kbps for downlink (53 kbps in the US) and 33.6 kbps for uplink. However, sub-optimal PSTN quality may degrade the downlink bandwidth to 33.6 kbps, or even 28 kbps. This may not be enough to carry a single ISDN-PRI 64 kbps D-Channel for signalling over H.248 to and from the MGC, even without considering the need to support IP phones and/or analog or DCP trunks.

VoIP signaling consumes bandwidth when setting up and tearing down calls. However, calculations, testing, and field experience show that an analog modem can easily support a small branch office when the expected Busy Hour Call Completion (BHCC) is limited.

Note:

The low bandwidth and high Round-Trip-Time (RTT) of analog modems (~100 ms) may lead to acceptable changes in Post-Dial-Delay (PDD) and offhook-to-dialtone delays.

Modem dial backup uses the G430's backup interface functionality to activate the Dialer interface for modem dial backup when the primary interface fails and to deactivate the Dialer interface when the primary interface is up again. Currently, modem dial backup does not support such features as Dial On Demand Routing (DDR), callbacks, or RAS. Modem dial backup cannot receive backup calls. For more information about backup interfaces, see Backup interfaces on page 246.

Note:

You can only backup one interface with modem dialer backup.

Using the G430's backup interface functionality, you can designate the Dialer interface as the backup for the main WAN link. However, this method is not always available, since an 'up' WAN link status does not ensure connectivity, and the main WAN link may not even be directly connected to the G430.

The workaround is to use the G430's object tracking feature to verify connectivity to the primary MGC using Respond Time Reports (RTRs) and object trackers. Configure object tracking to change the state of the Loopback interface accordingly, and configure the Dialer interface as a backup to the Loopback interface. For more information about object tracking, see Object tracking on page 274.

Modem dial backup uses a modem connected directly to the G430's USB port. The modem can also be used to access the G430 CLI from a remote location. The modem cannot do both at the same time. For information about remote access to the G430 via modem, see Accessing the CLI via modem on page 40.

Finally, IP routing must be configured so that traffic to and from the site uses the Dialer interface when the primary interface is down. The Dialer interface can work both with static and dynamic routing (OSPF and RIP). Note that the latter mandates the use of unnumbered IP interfaces. For information about unnumbered IP interfaces, see Configuring unnumbered IP interfaces on page 426.

Note:

Modem dial backup has complex interactions with other configuration modules within the G430 and on your network. Before configuring modem dial-backup, Avaya recommends reading *Application Note - VoIP Network Resiliency*. This document discusses the issues of network design for maximum resiliency, capacity planning for optimum performance, configuration options for network devices, strategies for implementing routing across the network, and security concerns. Based on your existing network design, several redundancy scenarios featuring modem dial backup are available. See Modem dial backup interactions with other features on page 255 for brief discussions of the various features required for an effective backup scenario for your VoIP installation.

Note:

Modem dial backup does not support backup dial-ins or callbacks. Some backup configurations require the remote host to receive a request for connection, acknowledge, end the connection, and dial back the requester. This configuration is not supported.

Typical installations

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway was designed for small branch offices of a larger enterprise. Consequently, the same RAS may serve many branch offices, and, therefore, many G430s. A reasonable assumption is that not all branch offices would need modem dial backup at the same time. Therefore, the ratio of modem channels at the RAS to G430s at branch offices can be less than 1:1. There are several practical ways to configure the RAS server for use with modem dial backup Dialer interfaces:

- The RAS can assign an IP address to the calling G430. This requires the RAS to identify the call gateway using the PAP/CHAP username, and install an appropriate static route to the branch office subnets accordingly. The username, password, and static route can be configured in an external RADIUS/TACACS+ server.
- The RAS server can use OSPF to learn the branch office subnets. This is much simpler to configure as all branch offices can share the same username and password. The G430 is configured to advertise the branch office subnets with OSPF. This feature requires the use of unnumbered IP addresses at the G430 and the RAS. Since the Dialer and the primary interfaces are not expected to be up at the same time, the RAS server can use passive-OSPF-interface and the G430 can use static via routes.
- The G430 can call an ISP RAS (which is likely to assign it a dynamic IP address) and open an IPSec VPN tunnel to an enterprise-owned VPN gateway.

While using OSPF and calling an ISP RAS are expected to be the most common scenarios, they involve complex interaction with IP routing and the remote RAS server. For more detailed configuration examples, see *Application Note - VoIP Network Resiliency.*

Prerequisites for configuring modem dial backup

- At least one dialer string, which determines the phone number(s) of the remote modem(s) dialed by the Dialer interface
- A configured interface to be backed up
- Read/write or admin access level
- A modem: MultimodemUSB (MT5634ZBA-USB) or USRobotics USB modem (5637)
- RAS properties:
 - A dialer string
 - Authentication parameters (username, password, PAP/CHAP)
 - IP addressing (static, dynamic, or unnumbered)
 - Routing (static, RIP, or OSPF)
 - IPSec VPN, with all necessary parameters configured

Note:

Make sure policy is configured properly at the RAS server to ensure that signaling has priority over regular traffic.

For modem configuration instructions, see Configuring the G430 for modem use on page 235.

Configuring modem dial backup

1. From the general context, use the **show interfaces USB-modem** command to verify that the modem is connected. You may be required to enable the modem.
2. Enter **interface dialer**, followed by the identifier, to create the Dialer interface. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# interface dialer 1
G430-001(if:dialer 1)#
```

 The Dialer interface is created and can now be defined as a backup interface for an existing WAN interface.

3. Enter up to five dialer strings, using the **dialer string** command. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer string 1 5555555
Done!
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer string 2 1234567
Done!
```

 When the Dialer interface is activated, the Dialer first attempts to dial the number associated with dialer string 1. If that attempt fails, the Dialer attempts to connect to the number associated with the next dialer string, and so on.

4. Set the IP address of the Dialer interface with the **ip address** command.

 There are three options:

 - Manually set the IP address and subnet mask. Use this option when you know to which server the dialed string is going to connect. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# ip address 4.5.6.7 255.255.255.0
Done!
```

 - Enter **ip address negotiated**.
 - Enter **ip unnumbered *interface***, where ***interface*** is the name of another interface in the media gateway (for example, the WAN interface) from which an IP address for the Dialer interface is borrowed. Use this command when you do not know who will eventually be your peer and you want to run dynamic routing protocols (for example, OSPF or RIP) over the dialup link.

5. Enter **dialer persistent initial delay**, with the value 30 seconds, to prevent dialup after boot, before the WAN link is fully functional. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer persistant initial delay 30
Done!
```

6. If needed, set any of the following parameters:

 - Use the **dialer persistent max-attempts** command to set the maximum number of dial attempts. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer persistent max-attempts 10
Done!
```

 The Dialer interface dials each number associated with a dialer string, in order, until either a connection is made, or the number configured in the **dialer persistent max-attempts** command is reached.

 - Use the **dialer persistent re-enable** command to enable and configure a timer to re-enable dial attempts after the maximum number of dial attempts has been reached. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer persistent re-enable 3600
Done!
```

 - Use the **dialer order** command to set which dial strings are used upon a new dial trigger event. The default is to restart from the beginning of the dial list. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer order last-successful
Done!
```

 - Use the **dialer persistent** command to force the dialer to attempt to reconnect every second, or at another redial interval, which you can configure using the **dialer persistent delay** command. By default, redialing is disabled. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer persistent
Done!
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer persistent delay 10
Done!
```

 - Use the **dialer wait-for-ipcp** command to set the maximum time the dialer waits between dialing a number to successfully establishing PPP/IPCP. The default is 45 seconds. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# dialer wait-for-ipcp 100
Done!
```

7. Configure an authentication method and parameters (if required):
 - For PAP authenticating, enter **ppp pap sent-username** followed by a username and password. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# ppp pap sent-username avaya32 password 123456
Done!
```

 - For CHAP authentication, enter **ppp chap hostname** followed by a hostname, and **ppp chap password** followed by a password. For example:

```
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# ppp chap hostname avaya32
Done!
G430-001(if:dialer 1)# ppp chap password 123456
Done!
```

8. From the general context, use **show interfaces dialer 1** to verify that the Dialer interface has connected to the remote peer. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show interfaces dialer 1
Dialer 1 is down, line protocol is down
 Internet address is 4.5.6.7, mask is 255.255.255.0
 MTU 1500 bytes, Bandwidth 28 kbit
 IPSec PMTU: copy df-bit, Min PMTU is 300
 Reliability 1/255 txLoad 255/255 rxLoad 255/255
 Encapsulation PPP
 Link status trap disabled
 Keepalive track not set
 Keepalive set (10 sec)
 LCP  Starting
 IPCP Starting
 Last dialed string:
 Dial strings:
    1: 5555555
    2: 1234567
 Dialing order is sequential
 Persistent initial delay 5 sec
 Wait 45 sec for IPCP
 Weighted Fair VoIP queueing mode
 Last input never, Last output never
 Last clearing of 'show interface' counters never
 5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
```

 This command shows the interface status, including a summary of its definitions and settings. The status also tells you whether the interface is up and the dialup succeeded. In the example status, the interface is down and inactive.

9. Enter the context of the interface which the Dialer is to back up, and use the **backup interface** command to configure the Dialer interface as the backup interface. For example:

```
G430-001(if:Tunnel 1)# backup interface dialer 1
Done!
```

 Interface Dialer 1 is now selected as the backup interface to the selected interface. The Dialer interface is activated in the event of a failure of the primary interface. Upon activation, the Dialer interface dials the number associated with the first dialer string.

10. From the general context, use the **ip default-gateway dialer** command to configure backup routing.

 The following example configures a simple low priority via static route:

```
G430-001(super)# ip default-gateway dialer 1 1 low
Done!
```

Note:

It is recommended that you define multiple routes to ensure that traffic reaches the Dialer interface.

Modem dial backup interactions with other features

Optimal modem dial backup configuration is a complex undertaking, dependent on a large number of factors. For an extensive discussion of network design, capacity planning, routing configuration, device configuration, and security considerations, see *Application Note - VoIP Network Resiliency*. Device and network configuration features that need to be taken into account include:

- The **backup interface** command allows you to designate the Dialer interface as the backup to an existing WAN interface on the G430. When the G430 reports the primary WAN interface down for a specified period of time, the Dialer interface is automatically activated and the modem dials. For more information on the **backup interface** command, see Backup interfaces on page 246.
- A G430 USB port can be used to support a USB modem for dial backup. Thus, the Dialer can utilize the same USB modem that is used for remote access to the device. Asynchronous dialing and modem recognition options must be set on the USB port to support creation of the Dialer interface. For more information on configuring the USB port, see Configuring the USB port for modem use on page 235.

- The Dialer interface supports PAP and CHAP authentication for PPP connections. In addition, the Dialer interface can be configured to be a member of a VPN, allowing encryption of the modem traffic. Van Jacobsen compression is available for encrypted traffic over the Dialer interface, allowing optimal use of bandwidth. For more information on configuring PPP authentication and encryption, see PPPoE overview on page 240. For more information on heading compression, see Configuring header compression on page 223.
- It is recommended to filter traffic through the Dialer interface to permit only those packets necessary for continued interaction with the Avaya Aura Communication Manager server. Filtering can be accomplished using access control lists, which specify traffic permissible through a selected interface. For more information on configuring access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.
- Dynamic CAC can be used in conjunction with IGAR to provide a stable backup path for continued IP phone function in the event of a dial backup scenario. Dynamic CAC notifies the Avaya Aura Communication Manager server that no bandwidth is available for bearer traffic, keeping the dial circuit from becoming fully congested. IGAR provides a path for gateway-to-gateway traffic destined for a remote Avaya Aura Communication Manager server by forcing voice calls to and from the branch office to use the PSTN for bearer traffic. For more information on configuring Dynamic CAC, see Dynamic CAC on page 272. For more information on configuring IGAR, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.
- Static IP addressing for the Dialer interface may not be feasible. Dynamic IP addressing is available to enable you to connect to the remote network through an ISP. ISPs commonly provide IP addressing for connected ports on an as-needed basis. IP unnumbered links are available to supply addressing in situations where you wish to run routing over your network link without committing a subnet. For information on configuring dynamic IP addressing, see Using dynamic local peer IP on page 511. For information on configuring unnumbered IP, see Configuring unnumbered IP interfaces on page 426.
- Object tracking can be used with the Loopback interface to provide an alternative method for activating the Dialer interface when connectivity with the main office is lost. This is useful in configurations where the WAN interface is not connected directly to the G430. Use object tracking to configure RTRs to verify connectivity with the main office. If the RTR fails, the object tracker can be configured to change the status of the Loopback interface to down. If the Dialer interface is configured as the backup for the Loopback interface, the Dialer interface will automatically dial when connectivity fails. For more information about object tracking, see Object tracking on page 274.

Note:

In a situation where the same modem is used for inbound Avaya Service calls and outbound dial backup calls, only one call can be active at any time.

Note:

Refer to www.multitech.com for a listing of modem AT commands used to configure the modem directly.

Configuration example

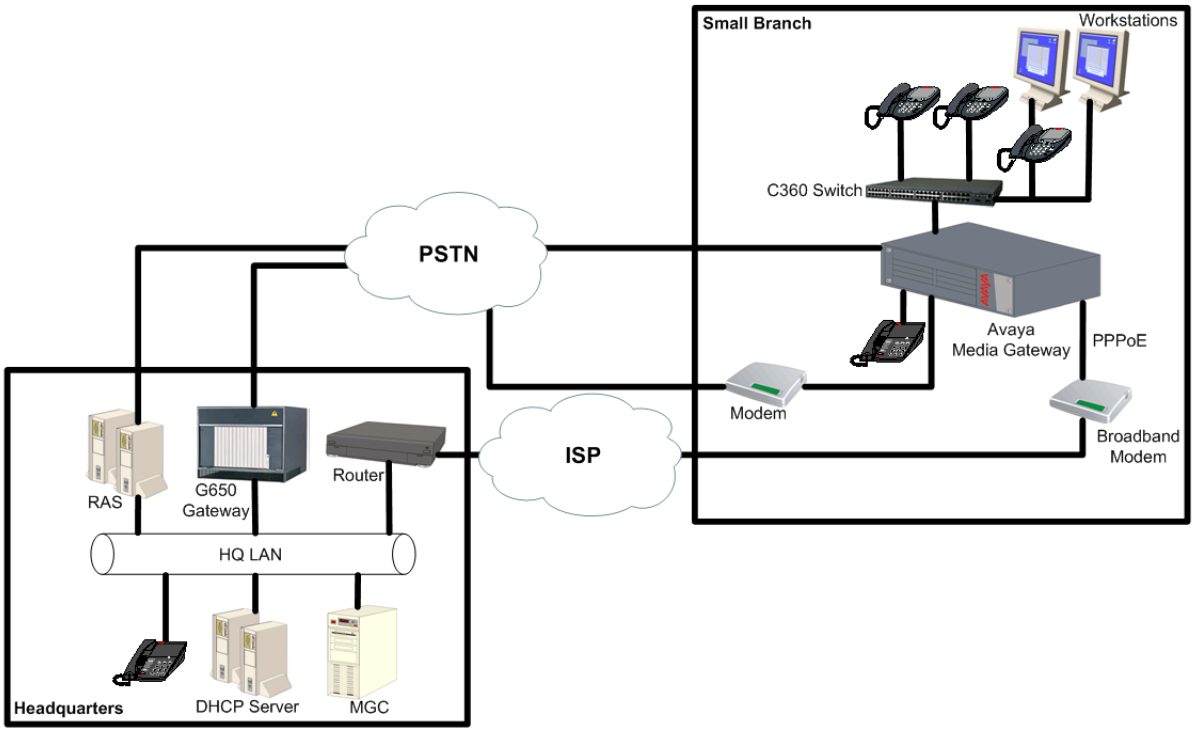
This example sets up a modem dial backup for the WAN link between a branch office and the headquarters data center. The branch office is connected to the corporate network using a G430. IP phone users in the branch office connect to an MGC located in the headquarters data center, and an RAS is located in the headquarters data center, with multiple phone lines available for dial access. The primary WAN connection is a broadband link connected to the WAN FastEthernet port. The Dialer PPP session uses CHAP encryption. The corporate network is routed using OSPF. An analog trunk connects the branch office to the PSTN for non-corporate bearer traffic.

Note:

When using a broadband modem (either xDSL or cable), it is recommended to run the VPN application.

Figure 20 shows the network topology.

Figure 20: Modem dial backup configuration example



Command sequence

```
!Step 1
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# interface loopback 1
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# ip address 149.49.4.5 255.255.255.252
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# exit
G430-001(super)#

!Step 2
G430-001(super)# ip access-control-list 305
G430-001(super-ACL 305)# name "Block-RTP-to_Modem-bkp"
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 305)# ip-rule 20
G430-001(super-ACL 305/ip rule 20)# composite-operation "Deny"
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 305/ip rule 20)# ip-protocol udp
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 305/ip rule 20)# dscp 46
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 305/ip rule 20)# description "Block-VoIP-Bearer"
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 305/ip rule 20)# exit
G430-001(super-ACL 305)# exit
G430-001(super)#

!Steps 3-10 (Each command is an individual step)
G430-001(super)# interface dialer 1
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# ppp chap hostname "area5"
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer persistent initial delay 5
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer persistent delay 5
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer string 1 3035384867
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer string 2 7325213412
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer modem-interface usb-modem
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# ip unnumbered 1 Loopback 1
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# ip access-group 305 out
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

```
!Step 11
G430-001(super)# interface usb-modem
G430-001(super-if:USB-Modem)# ppp authentication none
Done!
G430-001(super-if:USB-Modem)# no shutdown
Done!
G430-001(super-if:USB-Modem)# exit
G430-001(super)#

Step 12
G430-001(super)# interface fastethernet 10/2
G430-001(if:fastEthernet 10/2)# backup interface Dialer 1
Done!
G430-001(if:fastEthernet 10/2)# exit
G430-001(super)#

Step 13
G430-001(super)# router ospf
G430-001(super router:ospf)# network 149.49.4.4 0.0.0.3 area 0.0.0.5
Done
G430-001(super router:ospf)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

Command sequence explanation

1. Assign an IP address to the Loopback interface for use with modem dial backup using the **`interface loopback`** command. This step allows the Dialer interface to be configured as an IP unnumbered link and still participate in OSPF routing.
2. Create an access control list with the **`ip access-control-list`** command. The access control list determines which traffic is permitted to use the interface. In this example, access control list 305 is configured to block all traffic other than VoIP signalling traffic. The primary purpose of the access control list is to block bearer traffic from using the Dialer interface. The Dialer interface generally has insufficient bandwidth to support bearer traffic. For more information on configuring access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.
3. Create the Dialer interface using the **`interface dialer`** command. The Dialer interface is created and is available as a backup link for a WAN interface. Only one Dialer interface can be created on the G430.
4. Assign a PPP authentication method with the **`ppp chap hostname`** command. The Dialer interface authenticates its PPP sessions to the remote RAS server using CHAP authentication and a username of area5. The username area5 must be configured on the RAS as a legitimate user.
5. Assign an initial delay for dialing with the **`dialer persistent initial delay`** command. The initial delay prevents the Dialer from dialing out unnecessarily on reboot. The primary WAN interface often requires a few moments to register itself as up, and during that period, the initial delay prevents the device from activating the Dialer.

6. Assign a reset delay for the dialer string list using the **dialer persistent delay** command. The reset delay determines the amount of time between cycles of call attempts, once all dialer strings have been attempted.
7. Enter up to five dialer strings using the **dialer string** command. When the Dialer interface is activated, the Dialer first attempts to connect to the number associated with dialer string 1. If the connection attempt fails, the Dialer attempts to connect to the number associated with the next dialer string. These strings represent hunt group phone numbers configured on the RAS server in the headquarters data center.
8. Associate the Dialer interface with its physical port with the **dialer modem-interface** command. The Dialer interface must be configured to use a physical interface on the device to which the modem is connected. Modem dial backup is supported on the USB port.
9. Configure the modem to participate in network routing with the **ip unnumbered** command. An unnumbered interface uses the IP address of the interface configured in the command. In this example, the Loopback interface has been created for the Dialer interface to use its IP information. This IP information allows the unnumbered interface to forward and receive IP traffic without actually assigning a static IP address to the Dialer interface.
10. Assign an access control list to the Dialer interface using the **ip access-group** command. All traffic passing through the Dialer interface must meet the conditions of the access control list associated with this access group or be rejected. In this example, the access-group references access control list 305, which is created to block all outgoing traffic across the Dialer interface other than the VoIP signalling traffic between the branch office gateway and the MGC in the headquarters data center.
11. Configure the USB port to support the modem with the **interface usb-modem** command. For more information on configuring the USB-modem interface to support modems, see Configuring the G430 for modem use on page 235.
12. Assign the Dialer interface to the interface you want to back up with the **backup interface dialer** command. In this example, interface Dialer 1 is selected as the backup interface to interface FastEthernet 10/2, the primary WAN connection to the headquarters network. The Dialer activates in the event of a failure of the FastEthernet port and all permitted traffic transverses the Dialer interface. For more information on backing up WAN interfaces, see Backup interfaces on page 246.
13. Configure the Loopback interface to participate in the OSPF network using the **router ospf** command. In this example, a group of branch offices are assigned to OSPF area 5. This configuration allows filtering to take place at the border points and minimizes topology updates on the headquarters data center routers. For more information on configuring OSPF routing, see Configuring OSPF on page 469.

Modem dial backup maintenance

The G430 generates specific log messages for Dialer interface activity when configured to do so. Certain dialer-related log messages are generated to aid you in troubleshooting problems with modem dial backup. In addition, messages generated by the modem and the PPP session are available to help with troubleshooting modem dial backup issues.

Activating session logging

To activate session logging for modem dial backup functions, type the following commands. Logging messages will be sent to the terminal screen.

- **`set logging session condition dialer information`**
- **`set logging session condition usb-modem information`**
- **`set logging session condition ppp information`**

Note:

Not all logging messages indicate problems. Some are generated to provide information on normal working activity of the Dialer interface. For more information on logging configuration, see Configuring logging on page 207.

Note:

Syslog and log file logging are also available. See Configuring logging on page 207.

Setting the severity level of the logging session

The **`set logging`** commands must include a severity level. All logging messages with the specified severity and higher are displayed. The following are the available severity levels:

- **Information**. This message is for informational purposes and requires no action on your part.
- **Debug**. This message provides information that can be useful in debugging certain problems, but requires no action itself.
- **Warning**. This message indicates a condition requiring user intervention and troubleshooting.

Table 72: Modem dial backup logging messages

Log Message	Severity	Possible cause	Action
Dialer Messages – Messages generated by the Dialer interface			
Dialer 1 state is <*state*>	Debug	The Dialer interface generates a message when a change in its operational state has been detected. The default state for the Dialer interface when it is used as a backup interface for a WAN link is Standby. When the primary WAN link has failed and the backup interface mechanism is invoked, the state of the Dialer interface changes to Up.	None required.
Dialer 1 trigger is <*on/off*>	Informational	In a modem dial backup scenario, the event triggering the Dialer interface is a failure of the primary WAN interface for which the Dialer interface has been configured as the backup interface. When the primary WAN interface has been determined to be down, a message is sent indicating the occurrence of the triggering event for the Dialer. When the primary WAN interface is returned to an operational state, a message is generated indicating that the conditions for triggering the Dialer are no longer being met, and that the Dialer can be brought down.	None required.

1 of 5

Table 72: Modem dial backup logging messages (continued)

Log Message	Severity	Possible cause	Action
Dialer 1 string <*string_ID*> <*dialer_string*>	Informational	The value of <*string_ID*> is equal to the ID of the string configured using the dialer string command. The value of <*dialer_string*> is equal to the phone number associated with the dialer string. For example, if you configured dialer string 3 to associate with the phone number 5551314, and the modem is attempting to connect using dialer string 3, the message received would be `Dialer 1 string 3 5551314`.	None required.
Dialer 1 timer expired	Debug	When the Dialer interface is configured with the dialer persistent re-enable command, a timer is created. This timer determines when the Dialer interface attempts to begin dialing again after a failure to connect in as many attempts as were configured in the dialer persistent max-attempts command. For example, if you configured the value of dialer persistent max-attempts as 10, and dialer persistent re-enable is configured for the Dialer interface, after the Dialer has made ten unsuccessful attempts to connect to the remote modem, the timer begins. When the timer expires, the Dialer 1 timer expired message is sent, and the Dialer begins attempting to connect to the remote modem again.	None required.

2 of 5

Table 72: Modem dial backup logging messages (continued)

Log Message	Severity	Possible cause	Action
Dialer 1 Modem is not ready	Warning	This message is generated when the Dialer interface has been triggered and the operational state of the Dialer is up, but the Dialer is unable to communicate with the modem.	Troubleshooting steps: • Check modem cable connection to port. • Check modem cable connection to modem. • Check power to modem.
USB Modem Messages – Messages generated by a USB modem			
USB modem was detected	Informational	When the USB modem is discovered by the device and the initialization string is successful, a message is generated indicating that the device is ready to dial.	None required.
USB modem - Connection established	Informational	When the USB modem successfully connects to a remote modem and a PPP session is fully established, a message is sent indicating that the PPP is ready to transmit and receive traffic.	None required.
USB modem - Unplugged	Warning	This message is generated when a modem cable is connected to the USB port, but no modem is detected.	Troubleshooting steps: • Check modem cable connection to modem and to USB port and reseat if necessary.
USB modem - Initialization string error	Warning	This message is generated when the USB modem attempts to dial and has an incorrect initialization string. The attempt to dial fails.	Troubleshooting steps: • Check modem configuration for proper initialization string.

Table 72: Modem dial backup logging messages (continued)

Log Message	Severity	Possible cause	Action
PPP Messages – Messages generated by the PPP session			
LCP Up/Down	Informational	LCP is used by PPP to initiate and manage sessions. LCP is responsible for the initial establishment of the link, the configuration of the session, the maintenance of the session while in use, and the termination of the link. LCP is considered Up when the link is being established and configured, and is considered down once the session is fully established and passing traffic. LCP then comes up to pass Link Maintenance packets during the session, and goes down after the maintenance is complete. LCP comes up when a termination request is sent, and goes down when the link is terminated.	None required.
PAP passed/failed	Debug	This message is sent when the authenticating station responds to the PAP authentication request.	None required.
CHAP passed/failed	Debug	This message is sent when the authenticating station responds to the CHAP authentication request.	None required.

4 of 5

Table 72: Modem dial backup logging messages (continued)

Log Message	Severity	Possible cause	Action
IPCP Up/Down	Debug	PPP uses IPCP to define the IP characteristics of the session. IP packets cannot be exchanged until IPCP is in the Up state.	None required.
IPCP IP reject	Warning	This message is generated when IPCP attempts to define the IP characteristics for a PPP session, but does not have the IP address of the local interface to define the session. Without IP address information on both sides of the session, the PPP session cannot begin passing IP traffic.	Troubleshooting steps: • Check Dialer interface configuration to ensure an IP address is configured, either as a static address or through Dynamic IP addressing or through IP unnumbered.

5 of 5

Summary of modem dial backup commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 73: Modem dial backup CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface dialer		Enter the `Dialer` interface configuration context
	dialer modem-interface	Associate a Dialer with a modem interface
	dialer order	Set which dial strings are used upon a new dial trigger event
	dialer persistent	Force the Dialer to attempt to reconnect every second
	dialer persistent delay	Set the redial interval
	dialer persistent initial delay	Set the minimum delay from boot to persistent dialing
	dialer persistent max-attempts	Set the number of consecutive dial attempts for the dial list
	dialer persistent re-enable	Set the persistent re-enable timer after the maximum number of dial attempts has been reached
	dialer string	Add a phone number to the dial list
	dialer wait-for-ipcp	Set the maximum time the Dialer waits between dialing a number to successfully establishing PPP/IPCP
	ip address	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface
	ip address negotiated	Enable obtaining an IP address via PPP/IPCP negotiation
	ip unnumbered	Configure an interface to borrow an IP address from another interface

1 of 2

Table 73: Modem dial backup CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
	ppp ipcp dns request	Enable requesting DNS information from the remote peer during the PPP/IPCP session
interface (fastethernet\|loopback\|tunnel)		Enter the `FastEthernet`, `Loopback`, or `Tunnel` interface configuration context
	backup interface dialer	Set the Dialer interface as the backup interface for the current interface
ip default-gateway diale		Define a default gateway (router)
router ospf		Enable OSPF protocol on the system and to enter the Router configuration context
set logging session		Manage message logging for the current session
show interfaces		Display interface configuration and statistics for a particular interface or all interfaces
		2 of 2

ICMP keepalive

The ICMP keepalive feature, formerly known as extended keepalive, is available for WAN FastEthernet interfaces. ICMP keepalive is a mechanism for determining if a certain IP address is reachable. The source interface sends test packets (ping) and waits for a response. If no response is received after a certain number of tries, the connection is declared to be down.

This feature provides a quick means to determine whether the interface is up or down. This is especially important for policy-based routing, in which it is important to determine as quickly as possible whether the next hop is available. See Configuring policy-based routing on page 595.

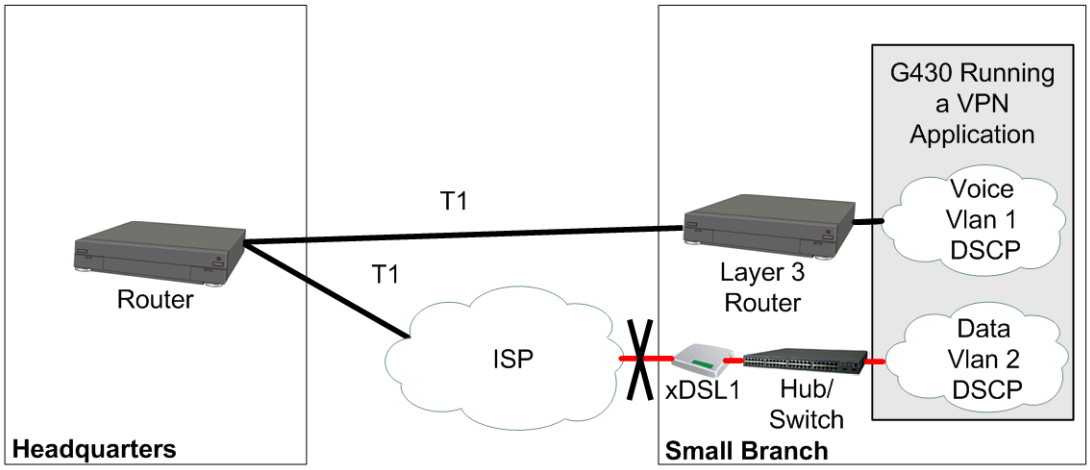
Note:

ICMP keepalive has been replaced by the object tracking feature, which supports keepalive probes over WAN, FastEthernet, Loopback, PPPoE, and Dialer PPP interfaces. ICMP keepalive is still supported for backward compatibility. For information about object tracking, see Object tracking on page 274.

Normal keepalive is sufficient for testing the status of a direct connection between two points. However, in many situations, the system needs to know the status of an entire path in order to ensure that packets can safely traverse it.

ICMP keepalive is a mechanism that reports on the status of an IP address *and its next hop*. The destination interface is only declared to be alive if the next hop is also reachable. This feature is critical for mechanisms such as policy-based routing that must guarantee service on a particular path.

Figure 21: G430 with T1 and xDSL lines



For example, your branch office may have a G430 that connects to an external router which connects to Headquarters over a T1 line and via an xDSL connection to the Internet. The T1 line is used for voice traffic, while data packets are sent over the xDSL line. If the Fast Ethernet line protocol is up but the xDSL connected to it is down, then ICMP keepalive, which checks the next hop, correctly reports that the WAN path is down. Policy-based routing, which relies on the interface status to determine how packets are routed, can use ICMP keepalive to know the status of the interfaces on its next hop list.

Note:

ICMP keepalive is not used with a GRE Tunnel interface. The GRE tunnel has its own keepalive mechanism. For details, see Configuring GRE tunneling on page 433.

Note:

You cannot configure both DHCP Client and ICMP keepalive on the WAN FastEthernet interface. For details on DHCP Client see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

Enabling the ICMP keepalive feature

Use the **keepalive-icmp** command in the context of the interface to enable the ICMP keepalive feature. Use the **no** form of this command to deactivate the feature.

The **keepalive-icmp** command includes the following parameters:

- ***destination ip address***. The destination IP address for the keepalive packets.
- ***next hop MAC address***. The next hop MAC address for the keepalive packets. This parameter is only relevant for the WAN Fast Ethernet port.

Defining the ICMP keepalive parameters

Use the following commands to define the ICMP keepalive parameters. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **keepalive-icmp timeout** command to set the timeout (in seconds) for receiving the keepalive response. The default value is 1.
- Use the **keepalive-icmp success-retries** command to set the number of consecutive successful keepalive packets necessary to set the interface's keepalive status as up. The default value is 1.
- Use the **keepalive-icmp failure-retries** command to set the number of consecutive failed keepalive packets necessary to set the interface's keepalive status as down. The default value is 4.
- Use the **keepalive-icmp interval** command to set the interval (in seconds) between keepalive packets. The default value is 5.
- Use the **keepalive-icmp source-address** command to set the source IP address of the keepalive packets. The default value is the interface's primary IP address.
- Enter **show keepalive-icmp** to display the interface's ICMP keepalive status and parameters.

Example of configuring ICMP keepalive

The following example configures ICMP keepalive on interface fastethernet 10/3 to send keepalive packets to IP address 135.64.2.12 using MAC address 11.22.33.44.55.66, at five second intervals. If a response is not received within one second, the keepalive packet is considered to have failed. After three consecutive failed packets, the interface is declared to be down. After two consecutive successful packets, the interface is declared to be up.

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# keepalive-icmp 135.64.2.12
11.22.33.44.55.66
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# keepalive-icmp interval 5
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# keepalive-icmp timeout 1
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# keepalive-icmp failure-retries 3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# keepalive-icmp success-retries 2
Done!
```

Summary of ICMP keepalive configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 74: ICMP keepalive CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface fastethernet		Enter the FastEthernet interface configuration context
	keepalive-icmp	Enable the ICMP keepalive mechanism on an interface
	keepalive-icmp failure-retries	Set the number of consecutive failed keepalive packets necessary to set the interface's keepalive status as down
	keepalive-icmp interval	Set the interval (in seconds) between keepalive packets
	keepalive-icmp source-address	Set the source IP address of the keepalive packets
	keepalive-icmp success-retries	Set the number of consecutive successful keepalive packets necessary to set the interface's keepalive status as up

1 of 2

Table 74: ICMP keepalive CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
	keepalive-icmp timeout	Set the timeout (in seconds) for receiving the keepalive response
	show keepalive-icmp	Display information about the extended keepalive settings
		2 of 2

Dynamic CAC

Dynamic Call Admission Control (CAC) provides enhanced control over WAN bandwidth. When Dynamic CAC is enabled on an interface, the G430 informs the MGC of the actual bandwidth of the interface and instructs the MGC to block calls when the bandwidth is exhausted.

Dynamic CAC is especially useful in situations where a primary link is down and a backup link with less bandwidth than the primary link is active in its place. Without dynamic CAC, the MGC is unaware that the interface has switched over to the backup link. Thus, the MGC is unaware of the resulting changes in network topology and bandwidth available for the interface. Consequently, the MGC might allow calls through the interface that require more than the currently available bandwidth.

Note:

Dynamic CAC works in conjunction with the Avaya Aura Communication Manager Call Admission Control: Bandwidth Limitation (CAC-BL) feature. A related feature is Inter-Gateway Alternate Routing (IGAR), which provides a mechanism to re-route bearer traffic from the WAN to the PSTN under certain configurable conditions. For more information on CAC-BL and IGAR, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

You can enable dynamic CAC on the following interface types:

- **FastEthernet**
- **GRE Tunnel**
- **VLAN**

Note:

Since VLAN interfaces are always up, configuring dynamic CAC on a VLAN interface provides a means to have a default dynamic CAC bandwidth.

Enabling dynamic CAC and setting maximum bandwidth

Use the **dynamic-cac bbl** command in interface context to enable dynamic CAC on the interface and set the maximum bandwidth for the interface. The **dynamic-cac bbl** command includes the following parameters:

- ***bbl***. The bearer bandwidth limit (kbps). The MGC enforces this as the maximum bandwidth for the interface. If you set the bbl to 0, the interface can only be used for signalling.
- ***activation priority*** (optional). If dynamic CAC is activated on more than one active interface, the G430 reports the bearer bandwidth limit of the interface with the highest activation priority. You can set the activation priority to any number from `1` to `255`. The default activation priority is `50`.

The following example sets dynamic CAC on FastEthernet interface 10/3, with a bearer bandwidth limit of 128 and an activation priority of 100:

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# dynamic-cac 128 100
```

Displaying bandwidth information

Use the **show dynamic-cac** command to display bandwidth information about the interface. The **show dynamic-cac** command displays the following information:

- **Current RBBL**. The current actual bandwidth available on the interface.
- **Last event**. The amount of time since the most recent update by the CAC process.
- **Last event BBL**. The interface's bandwidth at the time of the most recent update by the CAC process.

Note:

Dynamic CAC also requires configuration of the Avaya Aura Communication Manager. For details, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

Summary of dynamic CAC configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 75: Dynamic CAC CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (dialer\|loopback\| fastethernet\| tunnel\|vlan)		Enter the `Dialer`, `Loopback`, `FastEthernet`, `Tunnel`, or `VLAN` interface configuration context
	dynamic-cac	Enable the ICMP keepalive mechanism on the current interface
show dynamic-cac		Display information about the most recent dynamic CAC event

Object tracking

With the Object tracking feature, you can track the state (up/down) of various objects in the system using keepalive probes, and notify registered applications when the state changes. In particular, object tracking is used to monitor Interface states and routes states, where routes can be static routes, the DHCP client default route, or PBR next hops.

The purpose of object tracking is to track the state (up/down) of various objects in the system using keepalive probes, and notify registered applications when the state changes. Configuring object tracking is a two-stage operation:

- The first stage is to define Respond Time Reports (RTRs), the basic building blocks of object tracking. RTRs actively monitor the reachability state of remote devices by generating probes at regular intervals. Each RTR, identified by a unique number, monitors one remote device, and learns the state of the device: up or down. The state of the RTR reflects the state of the device it is monitoring – either up or down.

- The second stage consists of defining *Object Trackers* using RTRs. The definition of object trackers is recursive. A simple object tracker monitors a single RTR, and its state directly reflects the state of the RTR. A more advanced object tracker is a track list, which is composed of multiple simple object trackers. The state of the track list is calculated based on the states of the objects in the list. Because a track list is itself an object tracker, the objects in a track list can be previously-defined track lists.

 You can view a track list as monitoring the “health” of an entire group of remote devices. You can define how to calculate the overall health of the group based on the health (up/down) state of each individual device. For example, you can specify that the overall state is up only if all remote devices are up, or if at least one device is up. Alternatively, you can base the overall state on a threshold calculation.

Using object tracking, different applications can register with the tracking process, track the same remote device(s), and each take different action when the state of the remote device(s) changes.

Object tracking configuration

1. Configure RTRs to monitor remote devices and learn their state (up or down). Each RTR has a state: inactive (not running), up (the remote device is considered up), or down (the remote device is considered down).
2. Configure object trackers to track the states of RTRs. Each object tracker calculates its own state (up or down) based on the states of the elements it is tracking.
 Whenever the state of an object tracker changes, it notifies the applications registered with it.

 An object tracker calculates its own state as follows:

 - For an object tracker tracking a single RTR:
 - If the state of the RTR is up, the state of the object tracker is up.
 - If the state of the RTR is inactive or down, the state of the object tracker is down.
 - A track list applies a configurable formula (using a Boolean or a Threshold calculation) to the states of the objects comprising the list, and the result (up/down) is the state of the track list. For example, if the configured formula is the Boolean AND argument, then the state of the list is up if the state of all its objects is up, and down if the state of one or more of its objects is down.

Note:

You can register either a VPN tunnel or an interface with an object tracker. For more information see the definition of the **`keepalive-track`** command in the *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Note:

You cannot configure both DHCP Client and object tracking on the same WAN FastEthernet interface. You can however configure tracking on the DHCP client default route. For more information on DHCP Client see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

Configuring RTR

For each remote device whose state you wish to monitor:

1. Enter **rtr**, followed by a number from 1 to 30, to create the RTR. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# rtr 5
G430-001(config-rtr 5)#
```

2. Use the **type** command to specify the remote device by address, and specify the probing method to be employed by the RTR probe: ICMP Echo or TCP Connection.
 If you specify a TCP Connection operation, specify also which port to probe in the remote device. For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr 5)# type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.0.0.1
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)#
```

 Or

```
G430-001(config-rtr 5)# type tcpConnect dest-ipaddr 147.42.11.1 dest-port
80
G430-001(config-rtr tcp 5)#
```

3. Optionally, use the **frequency** command to specify the frequency at which RTR probes are sent. If you do not configure this parameter, the default value of five seconds is used. For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# frequency 2 seconds
Done!
```

4. Optionally, use the **dscp** command to set the DSCP value in the IP header of the probe packet, thus setting the packets' priority. If you do not configure this parameter, the default value of 48 is used. For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# dscp 43
Done!
```

5. Optionally, use the **next-hop** command to specify the next-hop for the RTR probe, and bypass normal routing. The **next-hop** command is disabled by default.

 Use the **next-hop** command when the G430 is connected to a remote device via more than one interface, and you wish to monitor the state of one specific interface. When you specify the next-hop as the interface you wish to monitor, you ensure that the RTR will probe that interface.

 When the RTR is used to monitor a static route, a PBR next hop, or the DHCP client default route, you must specify the same next-hop for the RTR. This ensures it will be sent over the next hop it should monitor.

 If the interface is an Ethernet interface (FastEthernet not running PPPoE) or VLAN interface, specify also the interface's MAC address. For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
mac-address 00:01:02:03:04:05
Done!
```

6. Optionally, use the **source-address** command to specify a source IP address, instead of using the output interface's address. By default, the **source-address** command is disabled, and RTR probes use the output interface's address.

 Use the **source-address** command when you are probing a device located on the Internet, and specify as the source-address the G430 public IP address. For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# source-address 135.64.102.5
Done!
```

7. Optionally, configure the RTR parameters that determine when the state of the remote device is considered up or down. If you do not configure these characteristics, their default values are used:

 - Use the **wait-interval** command to specify how long to wait for a response from the device. When the wait-interval is exceeded, the probe is considered an unanswered probe. The default value is the current value of **frequency**.
 - Use the **fail-retries** command to specify how many consecutive unanswered probes change the state of an RTR from up to down. The default value is 5.

Note:

When an RTR starts running, its state is considered up.

- Use the **success-retries** command to specify how many consecutive answered probes change the state of an RTR from down to up. The default value is 5.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# wait-interval 2 seconds
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# fail-retries 3
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# success-retries 1
Done!
```

8. Exit the RTR type context, and activate the RTR with the **rtr-schedule** command.

Note:

To deactivate the RTR, use the **no rtr-schedule** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# exit
G430-001(config)# rtr-schedule 5 start-time now life forever
```

Note:

Once an RTR's probing method and remote device address is configured, you cannot change them. If you exit the RTR type context and you want to modify the configuration of the RTR, you can enter the RTR context using the **rtr** command and specifying the RTR ID. From the RTR context, you can run the various modification commands described in steps 3 to 7.

Configuring object tracking

To configure object tracking, you must first configure at least one simple object tracker, that is, an object tracker that tracks a single RTR. If you wish, you can then configure a track list which contains multiple simple object trackers and specifies how to calculate the overall state of the list. Note that a track list is itself an object tracker. Therefore, you can configure track lists containing object trackers which are either simple object trackers, or other track lists.

Configuring a simple object tracker

1. Use the **track *id* rtr** command to specify the RTR to be tracked. Enter a number from 1 to 50 as the unique ID for this object tracker. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# track 1 rtr 5
G430-001(config-track rtr 1)#
```

2. Use the **description** command to enter a description for the object tracker. For example:

```
G430-001(config-track rtr 1)# description "track rtr-5"
Done!
```

Configuring a track list

1. Use the **track *id* list** command to enter track list configuration mode, to specify the unique ID of the track list (from 1 to 50), and to specify how to calculate the state of the track list. The calculation can be either a Boolean or a Threshold calculation.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config)# track 10 list boolean or
G430-001(config-track list 10)#
```

 Or

```
G430-001(config)# track 10 list threshold count
G430-001(config-track list 10)#
```

 Note:

 If you do not specify how to calculate the state of the track list, it is calculated by default using the Boolean AND argument. This means that the list is up if all objects are up, and down if one or more of the objects are down.

2. Use the **description** command to enter a description for the track list. For example:

```
G430-001(config-track list 10)# description "track list rtr-5 and rtr-6"
Done!
```

3. Use the **object** command to add an object tracker to the list.

 Note:

 The object tracker can be a simple one tracking a single RTR, or a track list. For example:

```
G430-001(config-track list 10)# object 1
Done!
```

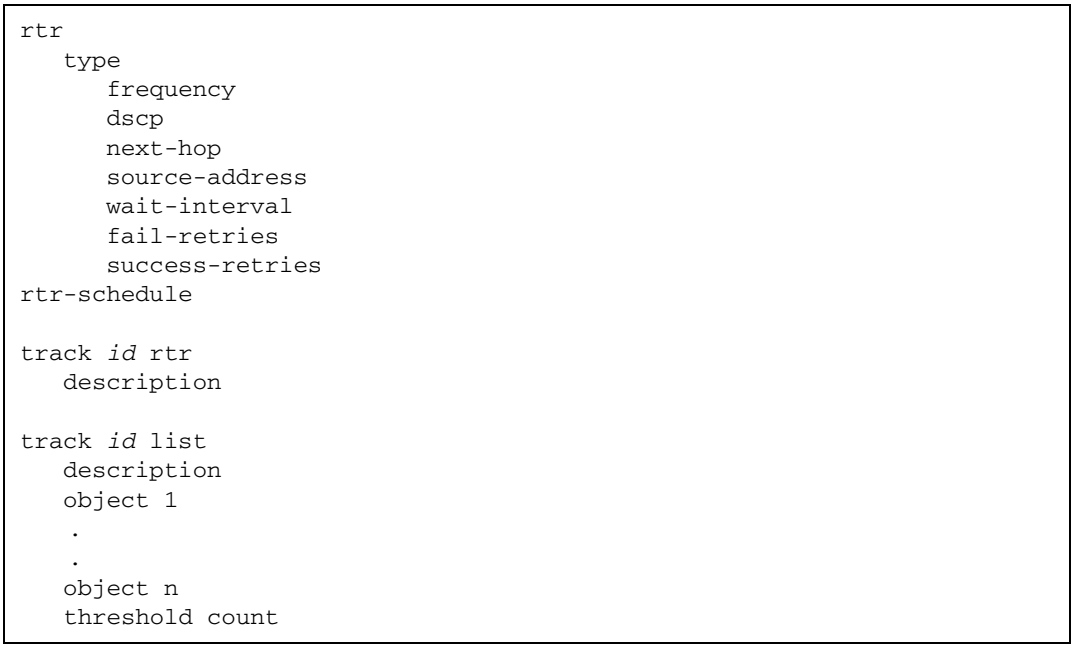
4. Repeat step 3 to add as many object trackers as you require, up to a maximum of 50.
5. If you specified a Threshold method of calculation in step 1, use the **threshold count** command to enter the threshold values. For example, use the following command to specify that:
 - The state of the object tracker will change from down to up if 2 or more hosts are up, and
 - The state of the object tracker will change from up to down if 1 or less hosts are up

```
G430-001(config-track list 10)# threshold count up 2 down 1
Done!
```

Note:

Object trackers operate indefinitely once they are defined. To stop the operation of an object tracker, use the **no track** command to delete the object tracker.

Figure 22: Object tracking configuration workflow



Object tracking maintenance

Using the **show** commands, you can display RTR and Object Tracking configuration, and enable RTR and object tracking logging to a CLI terminal.

- Use the **show rtr configuration** command to display RTR configuration values, including all defaults, for a specific RTR operation or for all RTR operations.
- Use the **show rtr operational-state** command to display the global operational status of the RTR feature, for a specific RTR operation or for all RTR operations.
- Use the **show track** command to display tracking information.

Viewing RTR and object trackers logging

1. Enter **set logging session enable** to enable logging to the CLI terminal. For example:

```
G430-001# set logging session enable
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session enable
```

2. Use the **set logging session condition saa** to view all RTR messages of level Info and above. For example:

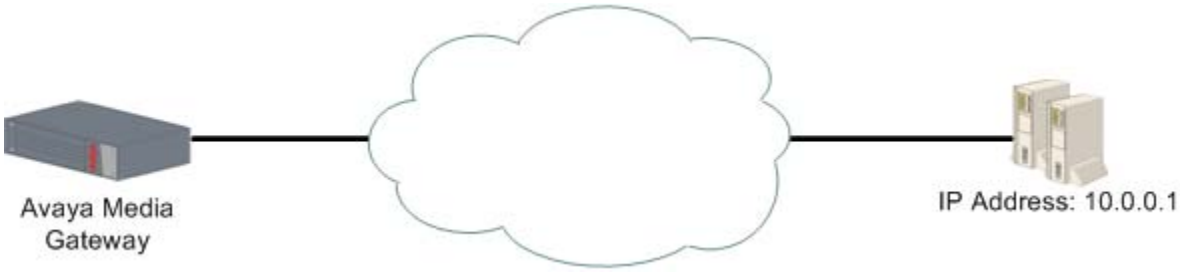
```
G430-001# set logging session condition saa Info
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session condition saa Info
```

3. Use the **set logging session condition tracker** command to view all object tracker messages of level Info and above. For example:

```
G430-001# set logging session condition tracker Info
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session condition tracker Info
```

Example of tracking a single remote device

Figure 23: Tracking a single remote device



1. The first step is to configure an RTR which tracks a remote device. In this case, RTR 5 is configured to track the device at IP address 10.0.0.1. For example:

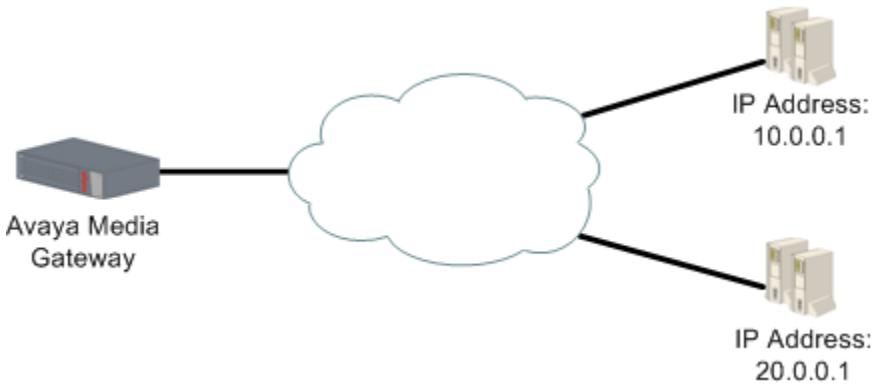
```
G430-001(config)# rtr 5
G430-001(config-rtr 5)# type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.0.0.1
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# wait-interval 2 seconds
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# fail-retries 3
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# success-retries 1
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# exit
G430-001(config)# rtr-schedule 5 start-time now life forever
```

2. The second step is to configure an object tracker which tracks the state of RTR 5. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# track 1 rtr 5
G430-001(config-track rtr 1)# description "track rtr-5"
Done!
G430-001(config-track rtr 1)# exit
```

Example of tracking a group of devices

Figure 24: Tracking multiple remote devices



1. The first step is to configure several RTRs. In this case, RTR 5 tracks the device at IP address 10.0.0.1, and RTR 6 tracks the device at IP address 20.0.0.1. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# rtr 5
G430-001(config-rtr 5)# type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.0.0.1
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# wait-interval 2 seconds
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# fail-retries 3
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# success-retries 1
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr icmp 5)# exit
G430-001(config)# rtr-schedule 5 start-time now life forever


G430-001(config)# rtr 6
G430-001(config-rtr 6)# type tcpConnect dest-address 20.0.0.1 dest-port
80
G430-001(config-rtr tcp 6)# frequency 500 milliseconds
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr tcp 6)# dscp 34
Done!
G430-001(config-rtr tcp 6)# next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
mac-address 00:01:02:03:04:05
Done!
G430-001(config)# rtr-schedule 6 start-time now life forever
G430-001(config-rtr tcp 6)# exit
```

2. The second step is to configure several object trackers. In this case, object tracker 1 tracks the state of RTR 5, and object tracker 2 tracks the state of RTR 6. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# track 1 rtr 5
G430-001(config-track rtr 1)# description "track rtr-5"
Done!
G430-001(config-track rtr 1)# exit

G430-001(config)# track 2 rtr 6
G430-001(config-track rtr 2)# description "track rtr-6"
Done!
G430-001(config-track rtr 2)# exit
```

3. The third step is to configure a track list object tracker which tracks the states of object trackers 1 and 2, and calculates its own state using a boolean or threshold calculation.

 In this case, a Boolean OR argument is used. This means that the track list is up if **either** object tracker 1 **or** object tracker 2 is up. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# track 10 list boolean or
G430-001(config-track list 10)# description "track list rtr-5 and rtr-6"
Done!
G430-001(config-track list 10)# object 1
Done!
G430-001(config-track list 10)# object 2
Done!
G430-001(config-track list 10)# exit
```

Typical object tracking applications

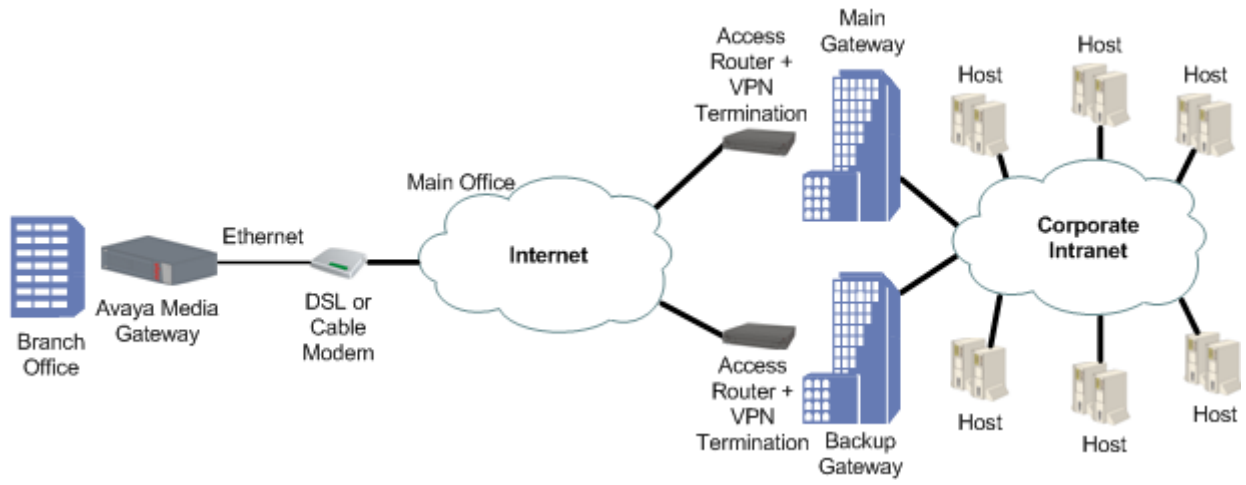
- Trigger the failover mechanism for VPN. See Typical application – VPN failover using object tracking on page 285.
- Trigger the failover mechanism for interfaces. See Typical application – backup for the WAN FastEthernet interface on page 285, and Typical application – interface backup via policy-based routing on page 288.
- Track the state of a route: a static route, a PBR next hop, or the DHCP client default route. For an example of how to track the DHCP client default route, see Typical application – tracking the DHCP client default route on page 289.

Typical application – VPN failover using object tracking

In this application, the G430 is connected to a remote site through an IPSec VPN tunnel. The remote site can be reached through two or more VPN gateways that can back each other up, such as a main gateway and a backup gateway. Object tracking can monitor the state of the current VPN connection, by monitoring one or more hosts that reside within the remote site's network. If the current connection is lost, the G430 can failover to a backup gateway, and attempt to establish a VPN connection to it.

A typical application of this type is described in full in Failover using a peer-group on page 550.

Figure 25: Failover VPN topology using object tracking



Typical application – backup for the WAN FastEthernet interface

This typical application illustrates the use of object tracking as a backup mechanism for PPPoE configured on the WAN FastEthernet interface. A track list monitors the state of the connection. If the WAN FastEthernet interface is down, another connection is used.

In this application, the G430 is connected to an xDSL modem via PPPoE encapsulation configured on interface WAN FastEthernet 10/3. The G430 is connected to the Internet via the xDSL modem.

Note:

When using a broadband modem (either xDSL or cable), it is recommended to run the VPN application.

Configuring the backup mechanism

1. Define four RTRs to probe the four entrances to the main office. Configure each RTR to run immediately and forever.
2. Define four object trackers to track the four RTRs.
3. Define a track list consisting of all four object trackers, and configure it so that if all object trackers are up, the track list is up, and if two or less of the object trackers are up, the track list is down.
4. Register the WAN FastEthernet interface with the track list.
5. Define Loopback 1 as a backup interface for the WAN FastEthernet interface.

Thus, when the track list is down the Loopback interface will be up until the track list is up again.

Note:

Note that RTR packets continue to be sent over the PPPoE interface as long as the PPP-IPCP connection status is up.

```
! Define four RTRs to probe the four entrances to the Main Offices.
! Configure each one to run immediately and forever.
!
rtr 1
    type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 6.0.0.200
    next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
    exit
rtr-schedule 1 start-time now life forever
rtr 2
    type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 6.0.0.201
    next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
    exit
rtr-schedule 2 start-time now life forever
rtr 3
    type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 6.0.0.202
    next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
    exit
rtr-schedule 3 start-time now life forever
rtr 4
    type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 6.0.0.203
    next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
    exit
rtr-schedule 4 start-time now life forever
```

```
! Define four object trackers to track the four RTRs.
!
track 1 rtr 1
    exit
track 2 rtr 2
    exit
track 3 rtr 3
    exit
track 4 rtr 4
    exit
!
! Define a track list consisting of the four object trackers.
! Define a threshold calculation such that if all four object trackers
! are up, the list is up, and if 2 or less are up, the list is down.
!
track 50 list threshold count
    threshold count up 4 down 2
    object 1
    object 2
    object 3
    object 4
    exit
!
! Configure PPPoE encapsulation on interface WAN FastEthernet 10/3, and
! register the interface with the track list.
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
    bandwidth 96
    encapsulation  pppoe
    traffic-shape rate 96000
    ip address negotiated
    keepalive-track 50
    exit
!
! Configure the loopback 1 interface
!
interface loopback 1
  ip address 10.0.0.1        255.0.0.0
 exit
!
! Assign the loopback 1 interface to be the backup interface for
! interface WAN FastEthernet 10/3.
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
    backup interface loopback 1
    backup delay 0 60
    exit
```

Typical application – interface backup via policy-based routing

In the previous typical application (see Typical application – backup for the WAN FastEthernet interface on page 285), the **backup interface** command is used to specify a backup interface. This typical application illustrates an alternative to the **backup interface** command, using policy-based routing (PBR) which configures a routing scheme for specified traffic based on configured characteristics of the traffic. Thus, PBR can be used in combination with object tracking to configure a backup mechanism for interfaces.

For an example that uses policy-based routing as an alternative to the **backup interface** command, replace the last four lines of the previous typical application with the example below. The example creates a next hop list that sends the specified traffic to the WAN FastEthernet interface, which is running PPPoE encapsulation. If the WAN FastEthernet interface becomes unavailable, the next hop list routes the traffic to a VLAN interface used to connect the gateway to an external router. PBR list 801 is created and assigned to interface VLAN 1, so that traffic defined in PBR list 801 passing through interface VLAN 1 is routed according to the next hop list.

Note:

You can define a static route over the WAN FastEthernet interface running DHCP client. In such a case, the static route uses as the next hop the default router learned from the DHCP server. This is useful for GRE tunnels which are defined over the WAN Fast Ethernet running DHCP client. It is necessary to define static routes in order to prevent loops. Therefore, the IP route command allows configuration of static routes over WAN Fast Ethernet running DHCP client.

When the WAN Fast Ethernet is up, policy-based routing routes this traffic via the WAN FastEthernet interface. When the track list defined in the previous typical application is down, policy-based routing routes this traffic through the VLAN interface used to connect the gateway to an external router. When the track list is up again, the traffic is again routed through the WAN FastEthernet interface.

```
! Create PBR list 801. This list routes traffic from IP address
! 149.49.42.1 to IP address 149.49.43.1 according to next hop list 10.
!
ip pbr-list 801
    name "list #801"
    ip-rule 10
       next-hop list 10
       source-ip host 149.49.42.1
       destination-ip host 149.49.43.1
       exit
     exit
!
! Assign PBR list 801 to interface Vlan 1.
!
interface Vlan 1
    icc-vlan
    ip pbr-group 801
    ip address 149.49.42.254   255.255.255.0
    exit
!
interface Vlan 2
    ip address 149.49.43.254   255.255.255.0
    exit
!
! Configure next hop list 10 with interface fastethernet 10/3 as the
! first next hop, and the VLAN interface used to connet to the external
! router as the second next hop.
!
ip next-hop-list 10
    next-hop-interface 1 FastEthernet 10/3
    next-hop-ip 2 149.49.43.1
    exit
```

Typical application – tracking the DHCP client default route

This typical application demonstrates a case where a user configures DHCP client on the device to enable cable modem connection to the WAN FastEthernet interface. The user wishes to know whether the DHCP client default route can be used for routing decisions – that is, whether traffic can be routed over this default route. To do so, the user activates tracking to monitor the remote HQ peer. When the object tracker is up, the DHCP default route may be used. When the object tracker is down, the DHCP default route is not used for routing and traffic is routed to alternate routes.

Note:

If several default routers are learned from a specific interface, the object tracker tracks only the first one.

```
! Apply DHCP client on the WAN Fast Ethernet
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
    ip address dhcp
    exit
!
! Configure the RTRs and object trackers.
! Use the next-hop command to ensure that the RTR is sent over the
! next hop it is monitoring, which is the WAN Fast Ethernet running
! DHCP client.
!
! 192.30.3.1 is the remote HQ peer IP address.
!
rtr 2
    type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 192.30.3.1
       next-hop interface fastethernet 10/3
       exit
track 2 rtr 2
    exit
!
! Apply object tracking on the DHCP client.
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
    ip dhcp client route track 2
    exit
```

Summary of object tracking configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 76: Object tracking CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
rtr			Enter Respond Time Reports (RTR) configuration mode. RTRs are the basic building blocks of object tracking.
	type		Set the type of operation an RTR should employ in its probes, and specify the address of the remote device being probed

1 of 2

Table 76: Object tracking CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
		dscp	Set the DSCP value for the packets of the RTR probes
		fail-retries	Set how many consecutive unanswered probes change the status of an RTR operation device from up to down
		frequency	Set the frequency of the RTR probes
		next-hop	Specify the next hop for the RTR probes, bypassing normal routing
		source-address	Set the source IP address for RTR operations
		success-retries	Set how many consecutive answered probes change the status of an RTR operation device from down to up
		wait-interval	Set how long to wait for a device to answer an RTR probe
rtr-schedule			Activate or stop an RTR operation
show rtr configuration			Display RTR configuration values
show rtr operational-state			Display the global operational status of the RTR feature
show track			Display tracking information
track			Configure an object tracker
	description		Set a description for the object tracker
	object		Add an object tracker to a track list
	threshold count		Set the upper and lower thresholds for the threshold in the track list command

2 of 2

Chapter 12: Configuring Emergency Transfer Relay (ETR)

The ETR feature provides basic telephone services in the event of system failure, such as a power outage or a failed connection to the MGC. ETR services are offered on installed MM714B media modules. You can install an MM714B media module in any slot (1-3, 5-8). ETR is activated automatically. When ETR is activated, the G430 connects the MM714B's trunk port 5 to line port 4. All calls are then directed by the analog relays between the outside lines and the analog telephones. A current-loop detection circuit prevents ongoing calls from being disconnected when normal functioning resumes. If a call is in progress on an outside line when the problem ends, the call continues. The trunk port and analog line port do not start to operate until the active call ends.

When ETR is active and the G430 has power, the ETR LED is lit.

Setting ETR state

By default, ETR is set to go into effect automatically in the event of power outage or a failed connection to the MGC. You can activate and deactivate ETR manually via the CLI. To control the ETR feature on an installed MM714B media module, enter the number of the slot housing the MM714B, in the **`set etr`** command.

- To activate ETR manually in the G430, use the **`set etr`** command. For example:

```
set etr 3 manual-on
```

 Generally, you should only use this command for testing.

- To deactivate ETR manually in the G430, use the **`set etr`** command. For example:

```
set etr 3 manual-off
```

 ETR does not become active in the event of a link failure.

- To restore ETR to automatic activation in the G430, use the **`set etr`** command. For example:

```
set etr 3 auto
```

 If the system fails, the trunk and port in the MM714B are automatically latched.

Note:

A call in progress will be terminated when ETR is activated either automatically or manually.

Viewing ETR state

You can enter **`show etr`** to display ETR information. This information includes the following:

- Admin state (`auto`, `manual-off`, or `manual-on`)
- Module status (in service, out of service, or out of service waiting for off-hook)
- Trunk number of the trunk connected to ETR
- Line number of the line connected to ETR
- Line status (`off hook` or `on hook`)

Summary of ETR commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 77: ETR configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
`set etr`	Enable or disable Emergency Transfer Relay (ETR) mode on an MM714B media module, or enable the gateway to control ETR mode automatically
`show etr`	Display the status of Emergency Transfer Relay (ETR) mode

Chapter 13: Configuring SNMP

SNMP uses software entities called managers and agents to manage network devices. The manager monitors and controls all other SNMP-managed devices or network nodes on the network. There must be at least one SNMP Manager in a managed network. The manager is installed on a workstation located on the network.

An agent resides in a managed device or network node. The agent receives instructions from the SNMP Manager, generates reports in response to requests from the SNMP Manager, and sends management information back to the SNMP Manager as events occur. The agent can reside on:

- Routers
- Bridges
- Hubs
- Workstations
- Printers
- Other network devices

There are many SNMP management applications, but all these applications perform the same basic task. They allow SNMP managers to communicate with agents to configure, get statistics and information, and receive alerts from network devices. You can use any SNMP-compatible network management system to monitor and control a G430.

Agent and manager communication

There are several ways that the SNMP manager and the agent communicate. The manager can:

- **Retrieve a value (*get*)**. The SNMP manager requests information from the agent, such as the number of users logged on to the agent device or the status of a critical process on that device. The agent gets the value of the requested Management Information Base (MIB) variable and sends the value back to the manager.
- **Retrieve the value immediately after the variable you name (*get-next*)**. The SNMP manager retrieves different instances of MIB variables. The SNMP manager takes the variable you name and then uses a sequential search to find the desired variable.
- **Retrieve a number of values (*get-bulk*)**. The SNMP manager retrieves the specified number of instances of the requested MIB variable. This minimizes the number of protocol exchanges required to retrieve a large amount of data.

Note:

Get-bulk is not supported in SNMPv1.

- **Change a configuration on the agent (*set*)**. The SNMP manager requests the agent to change the value of the MIB variable. For example, you can run a script or an application on a remote device with a set action.
- **Receive an unsolicited message (*notification*)**. The SNMP manager receives an unsolicited message from an agent at any time if a significant, predetermined event takes place on that agent. When a notification condition occurs, the SNMP agent sends an SNMP notification to the device specified as the trap receiver or trap host. The SNMP Administrator configures the trap host, usually the SNMP management station, to perform the action needed when a trap is detected.

Note:

For a list of traps and MIBS, see Traps and MIBs on page 617.

SNMP versions

There are currently three versions of SNMP:

- SNMPv1
- SNMPv2c
- SNMPv3

The G430 supports all three versions. The implementation of SNMPv3 on the G430 is backwards compatible. That is, an agent that supports SNMPv3 will also support SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c.

SNMPv1

SNMPv1 uses community strings to limit access rights. Each SNMP device is assigned to a read community and a write community. To communicate with a device, you must send an SNMP packet with the relevant community name.

By default, if you communicate with a device using only the read community, you are assigned the security name *ReadCommN*. This security name is mapped to the *ReadCommG* group by default. This allows you to view the agent's MIB tree, but you cannot change any of the values in the MIB tree.

If you communicate with a device using the write community, you are assigned the security name *WriteCommN*. This security name is mapped to the *WriteCommG* group by default. This allows you to view the agent's MIB tree and change any of the values in the MIB tree.

Note:

If you delete the *ReadCommN* or *WriteCommN* users, the *ReadCommG* or *WriteCommG* groups, or the *snmpv1WriteView* or *snmpv1View*, you may not be able to access the device using SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c.

In addition, traps are sent to designated trap receivers. Packets with trap information also contain a trap community string.

SNMPv2c

SNMPv2c is very similar to SNMPv1. However, SNMPv2c adds support for the *get-bulk* action and supports a different trap format.

SNMPv3

SNMPv3 enables the following features over SNMPv1 or v2c:

- User authentication with a username and password
- Communication encryption between the Network Management Station (NMS) and the SNMP agent at the application level
- Access control definition for specific MIB items available on the SNMP agent
- Notification of specified network events directed toward specified users
- Definition of roles using access control, each with unique access permissions and authentication and encryption requirements

The basic components in SNMPv3 access control are users, groups, and views. In addition, SNMPv3 uses an SNMP engine ID to identify SNMP identity. An SNMP engine ID is assigned to each MAC address of each device in the network. Each SNMP engine ID should be unique in the network.

Users

SNMPv3 uses the User-based Security Model (USM) for security, and the View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for access control. USM uses the HMAC-MD5-96 and HMAC-SHA-96 protocols for user authentication, and the CBC-DES56 protocol for encryption or privacy.

An unlimited number of users can access SNMPv3 at the same time.

SNMP security levels

- **NoAuthNoPriv**. This is the lowest level of SNMPv3 security. No MAC is provided with the message, and no encryption is performed. This method maintains the same security level as SNMPv1, but provides a method for limiting the access rights of the user.
- **AuthNoPriv**. User authentication is performed based on MD5 or SHA algorithms. The message is sent with an HMAC that is calculated with the user key. The data part is sent unencrypted.
- **AuthPriv**. User authentication is performed based on MD5 or SHA algorithms. The message is sent in encrypted MAC that is calculated with the user key, and the data part is sent with DES56 encryption using the user key.

SNMP-server user command

Use the **`snmp-server user`** command to create a user or to change the parameters of an existing user. This command includes the following parameters:

- A user name for the user
- The name of the SNMP group with which to associate the user
- The SNMP version functionality that the user is authorized to use. Possible values are: `v1` (SNMPv1), `v2c` (SNMPv2c), and `v3` (SNMPv3).
- For an SNMPv3 user, which authentication protocol to use, if any. Possible values are: `md5` (HMAC MD5), and `sha` (HMAC SHA-1). If you specify an authentication protocol, you must also configure an authentication password for the user. The authentication password is transformed using the authentication protocol and the SNMP engine ID to create an authentication key.
- For an SNMPv3 user, whether or not to use the DES privacy protocol, and the user's privacy password if you enable DES privacy

Use the **`no`** form of the **`snmp-server user`** command to remove a user and its mapping to a specified group. If you do not specify a group, the **`no`** form of the **`snmp-server user`** command removes the user from all groups.

Groups

In SNMPv3, each user is mapped to a group. The group maps its users to defined views. These views define sets of access rights, including read, write, and trap or inform notifications the users can receive.

The group maps its users to views based on the security model and level with which the user is communicating with the G430. Within a group, the following combinations of security model and level can be mapped to views:

- SNMPv1 security model and NoAuthNoPriv security level
- SNMPv2c security model and NoAuthNoPriv security level
- SNMPv3 security model and NoAuthNoPriv security level
- SNMPv3 security model and AuthNoPriv security level
- SNMPv3 security model and AuthPriv security level

If views are not defined for all security models and levels, a user can access the highest level view below the user's security level. For example, if the SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c views are undefined for a group, anyone logging in using SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c cannot access the device. If the NoAuthNoPriv view is not defined for a group, SNMPv3 users with a NoAuthNoPriv security level can access the SNMPv2c view.

The G430 includes the following pre-configured groups:

Table 78: Pre-configured SNMP groups

Group name	Security model	Security level	Read view name	Write view name	Notify view name
initial	v3 (USM)	NoAuthNoPriv	restricted	restricted	restricted
ReadCommG	v1	NoAuthNoPriv	snmpv1View		snmpv1View
ReadCommG	v2c	NoAuthNoPriv	snmpv1View		snmpv1View
WriteCommG	v1	NoAuthNoPriv	snmpv1 WriteView	snmpv1 WriteView	snmpv1 WriteView
WriteCommG	v2c	NoAuthNoPriv	snmpv1 WriteView	snmpv1 WriteView	snmpv1 WriteView
v3ReadOnlyG	v3 (USM)	AuthNoPriv	v3configView		v3configView
v3AdminViewG	v3 (USM)	AuthPriv	iso	iso	iso
v3ReadWriteG	v3 (USM)	AuthNoPriv	v3configView	v3configView	v3configView

Creating an SNMPv3 group

- Use the **snmp-server group** command to create an SNMPv3 group. Use the **no** form of the command to remove the specified group. You can define the following parameters with this command:
 - The name of the group
 - The SNMP security model
 - The security level, for a group with the SNMPv3 security model
 - The name of a read view to which the group maps users
 - The name of a write view to which the group maps users
 - The name of a notify view to which the group maps users

Views

There are three types of views:

- **Read Views**. Allow read-only access to a specified list of Object IDs (OIDs) in the MIB tree
- **Write Views**. Allow read-write access to a specified list of OIDs in the MIB tree
- **Notify Views**. Allow SNMP notifications from a specified list of OIDs to be sent

Each view consists of a list of OIDs in the MIB tree. This list can be created using multiple **snmp-server view** commands to either add OIDs to the list or exclude OIDs from a list of all of the OIDs in the G430's MIB tree. You can use wildcards to include or exclude an entire branch of OIDs in the MIB tree, using an asterisk instead of the specific node. For a list of MIBs and their OIDs, see G430 MIB files on page 625.

Creating an SNMPv3 view

To create an SNMPv3 view, the following information must be provided:

- **ViewName**. A string of up to 32 characters representing the name of the view
- **ViewType**. Indicates whether the specified OID is included or excluded from the view
- **OIDs**. A list of the OIDs accessible using the view

Configuring SNMP traps

When SNMP traps are enabled on the device, SNMP traps are sent to all IP addresses listed in the trap receivers table. You can add and remove addresses from the trap receivers table. In addition, you can limit the traps sent to specified receivers. You can also enable and disable link up/down traps on specified G430 interfaces. Use the following commands to configure the trap receivers table:

Note:

You need an Admin privilege level to use the SNMP commands.

- Enter **snmp-server enable notifications** to enable SNMP traps and notifications. Use the **no** form of this command to disable SNMP traps and notifications.
- Use the **set port trap** command to enable and disable Link Up and Link Down notifications and traps.
- Use the **set snmp trap enable/disable auth** command to enable or disable authentication failure traps for all managers.
- Enter **set snmp trap enable/disable frame-relay** to enable or disable frame relay traps for all managers.
- Enter **show snmp** to display SNMP information.
- Use the **show port trap** command to display information on SNMP generic Link Up and Link Down traps sent for a specific port or for all ports.
- Use the **snmp-server informs** command to configure the SNMPv3 timeout and retries for notifications.
- Use the **snmp-server host** command to define an SNMP notification host. Use the **no** form of this command to remove an SNMP notification host and to remove notification filter groups from a specific host. You can define the following parameters with this command:
 - The IP address of the recipient.
 - Whether to send traps or informs to the recipient.
 - The SNMP security model (v1, v2c, v3). For SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, you must also specify the community name. For SNMPv3, you must specify the level of authentication and a username to use in notifications. Authentication levels are:
 - `auth`. Authentication without encryption
 - `noauth`. No authentication
 - `priv`. authentication with encryption

 - The UDP port of the target host to use as the destination UDP port when sending a notification to this manager. Optional. The default is 162.
 - Notification filter groups, to modify the types of traps that are sent to the recipient. Optional. If not specified, all notification groups are sent. For a list of possible notification types, see Notification types on page 302.
- Enter **snmp trap link-status** to enable Link Up and Link Down traps on an interface. You must use this command from an interface context.
- Enter **no snmp trap link-status** to disable Link Up and Link Down traps on an interface. You must use this command from an interface context.

Notification types

Various types of SNMP traps can be sent. You can modify the type of trap by setting the ***notification-list*** parameter of the **snmp-server host** command to one of the following:

- ***all***. All traps. This is the default.
- ***generic***. Generic traps
- ***hardware***. Hardware faults
- ***rmon***. RMON rising/falling alarm
- ***dhcp server***. DHCP server error, such as a DHCP IP conflict detection or notification of no IP address left for specific network
- ***dhcp-clients***. DHCP client error, such as a DHCP client conflict detection
- ***rtp-stat-faults***. RTP statistics: QoS fault/clear traps
- ***rtp-stat-qos***. RTP statistics: end-of-call QoS traps
- ***wan***. WAN router traps
- ***media-gateway***. Media gateway traps (equivalent to G700 MGP traps)
- ***security***. Security traps, such as unAuthAccess, macSecurity, unknownHostCopy, and accountLockout
- ***config***. Configuration change notifications
- ***eth-port-faults***. Ethernet port fault notifications
- ***sw-redundancy***. Software redundancy notifications
- ***temperature***. Temperature warning notifications
- ***cam-change***. Changes in CAM notifications
- ***l3-events***. Duplicate IP, VLAN violations
- ***policy***. Policy change notifications

- ***link-faults***. ITC proprietary link down notifications
- ***supply***. Main and backup power supply notifications

Summary of SNMP trap configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 79: SNMP trap configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (dialer\|fastethernet\|tunnel\|usb-modem)		Enter the context of the `Dialer`, `Fast Ethernet`, `Tunnel`, or `USB-modem` interface
	snmp trap link-status	Enable or disable Link Up and Link Down traps on an interface
set port trap		Enable or disable SNMP Link Up and Link Down traps notifications and traps on a port
set snmp trap enable \| disable auth		Enable or disable authentication failure traps for all managers
set snmp trap enable \| disable frame-relay		Enable or disable frame relay traps for all managers
show port trap		Display information on SNMP generic Link Up and Link Down traps sent for a specific port or for all ports
show snmp		Display SNMP configuration information
snmp-server enable notifications		Enable or disable the sending of all traps and notifications from the G430

1 of 2

Table 79: SNMP trap configuration CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
snmp-server host		Identify an SNMP management server, and specify the kind of messages it receives. Use the **no** form of the command to remove the specified server, or to disable a particular set of notification types.
snmp-server informs		Configure the SNMPv3 timeout and retries for notifications
		2 of 2

Configuring SNMP access

- Use the **ip snmp** command to enable SNMP access to the G430. Use the **no** form of this command to disable SNMP access to the G430.
- Use the **set snmp retries** command to set the number of times to attempt to communicate with a particular node.
- Use the **set snmp timeout** command to specify the time to wait for a response before retrying the communication.
- Enter **snmp-server community** to enable SNMPv1 access to the G430. Use the **no** form of this command to disable SNMPv1 access to the G430.
- Use the **snmp-server user** command to create an SNMPv3 user. Use the **no** form of this command to remove an SNMPv3 user.
- Use the **snmp-server group** command to create an SNMPv3 group. Use the **no** form of this command to remove an SNMPv3 group.
- Use the **snmp-server remote-user** command to create an SNMPv3 remote user for SNMP notifications. Use the **no** form of this command to remove an SNMPv3 remote user for SNMP notifications.
- Use the **set snmp community** command to create or modify an SNMPv1 community.
- Use the **snmp-server engineID** command to configure the SNMPv3 engine ID. Use the **no** form of this command to configure the engine ID to its default value. The SNMP engine ID is set automatically by a calculation based on the MAC address of the host device, but you can change the engine ID using this command. If the SNMP engine ID changes, all users other than the default user are invalid and must be redefined.
- Use the **snmp-server view** command to add or exclude OIDs from a view and to create the view if it does not exist. Use the **no** form of this command to delete an SNMPv3 view.

- Enter **show snmp view** to display a list of SNMPv3 views or to display information about a specific SNMPv3 view.
- Use the **show snmp userToGroup** command to display a table of SNMPv3 users and the groups to which they are mapped.
- Enter **show snmp engineID** to display the SNMPv3 engine ID.
- Enter **show snmp group** to display a list of SNMPv3 groups.
- Use the **show snmp user** command to display configuration information for all SNMP users or for a specific SNMP user.
- Use the **show snmp retries** command to display the number of retry attempts to make when attempting to communicate with a node.
- Use the **show snmp timeout** command to display the time to wait before resending a communication.
- Enter **show snmp** to display a list of SNMP notification receivers.

Note:

You need an Admin privilege level to use the SNMP commands.

Summary of SNMP access configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 80: SNMP access configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
ip snmp	Enable or disable the SNMP agent for the G430
set snmp community	Create or modify an SNMPv1 community
set snmp retries	Set the number of times to attempt to communicate with a particular node
set snmp timeout	Specify the time to wait for a response before retrying the communication
show snmp	Display SNMP configuration information, including a list of SNMP notification receivers
show snmp engineID	Display the SNMPv3 engine ID for the G430
show snmp group	Display a list of SNMPv3 groups

1 of 2

Table 80: SNMP access configuration CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
show snmp retries	Display the number of retry attempts to make when attempting to communicate with a node
show snmp timeout	Display the time to wait before resending a communication
show snmp user	Display configuration information for a specified SNMP user
show snmp usertogroup	Display a table of SNMPv3 users and the groups to which they are mapped
show snmp view	Display configuration information for all SNMP views
snmp-server community	Enable or disable SNMP access to the G430
snmp-server engineID	Specify the SNMP Engine ID for the G430
snmp-server group	Define a new SNMPv3 group, or configure settings for the group
snmp-server remote-user	Configure settings for a remote SNMPv3 user. If the user does not exist, it is created.
snmp-server user	Configure settings for an SNMPv3 user. If the user does not exist, it is created.
snmp-server view	Configure settings for an SNMP MIB view. If the view does not exist, it is created.

2 of 2

Configuring dynamic trap manager

Dynamic trap manager is a special feature that ensures that the G430 sends traps directly to the currently active MGC. If the MGC fails, dynamic trap manager ensures that traps are sent to the backup MGC.

Note:

The dynamic trap manager is created by default and cannot be removed.

Use the **snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager** command to specify the parameters of the dynamic trap manager feature. You can configure the following parameters:

- Whether to send traps or informs to the recipient

- The SNMP security model (v1 or v2c)
- The SNMP community name
- The UDP port of the target host to use as the destination UDP port when sending a notification to this manager. Optional.
- The types of traps to be sent. Optional. The default is to send all types of traps. For a list of possible notification types, see Notification types on page 302. The following example configures dynamic trap manager to send all traps:

```
G430-001(super)# snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager traps v1 public
udp-port 162 all
```

Use the **clear dynamic-trap-manager** command to remove administration of the dynamic trap manager.

Summary of dynamic trap manager configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 81: Dynamic trap manager configuration CLI commands

Command	Description
clear dynamic-trap-manager	Remove administration of the dynamic trap manager
snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager	Specify the parameters of the dynamic trap manager feature

SNMP configuration examples

The following example enables link up/down traps on an Ethernet interface:

```
G430-001(super)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# snmp trap link-status
Done!
```

The following example displays SNMP information:

```
G430-001(super)# show snmp

Authentication trap disabled

Community-Access     Community-String
-----------------    -----------------
read-only            *****
read-write           *****

SNMPv3 Notification Status
---------------------------
Traps: Enabled
Informs: Enabled         Retries: 3   Timeout: 3 seconds

SNMP-Rec-Address Model  Level   Notification   Trap/Inform   User name
---------------- -----  ------   ------------   -----------  ----------
149.49.70.137     v1     noauth   all               trap       ReadCommN
 UDP port: 162 DM
```

The following example disables Link Up and Link Down traps on an Ethernet interface:

```
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# no snmp trap link-status
Done!
```

The following example creates a read-only user:

```
G430-001# snmp-server user joseph ReadOnlyG v3 auth md5 katmandu priv des56 ktamatan
```

The following example creates a read-write user:

```
G430-001# snmp-server user johnny ReadWriteG v3 auth md5 katmandu priv des56
ktamatan
```

The following example creates an admin user:

```
G430-001# snmp-server user johnny v3AdminG v3 auth md5 katmandu priv des56 ktamatan
```

The following example sets the SNMPv1 read-only community:

```
G430-001(super)# set snmp community read-only read
SNMP read-only community string set.
```

The following example sets the SNMPv1 read-write community:

```
G430-001(super)# set snmp community read-write write
SNMP read-write community string set.
```

The following example enables Link Up and Link Down traps on a LAN port on the G430:

```
G430-001(super)# set port trap 10/3 enable
Port 10/3 up/down trap enabled
```

The following example disables Link Up and Link Down traps on a LAN port on the G430:

```
G430-001(super)# set port trap 10/3 disable
Port 10/3 up/down trap disabled
```

Chapter 14: Configuring contact closure

You can use contact closure to control up to two electrical devices remotely. With contact closure, you can dial feature access codes on a telephone to activate, deactivate, or pulse electrical devices such as electrical door locks. You can also activate and deactivate contact closure using CLI commands. You can only use feature access codes if you configure the Avaya G430 Media Gateway to use a server with Avaya Aura Communication Manager software. For more information, see Configuring the Media Gateway Controller (MGC) on page 78.

It is recommended that you use an Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™ for contact closure. For more information, see *Overview for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603235. An Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™ contains two relays, one for each electrical device. You can control each relay in any of the following ways:

- When you dial the contact closure open access code, the relay opens (no contact)
- When you dial the contact closure close access code, the relay closes (contact)
- When you dial the contact closure pulse access code, the relay closes (contact) for the pulse duration and then opens (no contact)
- You can control each contact closure relay manually with CLI commands or with Avaya G430 Manager

Note:

Configuration of the feature access code is performed through the Avaya Aura Communication Manager. For more information, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

Contact closure hardware configuration

1. Connect an Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™ to the Contact Closure port on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway front panel. The Contact Closure port is labeled CCA on the G430 front panel. Use a telephone cable with standard RJ-11 connectors.
2. A qualified electrician should connect the electrical devices to the relays on the Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™. For information on contact closure specifications, see *Overview for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603235.

Contact closure software configuration

You can specify the following contact closure modes:

Table 82: Contact closure modes

Mode	Description
mgc	The MGC controls contact closure. In mgc mode, the user dials feature access codes to activate and deactivate contact closure.
manual-trigger	Activates contact closure for the specified relay
manual-off	Deactivates contact closure for the specified relay

To configure the Avaya G430 Media Gateway to activate contact closure when the feature access code is dialed:

1. Enter the **`set contact-closure admin`** command.

 In the following example, the command sets contact closure to work in relay 1 of the Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™ when activated by the call controller.

```
set contact-closure admin 10/1:1 mgc
```

2. Use the **`set contact-closure pulse-duration`** command to set the length of time for the relay to return to normal after the call controller triggers it.

 In the following example, the command sets relay 2 of the Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™ to return to normal five seconds after the call controller triggers contact closure in the relay.

```
set contact-closure pulse-duration 10/1:2 5
```

To activate contact closure manually, use the **`set contact-closure admin`** command with the parameter `manual-trigger`.

In the following example, the command activates contact closure in relay 1 of the Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™. Contact closure remains active until you deactivate it by using the **`set contact-closure admin`** command with the parameter `manual-off` or `mgc`.

```
set contact-closure admin 10/1:1 manual-trigger
```

To deactivate contact closure manually, use the **`set contact-closure admin`** command with the parameter `manual-off`.

In the following example, the command deactivates contact closure in relay 2 of the Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™. Contact closure will not operate, even automatically, until you use the **set contact-closure admin** command to change the status of contact closure to mgc or manual-trigger.

```
set contact-closure admin 10/1:2 manual-off
```

Showing contact closure status

Use the **show contact-closure** command to display the status of one or more contact closure relays.

The following example displays the contact closure status of relay 1 of the Avaya Partner Contact Closure Adjunct™ box.

```
G430-001(super)# show contact-closure
MODULE   PORT   RELAY   ADMIN              PULSE DURATION (secs)   STATUS
-------  -----  ------  -----------------  ----------------------  ------
10       2      1       mgc                5 secs                  off
10       2      2       mgc                3 secs                  off
```

Summary of contact closure commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 83: Contact closure CLI commands

Command	Description
set contact-closure admin	Specify how the contact closure relay is controlled
set contact-closure pulse-duration	Set the length of time for the relay to return to normal after the call controller triggers the relay
show contact-closure	Display the status of one or all contact closure relays

Chapter 15: Transferring and managing announcement files

The G430 stores announcement files in an internal announcement directory. The G430 supports up to 256 announcement files, totalling up to 45 minutes of audio for announcements and music on hold. If a compact flash is installed with increased RAM, the G430 supports up to 1024 announcement files, for a total of 240 minutes. A total of 15 announcements can be played simultaneously, and one port may be used for recording. Recording, storing, and playing announcement files is controlled by Avaya CM.

Note:

For information about installing and using a compact flash and increased RAM, refer to *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.

Avaya Voice Announcement Manager (VAM) can be used to centrally manage announcement files for multiple voice systems, including G430 media gateways. VAM is designed to be installed on a customer-provided platform at a remote location. For information about VAM, see *Avaya Voice Announcement Manager Reference*, 14-300613.

The G430 supports:

- Secure transfer of announcement files to and from VAM using SCP
- Simple management operations for the announcement files stored in the announcement directory

Announcement file operations

- Upload an announcement file to a remote SCP server, using the **`copy announcement-file scp`** command. Specify the file name of the announcement file in the G430 announcement directory, followed by the IP address of the remote SCP server, and, optionally, a destination file name, including the full path. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy announcement-file scp local_announcement2.wav
192.168.49.10 remote_announcement2.wav
```

- Download an announcement file from a remote SCP server to the G430 announcement directory, using the **copy scp announcement-file** command. Specify the file name of the announcement file on the remote SCP server, followed by the IP address of the remote SCP server, and, optionally, a destination file name, including the full path. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy scp announcement-file announcement_file1.wav
192.168.49.10
```

- Upload an announcement file to a remote FTP server, using the **copy announcement-file ftp** command. Specify the file name of the announcement file in the G430 announcement directory, followed by the IP address of the remote FTP server, and, optionally, a destination file name, including the full path. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy announcement-file ftp local_announcement2.wav
192.168.49.10 remote_announcement2.wav
```

- Download an announcement file from an FTP server to the G430 announcement directory, using the **copy ftp announcement-file** command. Specify the file name of the announcement file on the FTP server, followed by the IP address of the FTP server, and, optionally, a destination file name, including the full path. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy ftp announcement-file announcement_file1.wav
192.168.49.10
```

- Upload an announcement file to a USB mass storage device, using the **copy announcement-file usb** command. Specify the file name of the announcement file in the G430 announcement directory, followed by the name of the USB device, and, optionally, a destination file name, including the full path. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy announcement-file usb local_announcement2.wav
usb-device0 remote_announcement2.wav
```

- Download an announcement file from a USB mass storage device to the G430 announcement directory, using the **copy usb announcement-file** command. Specify the name of the USB device, followed by the file name of the announcement file on the USB device, and, optionally, a destination file name, including the full path. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy usb announcement-file usb-device0 \temp\
announcement_file1.wav local_announcement_file2.wav
```

- Erase an announcement file from the G430 announcement directory, using the **erase announcement-file** command. Specify the name of the file. For example:

```
G430-001# erase announcement-file local_announcement1.wav
```

- Rename an announcement file in the G430 announcement directory, using the **rename announcement-file** command. Specify the current name of the file followed by the new name. For example:

```
G430-001# rename announcement-file from_local_announcement1.wav
to_local_announcement1.wav
```

- Display the announcements files stored in the G430 announcement directory, using the **show announcements-files** command. Optionally add the keyword **brief** to display less detail. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show announcements files
Mode: FTP-SERVER/SCP-CLIENT
ID   File              Description  Size (Bytes) Date
---- ---------------- ------------- ------------ -----------------
5     46xxupgrade.scr  Announcement1  4000        09:54:55 04 APR 2005
8     4601dbte1_82.bin Announcement2  8000        09:55:55 04 APR 2005
9     4602dbte1_82.bin Announcement3  16000       09:56:55 04 APR 2005
Nv-Ram:
Total bytes used: 28000
Total bytes free: 7344800
Total bytes capacity(fixed) 7372800
```

- Display the status of a download process of announcement files from the remote SCP server, using the **show download announcement-file status** command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show download announcement-file status
Module #9
===========
Module           : 9
Source file      : hellosource.wav
Destination file : hellodestination.wav
Host             : 135.64.102.64
Running state    : Idle
Failure display  : (null)
Last warning     : No-warning
Bytes Downloaded  : 7825
===========
```

- Display the status of an upload process of announcement files to the remote SCP server, using the **show upload announcement-file status** command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show upload announcement-file status
Module #9
===========
Module           : 9
Source file      : hellosource.wav
Destination file : d:\hellodestination.wav
Host             : 135.64.102.64
Running state    : Idle
Failure display  : (null)
Last warning     : No-warning
===========
```

Summary of announcement files commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 84: Announcement file CLI commands

Command	Description
copy announcement-file ftp	Upload an announcement file to a remote FTP server
copy announcement-file scp	Upload an announcement file to a remote SCP server
copy announcement-file usb	Upload an announcement file to a USB mass storage device
copy ftp announcement-file	Download an announcement file from an FTP server to the G430 announcement directory
copy scp announcement-file	Download an announcement file from a remote SCP server to the G430 announcement directory
copy usb announcement-file	Download an announcement file from a USB mass storage device to the G430 announcement directory
erase announcement-file	Erase an announcement file from the G430 announcement directory
rename announcement-file	Rename an announcement file in the G430 announcement directory

1 of 2

Table 84: Announcement file CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
show announcements files	Display the announcements files stored in the G430 announcement directory
show download announcement-file status	Display the status of a download process of announcement files from the remote SCP server
show upload announcement-file status	Display the status of an upload process of announcement files to the remote SCP server

2 of 2

Chapter 16: Configuring advanced switching

You can configure advanced switching on the switch ports of the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. These are the ETH LAN ports located on the front panel.

Configuring VLANs

A VLAN is made up of a group of devices on one or more LANs that are configured so the devices operate as if they form an independent LAN. These devices can, in fact, be located on several different LAN segments. VLANs can be used to group together departments and other logical groups, thereby reducing network traffic flow and increasing security within the VLAN.

VLAN Tagging

VLAN Tagging is a method of controlling the distribution of information on the network. The ports on devices supporting VLAN Tagging are configured with the Port VLAN ID and Tagging Mode parameters.

The Port VLAN ID is the number of the VLAN to which the port is assigned.

Note:

You need to create a VLAN with the **`set vlan`** command before you can assign it to a port. You can also create a VLAN by using the **`interface vlan`** command, followed by the number of the VLAN (e.g., enter **`interface vlan 2`** to create VLAN 2).

Untagged frames and frames tagged with VLAN 0 entering the port are assigned the port's VLAN ID. Tagged frames are unaffected by the port's VLAN ID.

The Tagging Mode determines the behavior of the port that processes outgoing frames:

- If Tagging Mode is set to `clear`, the port transmits frames that belong to the port's VLAN table. These frames leave the device untagged.
- If Tagging Mode is set to `IEEE-802.1Q`, all frames keep their tags when they leave the device. Frames that enter the switch without a VLAN tag are tagged with the VLAN ID of the port through which they entered.

Multi VLAN binding

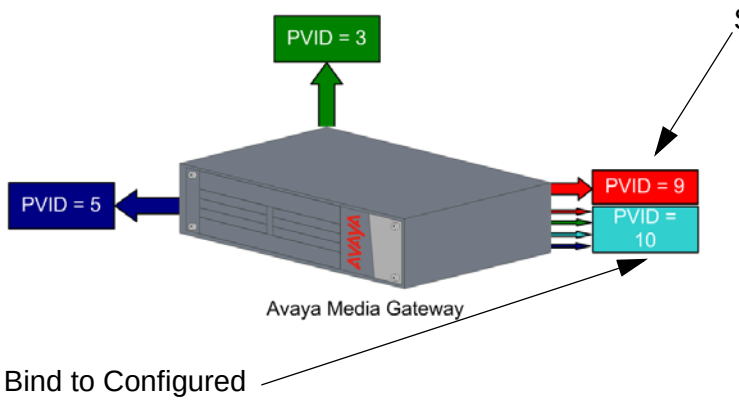
Multi VLAN binding, also known as Multiple VLANs per port, allows access to shared resources by stations that belong to different VLANs through the same port. This is useful in applications such as multi-tenant networks, where each user has a personal VLAN for privacy. The whole building has a shared high-speed connection to the ISP.

In order to accomplish this, the G430 enables multiple VLANs per port. The available Port Multi-VLAN binding modes are:

- **Bound to Configured**. The port supports all the VLANs configured in the switch
- **Statically Bound**. The port supports VLANs manually configured on the port

Figure 26 shows these binding modes.

Figure 26: Multi VLAN Binding



Static Binding

- The user manually specifies the list of VLAN IDs to be bound to the port, up to 8 VLANs
- Default mode for all ports
- Only VLAN 9, and any other VLANs statically configured on the port will be allowed to access this port

Bind to Configured

- The VLAN table of the port supports all the Static VLAN entries and all the ports' VLAN IDs (PVIDs) present in the switch
- VLANs 1, 3, 5, 9, 10 coming from the bus are allowed access through this port
- All the ports in Bound to Configured mode support the same list of VLANs

G430 VLAN table

The G430 VLAN table lists all VLANs configured on the G430. You can configure up to 64 VLANs. To display a list of VLANs, use the **show vlan** command.

When the VLAN table reaches its maximum capacity, you cannot configure any more VLANs. If this occurs, use the **clear vlan** command, followed by the name or number of the VLAN you want to delete, to free space in the VLAN table. Any new VLANs configured by you are made known to all the modules in the system.

Ingress VLAN Security

Ingress VLAN Security enables easy implementation of security, and is always active. A port that is assigned to a VLAN allows packets tagged for that VLAN only to enter through that port. Unassigned packets receive the PVID of the port and are therefore allowed to enter.

ICC-VLAN

When the G430 includes an ICC, the ICC connects to the G430 via an internal switch. By default, the ICC is connected on Vlan 1. The VLAN to which the ICC connects is called the ICC-VLAN.

You can use the **icc-vlan** command to attach the ICC to a different VLAN. Enter the context of the VLAN interface to which you want to attach the ICC switch, and enter **icc-vlan**.

To show the current ICC-VLAN, enter **show icc-vlan** from the general context.

The following example sets Vlan 2 as the ICC-VLAN:

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 2
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 2)# icc-vlan
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 2)# exit
G430-001(super)# show icc-vlan
VLAN 2
G430-001(super)#
```

VLAN CLI commands

The following commands are used to configure VLANs. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **clear port static-vlan** command to delete VLANs statically configured on a port
- Use the **clear vlan** command to delete an existing VLAN and its interface, remove the entry from the VLAN table, and return ports from this VLAN to the default VLAN 1. When you clear a VLAN, all ports assigned to that VLAN are assigned to the default VLAN 1.
- Use the **interface vlan** command to create a VLAN interface, enter it into the VLAN table, and enter the Interface VLAN configuration mode
- Use the **no interface vlan** command to delete a VLAN interface and remove the entry from the VLAN table
- Use the **set port static-vlan** command to assign static VLANs to ports
- Use the **set port vlan** command to set the port VLAN ID (PVID)
- Use the **set port vlan-binding-mode** command to define the binding method used by ports
- Use the **set trunk** command to configure the VLAN tagging mode of a port
- Use the **set vlan** command to configure VLANs
- Use the **show cam vlan** command to display all mac entries in the CAM table for a specific vlan
- Use the **show interfaces vlan** command to display interface configuration and statistics for a particular VLAN or all VLANs
- Use the **show port vlan-binding-mode** command to display port VLAN binding mode information. If no module number is specified then information for all ports on all modules is displayed. If no port number is specified, information for all ports on the specified module is displayed.
- Use the **show trunk** command to display VLAN tagging information for the switch
- Use the **show vlan** command to display the VLANs configured in the switch

VLAN configuration examples

The following example deletes a statically bound VLAN from a port:

```
G430-001(super)# clear port static-vlan 10/3 34
VLAN 34 is unbound from port 10/3
```

The following example deletes a VLAN and its interface:

```
G430-001(super)# clear vlan 34
This command will assign all ports on VLAN 34 to their default in the entire
management domain – do you want to continue (Y/N)? y
All ports on VLAN-id assigned to default VLAN.
VLAN 34 was deleted successfully.
```

The following example sets the current VLAN as the ICC-VLAN:

```
G430-001(super)# interface Vlan 66
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 66)# icc-vlan
Done!
```

The following example enters configuration mode for a VLAN interface:

```
G430-001(super)# interface Vlan 66
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 66)#
```

The following example deletes a VLAN interface:

```
G430-001(super)# no interface vlan 66
Done!
```

The following example statically binds a VLAN to a port:

```
G430-001(super)# set port vlan-binding-mode 10/3 static
Set Port vlan binding method:10/3
```

The following example sets a port's VLAN ID:

```
G430-001(super)# set port vlan 54 10/3
Port 10/3 added to VLAN 54
```

The following example sets a port's VLAN binding mode:

```
G430-001(super)# set port vlan-binding-mode 10/3 bind-to-configured
Set Port vlan binding method:10/3
```

The following example configures the VLAN tagging mode of a port:

```
G430-001(super)# set trunk 10/3 dot1q
Dot1Q VLAN tagging set on port 10/3.
```

The following example creates a VLAN:

```
G430-001(super)# set vlan 2121 name Training
VLAN id 2121, vlan-name Training created.
```

The following example displays a list of the MAC addresses in the CAM of a VLAN:

```
G430-001(super)# show cam vlan 54
Total Matching CAM Entries Displayed = 3
Dest MAC/Route Dest VLAN Destination Ports
------------------- ---- -----------------
00:01:02:dd:2f:9f    54      6/13
00:02:2d:47:00:6f    54      10/3
00:02:4b:5b:28:40    54      6/13
```

The following example displays the ICC-VLAN:

```
G430-001(super)# show icc-vlan
VLAN 1
```

The following example displays interface configuration and statistics for a VLAN:

```
G430-001(super)# show interfaces Vlan 1
VLAN 1 is up, line protocol is up
Physical address is 00.04.0d.29.c6.bd.
 MTU 1500 bytes. Bandwidth 100000 kbit.
 Reliability 255/255 txLoad 1/255 rxLoad 1/255
 Encapsulation ARPA, ICC-VLAN
 Link status trap disabled
 Full-duplex, 100Mb/s
 ARP type: ARPA, ARP Timeout 04:00:00
 Last input never, Last output never
 Last clearing of 'show interface' counters never.
 5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
 5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
 0 input drops, 0 output drops, 0 unknown protocols
 0 packets input, 0 bytes
 0 broadcasts received, 0 giants
 0 input errors, 0 CRC
 0 packets output, 0 bytes
 0 output errors, 0 collisions
```

The following example displays port VLAN binding information:

```
G430-001(super)# show port vlan-binding-mode 10
port 10/3 is bind to all configured VLANs
```

The following example displays VLAN tagging information:

```
G430-001(super)# show trunk
Port   Mode Binding mode              Native VLAN
------ ----- ------------------------ -----------
10/3   dot1q bound to configured VLANs 54
```

The following example displays the VLANs configured on the device:

```
G50-001(super)# show vlan
VLAN ID VLAN-name
------- --------------------------------
1       V1
54      Marketing
66      V66
2121    Training
Total number of VLANs: 4
```

Summary of VLAN commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 85: VLAN CLI commands

Root level command	First level Command	Description
clear port static-vlan		Delete statically configured VLANs from the port
clear vlan		Delete an existing VLAN and its interface, remove the entry from the VLAN table, and return ports from this VLAN to the default VLAN 1
interface vlan		Create a VLAN interface, enter interface VLAN configuration mode, or delete a VLAN interface
	icc-vlan	Set the current VLAN as the ICC-VLAN
set port static-vlan		Assign a static VLAN to a port
set port vlan		Set the port VLAN ID (PVID)
set port vlan-binding-mode		Define the binding method used by ports
set trunk		Configure the VLAN tagging mode of a port
set vlan		Create or modify a VLAN
show cam vlan		Display all MAC entries in the CAM table for a specific VLAN
show icc-vlan		Display the current ICC VLAN

1 of 2

Table 85: VLAN CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level Command	Description
show interfaces		Display interface configuration and statistics for a particular interface or all interfaces
show port vlan-binding-mode		Display port VLAN binding mode information
show trunk		Display VLAN tagging information for all or some ports
show vlan		Display the VLANs configured in the media gateway

2 of 2

Configuring port redundancy

Redundancy involves the duplication of devices, services, or connections, so that in the event of a failure, the redundant duplicate can take over for the one that failed.

Since computer networks are critical for business operations, it is vital to ensure that the network continues to function even if a piece of equipment fails. Even the most reliable equipment might fail on occasion, but a redundant component can ensure that the network continues to operate despite such failure.

To achieve port redundancy, you can define a redundancy relationship between any two ports in a switch. One port is defined as the primary port and the other as the secondary port. If the primary port fails, the secondary port takes over.

Secondary port activation

The secondary port takes over within one second and is activated when the primary port link stops functioning. Subsequent switchovers take place after the minimum time between switchovers has elapsed. To set the minimum time between switchovers, use the **set port redundancy-intervals** command.

Switchback

If switchback is enabled and the primary port recovers, a switchback takes place. Use the **set port redundancy-intervals** command to set the following switchback parameters:

- ***min-time-between-switchovers***. The minimum time that is allowed to elapse before a primary-backup switchover
- ***switchback-interval***. The minimum time the primary port link has to be up before a switchback to the primary port takes place. If you set this to **none**, there is no switchback to the primary port when it recovers. In this case, switchback to the primary port only takes place if the secondary port fails.

Port redundancy CLI commands

The following commands are used to configure port redundancy. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **set port redundancy enable/disable** command to globally enable or disable the redundancy pairs you have defined. Using this command will not delete existing redundancy entries.
- Use the **set port redundancy** command to define or remove redundancy pairs. Enter **show port redundancy** to ensure that there is no redundancy scheme already defined on any of the links.
- Use the **set port redundancy-intervals** command to configure the two time constants that determine redundancy switchover parameters.
- Enter **show port redundancy** to display information about software port redundancy schemes defined for the switch.

Port redundancy configuration examples

The following example creates a port redundancy pair:

```
G430-001(super)# set port redundancy 10/3 10/4 on 1
Monitor: Port 10/4 is redundant to port 10/3.
Port redundancy is active - entry is effective immediately
```

The following example deletes a port redundancy pair:

```
G430-001(super)# set port redundancy 10/3 10/4 off
Entry Monitor removed: Port 10/4 is not redundant to port 10/3
```

The following example enables all configured port redundancies:

```
G430-001(super)# set port redundancy enable
All redundancy schemes are now enabled
```

The following example disables all configured port redundancies:

```
G430-001(super)# set port redundancy disable
All redundancy schemes are disabled but not removed
```

The following example configures the switchback interval for all configured port redundancies:

```
G430-001(super)# set port redundancy-intervals 60 30
Done!
```

The following example displays port redundancy information:

```
G430-001(super)# show port redundancy
Redundancy Name     Primary Port        Secondary Port      Status
-----------------   --------------      ----------------    --------
Monitor             10/3            10/4            primary
Minimum Time between Switchovers: 60
Switchback interval: 30
```

Summary of port redundancy commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 86: Port redundancy CLI commands

Command	Description
set port redundancy	Define or remove redundancy pairs
set port redundancy enable\|disable	Globally enable or disable port redundancy pairs defined on the media gateway
set port redundancy-intervals	Configure the two time constants that determine redundancy switchover parameters
show port redundancy	Display information about software port redundancy pairs defined on the media gateway

Configuring port mirroring

Port mirroring copies all received and transmitted packets (including local traffic) from a source port to a predefined destination port, in addition to the normal destination port of the packets. Port mirroring, also known as “sniffing,” is useful in debugging network problems.

Port mirroring allows you to define a source port and a destination port, regardless of port type. For example, a 10 Mbps and a 100 Mbps port can form a valid source/destination pair. You cannot, however, define the port mirroring source and destination ports as the same source and destination ports.

You can define one source port and one destination port on each G430 for received (Rx), transmitted (Tx), or transmitted and received (both) traffic.

Port mirroring CLI commands

The following commands are used to configure port mirroring on the G430. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **`set port mirror`** command to define a port mirroring pair in the switch
- Use the **`show port mirror`** command to display mirroring information for the switch
- Use the **`clear port mirror`** command to cancel port mirroring

Port mirroring configuration examples

The following example creates a port mirroring pair in the G430:

```
G430-001(super)# set port mirror source-port 10/3 mirror-port 10/4 sampling always
direction rx
Mirroring rx packets from port 10/3 to port 10/4 is enabled
```

The following example displays port mirroring information for the G430:

```
G430-001(super)# show port mirror
port mirroring
Mirroring both Rx and Tx packets from port 10/3 to port 10/4 is enabled
```

The following example disables port mirroring:

```
G430-001(super)# clear port mirror
```

Summary of port mirroring commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 87: Port mirroring CLI commands

Command	Description
clear port mirror	Delete a port mirroring pair
set port mirror	Define a port mirroring source-destination pair
show port mirror	Display mirroring information for a specified port or for all ports

Configuring spanning tree

G430 devices support the enhanced Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (802.1w). The 802.1w standard is a faster and more sophisticated version of the 802.1d (STP) standard, and includes backward compatibility with 802.1d. Spanning tree makes it possible to recover connectivity after an outage within approximately a minute. RSTP, with its “rapid” algorithm, can usually restore connectivity to a network where a backbone link has failed in much less time.

Spanning tree protocol

The spanning tree algorithm ensures the existence of a loop-free topology in networks that contain parallel bridges. A loop occurs when there are alternate routes between hosts. If there is a loop in an extended network, bridges may forward traffic indefinitely, which can result in increased traffic and degradation in network performance.

The spanning tree algorithm produces a logical tree topology out of any arrangement of bridges. The result is a single path between any two end stations on an extended network. In addition, the spanning tree algorithm provides a high degree of fault tolerance. It allows the network to automatically reconfigure the spanning tree topology if there is a bridge or data-path failure.

The spanning tree algorithm requires five values to derive the spanning tree topology. These are:

- A multicast address specifying all bridges on the extended network. This address is media-dependent and is automatically determined by the software.
- A network-unique identifier for each bridge on the extended network

- A unique identifier for each bridge/LAN interface (a port)
- The relative priority of each port
- The cost of each port

After these values are assigned, bridges multicast and process the formatted frames (called Bridge Protocol Data Units, or BPDUs) to derive a single, loop-free topology throughout the extended network. The bridges exchange BPDU frames quickly, minimizing the time that service is unavailable between hosts.

Spanning tree per port

Spanning tree can take up to 30 seconds to open traffic on a port. This delay can cause problems on ports carrying time-sensitive traffic. You can, therefore, enable or disable spanning tree in the G430 on a per-port basis to minimize this effect.

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)

The enhanced feature set of the 802.1w standard includes:

- Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) type 2
- New port roles: Alternate port, Backup port
- Direct handshaking between adjacent bridges regarding a desired topology change (TC). This eliminates the need to wait for the timer to expire.
- Improvement in the time it takes to propagate TC information. Specifically, TC information does not have to be propagated all the way back to the Root Bridge (and back) to be changed.
- Origination of BPDUs on a port-by-port basis

Port roles

At the center of RSTP – specifically as an improvement over STP (802.1d) – are the roles that are assigned to the ports. There are four port roles:

- **Root port**. The port closest to the root bridge
- **Designated port**. The corresponding port on the remote bridge of the local root port
- **Alternate port**. An alternate route to the root
- **Backup port**. An alternate route to the network segment

The RSTP algorithm usually makes it possible to change port roles rapidly through its fast topology change propagation mechanism. For example, a port in the blocking state can be assigned the role of alternate port. When the backbone of the network fails, the port can rapidly be changed to forwarding.

Whereas the STA *passively* waited for the network to converge before turning a port into the forwarding state, RSTP *actively* confirms that a port can safely transition to forwarding without relying on any specific, programmed timer configuration.

RSTP port types

RSTP provides a means of fast network convergence after a topology change. It does this by assigning different treatments to different port types.

- **Edge ports**. Setting a port to edge-port admin state indicates that this port is connected directly to end stations that cannot create bridging loops in the network. These ports transition quickly to forwarding state. However, if BPDUs are received on an edge port, its operational state will be changed to non-edge-port and bridging loops will be avoided by the RSTP algorithm. The default admin state of 10/100 M ports is edge-port.

 Enter **`set port edge admin state`**, followed by the module and port number – or a range of port numbers – to specify whether or not a port is considered an edge port.

 For example, the following command specifies that ports 10/5 and 10/6 are edge ports:

```
G430-001(super)# set port edge admin state 10/5-6 edge-port
```

 The following command specifies that port 10/5 is not an edge port:

```
G430-001(super)# set port edge admin state 10/5 non-edge-port
```

 Enter **`show port edge state`**, followed by the module and port number, to display the edge state of the specified port. Use this command without specifying a module number or port to display the edge state of all ports.

- **Non-edge ports**. You must manually configure uplink and backbone ports to be non-edge ports, using the **`set port edge admin state`** command.

- **Point-to-point link ports**. This port type applies only to ports interconnecting RSTP compliant switches and is used to define whether the devices are interconnected using shared Ethernet segment or point-to-point Ethernet link. RSTP convergence may be faster when switches are connected using point-to-point links. The default setting for all ports – automatic detection of point-to-point link – is sufficient for most networks.

 Enter **`set port point-to-point admin status`**, followed by the module and port number or a range of port numbers, and an admin status parameter, to specify the port's connection type. Admin status parameter values are:

 – *`force-true`*. Treats the port as if it is connected point-to-point
 – *`force-false`*. Treats the port as if it is connected to shared media
 – *`auto`*. Attmepts to automatically detect the port's connection type

 For example, the following command specifies that ports 10/5 and 10/6 are treated as if they were connected point-to-point:

```
G430-001(super)# set port point-to-point admin status 10/5-6 force-true
```

- **All ports**. Enter **show port point-to-point status**, followed by the module and port number, to display the point-to-point status of the specified point-to-point status of all ports

Spanning tree CLI commands

Use the following commands to configure spanning tree. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **set port spantree** command to enable or disable the spanning tree mode for specific switch ports.
- Use the **set port spantree cost** command to set the spanning tree cost of a port. This value defines which port will be allowed to forward traffic if two ports with different costs cause a loop.
- Use the **set port spantree force-protocol-migration** command to force a port to send a rapid spanning tree hello packet (Bridge Protocol Data Unit).
- Use the **set port spantree priority** command to set the spanning tree priority level of a port. This value defines the priority of a port to be blocked in case two ports with the same cost cause a loop.
- Use the **set spantree default-path-cost** command to set the version of the spanning tree default path cost used by this bridge.
- Use the **set spantree enable/disable** command to enable or disable the spanning tree algorithm.
- Use the **set spantree forward-delay** command to specify the time used when transferring the state of a port to the forwarding state.
- Use the **set spantree hello-time** command to specify the time interval between the generation of configuration BPDUs by the root.
- Use the **set spantree max-age** command to specify the time to keep an information message before it is discarded.
- Use the **set spantree priority** command to set the bridge priority for STP.
- Use the **set spantree tx-hold-count** command to set the value in packets used by the spanning tree in order to limit the maximum number of BPDUs transmitted during a hello-time period.
- Use the **set spantree version** command to set the version of the spanning tree protocol.
- Use the **show spantree** command to display spanning-tree information.

Spanning tree configuration examples

The following example enables spanning tree on a port:

```
G430-001(super)# set port spantree enable 10/3
port 10/3 was enabled on spantree
```

The following example disables spanning tree on a port:

```
G430-001(super)# set port spantree disable 10/3
port 10/3 was disabled on spantree
```

The following example sets the spanning tree cost of port 10/5 to 4096:

```
G430-001(super)# set port spantree cost 10/3 4096
port 10/3 spantree cost is 4096
```

The following example configures the version of the spanning tree default path cost used by this bridge:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree default-path-cost common-spanning-tree
Spanning tree default path costs is set to common spanning tree.
```

The following example configures the time used when transferring the port to the forwarding state:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree forward-delay 16
bridge forward delay is set to 16.
```

The following example configures the time interval between the generation of configuration BPDUs by the root:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree hello-time 2
bridge hello time is set to 2.
```

The following example configures the amount of time an information message is kept before being discarded:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree max-age 21
bridge max age is set to 21.
```

The following example configures the bridge priority for spanning tree:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree priority 36864
Bridge priority set to 36864.
```

The following example sets the value in packets used by spanning tree in order to limit the maximum number of BPDUs transmitted during a hello-time period:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree tx-hold-count 4
tx hold count is set to 4.
```

The following example configures the version of spanning tree to use on the device:

```
G430-001(super)# set spantree version rapid-spanning-tree
Spanning tree version is set to rapid spanning tree.
```

The following example displays spanning tree information:

```
Spanning tree state is enabled

Designated Root:  00-04-0d-ea-b0-2d
Designated Root Priority: 32768
Designated Root Cost: 0
Designated Root Port: No root port, Bridge is Designated root
Root Max Age: 20   Hello Time: 2
Root Forward Delay: 15

Bridge ID MAC ADDR: 00-04-0d-ea-b0-2d
Bridge ID priority: 32768
Bridge Max Age: 20        Bridge Hello Time: 2
Bridge Forward Delay: 15  Tx Hold Count 3
Spanning Tree Version is rapid spanning tree
Spanning Tree Default Path Costs is according to common spanning tree

Port   State         Cost       Priority
------ ------------- ---------- ------------
10/3   not-connected 4          128
10/4   not-connected 4          128
```

Summary of spanning tree commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 88: Spanning tree CLI commands

Command	Description
set port edge admin state	Assign or de-assign RSTP edge-port admin state to a port for Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) treatment
set port point-to-point admin status	Specify a port's connection type

1 of 2

Table 88: Spanning tree CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
set port spantree	Enable or disable spanning tree for specific ports
set port spantree cost	Set the spanning tree cost of a port
set port spantree force-protocol-migration	Force the port to send a rapid spanning tree hello packet (Bridge Protocol Data Unit)
set port spantree priority	Set the spanning tree priority level of a port
set spantree default-path-cost	Set the version of the spanning tree default path cost used by the current bridge
set spantree enable\|disable	Enable or disable the spanning-tree algorithm for the media gateway
set spantree forward-delay	Specify the time used when transferring the state of a port to the forwarding state
set spantree hello-time	Specify the time interval between the generation of configuration BPDUs by the root
set spantree max-age	Specify the time to keep an information message before it is discarded
set spantree priority	Set the bridge priority for the spanning tree
set spantree tx-hold-count	Set the value in packets used by the spanning tree in order to limit the maximum number of BPDUs transmitted during a hello-time period
set spantree version	Set the version of the spanning tree protocol used by the device
show port edge state	Display the edge state of a specified port
show port point-to-point status	Display the point-to-point status of a specific port or all ports
show spantree	Display spanning-tree information

2 of 2

Port classification

With the G430, you can classify any port as either regular or valuable. Classifying a port as valuable means that a link fault trap is sent in the event of a link failure. The trap is sent even when the port is disabled. This feature is particularly useful for the port redundancy application, where you need to be informed about a link failure on the dormant port.

Port classification CLI commands

Use the following commands to configure port classification. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **`set port classification`** command to set the port classification to either regular or valuable. Any change in the spanning tree state from forwarding for a valuable port will erase all learned MAC addresses in the switch.
- Use the **`show port classification`** command to display a port's classification.

Port classification configuration examples

The following example classifies a port as a valuable port:

```
G430-001(super)# set port classification 10/3 valuable
Port 10/3 classification has been changed.
```

The following example displays the port classification of all ports on the G430:

```
G430-001(super)# show port classification
Port      Port Classification
--------  -------------------------
10/3      valuable
10/4      regular
```

Summary of port classification commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 89: Port classification CLI commands

Command	Description
set port classification	Set the port classification to either regular or valuable (any change in the spanning tree state from forwarding for a valuable port will erase all learned MAC addresses in the switch)
show port classification	Display port classification for a specified port or all ports

Chapter 17: Configuring monitoring applications

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway provides several software tools for monitoring and diagnosing your network. Use these tools to monitor the status of your network operations, and to analyze the flow of information.

Configuring RMON

Remote Monitoring (RMON), the internationally recognized network monitoring standard, is a network management protocol that allows network information to be gathered at a single workstation. You can use RMON probes to monitor and analyze a single segment only. When you deploy a switch on the network, there are additional components in the network that cannot be monitored using RMON. These components include the switch fabric, VLAN, and statistics for all ports.

RMON is the internationally recognized and approved standard for detailed analysis of shared Ethernet media. It ensures consistency in the monitoring and display of statistics between different vendors.

RMON's advanced remote networking capabilities provide the tools needed to monitor and analyze the behavior of segments on a network. In conjunction with an RMON agent, RMON gathers details and logical information about network status, performance, and users running applications on the network.

An RMON agent is a probe that collects information about segments, hosts, and traffic, and sends the information to a management station. You use specific software tools to view the information collected by the RMON agent on the management station.

You can configure RMON for switching on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway. The G430 uses RMON I, which analyzes the MAC layer (Layer 2 in the OSI seven-layer model). You can also configure a port to raise an SNMP trap whenever the port fails.

RMON CLI commands

Use the following commands to configure RMON. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **clear rmon statistics** command to clear RMON statistics.
- Use the **rmon alarm** command to create an RMON alarm entry.
- Use the **rmon event** command to create an RMON event entry.
- Use the **rmon history** command to create an RMON history entry.
- Use the **show rmon alarm** command to display all RMON alarm entries.
- Use the **show rmon event** command to display RMON event entries.
- Use the **show rmon history** command to display RMON alarm entries.
- Use the **show rmon statistics** command to display RMON statistics.

RMON configuration examples

The following example creates an RMON alarm entry:

```
G430-001(super)# rmon alarm 1 1.3.6.1.2.1.16.1.1.1.5.16777216 20 delta
rising-threshold 10000 32 falling-threshold 1000 32 risingOrFalling root
alarm 1 was created successfully
```

The following example creates an RMON event entry:

```
G430-001(super)# rmon event 32 log description “Change of device” owner root
event 32 was created successfully
```

The following example creates an RMON history entry with an index of 80 on port 10/3, recording activity over 60 intervals (buckets) of 20 seconds each.

```
G430-001(super)# rmon history 80 10/3 interval 20 buckets 60 owner root
history index 80 was created successfully
```

The following example displays information about an RMON alarm entry:

```
G430-001(super)# show rmon alarm 1
alarm
alarm 1 is active, owned by root
Monitors ifEntry.1.16777216 every 20 seconds
Taking delta samples, last value was 0
Rising threshold is 10000, assigned to event # 32
Falling threshold is 1000, assigned to event # 32
On startup enable rising or_falling alarms
```

The following example displays information about an RMON event entry:

```
G430-001(super)# show rmon event 32
event
Event 32 is active, owned by root
Description is Change of device
Event firing causes log,last fired 12:36:04
```

The following example displays information about an RMON history entry:

```
G430-001(super)# show rmon history 80
history
Entry 80 is active, owned by root
Monitors the port 10/3 every 20 seconds
Requested # of time intervals, ie buckets, is 60
Granted # of time intervals, ie buckets, is 60
Sample # 2 began measuring at 0:21:16
Received 4081 octets, 41 packets,
0 broadcast and 10 multicast packets,
0 undersize and 0 oversize packets,
0 fragments and 0 jabbers,
0 CRC alignment errors and 0 collisions,
# of dropped packet events (due to a lack of resources): 0
Network utilization is estimated at 0
```

The following example displays RMON statistics for a port:

```
G430-001(super)# show rmon statistics 10/3
Statistics for port 10/3 is active, owned by Monitor
Received 6952909 octets, 78136 packets,
26 broadcast and 257 multicast packets,
0 undersize and 0 oversize packets,
0 fragments and 0 jabbers,
0 CRC alignment errors and 0 collisions,
# of dropped packet events (due to a lack of resources): 0
# of packets received of length (in octets):
64:18965, 65-127:295657, 128-255:4033,
256-511:137, 512-1023:156, 1024-1518:0,
```

Summary of RMON commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 90: RMON CLI commands

Command	Description
clear rmon statistics	Clear RMON statistics
rmon alarm	Create or delete an RMON alarm entry
rmon event	Create or delete an RMON event entry
rmon history	Create or delete an RMON history entry
show rmon alarm	Display information about a specific RMON alarm entry or all existing RMON alarm entries
show rmon event	Display a specific RMON event entry or all RMON event entries
show rmon history	Display a specific RMON history entry or all RMON history entries
show rmon statistics	Display RMON statistics for a specific interface or for all interfaces

Configuring and analyzing RTP statistics

The RTP statistics application collects data and statistics for RTP sessions (streams) from the gateway VoIP engine. You can view the data and configure SNMP traps to be generated when the QoS level falls below a configured level.

Note:

An alternative tool available from Avaya for debugging QoS problems is VMON. VMON is an RTCP QoS reports collector. VMON support, available in all Avaya devices, is the capability of a VoIP device to send a copy of an RTCP message to the IP address of a VMON server. VMON can collect RTCP reports, store them on its host hard disk, and analyze and generate graphic reports. However, VMON requires a dedicated Windows server. The RTP statistics application runs on the G430's firmware, and does not require any dedicated hardware. For information about configuring VMON in Avaya Aura Communication Manager, see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

Note:

The gateway performs traceroutes whenever RTP statistics is enabled.

The RTP statistics application provides the following functionality:

- Collects QoS data from the gateway VoIP engine(s), including Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) data, traceroute reports, and information from the DSP regarding jitter buffer, internal delays, and so on

 Note:

 RTCP is a standard QoS report companion protocol to RTP. RTP endpoints periodically send RTCP report packets to their remote peer (or peers in multicast). RTCP reports include QoS data such as delay, jitter, and loss.

- Collects call data from the gateway, such as duration, start-time, and end-time
- Displays the RTP statistics in CLI and MIB formats
- Displays summary reports for the VoIP engine(s)
- Assesses QoS status based on configurable thresholds on an extensive set of QoS metrics
- Generates QoS traps. QoS traps are notifications sent via SNMP upon termination of an RTP stream that suffers from bad QoS. These notifications include extensive data about the session that enables offline troubleshooting of QoS problems.The trap rate is controlled by a configurable trap rate limiter.

 Note:

 QoS trap generation is an especially convenient troubleshooting tool for large installations, since all devices that support the RTP statistics application can be configured to send traps to a single SNMP trap manager.

- Generates QoS fault and clear traps. QoS fault traps are notifications that are sent when more than a configurable number of active sessions have QoS indicators over the configured thresholds. A QoS clear trap is a notification that is sent after a QoS fault trap when the number of active RTP sessions with QoS indicators over the configured thresholds reduces to a specified number.

Configuring the RTP statistics application

To configure the RTP statistics application, work through the following sections, in order:

- Viewing RTP statistics thresholds
- Configuring RTP statistics thresholds
- Enabling and resetting the RTP statistics application
- Viewing application configuration
- Configuring QoS traps

- Configuring QoS fault and clear traps
- Configuring the trap rate limiter

Viewing RTP statistics thresholds

The RTP statistics application uses a system of thresholds to evaluate levels of QoS during RTP sessions. The thresholds are configured on several QoS metrics. Your configuration of the thresholds determines when the application evaluates a session as having bad QoS conditions.

This section describes the thresholds that you can configure, how you can view the thresholds that are currently configured, and the metrics on which you can configure them.

The RTP statistics application samples the VoIP engine every RTCP interval, which is configured in Avaya Aura Communication Manager, where it is called “RTCP Report Period”. The RTCP interval is typically 5 to 8 seconds. For information about configuring the RTCP interval (RTCP report period), see *Administrator Guide for Avaya Aura Communication Manager*, 03-300509.

Thresholds types

- **A threshold on a metric**. For example, you can configure a threshold on the metric ‘packet loss’. The application samples the metric every RTP interval and increments a counter (event counter) if the sampled value is over the threshold. Hence, the 'event-counter' represents the number of times the metric was sampled over its threshold.
- **An event threshold**. An event threshold is a threshold on an event counter. If QoS traps are configured, the application generates a QoS trap when, at the end of a session, one or more event counters are over their event thresholds. For example, if the event threshold for packet loss is 2, the application generates a QoS trap if packet loss is sampled over its threshold two or more times.
- **Thresholds on metric averages**. The application calculates averages of some of the metrics. When an RTP session terminates, the application evaluates the average metrics and generates a QoS trap (if QoS traps are configured) if one of them is over its corresponding threshold.

Note:

All CLI commands described in this section are available in the general context of the CLI.

Viewing the configured thresholds

1. Enter **show rtp-stat thresholds**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat thresholds

Item                  Threshold      Event Threshold
--------------------  -------------  -----------------
Codec Loss            6.0%           1
Average Codec Loss    3.0%           N/A
Codec RTT             700mS          2
Echo Return Loss      0dB            1
Loss                  6.0%           2
Average Loss          3.0%           N/A
Remote Loss           6.0%           2
Average Remote Loss   3.0%           N/A
RTT                   500mS          2
Local Jitter          50mS           2
Remote Jitter         50mS           2
SSRC Changes          N/A            2
```

Table 91 describes the QoS metrics on which thresholds are configured, and the time at which each metric is evaluated.

Table 91: QoS metrics

Metric	Description	Evaluation time
Codec Loss	The percentage of time the codec plays fill frames due to lack of valid RTP frames. Possible causes include jitter and packet loss.	Every RTCP interval
Average Codec Loss	The average codec loss measurement since the beginning of the RTP stream	At the end of the session
Codec RTT	An estimation of the overall Round Trip Time (RTT) on the voice-channel, including the network delay and internal delays. RTT is the time taken for a message to get to the remote peer and back to the local receiver.	Each time an RTCP packet is received
Echo Return Loss	The echo cancellation loss on the TDM bus	Every RTCP interval
Loss	The estimated network RTP packet loss. The VoIP engine evaluates the current received packet loss every RTCP interval – usually 5 to 8 seconds. The VoIP engine postpones loss estimation until the next interval if the number of packets received is less than the minimum statistic window. The minimum statistic window is configured with the CLI command **rtp-stat min-stat-win**.	Every RTCP interval

1 of 2

Table 91: QoS metrics (continued)

Metric	Description	Evaluation time
Average Loss	The average packet loss evaluation since the beginning of the RTP stream	At the end of the session
Remote Loss	The network loss according to the remote RTP receiver. The device learns of the remote packet loss from received RTCP messages.	Each time an RTCP packet is received
Average Remote Loss	The average remote network loss measurement since the beginning of the RTP stream	At the end of the session
RTT	The network RTT. This metric does not include internal delay. The device learns of the RTT from RTCP messages.	Each time an RTCP packet is received
Local Jitter	Variation in delay of packet delivery to the local peer	Every RTCP interval
Remote Jitter	Variation in delay of packet delivery to the remote peer. The device learns of the remote jitter from RTCP messages.	Each time an RTCP packet is received
SSRC Changes	The number of times the `RTP SSRC` field in received RTP packets has changed	Every RTCP interval

2 of 2

Configuring RTP statistics thresholds

RTP statistics thresholds should be configured so that incrementation of QoS event counters coincides with real detectable bad QoS in your network. Optimal values are different for each network. Configure any thresholds that are not already configured as you require them. See Viewing RTP statistics thresholds on page 346.

For a description of each metric, see Table 91. The Codec metrics, Codec loss and Codec RTT are useful for evaluating the actual user experience. The other metrics are useful for identifying network problems that contribute to QoS problems experienced by the user. For example, the Codec RTT metric indicates the overall delay experienced by the user. If you configure a meaningful threshold on the Codec RTT metric, metrics such as Local Jitter, Remote Jitter, and rtt metrics may help you identify causes when Codec RTT exceeds its threshold.

Configuring RTP statistics thresholds

1. Use the **rtp-stat thresholds** command to set thresholds on QoS indicators. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds echo-return-loss 5
Done!
```

 With this example configuration, if echo-return-loss is sampled higher than 5 dB during an RTP session, the echo-return-loss event counter increments.

2. Use the **rtp-stat event-threshold** command to set thresholds on QoS events. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold echo-return-loss 2
Done!
```

 With this example configuration, if echo-return-loss is sampled over its threshold more than twice during an RTP session, the application considers the session to have QoS faults.

Enabling and resetting the RTP statistics application

When you enable the RTP statistics application on the gateway, the application starts to collect QoS data from the VoIP engine(s) and stores the data in the gateway RAM, which holds a limited history of RTP session entries. The VoIP engine also starts to perform and report UDP traceroutes.

Session data and automatic session traceroute results can be viewed using the CLI.

Enabling the RTP statistics application

- Enter **rtp-stat-service**. For example:

```
G430-001# rtp-stat-service

The RTP statistics service is enabled (default: disabled)
```

Note:

Admin level access is required in order to use the **rtp-stat-service** command.

Resetting the RTP statistics application

- Enter **rtp-stat clear**.

 All counters are reset and the RTP statistics history is erased.

Viewing application configuration

Viewing the application configuration helps you see if the application is enabled, which types of traps are enabled, and how the trap rate limiter and minimum statistics window are configured. The minimum statistics window is the minimum number of observed RTP sequence increments for which the application evaluates packet loss.

- Enter **`show rtp-stat config`**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat config

RTP Statistic: Enabled
QoS Trap: Enabled
QoS Fault Trap: Enabled
    Fault: 2
    Clear: 0
QoS Trap Rate Limiter:
    Token Interval: 10.00 seconds
    Bucket Size: 5
Session Table:
    Size: 128
    Reserved: 64
Min Stat Win: 50
```

Table 92 describes the output of the **`show rtp-stat config`** command.

Table 92: RTP statistics application configuration

Name	Description
RTP Statistic	Status of the RTP statistics application. Possible values: ● `Enabled`. The application is enabled. ● `Disabled`. The application is disabled.
QoS Trap	QoS trap status. Possible values: ● `Enabled`. The RTP statistics application is configured to generate QoS traps. ● `Disabled`. The RTP statistics application is not configured to generate QoS traps.
QoS Fault Trap	QoS fault trap status. Possible values: ● `Enabled`. The RTP statistics application is configured to generate QoS fault and clear traps. ● `Disabled`. The RTP statistics application is not configured to generate QoS fault and clear traps.
Fault	The QoS fault trap boundary. That is, the minimum number of active sessions with QoS faults that triggers a QoS fault trap.

1 of 2

Table 92: RTP statistics application configuration (continued)

Name	Description
Clear	The QoS clear trap boundary. That is, the reduced number of active sessions with QoS faults that triggers a QoS clear trap to be sent after a QoS fault trap was sent.
QoS Trap Rate Limiter:	
Token Interval	The displayed token interval is in seconds. The maximum long term trap rate, expressed as an interval in seconds. In the example shown, the maximum long term trap rate is one trap every 10 seconds.
Bucket Size	The maximum number of tokens stored in the token bucket of the trap rate limiter. This item limits the size of a QoS trap burst.
Session Table:	
Size	The maximum number of RTP session entries held in the session table in the gateway RAM
Reserved	The number of rows in the session table that are reserved for sessions with QoS problems. In the example shown, the table size is 128 and the reserved number is 64. If, from 1000 sessions only 300 had QoS problems, the session table will hold at least the last 64 sessions that had QoS problems. Note that if the last 128 sessions all had QoS problems, all rows in the session table will be filled with sessions that had QoS problems.
Min Stat Win	The minimum statistic window configured for the RTP statistics application. That is, the minimum number of observed RTP sequence increments for which the application evaluates packet loss.

2 of 2

Configuring QoS traps

You can configure the application to automatically generate QoS traps via SNMP at the termination of RTP sessions that have QoS problems. SNMP traps are automatically sent to the SNMP trap manager on the active Media Gateway Controller (MGC). You can also configure SNMP traps to be sent to an external trap manager. The application generates a QoS trap when, at the end of an RTP session, one or more event counters are over their event thresholds. For example, if the event threshold for packet loss is 2, the application generates a trap at the termination of any session in which packet-loss was sampled over its threshold twice or more during the session.

CAUTION:
If the thresholds for trap generation are set too low, a significant amount of trap traffic will be generated and negatively impact network performance.

Enabling QoS traps

1. View the RTP statistic thresholds and modify their configurations as necessary. See Viewing RTP statistics thresholds on page 346 and Configuring RTP statistics thresholds on page 348.
2. If you need to modify the minimum statistic window, use the **rtp-stat min-stat-win** command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat min-stat-win 50
Done!
```

 The minimum statistic window is the minimum number of observed RTP sequence increments for which the application evaluates packet loss. The VoIP engine evaluates the current received packet loss every RTCP interval. The VoIP engine postpones loss estimation to the next interval if the number of received packets is less than the minimum statistic window. By modifying the minimum statistic window, you can prevent the application from generating loss-events based on too few packets and safely configure a low packet loss threshold.
3. To configure an additional trap destination, such as an external trap manager, use the command **snmp-server host**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# snmp-server host 136.9.71.47 traps v1 public
```

Note:

When using the **snmp-server host** command, you can specify only to send certain types of traps to the specified trap manager. For example, **snmp-server host 1.1.1.1 traps v1 public rtp-stat-qos rtp-stats-faults** configures only QoS traps and QoS fault and clear traps to be sent to host 1.1.1.1.

To check your current SNMP configurations, enter **show snmp**. Traps are automatically sent to the active MGC by the dynamic trap manager feature. To configure the dynamic trap manager, use the command **snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager**. For more information about the dynamic trap manager, see Configuring dynamic trap manager on page 306.

4. Enter **rtp-stat qos-trap** to enable the traps, if not already enabled. For example:

```
G430-001# rtp-stat qos-trap

The RTP statistics QoS trap is enabled
```

QoS traps are now enabled.

Configuring QoS fault and clear traps

You can configure the RTP statistics application to send QoS fault and clear traps. A QoS fault trap is sent when a specified number of active RTP sessions have QoS indicators over the configured thresholds. A QoS clear trap is sent after a QoS fault trap when the number of active RTP sessions with QoS indicators over the configured thresholds reduces to a specified number. Since some RTP sessions can be very long, and QoS traps are sent only after the termination of the stream, QoS fault and clear traps are important for providing timely information about QoS problems.

Note:

QoS fault traps appear in the Network Management Console Event Log Browser, indicating to the user that there are QoS problems in a specific network device. See the *Avaya Network Management Console User Guide*, 14-300169.

- Use the **rtp-stat fault** command. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat fault 1 0

The fault trap boundary was set to 1 (default: 3)
The clear trap boundary was set to 0
```

With this example configuration, a QoS fault trap is sent if and when one active RTP session has QoS problems. A QoS clear trap is then sent if and when the number of active RTP sessions with QoS problems reaches 0.

Configuring the trap rate limiter

The application features a trap rate limiter. The trap rate limiter limits the rate at which QoS traps are sent. The rate limiter protects against overloading the trap manager with bursts of traps when a single event causes multiple RTP sessions to terminate simultaneously.

The trap rate limiter uses a token bucket scheme, in which traps are sent only if there are tokens in a virtual bucket. Tokens are added to the bucket every 'token interval,' which sets the maximum long term trap rate. Each time a trap is sent, the number of tokens in the bucket decrements. The 'bucket size' is the maximum number of tokens that the bucket can hold. The bucket size limits the trap burst size.

- Use the **rtp-stat qos-trap-rate-limit** command. For example:

```
G430-001# rtp-stat qos-trap-rate-limit 2000 10
```

In this example configuration, the token-interval is 2000 and the bucket-size is 10. This means that a token is added to the bucket every 2000 hundredths of a second (20 seconds) and the bucket is limited to a maximum size of 10 tokens.

Analyzing RTP statistics output

This section describes the reports, statistics, and traps you can view, how to view them, and how to understand the output.

Viewing RTP statistics summary reports

RTP statistics summary reports display QoS trap statistics for the VoIP engine(s).

- Enter **show rtp-stat summary**. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat summary

Total QoS traps: 23
QoS traps Drop : 0
Qos Fault
Engine                              Active   Total    Mean      Tx
ID   Description     Uptime         Session  Session  Duration  TTL
---  --------------  -----------    -------  -------  --------  ----
000        internal  04,18:15:15     2/1     35/24   01:04:44    64
```

Table 93 describes the fields in the summary report.

Table 93: RTP statistics summary reports output

Field	Description
Total QoS traps	The total number of QoS traps sent since the RTP statistics application was enabled or since the last use of the **rtp-stat clear** command
QoS traps Drop	The number of QoS traps dropped by the rate limiter since the RTP statistics application was enabled or since the last use of the **rtp-stat clear** command
Qos Fault/QoS Clear	General QoS state: QoS Fault means that the number of active RTP sessions with QoS faults is currently higher than the QoS fault boundary. QoS Clear means that the number of active RTP sessions with QoS faults is currently less than or equal to the QoS clear boundary. You can configure the QoS fault and clear boundaries using the **rtp-stat fault** command. See Configuring QoS fault and clear traps on page 353.
Engine ID	The ID of the VoIP engine. Since the G430 has one VoIP engine, one line appears in the table.
Description	Description of the VoIP engine
Uptime	The uptime of the RTP statistics application. This is the time since the RTP statistics application was enabled or since the last use of the **rtp-stat clear** command.
Active Session	The number of active sessions / number of active sessions with QoS problems
Total Session	The total number of sessions / number of sessions that had QoS problems
Mean Duration	The mean RTP session duration (calculated only for terminated calls)
Tx TTL	The `IP Time To Live (TTL)` field for transmitted RTP packets

Viewing RTP session statistics

Using the CLI, you can view a summary of active and terminated sessions and you can view RTP statistics for a given RTP session.

The **show rtp-stat sessions** command displays a summary of the active and/or terminated RTP sessions in the session table. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat sessions last 5

ID    QoS Start date and time End Time Type     Destination
----- --- ------------------- -------- ------- ---------------
00031     2004-10-20,10:51:36 10:59:07  G729    135.8.76.64
00032  *  2004-10-20,10:53:42 10:57:36  G723    135.8.76.107
00033  *  2004-10-20,10:58:21 10:59:06  G723    135.8.76.107
00034     2004-10-20,11:08:40        -  G729    135.8.76.64
00035  *  2004-10-20,11:09:07        -  G723    135.8.76.107
```

An asterisk (*) in the QoS column indicates that the session had QoS problems.

The **show rtp-stat detailed** command displays detailed information about a specified active or terminated RTP session, including the QoS metrics reported by the RTP statistics application. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat detailed 35

Session-ID: 35[1]
Status: Terminated[2], QOS: Faulted[3], EngineId: 0[4]
Start-Time: 2004-10-20[5],11:09:07[6], End-Time: 2004-10-20,11:13:40[7]
Duration: 00:04:33[8]
CName: gwp@135.8.118.252[9]
Phone: 69:2011[10]
Local-Address: 135.8.118.252:2061[11] SSRC 154611212[12]
Remote-Address: 135.8.76.107:2061[13] SSRC 2989801899 (0)[14]
Samples: 54[15] (5 sec)[16]

Codec:
G723[17] 62B[18] 30mS[19] Off[20], Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) Disabled[21]/Not-Supported[22],
Play-Time 272.610sec[23], Loss 0.0%[24] #1[25], Avg-Loss 0.1%[26], RTT 741mS[27] #38[28],
Avg-RTT 570mS[29], JBuf-under/overruns 0.1%[30]/0.0%[31], Jbuf-Delay 22mS[32],
Max-Jbuf-Delay 60mS[33]

Received-RTP:
Packets 9236[34], Loss 0.0%[35] #0[36], Avg-Loss 0.0%[37], RTT 604mS[38] #38[39], Avg-RTT
376mS[40], Jitter 0mS[41] #0[42], Avg-Jitter 0mS[43], TTL(last/min/max) 63/63/63[44],
Duplicates 0[45], Seq-Fall 0[46], DSCP 46[47], L2Pri 12[48], RTCP 54[49]

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 1[50], DSCP 184[51], L2Pri 6[52], RTCP 62[53]

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 0.0%[54] #0[55], Avg-Loss 0.0%[56], Jitter 0mS[57] #0[58], Avg-Jitter 0mS[59]

Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 45dB[60] #1[61], Len 32mS[62]

RSVP:
Status Disabled[63], Failures 0[64]
```

Table 94 describes the fields in the **show rtp-stat detailed** command output according to the numbered labels in the example.

Table 94: Detailed CLI output per RTP session

Field	Label	Description	From the CLI example
Session-ID	1	An arbitrary index number for the session in the session table	`Session-ID: 35`
Status	2	The status of the session. Possible values: • `Active`. The session is still open. • `Terminated`. The session is finished.	`Status: Terminated`
QOS	3	The QoS status of the session. Possible values: • `OK`. There are no QoS problems in the session. • `Faulted`. There are QoS problems in the session.	`QOS: Faulted`
EngineId	4	The ID of the VoIP engine. The G430 has one VoIP engine.	`EngineId: 0`
Start-Time	5	The date of the RTP session	`2004-10-20`
	6	The start time of the RTP session	`Start-Time: 2004-10-20,11:09:07`
End-Time	7	The end time of the RTP session	`End-Time: 2004-10-20,11:13:40`
Duration	8	The duration of the RTP session	`Duration: 00:04:33`
CName	9	format: gwt@<MGP-address>	`CName: gwp@135.8.118.252`

1 of 6

Table 94: Detailed CLI output per RTP session (continued)

Field	Label	Description	From the CLI example
Phone	10	The local extension number and conference ID in format <conference ID>:<extension number>. Conference calls can involve more than one entry in the session table. Multiple sessions belonging to the same conference call can usually be identified by a common conference ID. Notes: • Phone data is received from Avaya Aura Communication Manager only if VMON is configured. • If you are not running VMON, you can cause Avaya Aura Communication Manager to send the phone data by configuring a dummy RTCP-server for the region, with a 'localhost' IP address (127.x.x.x).	`Phone: 69:2011`
Local-Address	11	The PMI. The number after the colon is the UDP port number.	`Local-Address: 135.8.118.252:2061`
Remote-Address	13	The remote VoIP engine, gateway PMI, or IP phone address. The number after the colon is the UDP port number.	`Remote-Address: 135.8.76.107:2061`
	12, 14	SSRC ID. The number in parentheses is the number of observed SSRC changes during the session.	`SSRC 2989801899 (0)`
Samples	15	The number of times the application has sampled the VoIP engine (RTP receiver) statistics.	`Samples: 54`[15] `(5 sec)`
	16	The sampling interval	`Samples: 54 (5 sec)`[16]
Codec:	17	The codec used for the session	`G723`
	18	The RTP packet size, in bytes	`62B`
	19	The RTP packet interval, in ms	`30mS`
	20	The encryption method	`Off`

Table 94: Detailed CLI output per RTP session (continued)

Field	Label	Description	From the CLI example
Silence suppression (Tx/Rx)	21	The received silence suppression method	`Silence-suppression (Tx/Rx) Disabled`[21]`/Not-Supported`
	22	The transmitted silence suppression method	`Silence-suppression (Tx/Rx) Disabled/Not-Supported`[22]
Play-Time	23	The overall time the codec played valid received frames	`Play-Time 272.610sec`
Codec Loss *codec-loss*%	24	The last value of codec loss sampled. Codec loss is the percentage of time the codec played fill frames due to lack of valid RTP frames. Possible causes include jitter and packet loss.	`Loss 0.0%`[24] `#1`
#codec-loss-events	25	The codec loss event counter	`Loss 0.0% #1`[25]
Avg-Loss	26	The average of all codec loss values sampled during the session	`Avg-Loss 0.1%`
RTT *rtt* ms	27	The last sampling of codec round trip time (RTT), in ms. Codec RTT is the round-trip delay experienced by the user, including internal delay. This value is not entirely accurate since remote internal delays are not always known.	`RTT 741mS`[27] `#38`
#rtt-events	28	The codec RTT event counter	`RTT 741mS #38`[28]
Avg-RTT	29	The average of all codec RTT values sampled during the session	`Avg-RTT 570mS`
Jbuf-under/ overruns	30	The estimated percentage contribution of jitter-buffer underruns to the average codec loss	`JBuf-under/overruns 0.1%`[30]`/0.0%`
	31	The estimated percentage contribution of jitter-buffer overruns to the average codec loss	`JBuf-under/overruns 0.1%/0.0%`[31]
Jbuf-delay	32	The last jitter buffer delay	`Jbuf-Delay 22mS`
Max-Jbuf-Delay	33	The maximum jitter buffer delay during the session	`Max-Jbuf-Delay 60mS`

3 of 6

Table 94: Detailed CLI output per RTP session (continued)

Field	Label	Description	From the CLI example
Received RTP:			
Packets	34	The total number of received packets	`Packets 9236`
Loss *loss*%	35	The last sampled value of network RTP packet loss	`Loss 0.0%`[35] `#0`
#loss-events	36	The network RTP packet loss event counter	`Loss 0.0% #0`[36]
Avg-loss	37	The average of all network RTP packet loss values during the session	`Avg-Loss 0.0%`
RTT *rtt* ms	38	The network RTT. The RTT is calculated upon RTCP packet reception.	`RTT 604mS`[38] `#38`
#rtt-events	39	The network RTT event counter	`RTT 604mS #38`[39]
Avg-RTT	40	The average of all network RTT values during the session	`Avg-RTT 376mS`
Jitter *jitter* ms	41	The network jitter at the RTP receiver. Combined with long RTT, a large jitter value may indicate WAN congestion.	`Jitter 0mS`[41] `#0`
#jitter-event	42	The RTP receiver network jitter event counter	`Jitter 0mS #0`[42]
Avg-Jitter	43	The average of all network jitter values during the session	`Avg-Jitter 0mS`
TTL (last/min/max)	44	The last value of TTL, minimum value of TTL, and maximum value of TTL sampled during the session. TTL changes during a session may indicate route flaps in the IP network.	`TTL(last/min/max) 63/63/63`
Duplicates	45	This counter increments each time two consecutive RTP packets with the sample RTP sequence number are received. A large number of duplicates may indicate problems in the Layer 2/Ethernet topology (for example, loops).	`Duplicates 0`

4 of 6

Table 94: Detailed CLI output per RTP session (continued)

Field	Label	Description	From the CLI example
Seq-Fall	46	This counter increments each time an RTP packet with a sequence number less than the last known sequence is received. Packet resequencing may be caused by switching to a backup WAN interface or route flaps.	`Seq-Fall 0`
DSCP	47	The last received DSCP value of the RTP packets	`DSCP 46`
L2Pri	48	The last received Layer 2 priority value of an RTP packet (usually IEEE802.1p)	`L2Pri 12`
RTCP	49	The total number of received RTCP packets	`RTCP 54`
Transmitted-RTP:			
VLAN	50	The VLAN-ID on which the RTP packets are transmitted	`VLAN 1`
DSCP	51	The DSCP of RTP packets	`DSCP 184`
L2Pri	52	The Layer 2 priority of transmitted RTP packets (usually 802.1p)	`L2Pri 6`
RTCP	53	The total number of transmitted RTCP packets	`RTCP 62`
Remote-Statistics: (Remote-Statistics items are calculated and evaluated upon reception of RTCP messages)			
Loss *rem-loss%*	54	The network loss experienced by the remote RTP receiver. The local RTP receiver learns about its remote peer statistics from RTCP packets.	`Loss 0.0%`[54] `#0`
#rem-loss-ev	55	The number of samples that were over the rem-loss threshold	`Loss 0.0% #0`[55]
Avg-Loss	56	The average network loss experienced by the remote RTP receiver	`Avg-Loss 0.0%`
Jitter *rem-jitter*	57	The network jitter experienced by the remote RTP receiver	`Jitter 0mS`[57] `#0`
#rem-jitter-ev	58	The number of samples that were over the remote jitter threshold	`Jitter 0mS #0`[58]

Table 94: Detailed CLI output per RTP session (continued)

Field	Label	Description	From the CLI example
Avg-jitter	59	The average remote jitter	`Avg-Jitter 0mS`
Echo Cancellation:			
Loss *loss* dbm	60	The echo cancellation loss on the TDM bus. A high value (that is, a low absolute value) may indicate impairment of DCP terminals.	`Loss 45dB`[60] `#1`
#loss-ev	61	A counter that increments each time the echo-cancellation loss is sampled below its threshold	`Loss 45dB #1`[61]
Len	62	The last echo-cancellation tail length used for this session	`Len 32mS`
RSVP:			
Status	63	The current (last) RSVP reservation state at the end of the session	`Status Disabled`
Failures	64	The total number of reservation failures during the session	`Failures 0`

6 of 6

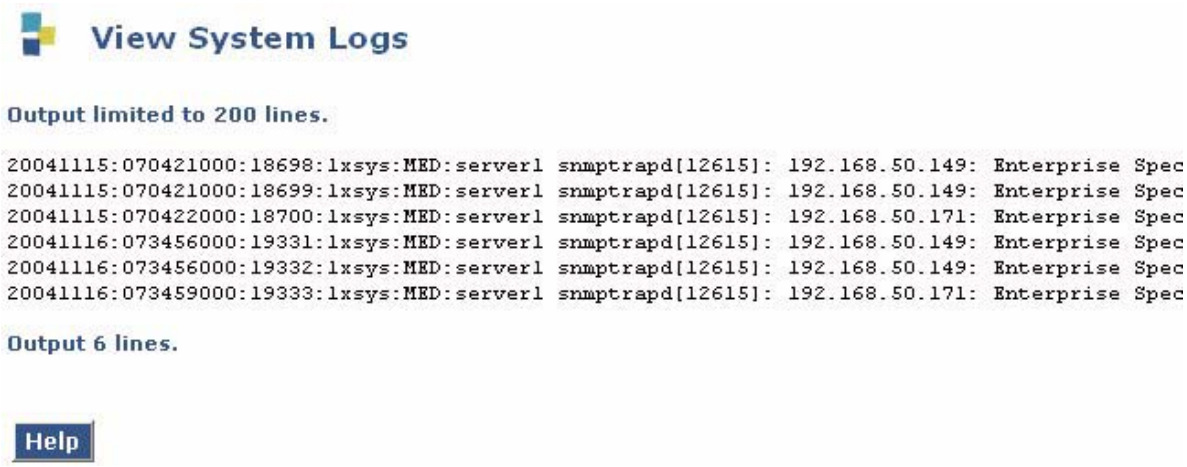
Viewing QoS traps, QoS fault traps, and QoS clear traps

QoS traps, QoS fault traps, and QoS clear traps sent to the active MGC by the dynamic trap manager are converted to syslog messages by the SNMP Trap manager on the MGC.

The syslog messages are stored in the messages file on the MGC hard disk. You can view the syslog messages through the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface to debug the QoS problems.

1. In the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface, enter the **Setup log viewing** screen.
2. In the Select Log Types list, select **Linux syslog**.
3. Under Select Event Range, select the date range over which you want to view traps.
4. In the **Match Pattern** field, enter the string **avrtp**.
5. In the **Number of Lines** field, enter the maximum number of traps you want to view.
6. Click **View Log**. The **View System Logs** screen appears (Figure 27). Each line contains one message.

Figure 27: Viewing syslog messages



Analyzing QoS trap output

The following is an example of the syslog message for the QoS trap sent upon termination of RTP session 35 (see the session ID in bold), which terminated at 11:13:40 on Oct. 20:

```
Oct 20[1] 11:13:40[2] LZ-SIT-SR1 snmptrapd[9407]: 135.8.118.252[3] [135.8.118.252]: Trap
sysUpTime.0 = Timeticks: (43147723) 4 days, 23:51:17.23[4], snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: av
RtpQoSTrap[5], avRtpSessionLocAddrV4.0 = IpAddress: 135.8.118.252[6],
avRtpSessionRemAddrV4.0 = IpAddress: 135.8.76.107[7], avRtpSessionDuration.0 =
INTEGER: 273[8], avRtpSessionCname.0 = STRING: gwp@135.8.118.252[9],
avRtpSessionPhone.0 = STRING: 69:2011[10], avRtpSessionSeverity.0 = INTEGER:
warning(4), avRtpSessionDebugStr.0 = STRING: Id{35}[11];
Traps{24[12]/0[13]};Stats{S 54[14] RTCP 54[15] RX 9236[16]};Codec{g723[17] 62B[18] encryptionOff[19]
SSup disabled[20]/disabled[21] Loss 0.1%[22] #1[23] RTT 570mS[24] #38[25] Jbuf
0.1%[26]/0.0%[27]};Net{Loss 0.0%[28] #0[29] RTT 376mS[30] #38[31] Jtr #0[32] TTL 63-63[33] Dup 0[34]
Fall 0[35]};Rem{Loss 0.0%[36] #0[37] Jtr #0[38]} EC{Loss 45dB[39]}
```

Table 95 describes the fields in the QoS trap according to the numbered labels in the example.

Table 95: QoS Trap output fields

Label	Description	From the trap example
1	The date on which the trap was received	Oct 20
2	The time at which the trap was received	11:13:40
3	The IP address of the local MGP	135.8.118.252

1 of 4

Table 95: QoS Trap output fields (continued)

Label	Description	From the trap example
4	The gateway up time	`sysUpTime.0 = Timeticks: (43147723) 4 days, 23:51:17.23`
5	The trap name, which indicates that this is a QoS trap	`snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: avRtpQoSTrap`
6	The local gateway PMI	`avRtpSessionLocAddrV4.0 = IpAddress: 135.8.118.252`
7	The remote VoIP engine, gateway PMI, or IP phone address	`avRtpSessionRemAddrV4.0 = IpAddress: 135.8.76.107`
8	The duration of the RTP session	`Duration: 00:04:33`
9	Format: gwt@<MGP-address>	`avRtpSessionCname.0 = STRING: gwp@135.8.118.252`
10	The local extension number and conference ID in format <conference ID>:<extension number>. Conference calls can involve more than one entry in the session table. Multiple sessions belonging to the same conference call can usually be identified by a common conference ID. Notes: • The phone string data is received from Avaya Aura Communication Manager if VMON is configured. • If you are not running VMON, you can cause Avaya Aura Communication Manager to send the phone string data by configuring a dummy RTCP-server for the region, with a 'localhost' IP address (127.x.x.x).	`avRtpSessionPhone.0 = STRING: 69:2011`
11	An arbitrary index number for the session in the session table	`avRtpSessionDebugStr.0 = STRING: Id{35}`
12	The total number of sent traps since the application was enabled	`Traps{24[11]/0}`
13	The number of traps that were dropped by the trap rate limiter since the application was enabled. This item can be used, when analyzing received traps logs, to identify missing traps (due to network conditions or the rate limiter). This is also displayed by the **`show rtp-stat summary`** command.	`Traps{24/0[12]}`
14	The number of times the application sampled the VoIP engine (RTP receiver) statistics	`Stats{S 54}`

2 of 4

Table 95: QoS Trap output fields (continued)

Label	Description	From the trap example
15	The total number of received RTCP packets	`Stats{S 54 RTCP 54`[14] `RX 9236}`
16	The total number of received RTP packets	`Stats{S 54 RTCP 54 RX 9236`[15]`}`
17	The codec used for the session	`g723`
18	The codec packet size, in bytes	`62B`
19	The encryption method	`encryptionOff`
20	The received silence suppression method	`SSup disabled`[19]`/disabled`
21	The transmitted silence suppression method	`SSup disabled/disabled`[20]
22	The average of all codec loss values sampled during the session	`Loss 0.1%`[21] `#1`
23	The codec loss event counter	`Loss 0.1% #1`[22]
24	The average of all codec round trip time values sampled during the session	`RTT 570mS`[23] `#38`
25	The codec round trip time event counter	`RTT 570mS #38`[24]
26	The percentage contribution of jitter-buffer underruns to the average codec loss	`Jbuf 0.1%`[25]`/0.0%`
27	The percentage contribution of jitter-buffer overruns to the average codec loss	`Jbuf 0.1%/0.0%`[26]
28	The average of all network RTP packet loss values sampled during the session	`Loss 0.0%`[27] `#0`
29	The network RTP packet loss event counter	`Loss 0.0% #0`[28]
30	The average of all network RTT values during the session	`RTT 376mS`[29] `#38`
31	The network RTT event counter	`RTT 376mS #38`[30]
32	The network jitter at the RTP receiver	`Jtr #0`
33	The minimum and maximum TTL values sampled in the session	`TTL 63-63`
34	A counter that increments each time two consecutive RTP packets with the sample RTP sequence number are received	`Dup 0`

3 of 4

Table 95: QoS Trap output fields (continued)

Label	Description	From the trap example
35	A counter that increments each time an RTP packet with a sequence number less than the last known sequence is received	`Fall 0`
36	The average network loss experienced by the remote RTP receiver	`Rem{Loss 0.0%`[36] `#0 Jtr #0}`
37	A counter that increments each time the remote loss is sampled over its threshold	`Rem{Loss 0.0% #0`[37] `Jtr #0}`
38	A counter that increments each time the network jitter experienced by the remote RTP receiver is sampled over its threshold	`Rem{Loss 0.0% #0 Jtr #0`[38]`}`
39	The echo cancellation loss on the TDM bus. A high value (that is, a low absolute value) may indicate impairment of DCP terminals.	`EC{Loss 45dB}`

4 of 4

Analyzing QoS fault and clear trap output

The following is an example of the syslog message for the QoS fault and clear traps sent during RTP session 35, which terminated at 11:13:40 on October 20:

```
Oct 20[1] 11:10:54[2] LZ-SIT-SR1 snmptrapd[9407]: 135.8.118.252
[135.8.118.252]: TrapsysUpTime.0 = Timeticks: (43131114) 4 days,
23:48:31.14[3], snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: avRtpQoSFault[4], avRtpQoSFaultTh.0 =
INTEGER: 1[5], avRtpQoSClearTh.0 = INTEGER: 0[6]

Oct 20[1] 11:13:40[2] LZ-SIT-SR1 snmptrapd[9407]: 135.8.118.252
[135.8.118.252]: TrapsysUpTime.0 = Timeticks: (43147723) 4 days,
23:51:17.23[3], snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: avRtpQoSClear[4], avRtpQoSFaultTh.0 =
INTEGER: 1[5], avRtpQoSClearTh.0 = INTEGER: 0[6]
```

Table 96 describes the fields in the QoS fault and clear traps according to the numbered labels on the example above.

Table 96: QoS fault and clear trap output fields

Label	Description	From the QoS fault trap example	From the QoS clear trap example
1	The date on which the trap was received	`Oct 20`	`Oct 20`
2	The time at which the trap was received	`11:10:54`	`11:13:40`
3	The gateway uptime	`sysUpTime.0 = Timeticks: (43131114) 4 days, 23:48:31.14`	`sysUpTime.0 = Timeticks: (43147723) 4 days, 23:51:17.23`
4	The trap name. Indicates that this is a QoS fault trap or a QoS clear trap.	`snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: avRtpQoSFault`	`snmpTrapOID.0 = OID: avRtpQoSClear`
5	The QoS fault trap boundary. That is, the number of active sessions with QoS faults that causes a QoS fault trap to be sent.	`avRtpQoSFaultTh.0 = INTEGER: 1`	`avRtpQoSFaultTh.0 = INTEGER: 1`
6	The QoS clear trap boundary. That is, the reduced number of active sessions with QoS faults that causes a QoS clear trap to be sent after a QoS fault trap was sent.	`avRtpQoSClearTh.0 = INTEGER: 0`	`avRtpQoSClearTh.0 = INTEGER: 0`

Viewing automatic traceroute results

The VoIP engine automatically performs UDP traceroutes whenever the RTP statistics application is enabled.

A traceroute is performed per RTP session, 10 seconds after the session begins. A traceroute is not performed if there is another active session to the same destination for which a traceroute was already performed within the last five seconds.

- Use the **`show rtp-stat traceroute`** command. You can filter the results according to subnet address by adding **`destination-ip`** and specifying the remote subnet address and subnet mask, or by specifying the rtp-statistics session index. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat traceroute destination-ip 10.2.5.0 255.255.255.0
Session ID: 1234
From: 123.21.11.5, To: 10.2.4.15, At: 2004-12-26,12:21:55
TTL HOP ADDRESS       DELAY
--- ---------------  --------
 1  123.21.11.1         2ms
 2  212.201.233.102     65ms
 3  213.21.51.12        110ms
 4  10.2.4.15            175ms

Session ID: 1234
From: 123.21.11.5, To: 10.2.4.5, At: 2004-12-26,13:30:15
```

Note:

The traceroute results are displayed in reverse order (most recent first).

Table 97: RTP traceroute results output

Field	Description
Session ID	The RTP statistics index for the RTP session
From	The IP address of the G430
To	The IP address of the session destination (in this case, a destination within the specified subnet)
At	The time the traceroute is performed
TTL	The `hop count` and `TTL` field value of probe packets
HOP ADDRESS	The hop IP address
DELAY	The round trip time per probe packet. Three probe packets are sent per hop address, and the displayed value is the average of the three round-trip times. An asterisk (*) indicates that the probe packet timed out.

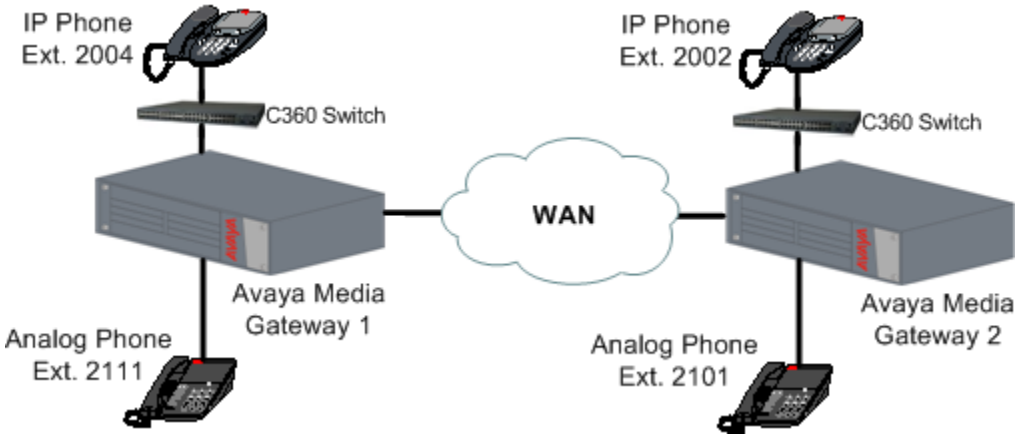
RTP statistics examples

This section includes an example of configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network. In addition, there are some example calls between various types of phones.

Configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network

Figure 28 shows the locations of four telephone extensions in an example network. Telephones with extensions 2004 and 2111 are connected to the local gateway G430-001. Extensions 2002 and 2101 are connected to the remote gateway G430-002.

Figure 28: Four telephones in a sample network



At the site of the local gateway – that is, Avaya Media Gateway 1 ("G430-001") – the administrator enabled and configured the RTP-MIB application as follows:

```
//to enable the RTP statistics application:

G430-001(super)# rtp-stat-service

//to view the configuration of the application:

G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat config

RTP Statistic: Enabled
QoS Trap: Disabled
QoS Fault Trap: Disabled
    Fault: 0
    Clear: 0
QoS Trap Rate Limiter:
    Token Interval: 10.00 seconds
    Bucket Size: 5
Session Table:
    Size: 128
    Reserved: 64
Min Stat Win: 1

//to view the thresholds:

G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat thresholds

Item                          Threshold             Event Threshold
--------------------         -------------         -----------------
Codec Loss                       0.0%                    1
Average Codec Loss               1.0%                    N/A
Codec RTT                        5 mS                    1
Echo Return Loss                 1 dB                    1
Loss                             1.0%                    1
Average Loss                     1.0%                    N/A
Remote Loss                      1.0%                    1
Average Remote Loss              1.0%                    N/A
RTT                              13mS                    1
Local Jitter                     1mS                     1
Remote Jitter                    1mS                     1
SSRC Changes                     N/A                     1
```

```
//to change the thresholds appropriately for the network:

G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds codec-loss 6.0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds average-codec-loss 0.0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds codec-rtt 700
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds echo-return-loss 5
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds loss 6.0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds remote-loss 6.0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds average-loss 0.0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds average-remote-loss 0.0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds jitter 70
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds remote-jitter 70
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat thresholds rtt 500
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold echo-return-loss 0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold loss 1
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold remote-loss 0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold jitter 0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold remote-jitter 0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold rtt 0
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat event-threshold ssrc-change 0

//to review the threshold configuration again:

G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat thresholds

Item                          Threshold              Event Threshold
---------------------         -------------          -----------------
Codec Loss                        6.0%                     1
Average Codec Loss                0.0%                     N/A
Codec RTT                         700mS                    1
Echo Return Loss                  5dB                      0
Loss                              6.0%                     0
Average Loss                      0.0%                     N/A
Remote Loss                       6.0%                     0
Average Remote Loss               0.0%                     N/A
RTT                               500mS                    0
Local Jitter                      70mS                     0
Remote Jitter                     70mS                     0
SSRC Changes                      N/A                      0

//to configure the minimum statistics window for evaluating packet loss:
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat min-stat-win 50

//to configure an external trap manager as a trap destination in addition to the
active MGC:
G430-001(super)# snmp-server host 136.9.71.47 traps v1 public
```

```
//to check SNMP configuration
G430-001(super)# show snmp
Authentication trap enabled
Community-Access Community-String
---------------- ----------------
read-only *****
read-write *****
SNMPv3 Notifications Status
---------------------------
Traps: Enabled
Informs: Enabled Retries: 3 Timeout: 3 seconds
SNMP-Rec-Address Model Level Notification Trap/Inform User name
---------------- ----- ------- --------------- ----------- --------------------
135.9.77.47 v1 noauth all trap ReadCommN UDP port: 162 DM
136.9.71.47 v1 noauth all trap WriteCommN
UDP port: 162

//to enable the sending of QoS traps:
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat qos-trap
//to enable and configure the sending of fault and clear traps:
G430-001(super)# rtp-stat fault 2 0

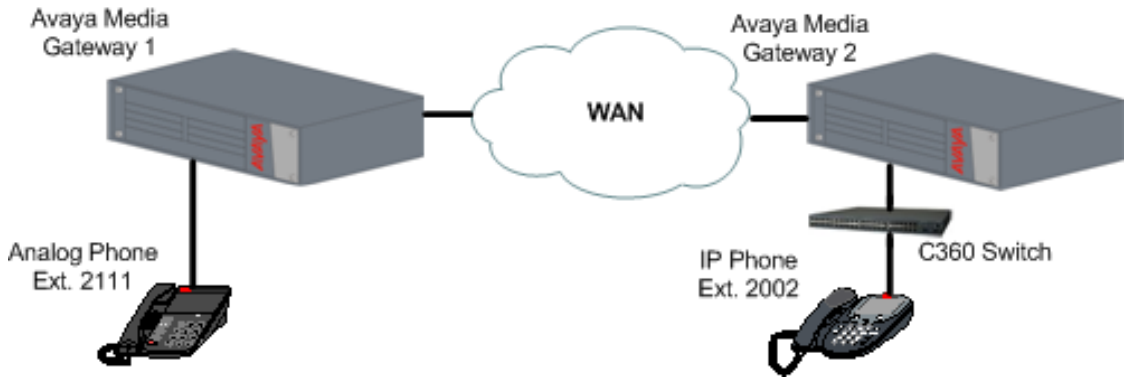
//to view RTP statistics configuration again:
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat config

RTP Statistic: Enabled
QoS Trap: Enabled
QoS Fault Trap: Enabled
    Fault: 2
    Clear: 0
QoS Trap Rate Limiter:
    Token Interval: 10.00 seconds
    Bucket Size: 5
Session Table:
    Size: 128
    Reserved: 64
Min Stat Win: 50
```

A call over the WAN from an analog phone to an IP phone

At 00:39 on December 7, 2004, a call is placed from analog extension 2111 to IP phone extension 2002 (see Figure 29) in the network described in Configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network on page 369.

Figure 29: Remote call from analog to IP phone



The RTP statistics application is configured as described in Configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network on page 369. The callers complain after the call that there were QoS problems during the call. The administrator investigates as follows:

```
//to see if the RTP statistics application registered QoS problems for the call:

G430-001(super)# show rtp sessions

ID    QoS Start date and time End Time Type        Destination
----- --- ------------------- -------- ---------- ---------------
00001  *[1]  2004-12-07,00:39:26 00:41:01  G711U      20.20.20.2

//to display more details on the session:

G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat detailed 1

Session-ID: 1
Status: Terminated, QOS: Faulted[2], EngineId: 0
Start-Time: 2004-12-07,00:39:26, End-Time: 2004-12-07,00:41:01
Duration: 00:01:35
CName: gwp@30.30.30.1
Phone: 199:2111
Local-Address: 30.30.30.1:2329 SSRC 2764463979
Remote-Address: 20.20.20.2:2329 SSRC 1260226 (0)
Samples: 19 (5 sec)

Codec:
G711U 200B 20mS Off, Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) Disabled/Disabled, Play-Time 63.
916sec, Loss 11.0% #15[3], Avg-Loss 8.6%, RTT 201mS #0, Avg-RTT 210mS, JBuf-under/o
verruns 9.4%/0.0%, Jbuf-Delay 2mS, Max-Jbuf-Delay 35mS

Received-RTP:
Packets 3225, Loss 0.0% #9[4], Avg-Loss 8.4%, RTT 124mS #0, Avg-RTT 96mS, Jitter 11
mS #0, Avg-Jitter 9mS, TTL(last/min/max) 63/63/63, Duplicates 0, Seq-Fall 0, DSC
P 46, L2Pri 12, RTCP 9

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 1, DSCP 46, L2Pri 6, RTCP 17

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 11.6% #14[5], Avg-Loss 8.9%, Jitter 33mS #0, Avg-Jitter 26mS

Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 49dB #0, Len 32mS

RSVP:
Status Disabled, Failures 0
```

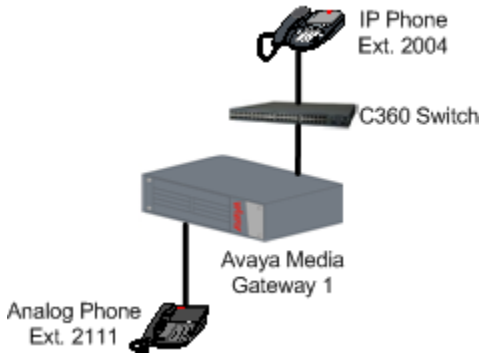
A few points to note:

- The asterisk in the **`show rtp sessions`** output indicates that session 1 has QoS faults [1]
- The QoS is described as Faulted because there were QoS faults [2]
- QoS faults that can be seen in the output are:
 - The codec loss event counter indicates that codec loss went over its threshold 15 times [3]
 - The received-RTP packet loss event counter indicates that packet loss went over its threshold nine times [4]
 - The remote packet loss event counter indicates that remote packet loss went over its threshold 14 times [5]

A local call between an IP and an analog phone

A local call is placed at 00:57 between IP phone extension 2004 and analog phone extension 2111 (see Figure 30) in the network described in Configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network on page 369. The call is finished at 00:59:19.

Figure 30: Local call from analog to IP phone



After the call is ended, the administrator uses the CLI to view the QoS statistics:

```
//to see if there were QoS problems registered during the session

G430-001(super)# show rtp sessions last 1

ID    QoS[1] Start date and time End Time  Type       Destination
----- --- ------------------- -------- ---------  ------------
00001     2004-12-07,00:57:13 00:59:19  G711U      30.30.30.2
//To display details of the session:

G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat detailed 1

Session-ID: 1
Status: Terminated, QOS: Ok[2], EngineId: 0
Start-Time: 2004-12-07,00:57:13, End-Time: 2004-12-07,00:59:19
Duration: 00:02:06
CName: gwp@30.30.30.1
Phone: 200:2111
Local-Address: 30.30.30.1:2165 SSRC 2533871380
Remote-Address: 30.30.30.2:2165 SSRC 93269 (0) ip phone or another medi proc
Samples: 25 (5 sec)

Codec:
G711U 200B 20mS Off, Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) Disabled/Disabled, Play-Time 130
.080sec, Loss 0.0% #0[3], Avg-Loss 0.0%[4], RTT 83mS #0[5], Avg-RTT 108mS[6],
JBuf-under/overruns 0.0%/0.0%, Jbuf-Delay 5mS, Max-Jbuf-Delay 27mS

Received-RTP:
Packets 6503, Loss 0.0% #0[7], Avg-Loss 0.0%[8], RTT 0mS #0[9], Avg-RTT 0mS[10], Jitter 0mS
#0[11], Avg-Jitter 0mS[12], TTL(last/min/max) 64/64/64, Duplicates 0, Seq-Fall 0, DSCP
46, L2Pri 12, RTCP 26

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 1, DSCP 46, L2Pri 6, RTCP 31

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 0.0% #0[13], Avg-Loss 0.0%[14], Jitter 10mS #0[15], Avg-Jitter 10mS[16]

Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 49dB #0[17], Len 32mS

RSVP:
Status Disabled, Failures 0
```

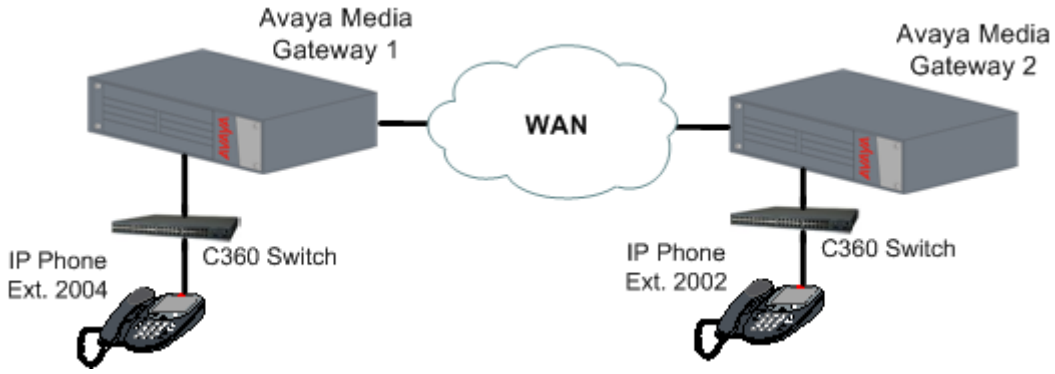
A few points to note:

- The QoS column in the **`show rtp sessions`** output has no asterisk (*), showing that no metrics went over their event thresholds or average thresholds during the session [1]
- The QoS is described as “Ok” because there were no QoS problems [2]
- All average metric values are below the average thresholds [4] [5] [6] [8] [10] [12] [14] [16]
- All event counters are zero [3] [5] [7] [9] [11] [13] [15] [17]

A remote call over the WAN from an IP phone to an IP phone

An unshuffled call is placed from IP phone extension 2004 to IP phone extension 2002 (Figure 31) in the network described in Configuring the RTP statistics application for a sample network on page 369.

Figure 31: Remote call from IP phone to IP phone



After the call is ended, the following commands are run:

```
//to display the RTP sessions:

G430-001(super)# show rtp sessions

ID    QoS Start date and time End Time    Type       Destination
----- --- ------------------- -------- ------------- --------------
00011     2004-12-07,00:57:13 00:59:19    G711U      30.30.30.2
00012  *  2004-12-07,00:39:26 00:41:01    G711U      20.20.20.2
00013  *  2004-12-07,01:02:45 01:05:15    G711U      20.20.20.2
00014     2004-12-07,01:02:50 01:05:15    G711U      30.30.30.2
```

Sessions 13 and 14 both belong to the call, since two VoIP channels are used by an unshuffled call between two IP phones: one channel between each telephone and the G430 VoIP engine.

Session 13 has QoS problems.

```
//to display details of session 13:
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat detailed 13

Session-ID: 13
Status: Terminated, QOS: Faulted, EngineId: 0
Start-Time: 2004-12-07,01:02:45, End-Time: 2004-12-07,01:05:15
Duration: 00:02:30
CName: gwp@30.30.30.1
Phone: 202:2004
Local-Address: 30.30.30.1:2329 SSRC 3510756141
Remote-Address: 20.20.20.2:2329 SSRC 1372162 (0)
Samples: 30 (5 sec)

Codec:
G711U 200B 20mS Off, Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) Disabled/Disabled, Play-Time 144
.540sec, Loss 0.0% #17, Avg-Loss 6.9%, RTT 99mS #0, Avg-RTT 208mS, JBuf-under/ov
erruns 7.4%/0.0%, Jbuf-Delay 9mS, Max-Jbuf-Delay 73mS

Received-RTP:
Packets 7279, Loss 0.0% #17 , Avg-Loss  6.8%, RTT 8mS #0, Avg-RTT 68mS, Jitter 0mS
#0, Avg-Jitter 6mS, TTL(last/min/max) 63/63/63, Duplicates 0, Seq-Fall 0, DSCP
46, L2Pri 12, RTCP 23

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 1, DSCP 46, L2Pri 6, RTCP 27

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 0.4% #17 , Avg-Loss 6.5%, Jitter 3mS #0, Avg-Jitter 22mS

Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 49dB #0, Len 32mS

RSVP:
Status Disabled, Failures 0
```

Session 14 is free of QoS problems:

```
//to display details of session 14:
G430-001(super)# show rtp-stat detailed 14

Session-ID: 14
Status: Terminated, QOS: Ok, EngineId: 0
Start-Time: 2004-12-07,01:02:50, End-Time: 2004-12-07,01:05:15
Duration: 00:02:25
CName: gwp@30.30.30.1
Phone: 202:2002
Local-Address: 30.30.30.1:2165 SSRC 247950253
Remote-Address: 30.30.30.2:2165 SSRC 120077 (0)
Samples: 29 (5 sec)

Codec:
G711U 200B 20mS Off, Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) Disabled/Disabled, Play-Time 151
.140sec, Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, RTT 95mS #0, Avg-RTT 106mS, JBuf-under/ove
rruns 0.0%/0.0%, Jbuf-Delay 11mS, Max-Jbuf-Delay 27mS

Received-RTP:
Packets 7556, Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, RTT 0mS #0, Avg-RTT 0mS, Jitter 0mS #
0, Avg-Jitter 0mS, TTL(last/min/max) 64/64/64, Duplicates 0, Seq-Fall 0, DSCP 46
, L2Pri 12, RTCP 31

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 1, DSCP 46, L2Pri 6, RTCP 25
--type q to quit or space key to continue--

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, Jitter 7mS #0, Avg-Jitter 7mS

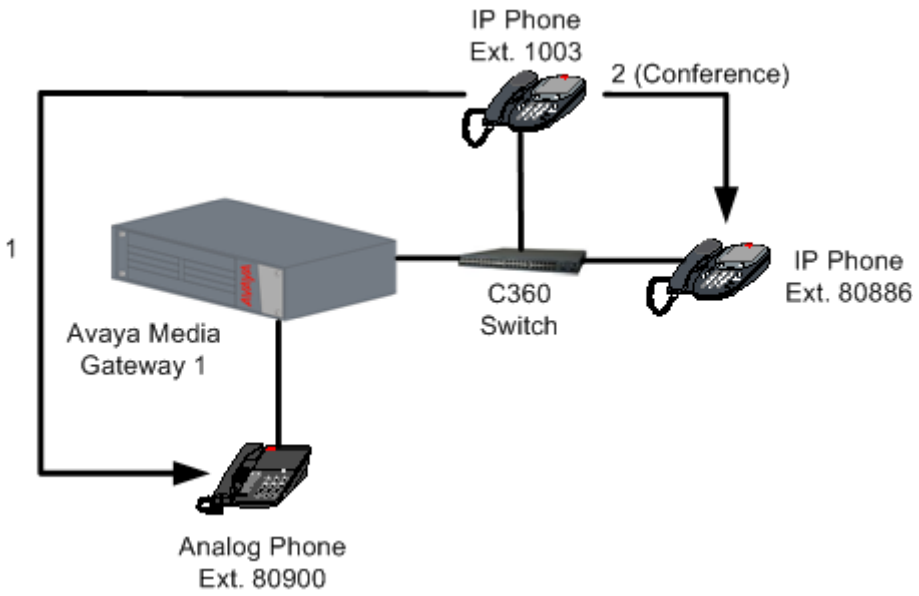
Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 49dB #0, Len 32mS

RSVP:
Status Disabled, Failures 0
```

A conference call

A conference call is placed between IP phone extension 1003, analog phone extension 80900, and IP phone extension 80886. The call is established by calling from extension 1003 to extension 80900, and then using the conference function on extension 1003 to add 80886 (see Figure 32).

Figure 32: A conference call



During the call, the following commands are run:

```
//to display the RTP sessions:
G430-001(super)# show rtp sessions

ID    QoS Start date and time End Time Type            Destination
----- --- ------------------- -------- --------------- ---------------
00001     2004-12-23,09:55:17        -            G729 16.16.16.101
00002     2004-12-23,09:55:20        -           G711U 149.49.41.50
```

```
//to display details of session 1:
GG430-001(super)# show rtp detailed 1

Session-ID: 1
Status: Active, QOS: Ok, EngineId: 0
Start-Time: 2004-12-23,09:55:17, End-Time: -
Duration: 00:00:48
CName: gwp@33.33.33.33
Phone: 140[1]:80900:1003
Local-Address: 33.33.33.33:61999 SSRC 3585271811
Remote-Address: 16.16.16.101:61999 SSRC 1369159108 (0)
Samples: 9 (5 sec)

Codec:
G729 40B 0mS Off, Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) No-RTP/No-RTP, Play-Time 4.760sec,
Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.8%, RTT 137mS #0, Avg-RTT 141mS, JBuf-under/overruns 0.
8%/0.0%, Jbuf-Delay 20mS, Max-Jbuf-Delay 30mS

Received-RTP:
Packets 238, Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, RTT 24mS #0, Avg-RTT 21mS, Jitter 0mS
#0, Avg-Jitter 0mS, TTL(last/min/max) 0/61/61, Duplicates 0, Seq-Fall 0, DSCP 0,
 L2Pri 6, RTCP 26

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 400, DSCP 46, L2Pri 6, RTCP 34

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, Jitter 2mS #0, Avg-Jitter 1mS

Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 49dB #0, Len 0mS

RSVP:
Status Reserved, Failures 0

//to display details of session 2:

G430-001(super)# show rtp detailed 2

Session-ID: 2
Status: Active, QOS: Ok, EngineId: 0
Start-Time: 2004-12-23,09:55:20, End-Time: -
Duration: 00:00:50
CName: gwp@33.33.33.33
Phone: 140[2]:80886:1003
Local-Address: 33.33.33.33:61175 SSRC 3702564610
Remote-Address: 149.49.41.50:61175 SSRC 15161893 (0)
Samples: 10 (5 sec)
```

```
Codec:
G711U 40B 0mS Off, Silence-suppression(Tx/Rx) Disabled/Disabled, Play-Time 161.9
00sec, Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, RTT 103mS #0, Avg-RTT 105mS, JBuf-under/over
runs 0.0%/0.0%, Jbuf-Delay 11mS, Max-Jbuf-Delay 13mS

Received-RTP:
Packets 8094, Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, RTT 8mS #0, Avg-RTT 9mS, Jitter 0mS #
0, Avg-Jitter 0mS, TTL(last/min/max) 0/64/64, Duplicates 0, Seq-Fall 0, DSCP 0,
L2Pri 6, RTCP 30

Transmitted-RTP:
VLAN 400, DSCP 46, L2Pri 6, RTCP 30

Remote-Statistics:
Loss 0.0% #0, Avg-Loss 0.0%, Jitter 1mS #0, Avg-Jitter 0mS

Echo-Cancellation:
Loss 49dB #0, Len 0mS

RSVP:
Status Reserved, Failures 0
```

The conference ID that appears in the Phone string for session 1 and for session 2 is identical, which identifies the two sessions as belonging to the same conference call [1] [2].

Summary of RTP statistics commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 98: RTP statistics application CLI commands

Command	Description
rtp-stat clear	Reset the RTP statistics application
rtp-stat event-threshold	Set a QoS event-threshold for RTP streams
rtp-stat fault	Configure the RTP statistics application to send QoS fault and/or clear traps
rtp-stat min-stat-win	Set the RTP statistics minimum statistic window
rtp-stat qos-trap	Configure the RTP statistics application to automatically send a QoS trap upon the termination of an RTP stream in which one or more QoS event counters exceeded their configured threshold

1 of 2

Table 98: RTP statistics application CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
rtp-stat qos-trap-rate-limit	Configure the QoS trap rate limiter
rtp-stat-service	Enable the RTP statistics application
rtp-stat thresholds	Set thresholds for the RTP statistics applications
show rtp-stat config	Display the RTP statistics application configuration
show rtp-stat detailed	Display a detailed QoS log for a specific RTP session
show rtp-stat sessions	Display RTP sessions QoS statistics
show rtp-stat summary	Display a summary of the RTP statistics
show rtp-stat thresholds	Display the configured RTP statistic thresholds
show rtp-stat traceroute	Display the results of UDP traceroutes issued by the media gateway VoIP engine per active RTP session

2 of 2

Configuring and analyzing packet sniffing

The G430 packet sniffing service allows you to analyze packets that pass through the G430's interfaces. Packets are captured to a buffer based on criteria that you specify. The buffer is then uploaded via FTP to a file that can be analyzed using the Ethereal analysis tool.

The packet sniffing service on the G430 offers several advantages to the network administrator. Since the capture file is saved in the libpcap format, which is the industry standard, it is readable both by the S8300's Tethereal software, and by standard versions of Ethereal for Unix, Windows, and Linux (see http://www.ethereal.com).

Note:

Ethereal is an open source application.

In addition, the G430's packet sniffing service is capable of capturing non-Ethernet packets, such as frame-relay and PPP. Non-Ethernet packets are wrapped in a dummy Ethernet header to allow them to be viewed in a libpcap format. Thus, the G430 allows you to analyze packets on all the interfaces of the device.

The G430's packet sniffing service gives you full control over the memory usage of the sniffer. You can set a maximum limit for the capture buffer size, configure a circular buffer so that older information is overwritten when the buffer fills up, and specify a maximum number of bytes to capture for each packet.

What can be captured

The G430 packet sniffing service captures only the packets handled by the G430 and delivered to the device CPU ("non-promiscuous" mode). This is unlike regular sniffer applications that pick up all traffic on the network.

See Configuring packet sniffing on page 385 for a description of how to configure packet sniffing and analyze the resulting capture file.

Streams that can always be captured

- H.248 registration
- RTP from the G430
- ARP on the LAN (broadcast)
- All packets that traverse the WAN
- All traffic to/from the G430

Streams that can never be captured

The following streams can never be captured because they are switched by the internal Ethernet switch and not by the CPU:

- H.323 Signaling from an IP phone on the LAN to an ICC on the LAN
- RTP stream between IP phones on the LAN

Streams that can sometimes be captured

If the G430 is the WAN router of the following streams, they can be captured:

- H.323 Signaling from IP phones on the LAN to an ECC over the WAN
- DHCP when the DHCP server is behind the WAN (using the G430 DHCP relay capability)
- RTP stream on an IP phone on the LAN to a remote IP phone

Configuring packet sniffing

Packet sniffing configuration consists of the following steps:

1. Enabling packet sniffing.
2. Limiting packet sniffing to specific interfaces (if necessary).
3. Creating a capture list that specifies which packets to capture.
4. Defining rule criteria for a capture list.
5. Viewing the capture list.
6. Applying a capture list.
7. Configuring packet sniffing settings.
8. Starting the packet sniffing service.

Enabling packet sniffing

Since the packet sniffing service presents a potential security breach, the administrator must first enable the service on the G430 before a user can start capturing packets. Enter **`capture-service`** to enable the packet sniffing service.

Note:

The packet sniffing service can only be enabled by an administrator connecting with a serial cable to the G430 Services port.

To disable packet sniffing, enter **`no capture-service`**.

Limiting packet sniffing to specific interfaces

By default, the packet sniffing service captures packets and Ethernet frames from all the router's interfaces. You can use the **`capture interface`** command to limit packet sniffing to a specific interface.

For example, the following command limits packet sniffing to the FastEthernet Interface:

```
G430-001(super)# capture interface fastethernet 10/3
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

The following command enables packet sniffing on all available interfaces:

```
G430-001(super)# capture interface any
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

Creating a capture list

By default, the packet sniffing service captures all packets passing through the interfaces on which it is enabled. Use a capture list to selectively filter the packets that are captured by the service.

A capture list contains an ordered list of rules and actions. A rule specifies criteria against which packets are tested. The action tells the G430 whether to capture or not capture packets matching the rule criteria. Only packets that match the specified criteria and have an action of **capture** are captured to the capture file. The rules are evaluated one by one, according to their number. If none of the rules match the packet, the default action is executed. You can set the default action as desired. Use the command **ip-rule default** to set the default action.

Note:

ARP frames are not IP packets and therefore cannot be filtered by capture lists. However, in a healthy network, the ARP frames rate is relatively low.

Use the **ip capture-list** command, followed by the list number, to enter the context of a capture list (and to create the capture list if it does not exist). Capture lists are numbered from 500 to 599. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# ip capture-list 510
G430-001(super-Capture 510)#
```

You can use the following commands to set the parameters of the capture list:

- Use the **name** command to assign a name to the capture list.
- Use the **owner** command to record the name of the person that created the list.
- Use the **ip-rule** command to define rule criteria for the capture list. The following section explains rule criteria in detail.

Note:

You can use the **cookie** command to set the list cookie for the capture list. However, capture list cookies are not currently used by any application.

Defining rule criteria for a capture list

Once in the capture list context, use the **ip-rule** command, followed by a number from 1 to 9999, to define a set of criteria against which to test packets. In addition to the rule criteria, each rule must include a composite operation. The composite operation determines the action the rule takes with respect to packets that match the rule criteria, and can be one of the following:

- capture
- no-capture

Use the **composite-operation** command to include a composite operation in a rule for a capture list. For example, the following commands create a rule (rule 10 in capture list 510) that determines that TCP packets are not captured:

```
G430-001(super)# ip capture-list 510
G430-001(super-Capture 510)# ip-rule 10
G430-001(super-Capture 510/ip rule 10)# composite-operation no-capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 510/ip rule 10)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 510/ip rule 10)# composite-operation no-capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 510/ip rule 10)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 510/ip rule 10)#
```

Rule applications

Rules work in the following ways, depending on the type of information in the packet, and the number of criteria in the rule:

- L4 rules with a *Permit* operation are applied to non-initial fragments
- L4 rules with a *Deny* operation are not applied to non-initial fragments, and the device continues checking the next IP rule. This is to prevent cases in which fragments that belong to other L4 sessions may be blocked by the other L4 session which is blocked.
- L3 rules apply to non-initial fragments
- L3 rules that include the fragment criteria do not apply to initial fragments or non-fragment packets
- L3 rules that do not include the fragment criteria apply to initial fragments and non-fragment packets
- L4 rules apply to initial fragments and non-fragment packets

Rule criteria commands

You can use the following rule criteria commands. These commands are described in more detail below.

- **dscp**
- **ip protocol**
- **source ip address**
- **destination ip address**
- **tcp source-port**
- **tcp destination-port**
- **udp source-port**
- **udp destination-port**

- **icmp**
- **fragment**

Note:

You can also use the **description** command in the rule context to add a description of the rule.

DSCP

Use the **dscp** command, followed by a DSCP value (from 0 to 63) to apply the rule to all packets with the specified DSCP value. For example, the following rule is defined to capture all VoIP Bearer packets (DSCP = 46):

```
G430-001(super)# ip capture-list 520
G430-001(super-Capture 520)# ip-rule 20
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# composite-operation capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# dscp 46
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

IP protocol

Use the **ip-protocol** command, followed by the name of an IP protocol, to apply the rule to all packets with the specified IP protocol. If you want the rule to apply to all protocols, use **any** after the command (**ip-protocol any**).

For example, the following rule is defined to capture all TCP packets:

```
G430-001(super)# ip capture-list 520
G430-001(super-Capture 520)# ip-rule 20
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# composite-operation capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

To apply the rule to all protocols except the specified protocol, use the **no** form of this command. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# no ip-protocol tcp
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

Source or destination IP address

Use the **source-ip** command to apply the rule to packets from the specified IP address or range of addresses. Use the **destination-ip** command to apply the rule to packets going to the specified IP address or range of addresses.

The IP range criteria can be any of the following:

- **Range**. Type two IP addresses to set a range of IP addresses to which the rule applies. You can use wildcards in setting the range. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# source-ip 135.64.102.0 0.0.255.255
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Single address**. Type **host**, by an IP address, to set a single IP address to which the rule applies. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# destination-ip host 135.64.104.102
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Wildcard**. Type **host**, followed by an IP address using wildcards, to set a range of IP addresses to which the rule applies. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# source-ip host 135.0.0.0
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Any**. Type **any** to apply the rule to all IP addresses. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# destination-ip any
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

To apply the rule to all source or destination IP addresses except the specified address or range of addresses, use the **not** form of the applicable command. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# not destination-ip 135.64.102.0 0.0.255.255
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

Source and destination port range

To specify a range of source and destination ports to which the rule applies, use the following commands, followed by either port name or port number range criteria:

- **tcp source-port**. The rule applies to TCP packets from ports that match the defined criteria
- **tcp destination-port**. The rule applies to TCP packets to ports that match the defined criteria
- **udp source-port**. The rule applies to UDP packets from ports that match the defined criteria
- **udp destination-port**. The rule applies to UDP packets to ports that match the defined criteria

Port name or number range criteria

The port name or number range criteria can be any of the following:

- **Range**. Type **range**, followed by two port numbers, to set a range of port numbers to which the rule applies. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# tcp destination-port range 1 3
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Equal**. Type **eq**, followed by a port name or number, to set a port name or port number to which the rule applies. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# tcp source-port eq ftp
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Greater than**. Type **gt**, followed by a port name or port number, to apply the rule to all ports with a name or number greater than the specified name or number. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# udp destination-port gt 10
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Less than**. Type **lt**, followed by a port name or port number, to apply the rule to all ports with a name or number less than the specified name or number. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# udp source-port lt 10
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

- **Any**. Type **any** to apply the rule to all port names and port numbers. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# tcp source-port any
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

To apply the rule to all protocols except the specified protocol, use the **not** form of the applicable command. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# not udp source-port lt 10
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

ICMP type and code

To apply the rule to a specific type of ICMP packet, use the **icmp** command. This command specifies an ICMP type and code to which the rule applies. You can specify the ICMP type and code by integer or text string. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# icmp Echo-Reply
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

To apply the rule to all ICMP packets except the specified type and code, use the **not** form of this command. For example:

```
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)# not icmp 1 2
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 520/ip rule 20)#
```

Fragment

To apply the rule to non-initial fragments, enter **fragment**. You cannot use the **fragment** command in a rule that includes UDP or TCP source or destination ports.

Capture list example

The following commands create a capture list that captures all traffic from subnet 135.122.50.149 255.255.255.254 to an ECC at address 135.122.50.171, except telnet:

```
G430-001(super)# ip capture-list 511
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# name "list #511"
Done!
! Rules 10 and 15 provide that telnet packets are not captured.
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# ip-rule 10
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 10)# composite-operation no-capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 10)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
! You can use a port number instead of "telenet" (23).
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 10)# tcp destination-port eq telnet
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 10)# exit
G430-001(super-Capture 511)#
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# ip-rule 15
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 15)# composite-operation no-capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 15)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
! You can use a port number instead of "telenet" (23).
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 15)# tcp source-port eq telnet
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 15)# exit
! Rule 20 provides for capturing any packet coming from the host IP address
! 135.122.50.171 and going to the subnet 135.122.50.128, including packets going
! to any of the 30 possible hosts in that subnet.
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# ip-rule 20
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 20)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 20)# source-ip host 135.122.50.171
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 20)# destination-ip 135.122.50.128 0.0.0.31
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 20)# exit
! Rule 30 provides for capturing any packet coming from the subnet
! 135.122.50.128 and going to the host IP address 135.122.50.171, including
! packets from any of the 30 possible hosts in that subnet.
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# ip-rule 30
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 30)# source-ip 135.122.50.128 0.0.0.31
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 30)# destination-ip host 135.122.50.171
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule 30)# exit
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# ip-rule default
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule default)# composite-operation no-capture
Done!
G430-001(super-Capture 511/ip rule default)# exit
G430-001(super-Capture 511)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

Viewing the capture list

Use the **show ip capture-list** command to display the capture list in an easy-to-read format. For example:

```
G430-001# show ip capture-list 511

Index Name                            Owner
----- ------------------------------- --------------------------
511   list #511                        other

Index Protocol     IP               Wildcard        Port          Operation
      DSCP
----- -------- --- ---------------- --------------- ------------ -------------
10     tcp     Src  Any                              Any          No-Capture
       Any     Dst  Any                              eq Telnet

15     tcp     Src  Any                              eq Telnet    No-Capture
       Any     Dst  Any                              Any

20     tcp     Src  135.122.50.171  Host             Any          Capture
       Any     Dst  135.122.50.128  0.0.0.31         Any

30     Any     Src  135.122.50.128  0.0.0.31         Any
       Any     Dst  135.122.50.171  Host             Any

Deflt  Any     Src  Any                              Any          No-Capture
       Any     Dst  Any                              Any


Index Name                 Trust
----- -------------------- ------------
0     Capture              No
1     No-Capture           No
```

Applying a capture list

To apply a capture list, use the **capture filter-group** command from the general context. For example, to set the G430 to use capture list 511 on interfaces in which packet sniffing is enabled, specify the following command:

```
G430-001(super)# capture filter-group 511
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

If no capture list is applied, the packet sniffing service captures all packets.

Configuring packet sniffing settings

The packet sniffing service provides several administrative settings you can use to control the capture functionality. Use the following commands to configure packet sniffing settings. These commands are all used from general context, and require read/write access.

- Use the **`capture buffer-mode`** command to specify the type of buffer to use. The available parameters are:
 - `cyclic`. Circular buffer that overwrites the oldest records when it is filled up. Use a cyclic buffer to store the most recent history of packet activity.
 - `non-cyclic`. Linear buffer that is used until it is filled up

 For example:

```
G430-001(super)# capture buffer-mode cyclic
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

- Use the **`capture buffer-size`** command to specify the maximum size of the capture buffer. Available values are 56 to `10000` kb. The default value is `1000`. To activate the change in buffer size, you must enter **`copy running-config startup-config`**, and reboot the G430. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# capture buffer-size 2000
To change capture buffer size, copy the running
configuration to the start-up configuration file, and reset the device.
G430-001(super)# copy running-config startup-config
Beginning copy operation ..................... Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

- Use the **`capture max-frame-size`** command to specify the maximum number of bytes captured for each packet. This is useful, since in most cases, the packet headers contain the relevant information. Available values are `14` to `4096`. The default value is `128`. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# capture max-frame-size 4000
This command will clear the capture buffer
 - do you want to continue (Y/N)? y

Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

Note:

When you change the maximum frame size, the G430 clears the capture buffer.

- Enter **`clear capture-buffer`** to clear the capture buffer.

Tip:

To reduce the size of the capture file, use any combination of the following methods:

- Use the **capture interface** command to capture only from a specific interface.
- Use the **capture max-frame-size** to capture only the first N octets of each frame. This is valuable since it is usually the packets headers that contain the interesting information.
- Use capture lists to select specific traffic.

Starting the packet sniffing service

Once you have defined and applied the packet capture lists, use the **capture start** command in general context to instruct the packet sniffing service to start capturing packets.

Note:

The capture start command resets the buffer before starting the sniffer.

Note:

You must apply a capture list using the **capture filter-group** command in order for the capture list to be active. If you do not use the **capture filter-group** command, the packet sniffing service captures all packets.

If packet sniffing has been enabled by the administrator, the following appears:

```
G430-001(super)# capture start
Starting the packet sniffing process
G430-001(super)#
```

If packet sniffing has not been enabled by the administrator, the following appears:

```
G430-001(super)# capture start
Capture service is disable
To enable, use the `capture-service` command in supervisor mode.
G430-001(super)#
```

Capturing decrypted IPSec VPN packets

IPSec VPN packets are encrypted packets. The contents of encrypted packets cannot be viewed when captured. However, you can use the **capture ipsec** command to specify that IPSec VPN packets, handled by the internal VPN gateway process, should be captured in plain text format.

Analyzing captured packets

Analyze the captured packets by stopping the packet sniffing service, uploading the capture file, and analyzing the capture file.

Stopping the packet sniffing service

Enter **capture stop** to stop the packet sniffing service. You must stop the service in order to upload a capture file.

Note:

The **capture stop** command is not saved in the startup configuration file.

Viewing packet sniffing information

You can enter **show capture** to view information about the packet sniffing configuration and the capture state. For example:

```
G430-001> show capture

Capture service is enabled and inactive
Capture start time 19/06/2004-13:57:40
Capture stop time 19/06/2004-13:58:23
Current buffer size is 1024 KB
Buffer mode is cyclic
Maximum number of bytes captured from each frame: 1515
Capture list 527 on interface "FastEthernet 10/3"
Number of captured frames in file: 3596 (out of 3596 total captured frames)
Size of capture file: 266 KB (26.6 %)
```

Note:

The number of captured frames can be larger than the number of the frames in the buffer because the capture file may be in cyclic mode.

You can use the **show capture-buffer hex** command to view a hex dump of the captured packets. However, for a proper analysis of the captured packets, you should upload the capture file and analyze it using a sniffer application, as described in the following sections.

The following is an example of the **show capture-buffer hex** command:

```
G430-001> show capture-buffer hex
Frame number: 1
Time relative to first frame (D H:M:S:Micro-S): 0, 0:0:0.0
Packet time: 14/01/1970-13:24:55.583598
Frame length: 60 bytes
Capture Length: 60 bytes
00000000:ffff ffff ffff 0040 0da9 4201 0806 0001    .......@..B.....
00000010:0800 0604 0001 0040 0da9 4201 9531 4e7a    .......@..B..1Nz
00000020:0000 0000 0000 9531 4e7a 0000 0000 0000    .......1Nz......
00000030:0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000              ............

Frame number: 2
Time relative to first frame (D H:M:S:Micro-S): 0, 0:0:0.76838
Packet time: 14/01/1970-13:24:55.660436
Frame length: 60 bytes
Capture Length: 60 bytes
00000000:ffff ffff ffff 0040 0d8a 5455 0806 0001    .......@..TU....
00000010:0800 0604 0001 0040 0d8a 5455 9531 4e6a    .......@..TU.1Nj
00000020:0000 0000 0000 9531 4e6a 0000 0000 0000    .......1Nj......
00000030:0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000              ............
```

Uploading the capture file

Once the packet sniffing service is stopped, upload the capture file to a server for viewing and analysis.

Note:

The capture file may contain sensitive information, such as usernames and passwords of non-encrypted protocols. It is therefore advisable to upload the capture file over a secure channel – via VPN or using SCP (Secure Copy).

In most cases, you can upload the capture file to a remote server. However, in cases where the capture file is very large, or you encounter a WAN problem, you can upload the capture file to an S8300 Server and view it using Tethereal, which is a command-line version of Ethereal.

Uploading the capture file to a remote server or USB mass storage device

- Use one of the following commands to upload the capture file:
 - **copy capture-file ftp**
 - **copy capture-file tftp**
 - **copy capture-file scp**
 - **coyy capture-file usb**

Note:

The use of the **copy capture-file scp** command is limited to uploading files of 1 MB or less.

For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy capture-file ftp myCature.cap 135.64.103.66
This command will stop the capture if capturing is started
Confirmation - do you want to continue (Y/N)? y


Username: xxxx
Password: xxxx
Beginning upload operation ...
This operation may take up to 20 seconds.
Please refrain from any other operation during this time.
For more information , use 'show upload status 10' command
G430-001(super)#
```

Uploading the capture file to an S8300 Server

1. Telnet into the S8300 Server, for example by entering **session mgc**.
2. Open the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface. For instructions on accessing the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface, see *Installing and Upgrading the Avaya G430 Media Gateway*, 03-603233.
3. In the Avaya Maintenance Web Interface, select **FTP** under **Security** in the main menu.
4. Click **Start Server**.
5. Log into the G430.
6. Use the **copy capture file ftp** command to upload the capture file. Specify that the capture file should be placed in the ftp `/pub` subdirectory. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# copy capture-file ftp pub/capfile.cap 149.49.43.96
```

7. At the FTP login prompt, enter **anonymous**.
8. At the FTP password prompt, enter your e-mail address.

9. Optionally, enter **show upload status 10** to view upload status. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# show upload status 10
Module #10
==========
Module           : 10
Source file      : sniffer
Destination file : pub/capfile.cap
Host             : 149.49.43.96
Running state    : Executing
Failure display  : (null)
Last warning     : No-warning
```

Analyzing the capture file

The uploaded capture file is in libpcap format and can therefore be viewed by most sniffer applications, including tcpdump, Ethereal and Tethereal.

If you uploaded the capture file to an S3800 server, view the file using Tethereal, a command-line version of Ethereal available on the S3800. See the Tethereal man pages for more information about the Tethereal application.

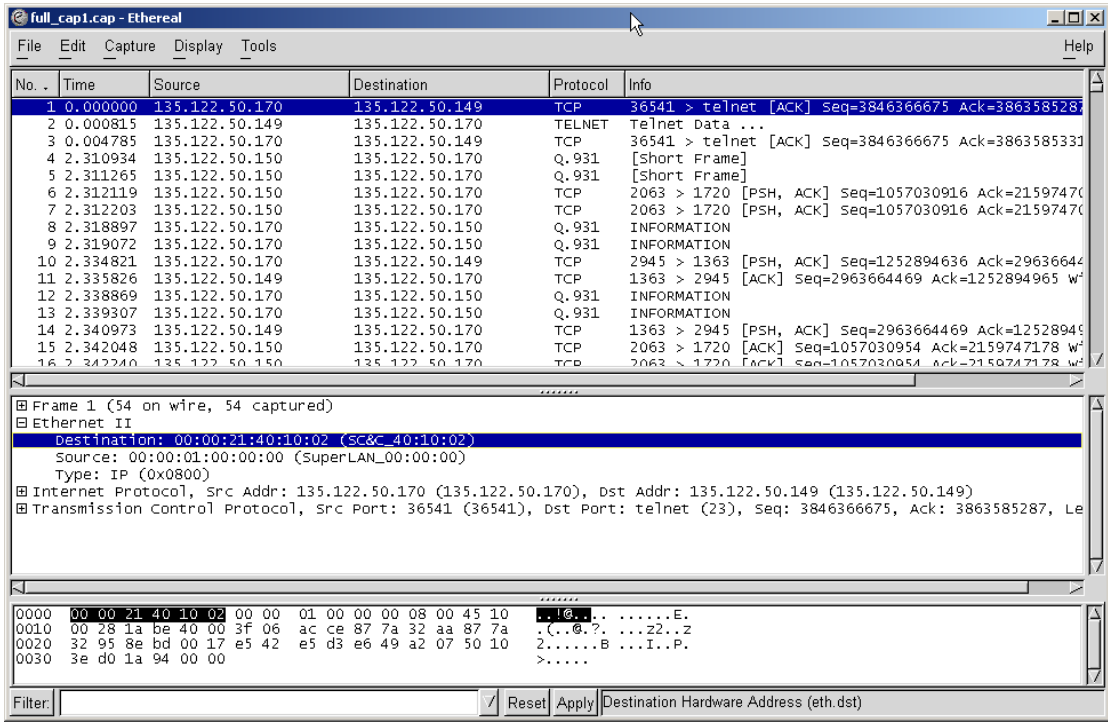
If you uploaded the capture file to a remote server, you can view the file using the industry standard Ethereal application. The latest version of Ethereal for Windows, Linux, UNIX, and other platforms can be downloaded from http://www.ethereal.com.

Note:

Ethereal allows you to create filter expressions to filter the packets in the capture file and display desired files only. For example, you can display only packets with a specific source address, or only those received from a specific interface. See Identifying the interface on page 400.

Figure 33 shows a sample **Ethereal** screen.

Figure 33: Sample Ethereal screen



Identifying the interface

The G430's packet sniffing service can capture also non-Ethernet packets, such as frame-relay and PPP, into the capture file. This is achieved by wrapping non-Ethernet packets in a dummy Ethernet header to allow the packets to be stored in a libpcap format. This enables you to analyze packets on all the device interfaces.

The dummy Ethernet headers are allocated according to the original packet type. Dummy Ethernet headers start with 00:00. Therefore, if the source or destination address of a packet you are viewing in Ethereal starts with 00:00, this indicates the packet is a non-Ethernet packet. For example, see the highlighted destination address of the packet appearing in the middle pane in Figure 33.

The dummy Ethernet header is identified by special MAC addresses. Packets sent from a non-Ethernet interface are identified with an SA address in the format 00:01:00:00:xx and a DA address which holds the interface index. Packets received over a non-Ethernet interface are identified with DA address in the format 00:01:00:00:xx and an SA address which holds the interface index. The **`show capture-dummy-headers`** command displays the dummy header addresses and their meaning according to the current configuration.

Note:

Ethernet packets received on a VLAN interface are identified by their VLAN tag. However, decrypted IPSec packets received on a VLAN interface are stored with a dummy header.

```
G430-001> show capture-dummy-headers

       MAC                    Description

-----------------  ----------------------------------------------------

00:00:01:00:00:01  Decrypted IPSec packet

00:00:0a:00:0a:02  interface fastethernet 10/3

00:00:0c:a0:b0:01  interface vlan 1

00:00:31:00:00:01  interface dialer 1
```

Thus in the example appearing in Figure 33:

- The Destination address of 00:00:31:00:00:01 indicates that the packet is being sent on the Dialer 1 interface

Simulating packets

Capture lists support the IP simulate command. Refer to Simulating packets on page 587.

Summary of packet sniffing commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 99: Packet sniffing CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
capture buffer-mode			Set the capture buffer to cyclic mode
capture buffer-size			Change the size of the capture file
capture filter-group			Activate a capture list

Table 99: Packet sniffing CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
capture interface			Specify a capture interface (by default, the service captures from all interfaces simultaneously)
capture ipsec			Set whether to capture IPSec VPN packets, handled by the internal VPN process, decrypted (plaintext) or encrypted (cyphertext)
capture max-frame-size			Set the maximum octets that are captured from each frame
capture start			Start capturing packets
capture stop			Stop capturing packets
capture-service			Enable or disable the capture service
clear capture-buffer			Clear the capture buffer (useful in case it holds sensitive information)
copy capture-file ftp			Upload the packet sniffing buffer to a file on a remote FTP server
copy capture-file scp			Upload the packet sniffing buffer to a file on a remote SCP server
copy capture-file tftp			Upload the packet sniffing buffer to a file on a remote TFTP server
copy capture-file usb			Upload the capture file to a USB mass storage device
ip capture-list			Enter the capture list configuration context, create a capture list, or delete a capture list
	cookie		Set a number to identify a list (used by the rule-manager application)
	ip-rule		Enter an ip-rule context or erase an ip-rule

2 of 4

Table 99: Packet sniffing CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
		composite-operation	Create or edit a composite operation
		destination-ip	Define an equation on the destination IP
		dscp	Specify the DSCP value to be set by the current IP rule
		fragment	Apply the current rule to non-initial fragments only
		icmp	Set 'ip-protocol' to ICMP and an equation on the types of ICMP messages
		ip-protocol	Set the IP protocol
		source-ip	Set the current rule to apply to packets from the specified source IP address
		tcp destination-port	Set 'ip-protocol' to TCP and an equation on the destination port
		tcp source-port	Set 'ip-protocol' to TCP and an equation on the source port
		udp destination-port	Set 'ip-protocol' to UDP and an equation on the destination port
		udp source-port	Set 'ip-protocol' to UDP and an equation on the source port
	name		Name a capture list
	owner		Set the name of the person or application that has created the list
show capture			Show the sniffer status
show capture-buffer hex			Show a hex-dump of the captured frames

Table 99: Packet sniffing CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
show ip capture-list			Show capture list(s)
show upload status			View capture file upload status
			4 of 4

Reporting on interface status

You report on the status of an interface using the **show interfaces** command. The command reports on the administrative status of the interface, its operational status, and its extended operational status (the ICMP keepalive status). For information about ICMP keepalive status, refer to ICMP keepalive on page 268.

For example, if an interface is enabled but normal keepalive packets are failing, show interfaces displays:

```
FastEthernet 10/3 is up, line protocol is down
```

However, if normal keepalive reports that the connection is up but ICMP keepalive fails, the following is displayed:

```
FastEthernet 10/3 is up, line protocol is down (no KeepAlive)
```

Table 100: Reporting of interface status

Port status	Keepalive status	Show interfaces output	Administrative state	Operational state	Extended operational state
Up	No Keepalive	FastEthernet 10/3 is up, line protocol is up	Up	Up	Up
Up	Keepalive Up	FastEthernet 10/3 is up, line protocol is up	Up	Up	Up
					1 of 2

Table 100: Reporting of interface status (continued)

Port status	Keepalive status	Show interfaces output	Administrative state	Operational state	Extended operational state
Up	Keepalive down	FastEthernet 10/3 is up, line protocol is down (no keepalive)	Up	Up	KeepAlive-Down
Down	N/A	FastEthernet 10/3 is up, line protocol is down	Up	Down	FaultDown
Standby	N/A	FastEthernet 10/3 is in standby mode, line protocol is down	Up	Dormant	DormantDown
Shutdown	N/A	FastEthernet 10/3 is administratively down, line protocol is down	Down	Down	AdminDown
					2 of 2

For detailed specifications of CLI commands, refer to *Avaya G430 CLI Reference,* 03-603234.

Summary of interface status commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 101: Interface status CLI commands

Command	Description
`show interfaces`	Display interface information

Configuring and monitoring CNA test plugs

The Converged Network Analyzer (CNA) is a distributed system for real-time monitoring of IP networks, using active measurements. The CNA supports various network tests including connectivity tests with pings, topology tests with traceroute, and QoS tests with synthetic RTP streams. Within a CNA system, test plugs are the entities that execute the tests, according to instructions from CNA schedulers, and return the results. For more information about administrating the CNA system, see *IM R3.0 Converged Network Analyzer (CNA) Configuration*, 14-300284.

CNA test plug functionality

When activated, test plugs present themselves to the CNA system in a process called *registration*. During registration, a test plug uses a fingerprint certificate to authenticate the CNA scheduler, and publishes its IP address and active ports.

The schedulers are software components running on single board computers called *chatterboxes*. Schedulers are responsible for initiating tests, coordinating tests, and collecting the test results.

For redundancy and load sharing, CNA systems usually include multiple chatterboxes and, therefore, multiple schedulers. However, since the schedulers distribute test plug registration parameters among themselves, a test plug only has to register with a single scheduler. Test plug administrators typically configure multiple schedulers addresses, for redundancy.

You can configure a list of up to five scheduler IP addresses. The test plug attempts to register with the first scheduler on the list first, and then moves down the list as necessary if the registration is unsuccessful.

When the test plug registers with a scheduler, the test plug provides the scheduler with its IP address, and two UDP port numbers, called the control port and the RTP echo port. The test plug IP address is the IP address of the interface on which the PMI is configured.

Test plug actions

Once registered, the test plug listens for test requests on the control port. When the test plug receives an authenticated and validly formatted test request from the scheduler, the test plug performs the following:

- Injects any one of the tests specified in the test request into the network
- Performs the specified test using the parameter values passed in the test request
- Upon successful completion of the test, sends the test results to the analyzer of the chatterbox whose IP address is designated in the test request

CNA tests

The G430 test plug supports all CNA tests, which are:

- **Traceroute**. Measures per-hop round-trip delays to a target IP address by sending a sequence of hop-limited UDP messages, each with a Time To Live (TTL) value that is one greater than that of the preceding message.
- **Real Time Protocol (RTP)**. Measures delay, packet loss, and jitter to another test plug by sending a simulated RTP stream that is echoed back.
- **Ping**. Sends an ICMP echo message to a target IP address, and reports whether or not a response was returned.
- **Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) Connect**. Attempts to establish a TCP connection to a specified port at a target IP address, and reports whether the attempt succeeded or failed and the time taken by the TCP packet to reach its destination.
- **Merge**. Chatter test that is used, transparently to the user, to identify a single device with multiple IP addresses and to merge its multiple appearances into one in the network topology map.

When the test plug receives a request to run an RTP test, the test plug uses a UDP port called the RTP test port to send an RTP stream to another test plug. The test plug listens on the RTP echo port for RTP streams sent by other test plugs running RTP tests. All the UDP ports have default values, which can be overridden using CLI commands. The defaults are:

Table 102: Default UDP port values

UDP Port	Default value
Control port	8889
RTP echo port	8888
RTP test port	8887

Any changes you make to the test plug configuration, such as changing scheduler addresses or port numbers, only take effect when you cause the test plug to disconnect from the scheduler and register again.

Configuring the G430 test plug for registration

From the G430 CLI, you can configure the G430 test plug to register with a CNA scheduler.

1. Use the **`cna-testplug`** command to enter the `testplug` context. For example:

```
G430-001# cna-testplug 1
G430-001(cna-testplug 1)#
```

2. Use the **scheduler** command to configure one or more CNA scheduler IP addresses. You can configure up to five scheduler addresses. The test plug attempts to register with a scheduler according to its place on the list. By default, no schedulers are configured. At least one scheduler must be configured for registration to be possible.
3. Use the **fingerprint** command to enter the certificate fingerprint, provided by your administrator. The fingerprint is used by the CNA test plug to authenticate the CNA scheduler.
4. Perform the following configurations as necessary:
 - Use the **control-port** command to configure the control port. The default control port number is 8889.
 - Use the **rtp-echo-port** command to configure the RTP echo port. The default RTP echo port number is 8888.
 - Use the **rtp-test-port** command to configure the RTP test port. The default RTP test port number is 8887.
 - Use the **test-rate-limit** command to configure the CNA test rate limiter. The default test rate is 60 tests every 10 seconds.
5. If necessary, use the **no shutdown** command to enable the test plug. By default, the test plug is enabled.
6. When the test plug configurations are complete, use the **exit** command to exit the testplug context. From the general context, you can enter **show cna testplug** to display the test plug configuration.
7. From the general context, enter **cna-testplug-service** to enable the test plug service. For example:

```
G430-001# cna-testplug-service
The Converged Network Analyzer test plug is enabled.
```

Note:

The **cna-testplug-service** command requires admin access level.

The test plug attempts to register with the first scheduler on the scheduler list. You can use the **show cna testplug** command to see if the test plug is registered and to view test plug statistics counters.

CNA test plug configuration example

The following example includes displaying default test plug configuration, configuring the test plug, enabling the test plug service, and displaying test plug configuration and counters.

```
//to display default test plug configuration before performing any
//configuration:

G430-001(super)# show cna testplug
CNA testplug 1 is administratively down, test-plug status is unregistered
Address 149.49.75.178, bind to PMI, ID 00:04:0d:6d:30:48
Scheduler list:
Ports: Control 8889,  RTP-test 8888,  RTP-echo 8887
Test rate limiter: Maximum 60 tests in 10 seconds
Last Test: none

Test                 Count        Failed       Cancelled
----------           ------       ------       ---------
traceroute           0            0            0
rtp                  0            0            0
ping                 0            0            0
tcpconnect           0            0            0
merge                0            0            0

//to enter the test plug context:
G430-001(super)# cna testplug 1
//to configure entries 3 and 1 on the scheduler list:
G430-001(super-cna testplug 1)# scheduler 3 135.64.102.76
Done!
G430-001(super-cna testplug 1)# scheduler 1 1.1.1.1
Done!
//to change the configuration of scheduler 1:
G430-001(super-cna testplug 1)# scheduler 1 1.1.1.2
Done!
//to exit the test plug context:
G430-001(super-cna testplug 1)# exit
//to display test plug configuration:
G430-001(super)# show cna testplug
CNA testplug 1 is administratively down, test-plug status is unregistered
Address 149.49.75.178, bind to PMI, ID 00:04:0d:6d:30:48
Scheduler list:
        1: 1.1.1.2:50002
        3: 135.64.102.76:50002
Ports: Control 8889,  RTP-test 8888,  RTP-echo 8887
Test rate limiter: Maximum 60 tests in 10 seconds
```

```
Last Test: none
Test                 Count        Failed       Cancelled
----------           ------       ------       ---------
traceroute           0            0            0
rtp                  0            0            0
ping                 0            0            0
tcpconnect           0            0            0
merge                0            0            0//to reenter the test plug
context:
G430-001(super)# cna testplug 1
//to delete scheduler 1:
G430-001(super-cna testplug 1)# no scheduler 1
Done!
//to exit the test plug context:
G430-001(super-cna testplug 1)# exit
//to show that scheduler 1 is no longer configured:
G430-001(super)# show cna testplug
CNA testplug 1 is administratively down, test-plug status is unregistered
Address 149.49.75.178, bind to PMI, ID 00:04:0d:6d:30:48
Scheduler list:
        3: 135.64.102.76:50002
Ports: Control 8889,  RTP-test 8888,  RTP-echo 8887
Test rate limiter: Maximum 60 tests in 10 seconds
Last Test: none

Test                 Count        Failed       Cancelled
----------           ------       ------       ---------
traceroute           0            0            0
rtp                  0            0            0
ping                 0            0            0
tcpconnect           0            0            0
merge                0            0            0
//to enable the test plug service:
G430-001(super)# cna testplug-service
Done!
//to display test plug configuration and counters after some running time:
G430-001(super)# show cna testplug
CNA testplug 1 is up, test-plug status is running a test
Address 149.49.75.178, bind to PMI, ID 00:04:0d:6d:30:48
Scheduler list:
        3: 135.64.102.76:50002
Ports: Control 8889,  RTP-test 8888,  RTP-echo 8887
Test rate limiter: Maximum 60 tests in 10 seconds
Last Test: traceroute to 135.64.103.107
Result:
ip1=149.49.75.178 ip2=135.64.103.107 ttl_len = 4

Test                 Count        Failed       Cancelled
----------           ------       ------       ---------
traceroute           4            0            0
rtp                  3            0            0
ping                 2            0            0
tcpconnect           4            0            0
merge                0            0            0
```

Resetting the CNA test plug counters

1. In the CNA `testplug` context, enter **`clear counters`**.

```
G430-001(cna-testplug 1)# clear counters
```

All CNA test plug counters are cleared.

Summary of CNA test plug commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 103: CNA test plug CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
`cna testplug`		Enter the `CNA testplug` configuration context
	`clear counters`	Clear the CNA test plug counters
	`control-port`	Set or reset the UDP port on which the CNA test plug listens for test requests from schedulers
	`fingerprint`	Configure the certificate fingerprint used by the CNA test plug to authenticate the scheduler
	`rtp-echo-port`	Set or reset the UDP port used by the CNA test plug to listen for RTP streams sent by other test plugs running RTP tests
	`rtp-test-port`	Set or reset the UDP port used by the CNA test plug to send an RTP stream to another test plug in an RTP test
	`scheduler`	Add a scheduler's IP address to the list of schedulers with which the test plug can attempt to register
	`shutdown`	Disable the CNA test plug
	`test-rate-limit`	Configure the CNA test rate limiter
`cna-testplug-service`		Enable or disable the CNA test plug service on the gateway
`show cna testplug`		Display CNA test plug configuration and statistics

Configuring echo cancellation

Echo canceller control is intended to improve voice quality on a call by call basis.

The G430 has multiple echo cancellers of various capabilities. For best echo cancellation performance, the general rule is to enable only one echo canceller in any direction -- the one with the greater capacity in terms of echo tail control in the steady state. Tandeming echo cancellers in the same direction in a media path results in poorer performance in terms of echo control, double-talk performance, noise, etc. In addition, if a smaller tail echo canceller is in the echo path of a longer tail canceller, audible echo can result when echo exists partly in one canceler's window and partly in the other.

For cases where there is no echo to cancel, it is usually best to disable any echo canceller in the path. Echo cancellers are not totally transparent and sometimes introduce undesirable artifacts.

However, the best echo cancellation policy varies depending on each specific call configuration. The G430 has an internal table for determining which VoIP engine and analog card echo cancellers to enable on a case-by-case basis. This table is consulted when the default `auto` mode is specified in the echo cancellation CLI commands. The CLI commands also offer the option of overriding the default automatic mode, but those alternative modes are intended for debugging and diagnostics purposes only.

Note:

DS1 echo cancellation can only be administered via the Communication Manager SAT, and these settings are always honored by the media gateway. Therefore, the G430 CLI controls only the operation of the VoIP engine and analog trunk/line echo cancellers in relation to the DS1 echo canceller and between themselves.

Echo cancellation CLI commands

Use the following commands to configure echo cancellation. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **`set echo-cancellation analog`** command to control echo cancellation on analog lines and trunks.

 The recommended setting for all analog trunks and lines is the default `auto` mode. In this mode, the gateway controller consults internal rules to determine when to employ the analog echo canceller for each call.

- Use the **`set echo-cancellation config analog`** command to specify an echo cancellation configuration.

 The recommended setting for all analog trunks and lines is the default configuration. The rest of the configuration options are intended for debugging or diagnosing issues in the field.

- Use the **set echo-cancellation voip** command to control echo cancellation on the VoIP engine.

 The recommended setting is the default `auto` mode. In this mode, the gateway controller consults internal rules to determine when to employ the VoIP echo canceller for each call.

- Use the **set echo-cancellation config voip** command to specify an echo cancellation configuration for the VoIP engine.

 The recommended setting is the default configuration. The rest of the configuration options are meant for debugging or diagnosing issues in the field.

- Use the **show echo-cancellation** command to display current settings for echo cancellers within the G430.

Summary of echo cancellation commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 104: Echo cancellation CLI commands

Command	Description
set echo-cancellation analog	Control echo cancellation on analog lines and trunks
set echo-cancellation config analog	Configure echo cancellation on analog lines and trunks
set echo-cancellation config voip	Configure echo cancellation on the VoIP engine
set echo-cancellation voip	Control echo cancellation on the VoIP engine
show echo-cancellation	Display echo cancellation settings and configuration information

Integrated analog testing – Test and Heal

The analog trunk ports of the gateway are designed to meet certain standards. However, loop characteristics such as signal loss, noise, and crosstalk can cause deviation from those standards.

External testing of the loop typically involves removing the line from the gateway and connecting it to measurement equipment, dialing into the Local Exchange Carrier's test facility, and taking measurements locally. Alternatively, a technician can dial into a remote location that terminates in additional measurement equipment.

The gateway’s integrated analog testing feature provides a simpler procedure in which the necessary testing is integrated into the gateway’s analog ports, and the gateway plays the role of the measurement equipment. Using CLI commands, you can:

- Dial out on a specific trunk port to measure noise, receive-loss, crosstalk, trans-hybrid loss, or hybrid balance match
- Display the results of the measurements
- Take corrective action by manually setting a port’s balance, receive-gain, or transmit-gain

The integrated analog testing feature enables quick and accurate testing of the loops at installation, and custom modifications to the analog ports that require correction for the actual loop characteristics. After installation, you can run additional tests whenever needed and correct each port that requires tuning.

The integrated analog testing feature is supported on the MM711 hardware vintage 30 and above, the MM714 hardware vintage 10 and above, and the MM716.

For detailed information about accepted values and recommended corrections, see *Analog Test and Heal User Guide*, 03-603118.

Types of tests

Tests typically make a series of measurements in frequencies between 100Hz and 3400Hz in 100Hz increments. You can run the following tests:

- **Noise test**. Noise is the measure of unwanted signals in the transmission path. After the call is established and while the far end is silent, the gateway collects the noise level.
- **Receive-loss test**. After the call is established and while the tone (or tones) specific to the responder sequence is being received, the gateway collects the signal level at the reference frequency and compares it with the reference level. The difference in decibel between the level sent and the level received is the loss.

- **Crosstalk test**. While the analog port under test is in a call and both ends of the call are silent, the crosstalk port establishes another call and plays a sequence of tones. The gateway collects during that time the tone level for different frequencies on the port under test.
- **Balance test**. This test measures trans-hybrid loss. After the call is established and while the far end is silent, the gateway transmits a tone and measures the reflected signal level. The transmitted tone level minus the reflected tone level is the trans-hybrid loss at that frequency.
- **Match test**. This test matches hybrid balance. Stored in the integrated analog testing firmware is a group of hybrid balance coefficient sets. Each entry in the group balances the hybrid against a different loop impedance. The match test executes a balance test for each set of coefficients and determines which set best matches the loop.

Types of test lines

The measurements performed by the analog trunk ports in the gateway are based on some of the more common Centralized Automatic Reporting On Trunks (CAROT) test lines: Test 100, Test 102, and Test 105.

- The Test 100 line answers an incoming call, sends a 1004 Hz tone at 0 dBm for 5.5 seconds, and then remains quiet until it is disconnected.
- The Test 102 line answers an incoming call, sends a 1004 Hz tone at 0 dBm for 9 seconds, and then remains quiet for 1 second. The line repeats the 1004Hz/quiet sequence until disconnected.
- The Test 105 line answers an incoming call, then:
 - Sends a 1004 Hz tone at -16 dBm for 9 seconds
 - Remains quiet for 1 second
 - Sends a 404 Hz tone at -16 dBm for 9 seconds
 - Remains quiet for 1 second
 - Sends a 2804 Hz tone at -16 dBm for 9 seconds
 - Remains quiet for 30 second
 - Sends a 2225 Hz tone (progress tone) at -16 dBm for half a second
 - Forces disconnect

Setting up a test profile

A test profile is a set of definitions for running a particular test. In essence, it specifies what measurements to run on which port. Once you set up a test profile, you can run it whenever necessary using the single **launch** command. You can define up to 30 profiles.

1. Enter **analog-test** to enter the analog-test context.
2. Use the **profile** command to enter the analog-test-profile context, for configuring a specific test profile.
3. In the analog-test-profile context, setup the test profile:
 - Use the **set type** command to specify what type of test to run, that is, what type of measurements to run.
 - Use the **set port** command to specify which port to test. Note that only analog trunk ports are accepted.
 - Use the **set destination** command to set the Local Exchange Carrier (LEC) number destination of the measurement call. This number is called by the port being tested.

Note:

If you enter **set destination none**, the port will not attempt to make a call toward any destination but will make the measurement on the current call. The test will be performed while the port is in use. Remember to start the call before launching the test.

- Use the **set responder** command to specify a responder port. A responder is an analog trunk port that answers an incoming call and then plays a sequence of tones. The analog media module or the LEC collect the measurements while the responder plays its specific sequence. The responder can be a port in the media module, or the Local Exchange Carrier (LEC).
- Use the **set responder-type** command to specify the responder type. The different types send different sequences of tones, as explained in Types of test lines on page 415.
- If the type of the current profile is crosstalk, configure the following:
 - Use the **set crosstalk-port** command to specify the crosstalk port. The port must be on the same board as the port being tested, but it must be a different port from the port being tested.
 - Use the **set crosstalk-destination** command to set the Local Exchange Carrier number destination of the call from the crosstalk port.

Note:

If you enter **set crosstalk-destination none**, this indicates that the crosstalk port will not attempt to make a call toward any destination but will expect an incoming call. Remember to start the call before launching the test.

- Use the **set crosstalk-responder** command to specify the responder port for the crosstalk port.

Displaying and clearing profiles

- In the analog-test-profile context, use the **show** command to display the test profile.
- In the analog-test context, use the **show profile** command to display a particular profile or all profiles.
- In the analog-test context, use the **clear profile** command to delete a particular test profile or all profiles.

Launching and cancelling a test

Once you created a test profile, you can launch it when desired. However, due to memory constraints on the analog media modules, only one test can be run at a time.

Note:

A test will fail if the port specified for the test is in use for a call, unless you specified **set destination none** for this test profile.

1. Enter **analog-test** to enter the analog-test context.
2. Use the **launch** command to launch a specific test. The port specified in the test profile must be busied out from Communication Manager before the test is launched.

Note:

As soon as **launch** is issued, the results of previous measurements on the port are cleared.

You can use the **cancel** command to abort an analog test that is currently running.

Displaying test results

- In the analog-test context, use the **show result** command to display the result of the latest measurements performed for a particular profile.
- In the analog-test-profile context, use the **show result** command to display the results of the latest measurements performed by the test profile.

If a test did not succeed, the output indicates the reason for the test failure.

Healing trunks

You can manually tune three parameters on each analog trunk port: balance, receive-gain, and transmit gain.

1. Enter **analog-test** to enter the analog-test context.
2. Correct the balance, receive-gain, or transmit-gain of a port using the following commands:
 - Use the **set balance** command to set the balance on a specific port.
 - Use the **set receive-gain** command to set the receive-gain on a specific port.
 - Use the **set transmit-gain** command to set the transmit-gain on a specific port.

Displaying corrections

After correcting the balance, receive-gain or transmit-gain, you can view the corrections applied to each port.

1. Enter **analog-test** to enter the analog-test context.
2. Use the **show correction** command to display the balance, receive-gain, and transmit-gain corrections applied to each port.

Summary of integrated analog testing commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 105: Integrated analog testing CLI commands

Root Level Commands	First level command	Second level command	Description
analog-test			Enter the analog-test context
	cancel		Abort an analog test if it is already running
	clear profile		Delete a test profile
	launch		Launch a specific test

1 of 3

Table 105: Integrated analog testing CLI commands (continued)

Root Level Commands	First level command	Second level command	Description
	profile		Enter the `analog-test-profile` context to setup or edit a test profile
		set crosstalk-destination	Set the Local Exchange Carrier number destination of the call from the crosstalk port
		set crosstalk-port	Specify the crosstalk port
		set crosstalk-responder	Specify the responder port for the crosstalk port
		set destination	Set the Local Exchange Carrier number destination of the measurement call
		set port	Specify the port to test
		set responder	Specify the responder port
		set responder-type	Specify the responder type
		set type	Specify what type of test to run
		show	Display a test profile
		show result	Display the results of the latest measurement obtained by this test profile
	set balance		Set the balance on a specific port
	set receive-gain		Set the receive-gain on a specific port
	set transmit-gain		Set the transmit-gain on a specific port
	show correction		Display the balance, receive-gain, and transmit-gain corrections applied to each port

2 of 3

Table 105: Integrated analog testing CLI commands (continued)

Root Level Commands	First level command	Second level command	Description
	show profile		Display the details of a test profile
	show result		Display the result of the last measurement performed for a particular profile
			3 of 3

Chapter 18: Configuring the router

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway has an internal router. You can configure the following routing features on the router:

- Interfaces
- Unnumbered IP interfaces
- Routing table
- GRE tunneling
- DHCP and BOOTP relay
- DHCP server
- Broadcast relay
- ARP table
- ICMP errors
- RIP
- OSPF
- Route redistribution
- VRRP
- Fragmentation

You can configure multiple routing schemes on the G430. See Routing sources on page 428 for an explanation of the priority considerations employed by the G430 to determine the next hop source.

Use the **ip routing** command to enable the router. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the router.

Configuring interfaces

You can use the CLI to configure interfaces on the router.

Router interface concepts

The router in the Avaya G430 Media Gateway includes the following interface categories:

- Physical
- Layer 2 virtual
- Layer 3 routing

Physical router interfaces

The following are the physical interfaces of the G430 router:

- **FastEthernet Interface**. The 10/3 Fast Ethernet port on the front panel of the G430 provides a FastEthernet interface. This interface is an autosensing 10/100 Mbps Fast Ethernet port. It can be used to connect to a LAN, an external firewall, an external Virtual Private Network (VPN), or a DeMilitarized Zone (DMZ). This interface can also be used as a WAN interface when configured for PPPoE. For more information, see Configuring PPPoE on page 241.
- **Switching Interface**. An internal 100 Mbps connection to the G430 internal switch provides a switching interface. The switching interface supports VLANs. By default, the switching interface is associated with the first VLAN (Vlan 1).

 When you configure the G430 without an external VPN or firewall, Vlan 1 is used to connect the internal G430 router to the internal G430 switch. If an external firewall or VPN is connected to the Fast Ethernet port, it is important to disable Vlan 1 to prevent a direct flow of packets from the WAN to the LAN.

Layer 2 virtual interfaces

- **Loopback**. The Loopback interface is a virtual Layer 2 interface over which loopback IP addresses are configured. The Loopback interface represents the router by an IP address that is always available, a feature necessary mainly for network troubleshooting.

 Since the Loopback interface is not connected to any physical interface, an entry in the routing table can not have the Loopback interface's subnet as its next hop.
- **GRE tunnel**. A GRE tunnel is a virtual point-to-point link using two routers at two ends of an Internet cloud as its endpoints. GRE tunneling encapsulates packets and sends them over a GRE tunnel. At the end of the GRE tunnel, the encapsulation is removed and the packet is sent to its destination in the network at the far end of the GRE tunnel. For more information, see Configuring GRE tunneling on page 433.

Layer 2 logical interfaces

- **VLAN (on the Switching Interface)**. The G430 switch can have multiple VLANs defined within its switching fabric. The G430 router supports up to eight VLANs that can be configured over their internal switching interface connections.
- **Dialer Interface**. The Dialer interface is used for the modem dial-backup feature. Refer to Modem dial backup on page 248.

Note:

One or more IP interfaces can be defined over each FastEthernet, switching, and Loopback interface.

IP Interface configuration commands

1. To create an interface, enter **`interface`** followed by the type of interface you want to create. Some types of interfaces require an identifier as a parameter. Other types of interfaces require the interface's module and port number as a parameter. For example:

```
interface vlan 1
interface fastethernet 10/2
```

2. Enter **`ip address`**, followed by an IP address and subnet mask, to assign an IP address to the interface. Use the **`no`** form of this command to delete the IP interface.

Configuring interface parameter commands

Use the following commands to configure the interface parameters. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **`ip admin-state`** command to set the administrative state of the IP interface. The default state is up.
- Use the **`ip broadcast-address`** command to update the interface broadcast address.

Interface configuration examples

Use the following commands to configure the fixed router port with IP address 10.20.30.40 and subnet mask 255.255.0.0:

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip address 10.20.30.40 255.255.0.0
Done!
```

Use the following commands to create VLAN 2 on the switching interface and configure it with IP address 10.30.50.70 and subnet mask 255.255.0.0:

```
G430-001# interface Vlan 2
G430-001(if:Vlan 2)# ip address 10.30.50.70 255.255.0.0
Done!
```

Displaying interface configuration

Use the **`show interface brief`** command to display a summary of the configuration information for a specific interface or for all of the interfaces.

Summary of basic interface configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 106: Basic interface configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
`interface dialer`		Enter the `Dialer` interface context, create the Dialer interface if it does not exist, or delete the Dialer interface
	`ip address`	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface or delete an interface
	`ip admin-state`	Set the administrative state of an IP interface
	`ip broadcast-address`	Update the interface broadcast address
`interface fastethernet`		Enter `FastEthernet interface` configuration context, create a FastEthernet interface if it does not exist, or delete a FastEthernet interface
	`ip address`	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface or delete an interface
	`ip admin-state`	Set the administrative state of an IP interface
	`ip broadcast-address`	Update the interface broadcast address

1 of 2

Table 106: Basic interface configuration CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
interface loopback		Enter `loopback` interface configuration context, create a Loopback interface if it does not exist, or delete a Loopback interface or sub-interface
	ip address	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface or delete an interface
	ip admin-state	Set the administrative state of an IP interface
interface tunnel		Enter `tunnel` interface configuration context, create a tunnel interface if it does not exist, or delete a tunnel interface or sub-interface
	ip address	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface or delete an interface
	ip admin-state	Set the administrative state of an IP interface
interface usb-modem		Enter the `USB-modem` interface configuration context, reset the USB-modem interface settings to their factory defaults
	ip address	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface or delete an interface
interface vlan		Enter `VLAN` interface configuration context, create a VLAN interface if it does not exist, or delete a VLAN interface
	ip address	Assign an IP address and mask to an interface or delete an interface
	ip admin-state	Set the administrative state of an IP interface
	ip broadcast-address	Update the interface broadcast address
show ip interface brief		Display a summary of the interface configuration information for a specific interface or for all of the interfaces

2 of 2

Configuring unnumbered IP interfaces

Unnumbered IP is a feature that enables you to configure a point-to-point interface to borrow an IP address from another interface. Unnumbered IP enables IP processing on a point-to-point interface without assigning an explicit IP address to the interface.

Although unnumbered IP is supported on all point-to-point interfaces, the main use of the feature is to enable dynamic routing on the Dialer interface. The Dialer interface is used for the modem dial-backup feature. Refer to Modem dial backup on page 248. Modem dial-backup is a feature that sets up a backup dialing destination for a branch gateway. Modem dial-backup requires unnumbered IP to be configured on the Dialer interface of the branch gateway and at both the default and the backup dialing destinations.

Configuring unnumbered IP on an interface

To configure unnumbered IP on an interface, you must specify the interface from which to borrow the IP address. The borrowed interface must already exist and have an IP address configured on it.

The status of an unnumbered IP interface is down whenever the borrowed interface is down. Therefore, it is recommended to borrow the IP address from an interface that is always up, such as the Loopback interface.

Routes discovered on an unnumbered interface by the RIP and OSPF routing protocols are displayed as “via routes” in the routing table. The next hop is listed as “via” the IP unnumbered interface instead of the source address of the routing update.

1. Decide which interface from which to borrow the IP address. If necessary, configure the interface. You can use the **`show interfaces`** command to display existing interface configuration.
2. Enter the context of the interface on which you want to configure an unnumbered IP address (usually the Dialer interface).
3. Use the **`ip unnumbered`** command, specifying the interface from which to borrow the IP address.

Unnumbered IP examples

In the following example, a VLAN interface is configured, and then the Dialer interface is configured with an unnumbered IP address, borrowing the IP address from the VLAN interface.

```
//enter the context of vlan interface 1:
G430-001(super)# interface Vlan 1
//to configure the IP address of the vlan interface:
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 1)# ip address 180.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 1)# exit
G430-001# !
//enter the context of the Dialer interface:
G430-001(super)# interface dialer 1
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer string 1 3001
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer persistent delay 1
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# dialer modem-interface USB-modem
//to configure IP unnumbered on the Dialer interface, borrowing the IP address
from vlan interface 1, configured above:
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# ip unnumbered 1 Vlan 1
G430-001(super-if:Dialer 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# !
```

The following sample routing table shows how routes discovered on unnumbered interfaces by routing protocols are listed as via routes in the **Next-Hop** column:

Network	Mask	Interface	Next-Hop	Cost	TTL	Source
0.0.0.0	0	FastEth10/3	149.49.54.1	1	n/a	STAT-HI
2.2.2.0	24	Vlan15	2.2.2.1	1	n/a	LOCAL
10.0.0.0	8	Vlan1	0.0.0.40	1	n/a	LOCAL
3.0.0.0	8	Tunnel1	Via Dia.1	2	172	RIP
4.0.0.0	8	Tunnel 1	Via Dia.1	2	172	RIP
20.0.0.0	8	Tunnel 1	Via Dia.1	11112	n/a	OSPF
20.0.0.1	32	Tunnel 1	Via Dia.1	22222	n/a	OSPF
26.0.0.0	8	Vlan 15	2.2.2.2	3	n/a	STAT-LO
99.0.0.0	8	Vlan 99	99.1.1.1	1	n/a	LOCAL
135.64.0.0	16	FastEth 10/3	149.49.54.1	1	n/a	STAT-HI
149.49.54.0	24	FastEth 10/3	149.49.54.112	1	n/a	LOCAL
180.0.0.0	8	Loopback 1	180.0.0.1	1	n/a	LOCAL

Summary of unnumbered IP interface configuration commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 107: Unnumbered IP interface configuration CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (dialer\|fastethernet\|tunnel)		Enter the `Dialer, FastEthernet,` or `Tunnel` interface context
	ip unnumbered	Configure an interface to borrow an IP address from another interface or remove an unnumbered IP configuration from an interface

Routing sources

The G430 router supports both static and dynamic routing per interface. You can configure static routes with two levels of priority, high and low, and you can enable and configure Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) and Routing Information Protocol (RIP) dynamic routing protocols. Additionally, when DHCP client is configured on an interface, you can configure DHCP client to request a default router address from the DHCP server (DHCP option 3).

The actual source from which the router learns the next hop for any given interface is determined as follows: The router seeks the best match to a packet's destination IP address from all enabled routing sources. If there is no best match, the next hop source is determined according to the following priority order:

1. **High priority static route (highest)**. If a high priority static route is configured on the interface, this route overrides all other sources.
2. **OSPF**. If no high priority static route is configured on the interface, but OSPF is enabled, then OSPF determines the next hop.
3. **RIP**. If no high priority static router is configured on a given interface, and OSPF is not enabled, but RIP is enabled, RIP determines the next hop.
4. **EXT OSPF**.

5. **DHCP**. If no high priority static router is configured on a given interface, and neither OSPF nor RIP are enabled, and DHCP client is configured on the interface with a default router requested from the DHCP server (DHCP option 3), then the default router provided by DHCP is used.
6. **Low priority static route (lowest)**.

When more than one next hop is learned from the same source, the router uses an equal cost multi path algorithm that performs load balancing between routes.

For information about configuring static routes, see Configuring the routing table on page 429. For information about configuring OSPF, see Configuring OSPF on page 469. For information about configuring RIP, see Configuring RIP on page 463. For information about configuring DHCP client, see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

Configuring the routing table

When you configure the routing table, you can:

- View information about the routing table
- Add entries to the routing table
- Delete entries from the routing table

Note:

To change an entry in the routing table, delete the entry and then add it as a new entry.

The routes in the routing table are static routes. They are never timed-out, and can only be removed manually. If you delete the interface, all static routes on the interface are also deleted.

A static route becomes inactive whenever the underlying Layer 2 interface is down, except for permanent static routes. You can disable the interface manually using the **`ip admin-state down`** command. For more information, see Permanent static route on page 431. When the underlying Layer 2 interface becomes active, the static route enters the routing table again.

You can monitor the status of non-permanent static routes by applying object tracking to the route. Thus, if the track state is changed to down then the static route state is changed to inactive, and if the track state is changed to up then the static route state is changed to active. For more information on object tracking, see Object tracking on page 274.

Static routes can be advertised by routing protocols, such as RIP and OSPF. For more information, see Route redistribution on page 474. Static routes also support load-balancing similar to OSPF.

Configuring next hops

Static routes can be configured with the following as next hops:

- **Next-hop IP address**. Specifies the IP address of a router as a next hop. The next hop router must belong to one of the directly attached networks for which the Avaya G430 Media Gateway has an IP interface.

Static route types

Two kinds of static routes can be configured:

- **High Preference static routes**. Preferred to routes learned from any routing protocol
- **Low Preference static routes**. Used temporarily until the route is learned from a routing protocol

By default, a static route has low preference.

Configuring multiple next hops

You can configure up to three next hops for each static route in one of the following manners:

- Enter all of the next hops using a single **`ip route`** command. To add a new next hop to an existing static route, enter the new next hop individually, as in the following option.
- Enter each next hop individually with its own **`ip route`** command

Note:

If you apply tracking to a static route, you can only configure one next hop for the route.

Next hops can only be added to an existing static route if they have the same preference and metric as the currently defined next hops.

Note:

Metrics are used to choose between routes of the same protocol. Preferences are used to choose between routes of different protocols.

Deleting a route and its next hops

Using the **`no ip route`** command deletes the route including all of its next-hops, whether entered individually or with a single command. For example, to specify next hops 149.49.54.1 and 149.49.75.1 as a static route to the network 10.1.1.0, do one of the following:

- Enter **`ip route 10.1.1.0 24 149.49.54.1 149.49.75.1`**, specifying all next hops together
- Enter both **`ip route 10.1.1.0 24 149.49.54.1`** and **`ip route 10.1.1.0 24 149.49.75.1`**

Permanent static route

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway enables you to configure a static route as a permanent route. Configuring this option prevents the static route from becoming inactive when the underlying Layer 2 interface is down. This prevents routing table updates from being sent each time an interface goes up or down when there is a fluctuating Layer 2 interface on the static route. Configure the permanent option using the **ip route** command.

For example, the command **ip route 193.168.10.0 24 FastEthernet 10/2 permanent** creates a permanent static route to the network 193.168.10.0 24 via the FastEthernet 10/2 interface.

For example, the command **ip route 132.55.0.0 255.255.0.0 132.55.4.45 3 high** creates a high static route to the network 132.55.0.0/255.255.0.0 via next-hop ip address 132.55.4.45 and with cost 3

Permanent static routes should not be configured over Layer 2 interfaces that participate in a Primary-Backup pair. For more information on Backup interfaces, see Backup interfaces on page 246.

Note:

You cannot configure tracking on a permanent static route.

Discard route

Discard route enables you to prevent forwarding traffic to specific networks. You can configure a static route that drops all packets destined to the route. This is called a discard route, indicated by the null0 parameter, and is configured using the **ip route <network> <mask> null0** command.

For example, the command **ip route 134.66.0.0 16 Null0** configures the network 134.66.0.0 16 as a discard route.

Note:

You cannot configure tracking on a discard route.

Routing table commands

Use the following commands to configure the routing table. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Enter **clear ip route all** to delete all dynamic routing entries from the routing table.
- Use the **ip default-gateway** command to define a default gateway for the router. Use the **no** form of this command to remove the default gateway.
- Use the **ip redirects** command to enable the sending of redirect messages on the current interface. Use the **no** form of this command to disable redirect messages. By default, sending of redirect messages on the interface is enabled.
- Use the **ip route** command to establish a static route. Use the **no** form of this command to remove a static route.
- Use the **ip netmask-format** command to specify the format of subnet masks in the output of **show** commands that display subnet masks, such as the **show ip route** command. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the format to the default format, which is decimal.
- Use the **show ip route** command to display information about the IP routing table.
- Enter **show ip route best-match**, followed by an IP address, to display a routing table for a destination address.
- Use the **show ip route static** command to display static routes.
- Enter **show ip route summary** to display the number of routes known to the device.
- Enter **show ip route track-table** to display all routes with configured object trackers.
- Enter **traceroute**, followed by an IP address, to trace the route an IP packet would follow to the specified IP address. The G430 traces the route by launching UDP probe packets with a small TTL, then listening for an ICMP time exceeded reply from a gateway.

Note:

Using the **traceroute** command, you can also trace the route inside a locally terminated tunnel (GRE, VPN).

Summary of routing table commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 108: Routing table CLI commands

Command	Description
clear ip route	Delete all the dynamic routing entries from the routing table
ip default-gateway	Define a default gateway for the router
ip netmask-format	Specify the format of subnet masks in the output of **show** commands
ip redirects	Enable the sending of redirect messages on the current interface
ip route	Establish a static route
ip routing	Enable IP routing
show ip route	Display information about the IP routing table
show ip route best-match	Display a routing table for a destination address
show ip route static	Display static routes
show ip route summary	Display the number of routes known to the device
show ip route track-table	Display all routes with configured object trackers
traceroute	Trace the route packets are taking to a particular IP address by displaying the hops along the path

Configuring GRE tunneling

Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a multi-carrier protocol that encapsulates packets with an IP header and enables them to pass through the Internet via a GRE tunnel. A GRE tunnel is a virtual interface in which two routers serve as endpoints. The first router encapsulates the packet and sends it over the Internet to a router at the far end of the GRE tunnel. The second router removes the encapsulation and sends the packet towards its destination.

A GRE tunnel is set up as an IP interface, which allows you to use the GRE tunnel as a routing destination. A GRE tunnel can transport multicast packets, which allows it to work with routing protocols such as RIP and OSPF.

To set up a GRE tunnel, you must create the interface and assign it an IP address, a tunnel source address, and a tunnel destination address. GRE tunnels can be configured as next hops on static routes and policy-based routing next hop lists. Packets can also be routed to GRE tunnels dynamically.

Note:

There may be cases in which the GRE tunnel is not used for routing. In such cases, it may not be necessary to assign an IP address to the tunnel.

The main application for GRE tunneling is to allow packets that use protocols not supported on the Internet, or packets that use private IP addresses that cannot be routed on the Internet, to travel across the Internet. The following are examples of situations in which this can be useful:

- Providing multiprotocol local networks over a single-protocol backbone
- Providing workarounds for networks containing protocols that have limited hop counts, such as AppleTalk
- Connecting discontinuous subnetworks
- Enabling virtual private networks (VPNs) over a WAN

You can also configure a GRE tunnel to serve as a backup interface. For information on configuring backup interfaces, see Backup interfaces on page 246.

For an example of a GRE tunneling application, see GRE tunnel application example on page 441.

Routing packets to a GRE tunnel

Packets can be routed to a GRE tunnel in the following ways:

- The Tunnel interface is configured as the next hop in a static route. See Configuring the routing table on page 429.
- The packet is routed to the Tunnel interface dynamically by a routing protocol (RIP or OSPF)
- The packet is routed to the Tunnel interface via policy-based routing. See Configuring policy-based routing on page 595.

Preventing nested tunneling in GRE tunnels

Nested tunneling occurs when the tunnel's next hop for its destination is another tunnel, or the tunnel itself. When the next hop is the tunnel itself, a tunnel loop occurs. This is also known as recursive routing.

When the G430 recognizes nested tunneling, it brings down the Tunnel interface and produces a message that the interface is temporarily disabled due to nested tunneling. The tunnel remains down until the tunnel is reconfigured to eliminate the nested tunneling.

In addition to checking for nested tunneling, the G430 prevents loops in connection with GRE tunnels by preventing the same packet from being encapsulated more than once in the G430.

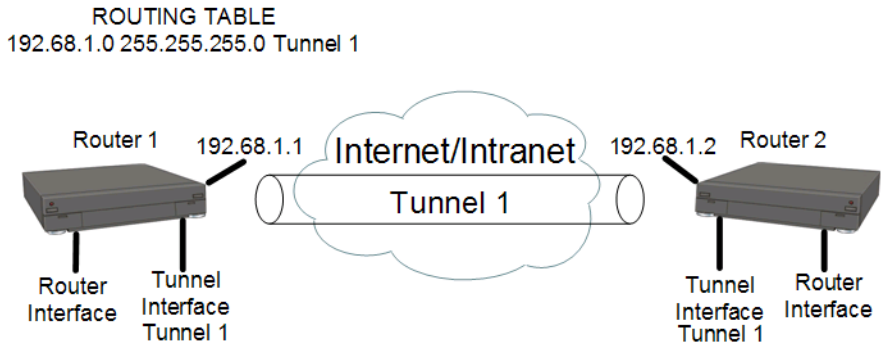
Reasons for nested tunneling in a GRE tunnel

- A static route exists on the source tunnel endpoint that tells the tunnel to route packets addressed to the receiving tunnel endpoint via the tunnel itself
- The local endpoint of the tunnel learns the tunnel as a route to the tunnel's remote endpoint via OSPF or RIP
- A combination of static routes via parallel tunnels lead to a situation in which each tunnel is routing packets via another tunnel. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# interface tunnel 1
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# tunnel source x.x.x.x
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# tunnel destination 1.0.0.1
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# interface tunnel 2
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# tunnel source x.x.x.x
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# tunnel destination 2.0.0.1
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# exit
G430-001(super)# interface tunnel 3
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 3)# tunnel source x.x.x.x
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 3)# tunnel destination 3.0.0.1
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 3)# exit
G430-001(super)# ip route 1.0.0.1 tunnel 2
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip route 2.0.0.1 tunnel 3
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip route 3.0.0.1 tunnel 1
Done!
```

Using the network shown in Figure 34 as an illustration, if Router 1 has an entry in its routing table regarding the tunnel's receiving endpoint, this will cause an internal route in which all packets exiting the tunnel will be redirected back into the tunnel itself.

Figure 34: Nested tunneling example



Recommendations on avoiding nested tunneling

- **Announce policy**. Configure a policy rule on the receiving tunnel endpoint (router 2) that will cause the receiving endpoint to block advertisements of the source network (192.68.1.0) in its routing updates. This will prevent the source endpoint (router 1) from learning the route. This solution is for nested tunneling caused by RIP. For example, using the network shown in Figure 34 as an illustration, you would configure the following policy rule on router 2 and activate it on the router RIP with the matching interface:

```
G430-001(super)# ip distribution access-list-name 1 "list #1"
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip distribution access-default-action 1 default-action-permit
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip distribution access-list 1 10 "deny" 192.68.1.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super)# router rip
G430-001(super router:rip)# distribution-list 1 out FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
G430-001(super router:rip)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

- **Accept policy**. Configure a policy rule on the source tunnel endpoint (router 1) that will cause the source endpoint to not accept routing updates that include the source network (192.68.1.0). This solution is for nested tunneling caused by RIP. For example, using the network shown in Figure 34 as an illustration, you would configure the following policy rule on router 1 and activate it on the router RIP with the matching interface:

```
G430-001(super)# ip distribution access-list-name 1 "list #1"
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip distribution access-default-action 1 default-action-permit
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip distribution access-list 1 10 "deny" 192.68.1.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super)# router rip
G430-001(super router:rip)# distribution-list 1 in FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
G430-001(super router:rip)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

- **Static route**. Configure a static rule on router 1 telling it the route for packets destined to the tunnel's receiving endpoint (192.68.1.2). This route should be configured with a high route preference. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# ip route 192.68.1.2 255.255.0.0 192.68.1.3 high permanent
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

Optional GRE tunnel features

You can configure optional features in GRE tunnels. The tunnel keepalive feature enables periodic checking to determine if the tunnel is up or down. The dynamic MTU discovery feature determines and updates the lowest MTU on the current route through the tunnel.

Keepalive

The tunnel keepalive feature sends keepalive packets through the Tunnel interface to determine whether the tunnel is up or down. This feature enables the tunnel's source interface to inform the host if the tunnel is down. When the tunnel keepalive feature is not active, if the tunnel is down, the tunnel's local endpoint continues to attempt to send packets over the tunnel without informing the host that the packets are failing to reach their destination.

Use the **keepalive** command in the GRE Tunnel interface context to enable the tunnel keepalive feature. Use the **no** form of this command to deactivate the feature.

The **keepalive** command includes the following parameters:

- ***seconds***. The length, in seconds, of the interval at which the source interface sends keepalive packets. The default value is 10.

- ***retries***. The number of retries after which the source interface declares that the tunnel is down. The default value is 3.

The following example configures Tunnel 1 to send keepalive packets every 20 seconds. If the tunnel's destination interface fails to respond to three consecutive packets, the tunnel's source interface concludes that the tunnel is down. The source interface continues to send keepalive packets, but until it receives a response from the tunnel's destination interface, the tunnel informs hosts that send packets to the tunnel that the tunnel is down.

```
G430-001# interface tunnel 1
G430-001(if:Tunnel 1)# keepalive 20 3
Done!
```

Note:

You do not have to configure tunnel keepalive on both sides of the tunnel.

Dynamic MTU discovery

The size of packets that can travel through a GRE tunnel is limited by the lowest MTU of any router along the route through the tunnel. When dynamic MTU discovery is enabled, the tunnel maintains an MTU limit.

When a large packet is sent from the host with the DF bit on, and a router in the tunnel path has an MTU that is smaller than the size of the packet, since the DF bit is set, the router sends an ICMP unreachable message back in the originator (in this case, the GRE router). The GRE router then updates the tunnel's MTU limit accordingly. When a packet larger than the MTU arrives at the tunnel, if the packet is marked *do not fragment*, the tunnel's source interface sends the packet back to the host requesting the host to fragment the packet. When dynamic MTU discovery is disabled, the tunnel's source interface marks each packet as *may be fragmented*, even if the packet's original setting is *do not fragment*. For more information on MTU and fragmentation, refer to Configuring fragmentation on page 479.

Use the **`tunnel path-mtu-discovery`** command in the GRE Tunnel interface context to enable dynamic MTU discovery by the tunnel. Use the **`no`** form of this command to deactivate the feature.

The **`tunnel path-mtu-discovery`** command includes the following parameters:

- ***`age-timer`***. How long until the local tunnel endpoint returns the tunnel MTU to its default. The default value of this parameter is 10 minutes.
- ***`infinite`***. The tunnel does not update the MTU, and its value remains permanent

Setting up a GRE tunnel

1. Enter **interface tunnel**, followed by a number identifying the tunnel, to create the new Tunnel interface. If you are changing the parameters of an existing tunnel, enter **interface tunnel**, followed by a number identifying the tunnel, to enter the Tunnel context. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# interface tunnel 2
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)#
```

2. In the Tunnel interface context, enter **tunnel source**, followed by the public IP address of the local tunnel endpoint, to set the source address of the tunnel. For example:

```
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# tunnel source 70.70.70.2
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)#
```

3. In the Tunnel interface context, enter **tunnel destination**, followed by the IP address of the remote tunnel endpoint, to set the destination address of the tunnel. For example:

```
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# tunnel destination 20.0.1.1
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)#
```

Note:

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway does not check whether the configured tunnel source IP address is an existing IP address registered with the G430 router.

4. In most cases, it is recommended to configure keepalive in the tunnel so that the tunnel's source interface can determine and inform the host if the tunnel is down. For more information on keepalive, see Keepalive on page 437.

 To configure keepalive for a Tunnel interface, enter **keepalive** in the Tunnel interface context, followed by the length (in seconds) of the interval at which the source interface sends keepalive packets, and the number of retries necessary in order to declare the tunnel down.

 The following example configures the tunnel to send a keepalive packet every 20 seconds, and to declare the tunnel down if the source interface sends three consecutive keepalive packets without a response.

```
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# keepalive 20 3
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)#
```

5. In most cases, it is recommended to configure dynamic MTU discovery in the tunnel. This prevents fragmentation of packets larger than the tunnel's MTU. When dynamic MTU discovery is not enabled, the tunnel fragments packets larger than the tunnel's MTU, even when the packet is marked *do not fragment*. For more information on dynamic MTU discovery, see Dynamic MTU discovery on page 438.

 The following example configures dynamic MTU discovery, with an age timer of 15 minutes.

```
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)# tunnel path-mtu-discovery age-timer 15
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 2)#
```

6. Enter **`copy running-config startup-config`**. This saves the new Tunnel interface configuration in the startup configuration file.

For a list of optional GRE tunnel features, refer to Optional GRE tunnel features on page 437. For a list of additional GRE tunnel CLI commands, refer to Additional GRE tunnel parameters on page 440.

Additional GRE tunnel parameters

Use the following commands to configure additional GRE tunnel parameters. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **`tunnel checksum`** command in the GRE Tunnel interface context to add a checksum to the GRE header of packets traveling through the tunnel. When a checksum is included on one endpoint, the receiving tunnel endpoint performs checksum validation on incoming packets and packets without a valid checksum are discarded. Use the **`no`** form of this command to disable checksums.
- Use the **`tunnel key`** command in the GRE Tunnel interface context to enable and set an ID key for the tunnel. Tunnel ID keys are used as a security device. The key must be set to the same value on the tunnel endpoints. Packets without the configured key must be discarded. Use the **`no`** form of this command to disable key checking.
- Use the **`tunnel dscp`** command in the GRE Tunnel interface context to assign a DSCP value to packets traveling through the tunnel. The DSCP value is placed in the packet's Carrier IP header. You can assign a DSCP value of from `0` to `63`. If you do not assign a DSCP value, the DSCP value is copied from the packet's original IP header.

 Note:

 The Carrier IP header identifies the source and destination IP address of the tunnel.

- Use the **tunnel ttl** command in the GRE Tunnel interface context to assign a TTL value to packets traveling through the tunnel. The TTL value is placed in the packet's Carrier IP header. You can assign a TTL value of from 1 to 255. The default tunnel TTL value is 255.
- Enter **show interfaces tunnel** to show interface configuration and statistics for a particular tunnel or all GRE tunnels.

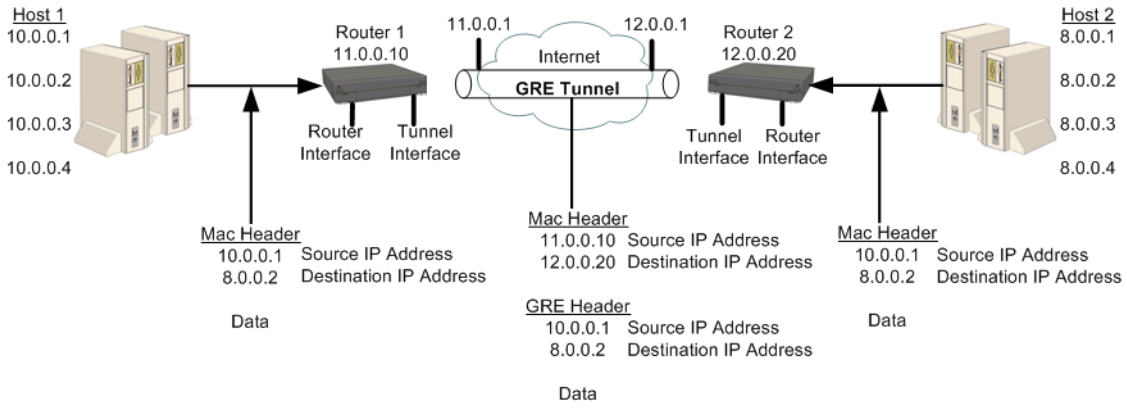
Note:

If the Tunnel interface is down, the **show interfaces tunnel** command displays the MTU value as not available.

GRE tunnel application example

This section provides an example of a GRE tunnel application and its configuration.

Figure 35: Simple GRE tunneling application example



In the example shown in Figure 35, Host 1 and Host 2 are private networks using a GRE tunnel to connect them via the Internet. 11.0.0.10 and 12.0.0.20 are public IP addresses used by the GRE tunnel for the tunnel encapsulation.

A packet originating from 10.0.0.1 on Host 1 is sent to the destination 8.0.0.2 on Host 2. Since the destination IP address is a private IP address, the packet cannot be routed as is over the Internet. Instead, Router 1 receives the packet from host 1, looks up the packet's destination address in its routing table, and determines that the next hop to the destination address is the remote end of the GRE tunnel.

Router 1 encapsulates the packet with a GRE header and a new IP header that assigns the IP address of Router 2 (12.0.0.20) as the destination IP address and the IP address of Router 1 (11.0.0.10) as the source IP address. When the packet arrives at Router 2, which is the end point of the GRE tunnel, Router 2 removes the outer IP header and the GRE header and sends the packet to its original destination at IP address (8.0.0.2).

You can use the following commands to configure GRE tunneling (with OSPF) in this example:

Router 1 Configuration

```
G430-001(super)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip address 11.0.0.10 255.255.255.0
G430-001(super-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# exit
G430-001(super)# interface tunnel 1
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# keepalive 10 3
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# tunnel source 11.0.0.10
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# tunnel destination 12.0.0.20
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# ip address 1.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# ip route 12.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 11.0.0.1 1 high
G430-001(super)# router ospf
G430-001(super router:ospf)# network 1.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 area 0.0.0.0
Done!
G430-001(super router:ospf)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

Router 2 Configuration

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 1
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 1)# ip address 12.0.0.10 255.255.255.0
G430-001(super-if:Vlan 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# interface tunnel 1
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# tunnel source 12.0.0.20
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# tunnel destination 11.0.0.10
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# ip address 1.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
G430-001(super-if:Tunnel 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# ip route 11.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 12.0.0.1 1 high
G430-001(super)# router ospf
G430-001(super router:ospf)# network 1.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 area 0.0.0.0
Done!
G430-001(super router:ospf)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

Summary of GRE tunneling commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 109: GRE tunneling CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface tunnel		Enter `tunnel` interface configuration context, create a Tunnel interface if it does not exist, or delete a Tunnel interface or sub-interface
	keepalive	Enable the tunnel keepalive feature
	tunnel checksum	Add a checksum to the GRE header of packets traveling through the tunnel
	tunnel destination	Set the destination address of the tunnel
	tunnel dscp	Assign a DSCP value to packets traveling through the tunnel
	tunnel key	Enable and set an ID key for the tunnel
	tunnel path-mtu-discovery	Enable dynamic MTU discovery by the tunnel
	tunnel source	Set the source address of the tunnel
	tunnel ttl	Assign a TTL value to packets traveling through the tunnel
show interfaces tunnel		Show interface configuration and statistics for a particular tunnel or all GRE tunnels

Configuring DHCP and BOOTP relay

You can configure the router to relay Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and BOOTstrap Protocol (BOOTP) client broadcasts to a server on a different segment of the network. When you configure DHCP and BOOTP relay, you can control how the router relays DHCP and BOOTP packets. The router also relays replies from the server back to the client. The G430 can alternatively function as a DHCP server, providing DHCP service to local devices. For information about configuring DHCP server on the G430, see Configuring DHCP server on page 447. For information about configuring DHCP client on the G430, see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

DHCP

DHCP assigns dynamic IP addresses to devices on a network. With dynamic addressing, a device can have a different IP address whenever the device connects to the network. In some systems, the device's IP address can even change while it is still connected. DHCP also supports a mix of static and dynamic IP addresses.

Dynamic addressing simplifies network administration because the software keeps track of IP addresses rather than requiring an administrator to manage the task. This means you can add a new computer to a network without needing to manually assign a unique IP address. Many ISPs use dynamic IP addressing for dial-up users. However, dynamic addressing may not be desirable for a network server.

BOOTP

BOOTP is an Internet protocol that allows a diskless workstation to discover the following:

- Its own IP address
- The IP address of a BOOTP server on the network
- A file to be loaded into memory to boot the workstation

BOOTP allows the workstation to boot without requiring a hard disk or floppy disk drive. It is used when the user or station location changes frequently. The protocol is defined by RFC 951.

DHCP/BOOTP relay

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway supports the DHCP/BOOTP relay agent function. This is an application that accepts DHCP/BOOTP requests that are broadcast on one VLAN. The application sends them to a DHCP/BOOTP server. That server connects to another VLAN or a server that might be located across one or more routers that might otherwise not get the broadcast request. The relay agent handles the DHCP/BOOTP replies as well. The relay agent transmits the replies to the client directly or as broadcast, according to a flag in the reply message.

Note:

The same DHCP/BOOTP relay agent serves both the BOOTP and DHCP protocols.

When there is more than one IP interface on a VLAN, the G430 chooses the lowest IP address on this VLAN when relaying DHCP/BOOTP requests. The DHCP/BOOTP server then uses this address to decide the network from which to allocate the address. When there are multiple networks configured, the G430 performs a round-robin selection process.

When the DHCP/BOOTP server is configured to allocate addresses only from a single subnetwork among the different subnetworks defined on the VLAN, you might need to configure the G430 with the relay address on that subnet so the DHCP/BOOTP server can accept the request.

DHCP/BOOTP Relay in G430 is configurable per VLAN and allows for two DHCP/BOOTP servers to be specified. In this case, the G430 duplicates each request, and sends it to both servers. This duplication provides redundancy and prevents the failure of a single server from blocking hosts from loading. You can enable or disable DHCP/BOOTP Relay in the G430.

DHCP/BOOTP relay commands

Use the following commands to configure DHCP relay and BOOTP relay:

- Use the **ip bootp-dhcp network** command to select the network from which the BOOTP/DHCP server should allocate an address. This command is required only when there are multiple IP interfaces over the VLAN. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value. You must be in an interface context to use this command.
- Enter **ip bootp-dhcp relay** to enable relaying of BOOTP and DHCP requests to the BOOTP/DHCP server. Use the **no** form of this command to disable relaying of BOOTP and DHCP requests. You must be in general context to use this command.
- Use the **ip bootp-dhcp server** command to add a BOOTP/DHCP server to handle BOOTP/DHCP requests received by this interface. A maximum of two servers can be added to a single interface. Use the **no** form of this command to remove a server. You must be in an interface context to use this command.

Summary of DHCP and BOOTP relay commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 110: DHCP and BOOTP relay CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (fastethernet \| VLAN)		Enter the `FastEthernet` or `VLAN` interface configuration context
	ip bootp-dhcp network	Select the network from which the BOOTP/DHCP server should allocate an address
	ip bootp-dhcp server	Add or remove a BOOTP/DHCP server to handle BOOTP/DHCP requests received by the current interface
ip bootp-dhcp relay		Enable or disable relaying of BOOTP and DHCP requests to the BOOTP/DHCP server

Configuring DHCP server

The G430 supports DHCP server. DHCP server is a protocol for automatically assigning IP addresses and other configuration parameters to clients on a TCP/IP network. DHCP server minimizes the maintenance of a network of, among other things, IP telephones and PCs, by removing the need to assign and maintain IP addresses and other parameters for each device on the network individually.

Since a DHCP server can be configured on the G430, local branch devices are not dependant on receiving configuration parameters over the WAN from a remote DHCP server and, therefore, can be assigned IP configuration parameters in case of WAN failure.

The G430 supports the following DHCP server features:

- Up to 32 DHCP pools
- Up to 120 users
- Up to 256 IP addresses for all DHCP pools together
- Automatic and reservation pools
- Standard DHCP options and IP phone and wireless special options
- Vendor specific information option
- DHCP relay packets
- Global statistics
- Syslog/traps for special events

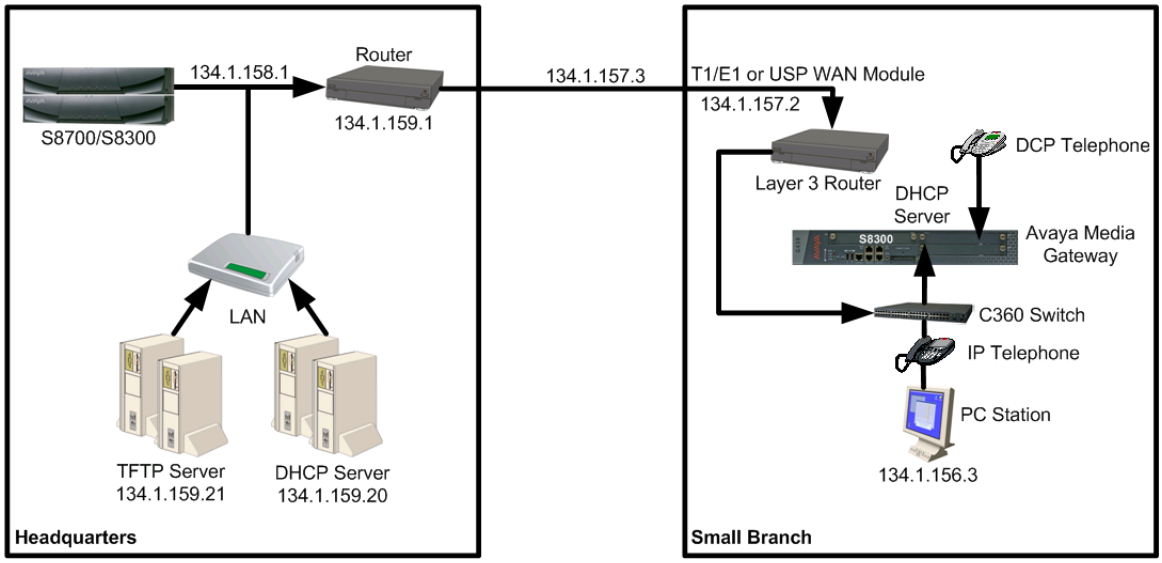
The Avaya G430 Media Gateway can function as a DHCP server, as a DHCP relay, or both simultaneously, with each interface configured in either DHCP server mode or DHCP relay mode. For example, you can configure the G430 to provide DHCP service to voice devices while DHCP requests by data devices are routed to a central remote DHCP server using DHCP relay.

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway can function as a DHCP server or as a DHCP client, or both simultaneously. For information about configuring DHCP client on the G430, see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

Typical DHCP server application

In the typical application shown in Figure 36, the G430 is configured as a local DHCP server and router for IP phones and PCs in the branch office. The remote DHCP server allocates IP addresses for headquarters users. The local DHCP server allocates IP addresses in the branch offices. If there is a local ICC or LSP, calls can still be made. If there is no ICC or LSP to control calls, the DHCP server can allocate IP addresses to all devices, but, since no calls can be made, the IP address allocation effectively applies to PCs only.

Figure 36: G430 as server and router



The branch DHCP server does not depend on the headquarters' DHCP server. There is no backup mechanism between the servers. The branch DHCP server operates continually regardless of the status of the centralized DHCP server or the WAN link.

By default, the DHCP server is inactive. Before activating DHCP server, you configure DHCP pools to define ranges of IP addresses and other network configuration information to be assigned to clients. Create a minimum of two dynamic pools: at least one pool for data devices (PCs) and at least one pool for voice devices (IP phones). The G430 also supports reservation pools, which map hardware addresses/client identifiers to specific IP addresses. Reservation pools may be required for security issues or servers.

Overlap between pools is not allowed. You cannot configure a reservation pool on an IP address that falls within the range of another pool.

DHCP server CLI configuration

1. Enter **`ip dhcp pool`**, followed by a number from 1 to 32, to create a DHCP pool.
2. Use the **`name`** command to configure the pool's name.
3. Configure a range of available IP addresses that the DHCP server may assign to clients, using **`start-ip-addr`** to set the start IP address of the range and **`end-ip-addr`** to set the end IP address of the range. Consider the following:
 - For a manual/reservation pool, set identical IP addresses for the start and end IP addresses

- The start IP address and end IP address must be on the same network according to the subnet mask
- The start IP address must be lower than the end IP address
- The combined number of IP addresses in all pools must not exceed 256 addresses
- Both the start IP address and end IP address can be up to 223.255.255.255
- The start IP address and end IP address may not be network/broadcast addresses according to the subnet mask

4. Use the **subnet-mask** command to configure the subnet mask of the pool.
5. Use the **lease** command to configure the lease period for IP address assignment. By default, the lease is eight days.
6. For a manual/reservation pool, use the **client identifier** command to reserve the pool's IP address for assignment to a specific client. To configure a reservation, the start IP address and end IP address must be identical. You cannot configure more than one reservation on a single pool.
7. Configure DHCP options for the pool, if required. See Configuring Options on page 449 and, for vendor specific options, Configuring vendor-specific options on page 450.
8. Repeat steps 1-7 to configure as many DHCP pools as you require. You can configure up to 32 DHCP pools. By default, all pools are inactive until you activate them. This enables you to modify each pool's configuration without affecting network devices.
9. Activate each of the DHCP pools you configured using the **ip dhcp activate pool** command in general context, followed by the pool number.
10. Enter **ip dhcp-server** to activate DHCP server. DHCP server is now active. If you change the pool configuration, it is recommended to do so while the pool is active.

Note:

If you try to configure a new start and end IP address which is not part of the current network and beyond the allowed maximum of 256 IP addresses, you must first use the **no start ip address** and **no end ip address** commands before configuring the new start and end IP addresses.

Configuring Options

DHCP options are various types of network configuration information that the DHCP client can receive from the DHCP server. The G430 supports all DHCP options. The most common options used for IP phones are listed in Table 111. Some options are configured with specific CLI commands, which are also listed in Table 111. Options 0, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, and 255 are not configurable.

1. Use the **option** command to specify the option code and enter the context for the option.

Note:

To configure an option that is listed in Table 111 with an entry in the *Specific command* column, use the specific command instead of the **option** command.

Table 111: Common user-configurable DHCP options

Option	Description	Specific command
1	Subnet Mask	**subnet-mask**
3	Router	**default-router**
6	Domain name server	**dns_server**
7	Log Server	
15	Domain Name	**domain-name**
43	vendor-specific information	**vendor-specific-option**
44	Wins/NBNS server	
46	Wins/NBT Node Type	
51	IP Address Lease Time	**lease**
66	TFTP server name	
69	SMTP server	
176	Avaya IP phone private	

2. Use the **name** command to set the name of the DHCP option (optional).
3. Use the **value** command to enter the option data type and the option data.

Configuring vendor-specific options

You can configure an option unique to an individual vendor class. This is called a vendor-specific option (option 43).

1. Use the **vendor-specific-option** command to create a vendor-specific option with a unique index.
2. Use the **name** command to name the option (optional).
3. Use the **class-identifier** command to set a vendor-specific identifier.
4. Use the **value** command to set the data type and value of the vendor-specific option.

Optional DHCP server CLI commands

The following DHCP server commands are also available:

- Use the **clear ip dhcp-server binding** command to delete the allocation of a specific IP address or of all IP addresses. When the DHCP server detects an IP address conflict after attempting to allocate an IP address that is already in use, the server locks the IP address for half an hour by marking the IP address with client identifier 00:00:00:00:00:00:00. If you have solved the conflict before half an hour, you can use this command to free the IP address for reallocation.
- Use the **clear ip dhcp-server statistics** command to clear the statistics of the DHCP server.
- Use the **ip dhcp ping packets** command to enable the sending of a ping packet by the DHCP server to check if the IP address it is about to allocate is already in use by another client.
- Use the **ip dhcp ping timeout** command to set the ping timeout for the DHCP server.
- Use the **bootfile** command to specify the file name for a DHCP client to use as a boot file. This is DHCP option 67.
- Use the **next-server** command to specify the IP address of the next server in the boot process of a DHCP client.
- Use the **server-name** command to specify the optional server name in the boot process of a DHCP client.

DHCP pool configuration examples

The following example defines a dynamic pool for voice devices:

```
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp pool 1
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# name "IP phone Pool"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# start-ip-addr 135.64.20.2
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# end-ip-addr 135.64.20.30
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# default-router 135.64.20.1
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# option 176
G430-001(super-DHCP 1/option 176)# name "Avaya IP phone option"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1/option 176)# value ascii "MCIPADD=10.10.2.140,
MCPORT=1719, TFTPSRVR=10.10.5.188"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 1/option 176)# exit
G430-001(super-DHCP 1)# exit
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp activate pool 1
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp-server
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

The following example defines a dynamic pool for data devices:

```
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp pool 2
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# name "Data Pool"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# start-ip-addr 135.64.20.34
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# end-ip-addr 135.64.20.60
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# subnet-mask 255.255.255.0
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# default-router 135.64.20.33
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# dns-server 10.10.1.1
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# domain-name my.domain.com
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# option 176
G430-001(super-DHCP 2/option 176)# value ascii "MCIPADD=192.168.50.17,
192.168.50.15, MCPORT=1719, TFTPSRVR=192.168.50.1, TFTPDIR=/phonedir/"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 2/option 176)# exit
G430-001(super-DHCP 2)# exit
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp activate pool 2
Done!
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp-server
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

The following example configures a vendor-specific option for DHCP pool 5:

```
G430-001(super-DHCP 5)# vendor-specific-option 1
G430-001(super-DHCP 5/vendor specific 1)# class-identifier
"ccp.avaya.com"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 5/vendor specific 1)# value raw ascii "gfdgfd"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 5/vendor specific 1)# exit
G430-001(super-DHCP 5)#
```

The following example defines a reservation pool for data devices:

```
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp pool 3
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# name "Data 1 Server"
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# start-ip-addr 135.64.20.61
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# end-ip-addr 135.64.20.61
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# subnet-mask 27
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# client identifier 01:11:22:33:44:55:66
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# default-router 135.64.20.33
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# dns-server 10.10.1.1
Done!
G430-001(super-DHCP 3)# exit
G430-001(super)# ip dhcp activate pool 3
Done!
G430-001(super)#
```

Displaying DHCP server information

You can use the following show commands to display DHCP server information:

- Use the **show ip dhcp-pool** command to display DHCP pool configurations.
- Use the **show ip dhcp-server bindings** command to display the current allocations of IP addresses to DHCP clients.
- Use the **show ip dhcp-server statistics** command to display DHCP server statistics.

Summary of DHCP Server commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 112: DHCP server CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
clear ip dhcp-server binding			Delete IP address binding
clear ip dhcp-server statistics			Clear the statistics of the DHCP server
ip dhcp activate pool			Activate configured DHCP pools
ip dhcp ping packets			Enable the sending of a ping packet by the DHCP server to check if the IP address it is about to allocate is already in use by another client
ip dhcp ping timeout			Set the time the DHCP server waits for a reply to a sent ping packet before allocating an IP address to a DHCP client
ip dhcp pool			Create a DHCP pool
	bootfile		Provide startup parameters for the DHCP client device
	client-identifier		Reserve the pool's IP address for assignment to a specific client
	default-router		Set up to eight default router IP addresses in order of preference
	dns-server		Set up to eight Domain Name Server (DNS) IP addresses
	domain-name		Set a domain name string for the client

1 of 3

Table 112: DHCP server CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
	end-ip-addr		Set the end IP address of the range of available IP addresses that the DHCP server may assign to clients
	lease		Configure the lease period for IP address assignment
	name		Configure the pool's name
	next-server		Specify the IP address of the next server in the boot process of a DHCP client
	option		Enter the context of a DHCP option
		name	Configure a name for the DHCP option
		value	Enter the option data type and the option data
	server-name		Specify the optional server name in the boot process of a DHCP client
	show ip dhcp-pool		Display DHCP pool configurations
	start-ip-addr		Set the start IP address of the range of available IP addresses that the DHCP server may assign to clients
	subnet-mask		Configure the subnet mask of the pool
	vendor-specific-option		Create a vendor-specific option with a unique index
		name	Name the vendor-specific option
		class-identifier	Set a vendor-specific identifier
		value	Set the data type and value of the vendor-specific option

2 of 3

Table 112: DHCP server CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
ip dhcp-server			Activate DHCP server
show ip dhcp-server bindings			Display bindings
show ip dhcp-server statistics			Display DHCP server statistic

3 of 3

Configuring broadcast relay

When you configure broadcast relay, the router forwards broadcast packets across interfaces. You can configure broadcast relay types including directed broadcast forwarding, NetBIOS rebroadcast, and DHCP and BOOTP client broadcast.

For more information about DHCP and BOOTP client broadcast, see Configuring DHCP and BOOTP relay on page 444.

Directed broadcast forwarding

A directed broadcast is an IP packet whose destination address is the broadcast address of a network or subnet. A directed broadcast causes every host on the network to respond. You can use directed broadcasts to obtain a list of all active hosts on the network. A hostile user can exploit directed broadcasts to launch a denial-of-service attack on the network. For each interface on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway, you can configure whether the G430 forwards directed broadcast packets to the network address or subnet mask address of the interface.

Enter **ip directed-broadcast** to enable directed broadcast forwarding on an interface. Use the **no** form of this command to disable directed broadcast forwarding on an interface.

NetBIOS rebroadcast

Network Basic Input Output System (NetBIOS) is a protocol for sharing resources among desktop computers on a LAN. You can configure the Avaya G430 Media Gateway to relay NetBIOS UDP broadcast packets. This feature is used for applications such as WINS that use broadcast but might need to communicate with stations on other subnetworks or VLANs.

Configuration is performed on a per-interface basis. A NetBIOS broadcast packet arrives from an interface on which NetBIOS rebroadcast is enabled. The packet is distributed to all other interfaces configured to rebroadcast NetBIOS.

If the NetBIOS packet is a net-directed broadcast, for example, 149.49.255.255, the packet is relayed to all other interfaces on the list, and the IP destination of the packet is replaced by the appropriate interface broadcast address.

If the NetBIOS broadcast packet is a limited broadcast, for example, 255.255.255.255, it is relayed to all VLANs on which there are NetBIOS-enabled interfaces. In that case, the destination IP address remains the limited broadcast address.

Enter **ip netbios-rebroadcast both** to enable NetBIOS rebroadcasts on an interface. Enter **ip netbios-rebroadcast disable** to disable NetBIOS rebroadcasts on an interface.

Summary of broadcast relay commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 113: Broadcast relay CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (dialer \| fastethernet \| tunnel \| vlan)		Enter the `Dialer`, `FastEthernet`, `Tunnel`, or `VLAN` interface context
	ip directed-broadcast	Enable or disable directed broadcast forwarding on the interface
	ip netbios-rebroadcast	Enable or disable NetBIOS rebroadcasts on the interface

Configuring the ARP table

When you configure the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table, you can:

- View information about the ARP table
- Add entries to the ARP table
- Delete entries from the ARP table
- Configure the ARP timeout

Note:

To change an entry in the ARP table, delete the entry and reinsert it with revised parameters.

Overview of ARP

IP logical network addresses are independent of physical addresses. The physical address must be used to convey data in the form of a frame from one device to another. Therefore, a mechanism is required to acquire a destination device hardware address from its IP address. This mechanism is called ARP.

The ARP table

The ARP table stores pairs of IP and MAC addresses. This storage saves time and communication costs, since the host looks in the ARP table first when transmitting a packet. If the information is not there, then the host sends an ARP Request.

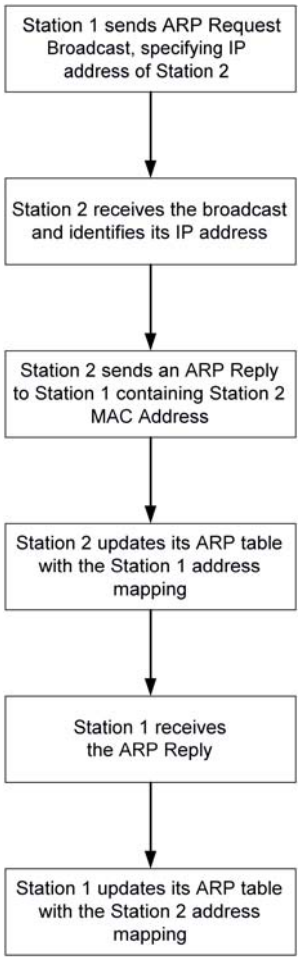
There are two types of entries in the ARP table:

- Static ARP table entries
- Dynamic ARP table entries

Static ARP table entries do not expire. You add static ARP table entries manually using the **arp** command. For example, to add a static ARP table entry for station 192.168.7.8 with MAC address 00:40:0d:8c:2a:01, use the following command:

```
G430-001# arp 192.168.7.8 00:40:0d:8c:2a:01
```

Dynamic ARP table entries are mappings between IP addresses and MAC addresses that the switch used recently. Dynamic ARP table entries expire after a configurable amount of time. The following diagram shows how a switch adds dynamic ARP table entries:



Use the **no arp** command to remove static and dynamic entries from the ARP table. For example, to remove the ARP table entry for the station 192.168.13.76:

```
G430-001# no arp 192.168.13.76
```

ARP table commands

Use the following commands to configure the ARP table. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **arp** command to add a permanent entry to the ARP table. Use the **no** form of this command to remove either a static entry or a dynamically learned entry from the ARP table.
- Use the **arp timeout** command to configure the amount of time, in seconds, that an entry remains in the ARP table. Entering the **arp timeout** command without a time parameter will display the current timeout value. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value (four hours).
- Use the **clear arp-cache** command to delete all dynamic entries from the ARP table and the IP route cache.
- Use the **ip max-arp-entries** command to specify the maximum number of ARP table entries allowed in the ARP table. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value.
- Use the **show ip arp** command to display a list of the ARP resolved MAC to IP addresses in the ARP table.
- Use the **show ip reverse-arp** command to display the IP address of a host, based on a known MAC address.

Summary of ARP table commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 114: ARP table CLI commands

Command	Description
arp	Add a permanent entry to the ARP table
arp timeout	Configure the amount of time, in seconds, that an entry remains in the ARP table
clear arp-cache	Delete all dynamic entries from the ARP table and the IP route cache
ip max-arp-entries	Specify the maximum number of ARP table entries allowed in the ARP table

1 of 2

Table 114: ARP table CLI commands (continued)

Command	Description
show ip arp	Display a list of the ARP resolved MAC to IP addresses in the ARP table
show ip reverse-arp	Display the IP address of a host, based on a known MAC address
	2 of 2

Enabling proxy ARP

The G430 supports proxy ARP. Proxy ARP is a technique by which a router provides a false identity when answering ARP requests intended for another device. By falsifying its identify, the router accepts responsibility for routing packets to their true destination.

Proxy ARP can help devices on a subnet to reach remote subnets without the need to configure routing or a default gateway.

To enable proxy ARP on a G430 interface, enter **ip proxy-arp**. Use the **no** form of this command to disable proxy ARP on an interface.

Summary of Proxy ARP commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 115: Proxy ARP CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (fastethernet \| vlan)		Enter the `FastEthernet` or `VLAN` interface context
	ip proxy-arp	Enable proxy ARP on a G430 interface

Configuring ICMP errors

You can control whether the router sends Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) error messages. The router sends an ICMP error message to the source of a packet if the router rejects the packet. Use the following commands to configure ICMP errors:

- Enter **ip icmp-errors** to set ICMP error messages to on. Use the **no** form of this command to set ICMP error messages to off.
- Enter **show ip icmp** to display the status (enabled or disabled) of ICMP error messages.

Summary of ICMP errors commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 116: ICMP errors CLI commands

Command	Description
ip icmp-errors	Set ICMP error messages to ON or OFF
show ip icmp	Display the status (enabled or disabled) of ICMP error messages

Configuring RIP

The Routing Information Protocol (RIP) enables routers to compute the path that an IP packet should follow. Routers exchange routing information using RIP to determine routes that other routers are connected to. OSPF is a newer protocol that serves a similar purpose. For more information about OSPF, see Configuring OSPF on page 469.

You can configure route redistribution between OSPF, RIP, and static routes. With route redistribution, you can configure the G430 to redistribute routes learned from one protocol into the domain of the other routing protocol. For more information, see Route redistribution on page 474.

RIP is a distance vector protocol. The router decides which path to use on distance or the number of intermediate hops. In order for this protocol to work correctly, all the routers, and possibly the nodes, need to gather information on how to reach each destination in the Internet. However the very simplicity of RIP has a disadvantage. This protocol does not take into account network bandwidth, physical cost, and data priority. The Avaya G430 Media Gateway supports two versions of RIP:

- RIPv1
- RIPv2

RIPv1

RIPv1 is the original version of the RIP protocol. The RIPv1 protocol imposes some limitations on the network design with regard to subnetting. When operating RIPv1, you must not configure variable length subnetwork masks (VLMS). Each IP network must have a single mask, implying that all subnetworks in a given IP network are of the same size. Also, when operating RIPv1, you must not configure supernets. RIPv1 is defined in RFC 1058.

RIPv2

RIPv2 is a newer version of the RIP routing protocol. RIPv2 solves some of the problems associated with RIPv1. The most important change in RIPv2 is the addition of a **subnetwork mask** field which allows RIPv2 to support variable length subnetworks. RIPv2 also includes an authentication mechanism similar to the one used in OSPF. RIPv2 is defined in RFC 2453. Table 117 summarizes the differences between RIPv1 and RIPv2.

Table 117: RIPv1 vs. RIPv2

RIPv1	RIPv2
Broadcast addressing	Multicast addressing
Timer-based – updated every 30 seconds	Timer-based – updated every 30 seconds
Fixed subnetwork masks	VLSM support – subnet information transmitted
No security	Security (authentication)
No provision for external protocols	Provision for EGP/BGP (Route tag)

Preventing routing loops in RIP

You can use the following features in RIP to help avoid routing loops:

- Split-horizon
- Poison-reverse

The split-horizon technique prevents information about routes from exiting the router interface through which the information was received. This prevents small routing loops. Enter **ip rip split-horizon** to enable the split-horizon mechanism. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the split-horizon mechanism. By default, split-horizon is enabled.

Poison-reverse updates explicitly indicate that a network or subnet is unreachable. Poison-reverse updates are sent to defeat large routing loops. Enter **ip rip poison-reverse** to enable split-horizon with poison-reverse on an interface. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the poison-reverse mechanism.

RIP distribution access lists

RIP distribution access lists consist of rules that specify how a router distributes and accepts RIP routing information from other routers. Before sending an update, the router consults an access list to determine if it should include specific routes in the update. When receiving an update, the router first checks a set of rules which apply to incoming updates to determine if it should insert those routes into its routing table. You can assign the rules per interface and per direction.

Up to 99 RIP distribution access lists can be configured on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway.

For example, to configure RIP distribution access list number 10 permitting distribution and learning of network 10.10.0.0, do the following:

1. Enter the command: **ip distribution access-list 10 1 permit 10.10.0.0 0.0.255.255**

 The default action of the access list is deny and can be changed using the **ip distribution access-default-action** command.

 Note:

 Whenever at least one permit rule exists, distributing and learning of all the remaining networks is denied, unless specifically permitted by another rule.

2. Apply the distribution access list created in Step 1 by performing the following procedure within the Router RIP context:
 - Enter the **distribution-list 10 in** command to apply list number 10 created in Step 1 on all updates received on all interfaces.
 - Enter the **distribution-list 10 in FastEthernet 10/3** command to apply Access List 10 on updates received on interface ‘FastEthernet 10/3’.
 - Enter the **distribution-list 10 out** command to apply Access List 10 to all advertised updates.
 - Enter the **distribution-list 10 out ospf** command to apply Access List 10 to all advertised updates that were learned from OSPF (redistributed from OSPF into RIP).

If no distribution access list is defined, learning and advertising is allowed for all of the routing information. This is the default.

RIP limitations

Configuration of RIPv1 and RIPv2 is per IP interface. Configuration must be homogeneous on all routers on each subnetwork. That is, RIPv1 and RIPv2 routers should not be configured on the same subnetwork. However, you can configure different IP interfaces of the G430 with different RIP versions. This configuration is valid as long as all routers on the subnet are configured with the same version.

RIPv2 and RIPv1 are considered the same protocol with regard to redistribution to and from OSPF and static route preferences.

RIP commands

Use the following commands to configure RIP. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **default-metric** command to set the interface RIP route metric value. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value.
- Use the **distribution-list** command to apply a distribution access list for incoming or outgoing routing information in route updates. Use the **no** form of this command to deactivate the list.
- Use the **ip rip authentication key** command to set the authentication string used on the interface. Use the **no** form of this command to clear the password.
- Use the **ip rip authentication mode** command to specify the type of authentication used in RIP v2 packets. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value, none.
- Use the **ip rip default-route-mode** command to enable learning of the default route received by the RIP protocol. The default state is talk-listen. Use the **no** form of this command to disable listening to default routes.
- Enter **ip rip poison-reverse** to enable split-horizon with poison-reverse on an interface. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the poison-reverse mechanism.
- Use the **ip rip rip-version** command to specify the RIP version running on the interface.
- Use the **ip rip send-receive-mode** command to set the RIP send and receive modes on an interface. Use the **no** form of this command to set the RIP to talk, that is, to send reports.

- Enter **ip rip split-horizon** to enable the split-horizon mechanism. Use the **no** form of this command to disable the split-horizon mechanism. By default split-horizon is enabled.
- Use the **network** command to specify a list of networks on which the RIP is running. Use the **no** form of this command to remove an entry from the list of networks.
- Use the **redistribute** command to redistribute routing information from other protocols into RIP. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value, disable redistribution by RIP.
- Enter **router rip** to enable RIP and to enter the router configuration context. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value, disabling RIP.
- Use the **timers basic** command to set RIP timers. Use the **no** form of this command to set the RIP timers to their default values.

Summary of RIP commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 118: RIP CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
ip distribution access-default-action		Set the default action for a specific RIP distribution access list
ip distribution access-list		Create a RIP distribution access list
ip distribution access-list-cookie		Set the access list cookie
ip distribution access-list-copy		Copy the distribution access list
ip distribution access-list-name		Set the name of the distribution list
ip distribution access-list-owner		Set the owner of the distribution list
interface (dialer\|fastethernet\|loopback\|vlan\|tunnel)		Enter the `Dialer`, `FastEthernet`, `Loopback`, `Tunnel`, or `VLAN` interface context

1 of 3

Table 118: RIP CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
	ip rip authentication key	Set the authentication string used on the interface
	ip rip authentication mode	Specify the type of authentication used in RIP v2 packets
	ip rip default-route-mode	Enable learning of the default route received by the RIP protocol. The default state is talk-listen.
	ip rip poison-reverse	Enable or disable split-horizon with poison-reverse on an interface
	ip rip rip-version	Specify the RIP version running on the interface
	ip rip send-receive-mode	Set the RIP send and receive modes on an interface
	ip rip split-horizon	Enable or disable the split-horizon mechanism
router rip		Enable the RIP and enter the router configuration context or disable the RIP
	default-metric	Set or reset the interface RIP route metric value
	distribution-list	Apply a distribution access list for incoming or outgoing routing information in route updates or deactivate the list
	network	Specify a list of networks on which the RIP is running
	redistribute	Redistribute routing information from other protocols into RIP
	timers basic	Set RIP timers

2 of 3

Table 118: RIP CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
show ip distribution access-lists		Display the contents of all current distribution lists or of a specific list
show ip protocols		Display parameters and statistics of a given IP routing protocol
		3 of 3

Configuring OSPF

The Open Shortest Path First (OSPF) protocol enables routers to compute the path that an IP packet should follow. Routers exchange routing information with OSPF to determine where to send each IP packet on its next hop. RIP is an older protocol that serves a similar purpose. For more information about RIP, see Configuring RIP on page 463.

OSPF is based on the shortest-path-first or link-state algorithm. It was introduced to overcome the limitations of RIP in increasingly complex network designs. OSPF uses the cost of a path as the criterion for comparing paths. In contrast, RIP uses the number of hops as the criterion for comparing paths. Also, updates are sent when there is a topological change in the network, rather than every 30 seconds as with RIP.

The advantage of shortest-path-first algorithms is that under stable conditions, there are less frequent updates (thereby saving bandwidth). They converge quickly, thus preventing such problems as routing loops and Count-to-Infinity, when routers continuously increment the hop count to a particular network. These algorithms make a stable network. The disadvantage of shortest-path-first algorithms is that they require a lot of CPU power and memory.

In OSPF, routers use link-state updates to send routing information to all nodes in a network by calculating the shortest path to each node. This calculation is based on a topography of the network constructed by each node. Each router sends that portion of the routing table that describes the state of its own links, and it also sends the complete routing structure (topography).

You can configure route redistribution between OSPF, RIP, and static routes. With route redistribution, you can configure the G430 to redistribute routes learned from one protocol into the domain of the other routing protocol. For more information, see Route redistribution on page 474.

OSPF dynamic Cost

An OSPF interface on the G430 can dynamically set a Cost. The Cost represents the price assigned to each interface for purposes of determining the shortest path.

By default the OSPF interface Cost is calculated based on the interface bandwidth, according to the following formula:

Cost = 100,000 / bandwidth (in kbps)

The result is that the higher the bandwidth, the lower the Cost.

To manually configure the Cost of an OSPF interface, use the **ip ospf cost** command from the interface context. By using this option, dynamic bandwidth updates do not change the Cost. Use the **no ip ospf cost** command to return to dynamic cost calculation on an interface.

Use the **bandwidth** command from the Interface context to manually adjust the interface's bandwidth. If Cost is being determined dynamically, it is this configured bandwidth and not the actual interface bandwidth which is used to calculate Cost.

OSPF limitations

You can configure the G430 as an OSPF Autonomous System Boundary Router (ASBR) using route redistribution. The G430 can be installed in the OSPF backbone area (area 0.0.0.0) or in any OSPF area that is part of a multiple areas network. However, the G430 cannot be configured to be an OSPF area border router itself.

The G430 supports the ECMP equal-cost multipath (ECMP) feature which allows load balancing by splitting traffic between several equivalent paths.

While you can activate OSPF with default values for each interface using a single command, you can configure many of the OSPF parameters.

OSPF commands

Use the following commands to configure OSPF. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **area** command to configure the OSPF area ID of the router. Use the **no** form of the command to delete the OSPF area id.
- Use the **default-metric** command to set the interface OSPF route metric value. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value.
- Use the **ip ospf authentication** command to specify the authentication type for an interface. Use the **no** form of this command to remove the authentication type for an interface.

- Use the **ip ospf authentication-key** command to configure the interface authentication password. Use the **no** form of this command to remove the OSPF password.
- Use the **ip ospf cost** command to configure the interface metric. Use the **no** form of this command to set the cost to its default value.
- Use the **ip ospf dead-interval** command to configure the interval before declaring the neighbor as dead. Use the **no** form of this command to set the dead-interval to its default value.
- Use the **ip ospf hello-interval** command to specify the time interval between hello packets sent by the router. Use the **no** form of this command to set the hello-interval to its default value.
- Use the **ip ospf message-digest-key** command to specify the message-digest key for an interface. This command enables OSPF MD5 authentication. Use the **no** form of the command to remove an old MD5 key.
- Use the **ip ospf network point-to-multipoint** command to specify the network type for the interface. Use the **no** form of the command to return the interface to the default value.
- Use the **ip ospf priority** command to configure interface priority used in Designated Router election. Use the **no** form of this command to set the OSPF priority to its default value.
- Use the **ip ospf router-id** command to configure the router ID. Use the **no** form of this command to return the router ID to its default value.
- Use the **network** command to enable OSPF in a network. Use the **no** form of this command to disable OSPF in a network. The default value is disabled.
- Use the **passive-interface** command to suppress OSPF routing updates on an interface. This is used to allow interfaces to be flooded into the OSPF domain as OSPF routes rather than external routes.

 Note:

 You must also use the **network** command, in conjunction with the **passive-interface** command, to make the network passive.
- Use the **redistribute** command to redistribute routing information from other protocols into OSPF. Use the **no** form of this command to disable redistribution by OSPF.
- Enter **router ospf** to enable OSPF protocol on the system and to enter the router configuration context. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value, disable OSPF globally.
- Enter **show ip ospf** to display general information about OSPF routing.
- Use the **show ip ospf database** command to display lists of information related to the OSPF database for a specific router.
- Use the **show ip ospf interface** command to display the OSPF-related interface information.

- Use the **show ip ospf neighbor** command to display OSPF neighbor information on a per-interface basis.
- Use the **show ip protocols** command to display OSPF parameters and statistics.
- Use the **timers spf** command to configure the delay between runs of OSPFs (SPF) calculation. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value.

Summary of OSPF commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 119: OSPF CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (dialer fastethernet\|loopback\|tunnel\|vlan)		Enter the `Dialer`, `FastEthernet`, `Loopback`, `Tunnel`, or `VLAN` interface context
	bandwidth	Set the bandwidth parameter manually for this interface
	ip ospf authentication	Specify the authentication type for an interface
	ip ospf authentication-key	Configure the interface authentication password
	ip ospf cost	Configure the Cost of an OSPF interface, for the purpose of determining the shortest path
	ip ospf dead-interval	Configure the interval before declaring the neighbor as dead
	ip ospf hello-interval	Specify the time interval between hello packets sent by the router
	ip ospf message-digest-key	Specify the message-digest key for the interface and enable OSPF MD5 authentication
	ip ospf network point-to-multipoint	Specify the network type for the interface
	ip ospf priority	Configure interface priority used in Designated Router election

1 of 2

Table 119: OSPF CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
ip ospf router-id		Configure the router ID
router ospf		Enable OSPF protocol on the system and to enter the router configuration context
	area	Configure the OSPF area ID of the router
	default-metric	Set the interface OSPF route metric value
	network	Enable OSPF in a network
	passive-interface	Suppress OSPF routing updates on an interface
	redistribute	Redistribute routing information from other protocols into OSPF
	timers spf	Configure the delay between runs of OSPFs (SPF) calculation
show ip ospf		Display general information about OSPF routing
show ip ospf database		Display lists of information related to the OSPF database for a specific router
show ip ospf interface		Display the OSPF-related interface information
show ip ospf neighbor		Display OSPF neighbor information on a per-interface basis
show ip protocols		Display OSPF parameters and statistics

2 of 2

Route redistribution

Route redistribution is the interaction of multiple routing protocols. OSPF and RIP can be operated concurrently in the G430. In this case, you can configure the G430 to redistribute routes learned from one protocol into the domain of the other routing protocol. Similarly, static routes can be redistributed to RIP and OSPF.

Note:

Take care when you configure route redistribution. It involves metric changes and might cause routing loops in the presence of other routes with incompatible schemes for route redistribution and route preferences.

The G430 scheme for metric translation in route redistribution is as follows:

- Static to RIP metric configurable (default 1)
- OSPF internal metric N to RIP metric (default 1)
- OSPF external type 1 metric N to RIP metric (default 1)
- OSPF external type 2 metric N to RIP metric (default 1)
- Static to OSPF external type 2, metric configurable (default 20)
- RIP metric N to OSPF external type 2, metric (default 20)
- Direct to OSPF external type 2, metric (default 20)

By default, the G430 does not redistribute routes between OSPF and RIP. Redistribution from one protocol to the other can be configured. Static routes are, by default, redistributed to RIP and OSPF. The G430 allows the user to globally disable redistribution of static routes to RIP, and separately to globally disable redistribution of static routes to OSPF. In addition you can configure, on a per static route basis, whether the route is to be redistributed to RIP and OSPF, and what metric to use (in the range of 1-15). The default state is to allow the route to be redistributed at metric 1. When static routes are redistributed to OSPF, they are always redistributed as external type 2.

Use the **`redistribute`** command in the Router RIP context to configure route redistribution into RIP. Use the **`redistribute`** command in the Router OSPF context to configure route redistribution into OSPF.

Export default metric

The Avaya G430 Media Gateway enables you to configure the metric to be used in updates that are redistributed from one routing protocol to another.

In RIP, the default is 1 and the maximum value is 16. In OSPF, the default is 20.

Set the default metric value before redistribution, using the **default-metric** command from within the Router RIP or Router OSPF contexts. This value is used for all types of redistributed routes, regardless of the protocol from which the route was learned.

Summary of route redistribution commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 120: Route redistribution CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
router ospf		Enable OSPF and enter the router configuration context
	redistribute	Redistribute routing information from other protocols into OSPF
	default-metric	Configure the metric to be used in updates that are redistributed from one routing protocol to another
router rip		Enable RIP and enter the router configuration context
	redistribute	Redistribute routing information from other protocols into RIP
	default-metric	Configure the metric to be used in updates that are redistributed from one routing protocol to another

Configuring VRRP

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is an IETF protocol designed to support redundancy of routers on the LAN and load balancing of traffic. VRRP is open to host stations, making it an ideal option when redundancy, load balancing, and ease of configuration are required.

The concept underlying VRRP is that a router can back up other routers, in addition to performing its primary routing functions. This redundancy is achieved by introducing the concept of a virtual router. A virtual router is a routing entity associated with multiple physical routers. One of the physical routers with which the virtual router is associated performs the routing functions. This router is known as the master router. For each virtual router, VRRP selects a master router. If the selected master router fails, another router is selected as master router.

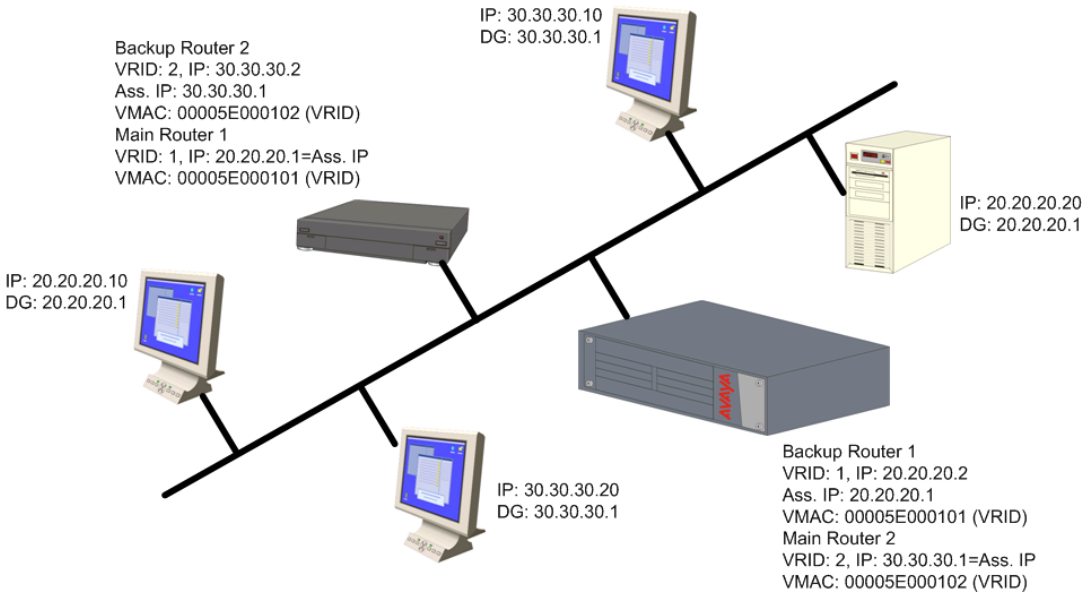
In VRRP, two or more physical routers can be associated with a virtual router, thus achieving extreme reliability. In a VRRP environment, host stations interact with the virtual router. The stations are not aware that this router is a virtual router, and are not affected when a new router takes over the role of master router. Thus, VRRP is fully interoperable with any host station.

You can activate VRRP on an interface using a single command while allowing for the necessary fine-tuning of the many VRRP parameters. For a detailed description of VRRP, see VRRP standards and published literature.

VRRP configuration example

Figure 37 illustrates an example of a VRRP configuration:

Figure 37: VRRP configuration example



There is one main router on IP subnet 20.20.20.0, such as a G430, C363T, C364T, or any router that supports VRRP, and a backup router. You can configure more backup routers.

- The G430 itself must have an interface on the IP subnetwork, for example, 20.20.20.2
- Configure all the routers under the same VRID, for example,1. You must configure the routers per VLAN.
- An assigned VRID must not be used in the network, even in a different VLAN
- When router configuration is complete and the network is up, the main router for each virtual router is selected according to the following order of preference:
 - The virtual router IP address is also the router's interface IP address
 - It has the highest priority (you can configure this parameter)
 - It has the highest IP address if the previous conditions do not apply
- The virtual router IP address needs to be configured as the default gateway on the stations
- The Main router advertises a six-byte Virtual MAC address, in the format 00.00.5E.00.01.02 VRID, as a response to the stations' ARP requests
- The redundant router uses a VRRP polling protocol to check the Main router integrity at one-second intervals (default). Otherwise, it is idle.
- If the Main router fails, the redundant router that does not receive a response from four consecutive polling requests (default) takes over and starts to advertise the same Virtual MAC for ARP requests. Therefore, the stations will not detect any change either in the configured default gateway or at the MAC level.
- VRRP has no provisions for routing database synchronization among the redundant routers. You must perform this manually, if needed.

VRRP commands

Use the following commands to configure VRRP. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **ip vrrp** command to create a virtual router on an interface. Use the **no** form of this command to delete a virtual router.
- Use the **ip vrrp address** command to assign an IP address to a virtual router. Use the **no** form of this command to remove an IP address from a virtual router.
- Use the **ip vrrp auth-key** command to set the virtual router simple password authentication key for the virtual router ID. Use the **no** form of this command to disable simple password authentication for the virtual router instance.
- Use the **ip vrrp override addr owner** command to accept packets addressed to the IP addresses associated with the virtual router, such as ICMP, SNMP, and Telnet (if it is not the IP address owner). Use the **no** form of this command to discard these packets.

- Use the **ip vrrp preempt** command to configure a router to preempt a lower priority master for the virtual router ID. Use the **no** form of this command to disable preemption for a virtual router instance. By default, preemption is enabled.
- Use the **ip vrrp primary** command to set the primary address used as the source address of VRRP packets for the virtual router ID. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default primary address for a virtual router instance. By default, the primary address is selected automatically by the device.
- Use the **ip vrrp priority** command to set the virtual router priority value used when selecting a master router. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value.
- Use the **ip vrrp timer** command to set the virtual router advertisement timer value for the virtual router ID. Use the **no** form of this command to restore the default value.
- Enter **router vrrp** to enable VRRP routing. Use the **no** form of this command to disable VRRP routing.
- Use the **show ip vrrp** command to display VRRP information.

Summary of VRRP commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 121: VRRP CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Description
interface (fastethernet \| vlan)		Enter the `FastEthernet` or `VLAN` interface configuration context
	ip vrrp	Create a virtual router on an interface
	ip vrrp address	Assign an IP address to a virtual router
	ip vrrp auth-key	Set the virtual router simple password authentication key for the virtual router ID
	ip vrrp override addr owner	Accept packets addressed to the IP addresses associated with the virtual router, such as ICMP, SNMP, and telnet (if it is not the IP address owner)
	ip vrrp preempt	Configure a router to preempt a lower priority master for the virtual router ID

1 of 2

Table 121: VRRP CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Description
	ip vrrp primary	Set the primary address used as the source address of VRRP packets for the virtual router ID
	ip vrrp priority	Set the virtual router priority value used when selecting a master router
	ip vrrp timer	Set the virtual router advertisement timer value for the virtual router ID
router vrrp		Enable or disable VRRP routing globally
show ip vrrp		Display VRRP information
		2 of 2

Configuring fragmentation

The G430 supports IP fragmentation and reassembly. The G430 router can fragment and reassemble IP packets according to RFC 791. This feature allows the router to send and receive large IP packets where the underlying data link protocol constrains the Maximum Transport Unit (MTU).

IP fragmentation involves breaking a datagram into a number of pieces that can be reassembled later. The IP source, destination, identification, total length, and fragment offset fields, along with the more fragment and don't fragment flags in the IP header, are used for IP fragmentation and reassembly.

IP fragmentation works as follows:

- Each IP packet is divided into fragments
- Each fragment becomes its own IP packet
- Each packet has same identifier, source, and destination address

Fragments are usually not reassembled until final destination. The G430 supports fragmentation of IP packets according to RFC 791, and reassembly of IP packets destined only to its interfaces.

Fragmentation commands

Use the following commands to configure fragmentation and reassembly. For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Enter **clear fragment** to clear the fragment database and restore its default values.
- Use the **fragment chain** command to set the maximum number of fragments that can comprise a single IP packet destined to the router. Use the **no** form of this command to set the fragment chain to its default value.
- Use the **fragment size** command to set the maximum number of fragmented IP packets destined to the router to reassemble at any given time. Use the **no** form of this command to set the fragment size to its default value.
- Use the **fragment timeout** command to set the maximum number of seconds to reassemble a fragmented IP packet destined to the router. Use the **no** form of this command to set the fragment timeout to its default value.
- Enter **fragment** to set the treatment for IP fragmentation packets entering on an interface.
- Enter **show fragment** to display information regarding fragmented IP packets that are destined to a router.

Summary of fragmentation commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 122: Fragmentation CLI commands

Command	Description
clear fragment	Clear the fragment database and restore its default values
fragment chain	Set the maximum number of fragments that can comprise a single IP packet destined to the router
fragment size	Set the maximum number of fragmented IP packets destined to the router to reassemble at any given time
fragment timeout	Set the maximum number of seconds to reassemble a fragmented IP packet destined to the router
show fragment	Display information regarding fragmented IP packets that are destined to a router

Chapter 19: Configuring IPSec VPN

VPN (Virtual Private Network) defines a private secure connection between two nodes on a public network such as the Internet. VPN at the IP level is deployed using IP Security (IPSec). IPSec is a standards-based set of protocols defined by the IETF that provide privacy, integrity, and authenticity to information transferred across IP networks.

The standard key exchange method employed by IPSec uses the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol to exchange key information between the two nodes (referred to as peers). Each peer maintains Security Associations (SAs) to maintain the private secure connection. IKE operates in two phases:

- The Phase-1 exchange negotiates an IKE SA
- The IKE SA created in Phase-1 secures the subsequent Phase-2 exchanges, which in turn generate IPSec SAs

IPSec SAs secure the actual traffic between the protected networks behind the peers, while the IKE SA only secures the key exchanges that generate the IPSec SAs between the peers.

The G430 IPSec VPN feature is designed to support site-to-site topologies, in which the two peers are gateways.

Note:

To configure IPSec VPN, you need at least a basic knowledge of IPSec. Refer to the following guide for a suitable introduction:

http://www.tcpipguide.com/free/t_IPSecurityIPSecProtocols.htm

Overview of IPSec VPN configuration

Figure 38 summarizes the components you need to define and the order in which you need to define them. Figure 39 describes the relationships among the various VPN components.

Figure 38: IPSec VPN configuration model

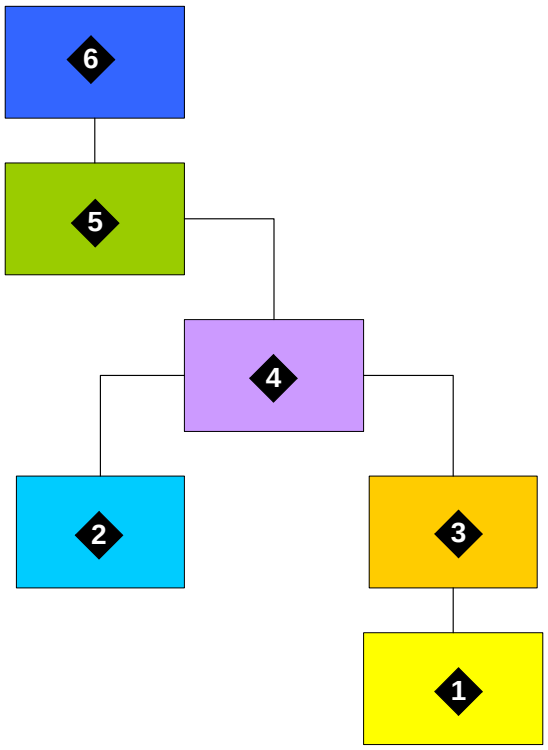


Figure notes:

1. ISAKMP Policy
2. IPSEC Transform-set
3. ISAKMP Peer or Peer Group
4. Crypto Map
5. Crypto List
6. Interface

Overview of IPSec VPN components

The basic IPSec VPN building blocks define how to secure packets, as follows:

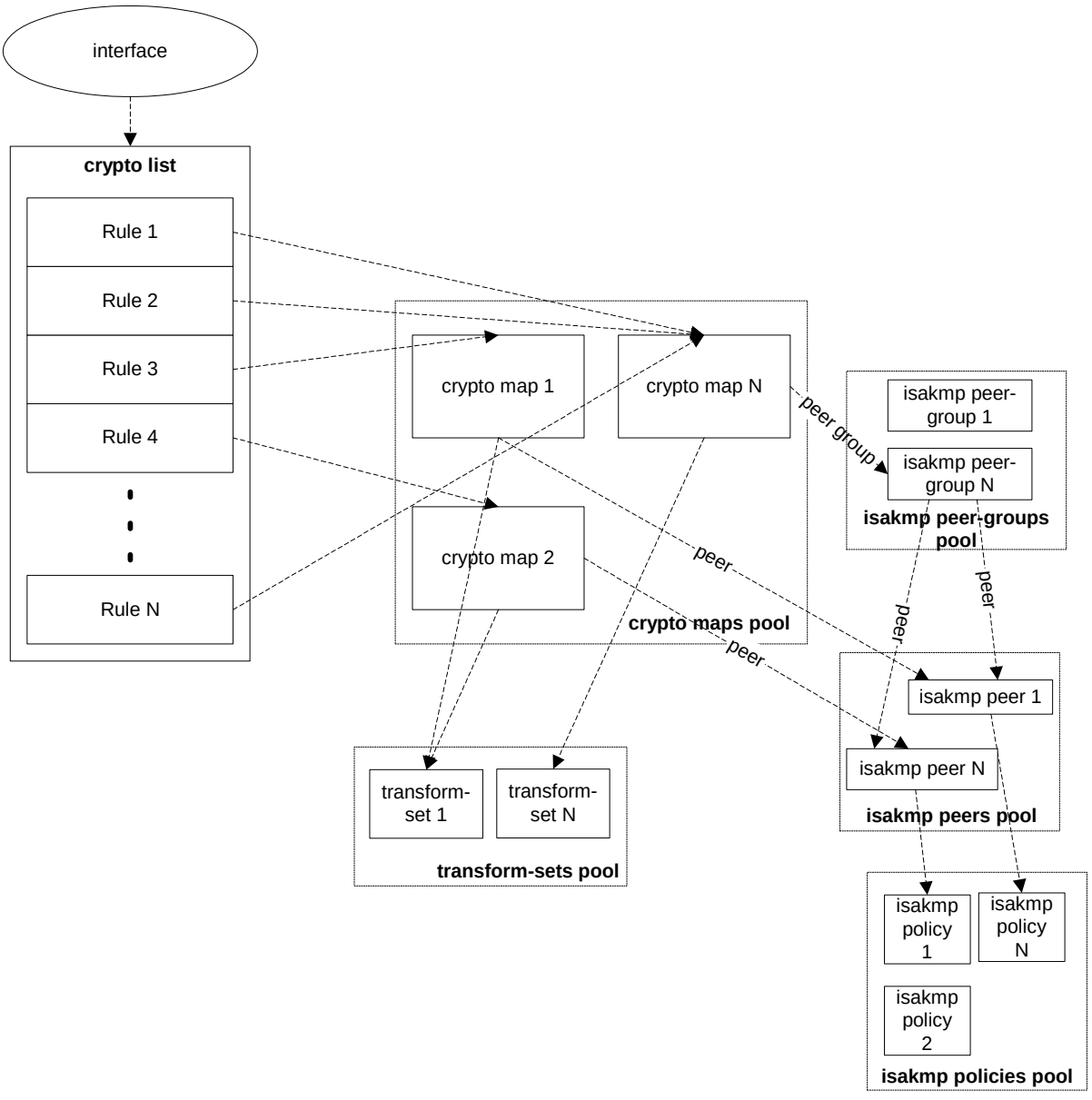
- **ISAKMP policies**. Define parameters for IKE phase 1 negotiation
- **Transform-sets**. Define parameters for IKE phase 2 negotiation

Once the building blocks are defined, IPSec VPN is implemented using a crypto list. The crypto list defines, for the interface to which it applies, which packets should be secured and how, as follows:

Each rule in the crypto list points to a crypto-map. A crypto-map points to a transform-set, and to a peer or peer-group. The peer or peer-group, in turn, point to an ISAKMP policy.

Figure 39 illustrates the relationships among the various IPSec VPN components:

Figure 39: IPSec VPN components



Summary of configuration steps

The commands required to configure a VPN are listed below. For a step-by-step description of the VPN procedures, see Configuring a site-to-site IPSec VPN on page 486.

Note:

You must configure VPN in the order shown in the summary. Commands appearing in bold are mandatory.

- ISAKMP policy – **crypto isakmp policy**
 - `description`
 - `authentication pre-share`
 - `encryption`
 - `hash`
 - `group`
 - `lifetime`
- IPSEC transform-set – **crypto ipsec transform-set**
 - `set pfs`
 - `set security-association lifetime seconds`
 - `set security-association lifetime kilobytes`
 - `mode` (tunnel/transport)
- ISAKMP peer – **crypto isakmp peer**
 - `description`
 - **`isakmp-policy`**
 - **`pre-shared-key`**
 - `initiate mode`
 - `self-identity`
 - `keepalive`
 - `keepalive-track`
 - `continuous-channel`
- (Optional) ISAKMP peer group – crypto isakmp peer-group
 - `description`
 - `set peer`

- Crypto map – **crypto map**
 - description
 - **set transform-set**
 - **set peer** *or* **set peer-group**
 - set dscp
 - continuous-channel
- IP crypto list – **ip crypto-list**
 - **local-address**
 - **ip-rule**
 - description
 - **source-ip**
 - **destination-ip**
 - **protect crypto map**
 - ip-protocol
 - tcp
 - udp
 - icmp
 - dscp
 - fragment
- Access control list – ip access-control-list
- global parameters
 - crypto isakmp invalid-spi-recovery
 - crypto ipsec nat-transparency udp-encapsulation
 - crypto isakmp nat keepalive
- assigning a crypto-list to an interface
 - crypto ipsec df-bit
 - crypto ipsec minimal-pmtu
 - **ip crypto-group**

Configuring a site-to-site IPSec VPN

This section describes the procedures for VPN configuration.

To configure a site-to-site IPSec VPN, two devices (the G430 and a peer Gateway) must be configured symmetrically.

In some cases, you may wish to configure global VPN parameters (see Configuring global parameters on page 499).

Note:

In the following sections, all IPSec VPN parameters that you must configure are indicated as mandatory parameters. Non-mandatory VPN parameters have default values that are used unless otherwise set. Thus for example, although it is mandatory to define at least one ISAKMP policy, it is not mandatory to set the values for that ISAKMP policy since the G430 contains default ISAKMP policy settings.

Coordinating with the VPN peer

Before commencing IPSec VPN configuration, you must resolve jointly with your VPN peer the basic parameters so that IPSec VPN can be set up symmetrically in the two peers. If the IPSec VPN configuration in the two peers does not match, no VPN is created.

Note:

If you will be defining a peer-group which maintains a list of redundant peers, each of the peers in the group must be configured to match the G430.

The basic parameters include:

- The IKE phase 1 parameters (as defined in the ISAKMP policy, see Configuring ISAKMP policies on page 487)
- The IKE phase 2 parameters (as defined in the transform-set, see Configuring transform-sets on page 488)
- The ISAKMP peer parameters (see Configuring ISAKMP peer information on page 489)
- Which packets should be secured (as defined in the crypto list, see Configuring crypto lists on page 495)
- The peer addresses. For each peer, the local address entered in the crypto list (see Configuring crypto lists on page 495) should match the ISAKMP peer address in the other peer (see Configuring ISAKMP peer information on page 489).
- NAT Traversal, if your installation includes one or more NAT devices between the local and remote VPN peers. See Configuring global parameters on page 499.

See IPSec VPN logging on page 503 for information on how to view IPSec VPN configuration in both peers so as to pinpoint the problem in case of a mismatch between the two peers.

Configuring ISAKMP policies

An ISAKMP policy defines the IKE phase 1 parameters.

Important:
You must define at least one ISAKMP policy.

Note:
You can configure up to 40 ISAKMP policies.

1. Enter **`crypto isakmp policy`**, followed by an index number from `1` to `20`, to enter the context of an ISAKMP policy list (and to create the list if it does not exist). For example:

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp policy 1
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)#
```

2. You can use the following commands to set the parameters of the ISAKMP policy:
 - Use the **`description`** command to assign a description to the ISAKMP policy.
 - Use the **`authentication pre-share`** command to set the authentication of ISAKMP policy to pre-shared secret.
 - Use the **`encryption`** command to set the encryption algorithm for the ISAKMP policy. Possible values are `des` (default), `3des`, `aes`, `aes-192` and `aes-256`.
 - Use the **`hash`** command to set the hash (authentication) algorithm for the ISAKMP policy. Possible values are `md5` and `sha` (default).
 - Use the **`group`** command to set the Diffie-Hellman group for the ISAKMP policy. Possible values are `1` (default), `2`, `5` and `14`.
 - Use the **`lifetime`** command to set the lifetime of the ISAKMP SA, in seconds. The range of values is 60-86,400 seconds (default is `86,400`). For example:

```
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# description "lincroft ike"
Done!
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# authentication pre-share
Done!
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# encryption des
Done!
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# hash md5
Done!
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# group 1
Done!
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# lifetime 60000
Done!
```

3. Exit the ISAKMP policy context with the **exit** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-isakmp:1)# exit
G430-001#
```

Configuring transform-sets

A transform-set defines the IKE phase 2 parameters. It specifies the encryption and authentication algorithms to be used, sets a security association lifetime, and specifies whether PFS is enabled and which DH group it uses. In addition, it specifies the IPSec VPN mode (tunnel or transport).

Important:
You must define at least one transform-set.

Note:
You can define up to 40 transform-sets.

1. Use the **crypto ipsec transform-set** command to enter the context of a transform-set (and to create the transform-set if it does not exist). The command variables include:
 - The name of the transform-set
 - The encryption algorithm used by the transform-set. Possible values are `esp-des`, `esp-3des`, `esp-aes`, `esp-aes-192`, `esp-aes-256` and `esp-null` (no encryption).
 - The authentication algorithm used by the transform-set. Possible values are `esp-md5-hmac` and `esp-sha-hmac`.
 - The IP compression algorithm used by the transform-set. The only possible value is `comp-lzs`.

 For example:

```
G430-001# crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-md5-hmac comp-lzs
G430-001(config-transform:ts1)#
```

2. You can use the following commands to set the parameters of the transform-set:
 - Use the **set pfs** command to specify whether each IKE phase 2 negotiation employs Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS), and if yes, which Diffie-Hellman group to employ. PFS ensures that even if someone were to discover the long-term secret(s), the attacker would not be able to recover the session keys, both past and present. In addition, the discovery of a session key compromises neither the long-term secrets nor the other session keys. The default setting is **no set pfs**.
 - Use the **set security-association lifetime seconds** command to set the security association lifetime in seconds.

- Use the **set security-association lifetime kilobytes** command to set the security association lifetime in kilobytes.
- Use the **mode** command to set the IPSec mode (`tunnel` or `transport`). `Transport` mode does not add an additional IP header (i.e., a tunnel header), but rather uses the original packet's header. However, it can be used only when the VPN tunnel endpoints are equivalent to the original packet's source and destination IP addresses. This is generally the case when using GRE over IPSec. Note that `transport` mode cannot be used unless the remote VPN peer supports that mode and was configured to use it.

```
G430-001001(config-transform:ts1ts1)# set pfs group2
Done!
G430-001(config-transform:ts1)# set security-association lifetime seconds
7200
Done!
G430-001(config-transform:ts1)# set security-association lifetime
kilobytes 268435456
G430-001(config-transform:ts1)# mode tunnel
Done!
```

3. Exit the crypto transform-set context with the **exit** command.

```
G430-001(config-transform:ts1)# exit
G430-001#
```

Configuring ISAKMP peer information

ISAKMP peer information defines the remote peer identification, the pre-shared key used for peer authentication, and the ISAKMP policy to be used for IKE phase 1 negotiations between the peers.

Important:

It is mandatory to define at least one ISAKMP peer.

Note:

You can define up to 100 ISAKMP peers.

1. Enter **crypto isakmp peer**, followed by the address of the ISAKMP peer or its Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN), to enter the context of an ISAKMP peer (and to create the peer if it does not exist).

Note:

If you wish to specify the ISAKMP peer by its FQDN name, you must configure the G430 as a DNS client (see DNS resolver on page 84), and verify that the peer's name is listed in a DNS server.

Note:

Do not specify an ambiguous ISAKMP peer; that is, do not configure an FQDN that translates to an IP address which is already associated with another ISAKMP peer. For example:

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp peer address 149.49.70.1
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)#
```

Or

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp peer fqdn vpn.lnd.ny.avaya.com
G430-001(config-peer:vpn.lnd.ny.avaya.com)#
```

2. Use the **description** command to enter a description for the peer. For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# description "New York office"
Done!
```

3. Specify an ISAKMP policy to be used with the peer, using the **isakmp policy** command.

Important:

isakmp policy is a mandatory command.

For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# isakmp-policy 1
Done!
```

4. Enter the preshared key for peer authentication using the **pre-shared-key** command.

Important:

pre-shared-key is a mandatory command.

For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# pre-shared-key GNpi1odGNBrB5z4GJL
Done!
```

Alternatively, you can obtain a cryptographic-grade random key from the G430 with the **suggest-key** command, and then enter it using the **pre-shared-key** command. The suggested key-length can vary from 8-127 alphanumeric characters, or from 8-64 bytes represented in hexadecimal notation. The default length is 32 characters.

For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# suggest-key 24
The suggest key: yjsYIz9ikcwaq0FUPTF3CIrw

G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1) pre-shared-key yjsYIz9ikcwaq0FUPTF3CIrw
Done!
```

5. If you wish to work in IKE aggressive mode, use the **initiate mode aggressive** command.

Note:

Aggressive mode is one of the prerequisites for working with dynamic local peer IP addresses. For more information about working with dynamic local peer IP addresses, see Using dynamic local peer IP on page 511.

For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# initiate mode aggressive
Done!
```

6. If you wish to listen in to communication from a remote peer that has a dynamic IP address, use the **initiate mode none** command. In this mode, the device can only accept inbound IKE Aggressive Mode connections from the peer, and is not able to initiate IKE phase-1 (Main Mode or Aggressive Mode) to the peer, nor is the peer able to participate as part of a peer-group. In addition, specifying the **continuous-channel** command when configuring the crypto ISAKMP peer information has no effect in this mode (for more information on continuous-channel see Enabling continuous channel on page 514).

7. Specify the branch device (G430) by its address or by the FQDN name that identifies the G430 in the remote peer, using the **self-identity** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# self-identity address
Done!
```

Or

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# self-identity fqdn vpn.avaya.com
Done!
```

Note:

Specifying self-identity as a name is one of the prerequisites for working with dynamic local peer IP addresses. For more information about working with dynamic local peer IP addresses, see Using dynamic local peer IP on page 511.

8. Enable Dead Peer Detection (DPD) keepalives that check whether the remote peer is up using the **keepalive** command, followed by the number of seconds between DPD keepalive probes, and the number of seconds between retries if keepalive fails.

 The following example sets DPD keepalive to send probes every 10 seconds, and to send retries every two seconds if DPD keepalive fails.

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# keepalive 10 retry 2
Done!
```

9. Bind peer status to an object tracker, which can monitor hosts inside the remote peer's protected network. To do so, use the **keepalive-track** command. For more information on object trackers, see Object tracking on page 274.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# keepalive-track 5
Done!
```

Note:

DPD and object tracking can coexist and augment each other. However, object tracking does not impose any requirements on the remote peer. You can, therefore, use object tracking rather than DPD keepalives if the remote peer does not support DPD.

10. Specify whether to enable continuous-channel IKE phase 1, with the **continuous-channel** command. The default setting is **no continuous-channel**, which disables continuous-channel IKE phase 1. For more information on continuous-channel see Enabling continuous channel on page 514. For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# continuous-channel
Done!
```

11. Exit the peer context with the **exit** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# exit
G430-001#
```

Configuring an ISAKMP peer-group

An ISAKMP peer-group maintains an ordered list of redundant peers. The purpose of the peer-group is to provide a backup in the case of remote peer failure. At any point in time, only one peer is active and acting as the remote peer. If the active peer is presumed dead, the next peer in the peer-group becomes the active remote peer. For a full explanation of the redundancy mechanism see Introduction to the failover mechanism on page 534.

Note:

You can define up to 50 peer-groups.

Note:

A peer configured as **initiate mode none** cannot be a member of a peer-group.

1. Use the **crypto isakmp peer-group** command, followed by the name of a peer-group (a string of up to 110 characters), to enter the context of an ISAKMP peer-group (and to create the peer-group if it does not exist). For example:

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp peer-group NY-VPN-group
G430-001(config-peer-grp:NY-VPN-group)#
```

2. Use the **description** command to enter a description for the ISAKMP peer-group. For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer-grp:NY-VPN-group)# description "Avaya peer group"
Done!
```

3. Add a peer to the list of peers in the group, using the **set peer** command:
 - Specify the peer's name or address.
 - Optionally enter an index number, specifying the relative position of the peer within the peer-group. If you do not enter an index number, the peer is added at the end of the peer-group list, and is assigned an index following the last peer's index.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer-grp:NY-VPN-group)# set peer 149.49.52.135 1
Done!
```

4. Repeat Step 3 for every peer you want to add to the list.

Note:

You can define up to a maximum of five peers in a peer-group.

Important:

Each of the peers listed in the peer-group must be configured as an ISAKMP peer (see Configuring ISAKMP peer information on page 489).

Configuring crypto maps

A crypto map points to a transform-set and to a peer (which in turn points to an ISAKMP policy). If you defined a peer-group, the crypto map can point to the peer-group.
The transform-set and ISAKMP policy define how to secure the traffic that matches the ip-rule that points to this crypto map.

Important:

It is mandatory to create at least one crypto map.

Note:

You can configure up to 100 crypto maps.

1. Use the **`crypto map`** command, followed by an index number from `1` to `50`, to enter the context of a crypto map (and to create the crypto map if it does not exist). For example:

```
G430-001# crypto map 1
G430-001(config-crypto:1)#
```

2. Use the **`description`** command to enter a description for the crypto map. For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# description "vpn lincroft branch"
Done!
```

3. Specify the remote peer, using the **`set peer`** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# set peer 149.49.60.60
Done!
```

Or

Specify a peer-group, using the **`set peer-group`** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# set peer-group NY-VPN-group
Done!
```

Important:

It is mandatory to specify either **`set peer`** or **`set peer-group`**, but not both.

4. Specify the specific transform-set to which this crypto map points, using the **set transform-set** command.

 Important:

 set transform-set is a mandatory command.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# set transform-set ts1
Done!
```

5. Set the static DSCP value in the DS field of the tunneled packet by using the **set dscp** command, followed by a value from 0 to 63. The default setting is **no set dscp**, which specifies that the DSCP is copied from the DS field of the original packet.

 For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# set dscp 38
Done!
```

6. Specify whether to enable continuous-channel IPSec (IKE phase 2) with the **continuous-channel** command. The default setting is **no continuous-channel**, which disables continuous-channel IPSec. For more information on continuous-channel see Enabling continuous channel on page 514. For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# continuous-channel
Done!
```

7. Exit crypto map context with the **exit** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# exit
G430-001#
```

Configuring crypto lists

A crypto list is an ordered list of ip-rules that control which traffic requires IPSec protection and which does not, based on IP groups (source and destination IP addresses and wildcard). A crypto list is activated on an interface. The G430 can have multiple crypto lists activated on different interfaces.

Important:

It is mandatory to create at least one crypto list.

Note:

You can configure up to 100 crypto lists.

1. Use the **ip crypto-list** command, followed by an index number from 901 to 999, to enter the context of a crypto list (and to create the list if it does not exist). For example:

```
G430-001# ip crypto-list 901
G430-001(Crypto 901)#
```

2. Specify the local IP address for the IPSec tunnels derived from this crypto list, using the **local-address** command. The local address can be either the IP address or the name of an IP interface of the device.

 Important:

 local-address is a mandatory command.

 For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901)# local-address 192.168.49.1
Done!
```

 Or

```
G430-001(Crypto 901)# local-address FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
```

 Note:

 Specifying the interface as a name is one of the prerequisites for working with dynamic local peer IP addresses. For more information about working with dynamic local peer IP addresses, see Using dynamic local peer IP on page 511.

3. Specify the name of the crypto list using the **name** command. For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901)# name "Public Network via ADSL"
Done!
```

4. Use the **ip-rule** command, followed by an index number from 1 to 1000, to enter the context of an ip-rule (and to create the ip-rule if it does not exist).

 Important:

 It is mandatory to create at least one ip-rule.

 For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901)# ip-rule 10
G430-001(Crypto 901/ip rule 10)#
```

5. Configure ip-rule parameters as follows:
 - Use the **description** command to assign a description to the ip-rule.
 - To specify a range of source and destination IP addresses to which the rule applies, use the **source-ip** and **destination-ip** commands, followed by the IP range criteria. The IP range criteria can be one of the following:
 - **A single address**. Type `host`, followed by an IP address, to set a single IP address to which the rule applies.
 - **A wildcard**. Type `host`, followed by an IP address using wildcards, to set a range of IP addresses to which the rule applies.
 - **All addresses**. Type `any` to apply the rule to all IP addresses.

 Use the **no** form of the appropriate command to return to the default value, **any**.
 - Define the action by specifying whether to protect traffic that matches the source and destination addresses, using one of the following commands:
 - **no protect**. Do not protect traffic that matches the source and destination addresses.
 - **protect crypto map *crypto-map-id***. Protect traffic that matches the source and destination addresses. The specified crypto map specifies how to secure the traffic. For instructions on configuring crypto maps, see Configuring crypto maps on page 494.

 For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901/ip rule 10)# description "vpn tunnel to uk main
office"
Done!
G430-001(Crypto 901/ip rule 10)# source-ip 10.1.0.0 0.0.255.255
Done!
G430-001(Crypto 901/ip rule 10)# destination-ip any
Done!
G430-001(Crypto 901/ip rule 10)# protect crypto map 1
Done!
```

 - For rules whose action is **no protect**, you can fine-tune the definition of packets that match this rule by using the following commands. For a full description of the commands see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234. Note that this fine-tuning is not applicable for rules whose action is **protect crypto map**.
 - **ip-protocol**. Specify the IP protocol to match.
 - **tcp**. Specify the TCP settings to match.
 - **udp**. Specify the UDP settings to match.
 - **icmp**. Specify the ICMP protocol settings to match.
 - **dscp**. Specify the DSCP to match.
 - **fragment**. Specify whether this rule applies to non-initial fragments only.

6. Exit ip-rule context with the **exit** command. For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901/ip rule 10)# exit
G430-001(Crypto 901)#
```

7. Repeat Steps 4 to 6 for every ip-rule you wish to define in the crypto list.
8. Exit crypto list context with the **exit** command. For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901)# exit
G430-001#
```

Deactivating crypto lists to modify IPSec VPN parameters

Most IPSec VPN parameters cannot be modified if they are linked to an active crypto list. To modify a parameter linked to an active crypto list, you must first deactivate the list using the **no ip crypto-group** command in the context of the interface on which the crypto list is activated.

Note:

If the crypto list is activated on more than one interface, deactivate the crypto list for each of the interfaces on which it is activated.

For example:

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/2
G430-001(if:FastEthernet 10/2)# no ip crypto-group
Done!
```

After modifying IPSec VPN parameters as desired, re-activate the crypto list on the interface using the **ip crypto-group *crypto-list-id*** command. For example:

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/2
G430-001(if:FastEthernet 10/2)# ip crypto-group 901
Done!
```

Tip:

If you wish to change the parameters of a crypto list, you can use the **ip policy-list-copy *old list new list*** command, edit the new list, and activate it on the interface. Note that activating the new list will cause all the current IPSec tunnels to close.

Configuring and assigning an access control list

Since VPN is intended for a public network such as the Internet, it is recommended to define an access control list using the **ip access-control-list** command, to avoid traffic that should not enter the device. You should, therefore, define an ingress access control list that allows only IKE, ESP, and ICMP traffic to enter the device from the public interface. For a configuration example see the access control list in Simple VPN topology – VPN hub and spokes on page 505.

Configuring global parameters

- Enable invalid SPI recovery with the **crypto isakmp invalid-spi-recovery** command. Invalid SPI Recovery enables an IKE SA to be established when an invalid security parameter index error occurs during packet processing. A notification of the invalid SPI error is sent to the originating peer so that the SA databases can be re-synchronized, and successful packet processing can be resumed. For example:

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp invalid-spi-recovery
Done!
```

Note:

Invalid SPI recovery is enabled by default. Configure invalid SPI recovery only if you wish to re-enable it after it was disabled, using the **no crypto isakmp invalid-spi-recovery** command.

- Configure NAT Traversal global parameters as described in Configuring NAT Traversal on page 499

Configuring NAT Traversal

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a solution to the problem of the scarcity and cost of public IP addresses. An organization with a single public IP address can use a NAT device to connect multiple computers to the Internet sharing a single public IP address. However, NAT causes compatibility problems for many types of network applications, including VPN.

NAT Traversal enables detecting the presence of NAT devices along the path of the VPN tunnel. Once detected, the two peers tunnel IKE and IPSEC traffic through an agreed-upon UDP port, allowing the NAT device to work seamlessly with VPN. The standard UDP port used is port 4500; to find out the port number, use the **show crypto ipsec sa** command.

The G430 IPSec VPN feature supports NAT Traversal. If your installation includes one or more NAT devices between the local and remote VPN peers, NAT Traversal should be enabled, although in some rare cases it may not be required.

Note:

NAT Traversal is enabled by default. Configure NAT Traversal only if you need to re-enable it after it was disabled, using the **no crypto ipsec nat-transparency udp-encapsulation** command.

NAT Traversal keepalive is also enabled by default (with a default value of 20 seconds). Configure NAT Traversal keepalive only if you need to re-enable it after it was disabled, using the **no crypto isakmp nat keepalive** command.

Configure NAT Traversal

1. Enable NAT Traversal by entering **crypto ipsec nat-transparency udp-encapsulation**. For example:

```
G430-001# crypto ipsec nat-tranparency udp-encapsulation
Done!
```

2. Enable NAT Traversal keepalives and configure the keepalive interval (in seconds) by entering **crypto isakmp nat keepalive**, followed by a number from 5 to 3600.

 NAT Traversal keepalives are empty UDP packets that the device sends on a periodic basis at times of inactivity when a dynamic NAT is detected along the way. These keepalives are intended to maintain the NAT translation alive in the NAT device, and not let it age-out due to periods of inactivity. Set the NAT Traversal keepalive interval on the G430 to be less than the NAT translation aging time on the NAT device. For example:

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp nat keepalive 60
Done!
```

Assigning a crypto list to an interface

A crypto list is activated on an interface. You can assign multiple crypto lists to different interfaces on the G430.

1. Enter interface context using the **interface** command. For example:

```
G430-001# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#
```

2. Configure the IP address of the interface. You can configure either a static or a dynamic IP address.
 - To configure a static IP address:
 - Be sure to specify an IP address (not an interface name) as the **local-address** in the crypto list (see Configuring crypto lists on page 495)

– Within the interface context, specify the IP address and mask using the **ip address** command

For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip address 192.168.49.1
25.255.255.0
```

- To configure a dynamic IP address, see Using dynamic local peer IP on page 511

3. Use the **ip crypto-group** command, followed by the index of the crypto-group, to assign a crypto-group to the interface.

Important:

ip crypto-group is a mandatory command.

4. Optionally, you can set the following parameters:

- The **crypto ipsec minimal-pmtu** command is intended for advanced users only. It sets the minimal PMTU value which can be applied to an SA when the G430 participates in Path MTU Discovery (PMTUD) for the tunnel pertaining to that SA.
- The **crypto ipsec df-bit** command is intended for advanced users only. It sets the Do Not Fragment (DF) bit to either `clear` or `copy` mode:
 – `copy`. The DF bit of the encapsulated packet is copied from the original packet, and PMTUD is maintained for the IPSec tunnel.
 – `clear`. The DF bit of the encapsulated packet is never set, and PMTUD is not maintained for the IPSec tunnel. Packets traversing an IPSec tunnel are pre-fragmented according to the MTU of the SA, regardless of their DF bit. In case packets are fragmented, the DF bit is copied to every fragment of the original packet.

For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip crypto-group 901
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# crypto ipsec minimal pmtu 500
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# crypto ipsec df-bit copy
Done!
```

5. Exit the interface context with the **exit** command. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# exit
G430-001#
```

IPSec VPN maintenance

You can display IPSec VPN configuration and status, and clear IPSec VPN data, using certain **show** and **clear** commands. In addition, you can display the IPSec VPN log to verify the success or failure of IPSec VPN operations, and to view the actual configuration of both peers for a successful debug in case of a problem.

Displaying IPSec VPN configuration

You can use the following **show** commands to display IPSec VPN configuration. For a full description of the commands and their output fields see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **show crypto ipsec transform-set** command to display configuration for a specified transform-set or all transform-sets.
- Use the **show crypto isakmp policy** command to display ISAKMP policy configuration.
- Use the **show crypto isakmp peer** command to display crypto ISAKMP peer configuration.
- Use the **show crypto isakmp peer-group** command to display crypto ISAKMP peer-group configuration.
- Use the **show crypto map** command to display all or specific crypto map configurations.
- Use the **show ip crypto-list *list#*** command to display the configuration of a specific crypto list.
- Use the **show ip crypto-list** command to display all crypto lists.
- Use the **show ip active-lists** command to display the crypto lists active on each interface.

Displaying IPSec VPN status

You can use the following **show** commands to show runtime IPSec VPN database status and statistics, and clear runtime statistics. For a full description of the commands and their output fields see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

- Use the **show crypto isakmp sa** command to display ISAKMP SA database status.
- Use the **show crypto ipsec sa** command to display the IPsec SA database status.

- Use the **show crypto ipsec sa address** command to display the IPsec SA configuration by peer IP address.
- Use the **show crypto ipsec sa list** command to display the IPsec SA runtime database by list ID and rule ID.

Tip:

The **detail** option in the various **show crypto ipsec sa** commands, provides detailed counters information on each IPSec SA. To pinpoint the source of a problem, it is useful to check for a counter whose value grows with time.

- Use the **clear crypto sa counters** command to clear the crypto SA counters

IPSec VPN intervention

You can use the following **clear** commands to clear the IPSec VPN runtime database:

- Use the **clear crypto sa** command to clear all or specific IPSec SAs.
- Use the **clear crypto isakmp** command to flush a specific entry in the ISAKMP database or the entire ISAKMP database.

Note:

If you wish to clear both an ISAKMP connection and the IPSec SAs, the recommended order of operations is:
First clear the IPSec SAs with the **clear crypto sa all** command, then clear the ISAKMP SA with the **clear crypto isakmp** command.

IPSec VPN logging

IPSec VPN logging allows you to view the start and finish of IKE phase 1 and IKE phase 2 negotiations. Most importantly, it displays the configuration of both peers, so that you can pinpoint the problem in case of a mismatch between the IPSec VPN configuration of the peers.

Note:

For more information about logging, see Configuring logging on page 207.

1. Use the **set logging session enable** command to enable session logging.

```
G430-001# set logging session enable
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session enable
```

2. Use the **set logging session condition ISAKMP** command to view all ISAKMP messages of Info level and above. For example:

```
G430-001# set logging session condition ISAKMP Info
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session condition ISAKMP Info
```

3. Use the **set logging session condition IPSEC** command to view all IPSec messages of Info level and above. For example:

```
G430-001# set logging session condition IPSEC Info
Done!
CLI-Notification: write: set logging session condition IPSEC Info
```

4. Initiate a session by pinging the peer device. For example.

```
G430-001# ping 135.64.102.109
```

The logging information will detail the IKE negotiations, including the ISAKMP SA and IPSec SA configuration of the peers. For example:

```
IPSEC-Informational: Call IKE negotiation for outgoing SPD entry 901_20:
   Peers 149.49.77.202<->135.64.102.109

ISAKMP-Informational: Initiating IKE phase 1 negotiation:
   Peers 149.49.77.202<->135.64.102.109

ISAKMP-Informational: Finished IKE phase 1 negotiation, creating ISAKMP
SA:
   Peers 149.49.77.202<->135.64.102.109
   Icookie - 0e2fb5ac12ec04b2, Rcookie - 541b912b0a30085d
   esp-des, esp-sha-hmac, DH group 1, Lifetime 86400 seconds

ISAKMP-Informational: Initiating IKE phase 2 negotiation:
   Peers 149.49.77.202<->135.64.102.109

ISAKMP-Informational: Finished IKE phase 2, creating outbound IPSEC SA:
   SPI 0x4d706e3, Peers 149.49.77.202<->135.64.102.109
   Identities: 149.49.77.0/255.255.255.0->135.64.102.0/255.255.255.0
   esp-des, esp-md5-hmac, 3600 seconds, 4608000 KB

ISAKMP-Informational: Finished IKE phase 2, creating inbound IPSEC SA:
   SPI 0x6798, Peers 135.64.102.109<->149.49.77.202
   Identities: 135.64.102.0/255.255.255.0->149.49.77.0/255.255.255.0
   esp-des, esp-md5-hmac, 3600 seconds, 4608000 KB
```

Typical installations

Included in the typical installations, are examples of installing VPN hub and spokes, full or partial mesh, and a hub-and-spoke with VPN for data and VoIP control backup.

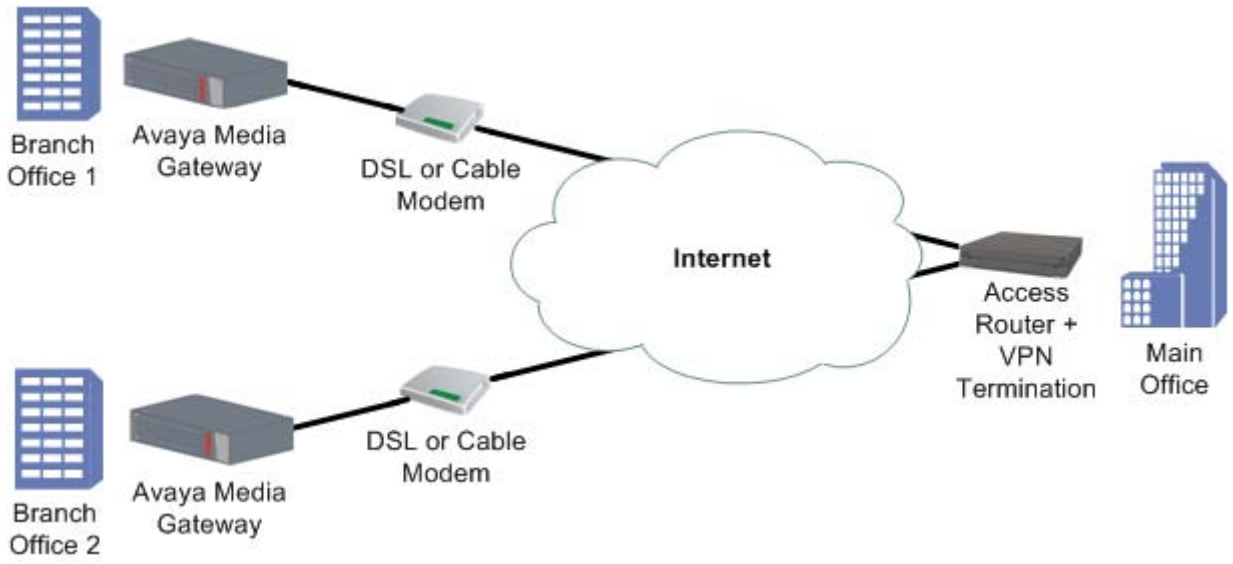
Simple VPN topology – VPN hub and spokes

The simple VPN topology consists of several VPN spokes (branch offices) connected via the Internet to the VPN hub (Main Office).

In this topology:

- The Broadband Internet connection uses cable or DSL modem, with a static public IP address
- There is a VPN tunnel from each spoke to the VPN hub over the Internet
- Only VPN traffic is allowed via the Internet connection

Figure 40: Simple VPN topology: VPN hub and spokes



Configuring the simple VPN topology

1. Configure each branch as follows:
 - The default gateway is the Internet interface
 - VPN policy is configured on the Internet interface egress as follows:
 - Traffic from the local subnets to any IP address is encrypted, using tunnel mode IPSec
 - The remote peer is the Main Office (the VPN Hub)
 - An access control list (ACL) is configured on the Internet interface to allow only the VPN / ICMP traffic. See Table 123 for configuration settings.
2. Configure the VPN Hub (Main Office) as follows:
 - Static routing: Branch subnets -> Internet interface
 - The VPN policy portion for the branch is configured as a mirror image of the branch, as follows:
 - Traffic from any to branch local subnets -> encrypt, using tunnel mode IPSec
 - The remote peer is the VPN spoke (Branch Internet address)

Note:

For information about using access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.

Table 123: Configuring simple VPN topology

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value	Description
Ingress	IKE	Permit	-
Ingress	ESP	Permit	-
Ingress	ICMP	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Ingress	All allowed services from any IP address to any local subnet	Permit	Due to the definition of the VPN Policy, this will be allowed only if traffic comes over ESP
Ingress	Default VPN policy	Deny	-
Egress	IKE	Permit	-
Egress	ESP	Permit	-

1 of 2

Table 123: Configuring simple VPN topology (continued)

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value	Description
Egress	ICMP	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Egress	All allowed services from any IP address to any local subnet	Permit	This traffic is tunnelled using VPN
Egress	Default	Deny	-

2 of 2

Configuration example

```
crypto isakmp policy 1
         encryption aes
         hash sha
         group 2
         exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Main Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
         pre-shared-key  <secret key>
         isakmp-policy 1
         exit
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
         set pfs 2
         exit
 crypto map 1
         set peer <Main OfficeMain Office Public Internet Static IP
                                                                    Address>
         set transform-set ts1
         exit

ip crypto-list 901
      local-address <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               destination-ip  any
               protect crypto map 1
               exit
     ip-rule 20
               source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               destination-ip  any
               protect crypto map 1
               exit
     exit

ip access-control-list 301
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 11
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
                composite-operation permit
                exit
```

```
      ip-rule 12
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
                composite-operation permit
                exit
      ip-rule 20
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol esp
                composite-operation Permit
                exit
      ip-rule 30
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol icmp
                composite-operation Permit
                exit
      ip-rule 40
                source-ip   any
                destination-ip host <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
                composite-operation Permit
                exit
      ip-rule 50
                source-ip   any
                destination-ip host <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
                composite-operation Permit
                exit
      ip-rule default
                composite-operation deny
                exit
      exit
  ip access-control-list 302
      ip-rule 10
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike
                composite-operation Permit
                exit
      ip-rule 11
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
                composite-operation permit
                exit
      ip-rule 12
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
                composite-operation permit
                exit
```

```
      ip-rule 20
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               desintation-ip any
               source-ip host <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               destination-ip any
               source-ip host <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation deny
               exit
      exit

interface vlan 1.1
        ip-address <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
        pmi
       icc-vlan
      exit

interface vlan 1.2
        ip-address <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
        exit

interface FastEthernet 10/3
         encapsulation PPPoE
        traffic-shape rate 256000
        ip Address   <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
                           <Branch Office Public Internet network mask>
         ip crypto-group        901
         ip access-group      301 in
         ip access-group      302 out
         exit

ip default-gateway  FastEthernet 10/3 high
```

Using dynamic local peer IP

When the number of static IP addresses in an organization is limited, the ISP allocates temporary IP addresses to computers wishing to communicate over IP. These temporary addresses are called dynamic IP addresses.

The G430 IPSec VPN feature provides dynamic local peer IP address support. To work with dynamic local peer IP, you must first configure some prerequisites and then instruct the G430 to learn the IP address dynamically using either PPPoE or DHCP client.

Note:

When working with dynamic local peer IP, you must verify that it is the G430 that initiates the VPN connection. The VPN peer cannot initiate the connection since it does not know the G430's IP address. To maintain the G430 as the initiator, do one of the following:

- Specify **`continuous channel`** in the context of the VPN peer, to maintain the IKE phase 1 connection even when no traffic is sent (see Enabling continuous channel on page 514).
- Maintain a steady transmission of traffic by sending GRE keepalives or employing object tracking.

Prerequisites for dynamic local peer IP

- Specify IKE aggressive mode with the **`initiate mode aggressive`** command when entering the ISAKMP peer information (see Configuring ISAKMP peer information on page 489).

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# initiate mode aggressive
Done!
```

- Specify the local device by its FQDN name, using the **`self-identity`** command, when entering the ISAKMP peer information (see Configuring ISAKMP peer information on page 489). For example:

```
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# self-identity fqdn vpn.avaya.com
Done!
```

- Specify the local address by name in the ip crypto lists, using the **`local-address`** command (see Configuring crypto lists on page 495). You must specify the local address by interface name. For example:

```
G430-001(Crypto 901)# local-address FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
```

Configuring dynamic local peer IP on a PPPoE interface

1. Enter the context of the FastEthernet interface. For example:

```
G430-001(config)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#
```

2. Enter the following commands in the context of the interface: **no ip address**, **encapsulation pppoe**, and **ip address negotiated**.

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# no ip address
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# encapsulation pppoe
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip address negotiated
Done!
```

3. Exit the context of the interface, and set the interface name as the next hop. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# exit
G430-001(config)# ip default-gateway FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
```

Note:

PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE) is a client-server protocol used for carrying PPP-encapsulated data over Ethernet frames. You can configure PPPoE on the G430's ETH WAN Fast Ethernet port. For more information about PPPoE on the G430, see Configuring PPPoE on page 241.

Configuring dynamic local peer IP for a DHCP Client

1. Permit DHCP packets in the ingress access control list (ACL) and the egress ACL. To do so, perform the following:
 a. Use the **no ip access-group** command to deactivate both the ingress ACL and the egress ACL on the FastEthernet interface.
 b. Add a rule to the ingress ACL and to the egress ACL, permitting DHCP packets to pass (for information on defining ACL policy rules, see Defining rules on page 575).
 c. Use the **ip access-group** command to activate the ingress ACL and the egress ACL on the FastEthernet interface.

 For example:

```
! Deactivate the Ingress and Egress ACLs on the FastEthernet Interface
!
G430-001(config)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# no ip access-group in
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# no ip access-group out
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# exit
!
! Add a Permit rule to the Ingress ACL for DHCP
!
G430-001(config)# ip access-control-list 301
G430-001(config-ACL 301)# ip-rule 25
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# source-ip any
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# destination-ip any
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# ip-protocol udp
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# udp source-port eq bootps
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# udp destination-port eq bootpc
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# composite-operation permit
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 301/ip rule 25)# exit
G430-001(config-ACL 301)# exit
!
! Add a Permit rule to the Egress ACL for DHCP
!
G430-001(config)# ip access-control-list 302
G430-001(config-ACL 302)# ip-rule 25
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# source-ip any
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# destination-ip any
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# ip-protocol udp
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# udp source-port eq bootpc
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# udp destination-port eq bootps
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# composite-operation permit
Done!
G430-001(config-ACL 302/ip rule 25)# exit
G430-001(config-ACL 302)# exit
!
! Activate the Ingress and Egress ACLs on the FastEthernet Interface
!
G430-001(config)# interface fastethernet 10/3
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip access-group 301 in
Done!
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip access-group 302 out
Done!
```

2. Specify **no ip address** and then **ip address dhcp** in the context of the FastEthernet Interface. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# no ip address
no ip address defined on this interface
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)# ip address dhcp
Done!
```

3. Exit the context of the interface, and set the interface name as the next hop. For example:

```
G430-001(config-if:FastEthernet 10/3)#exit
G430-001(config)# ip route 5.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 FastEthernet 10/3
Done!
```

Note:

For more information on DHCP client in the G430, see Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

Enabling continuous channel

An IPSec VPN connection exists as long as traffic is traversing the connection, or the timeouts have not expired. However, there are advantages to keeping the connection continuously alive, such as eliminating the waiting time necessary to construct a new IPSec VPN connection.

The G430 IPSec VPN feature supports continuous channel, which maintains a continuous IPSec VPN connection. That means that when you activate the **ip crypto-group** command on the defined interface, the IPSec VPN tunnel is immediately started, even if no traffic is traversing the interface and the timeouts have expired.

You can set continuous channel for either or both IKE phase 1 and IKE phase 2, as follows:

- To set continuous channel for IKE phase 1, enter **continuous-channel** when configuring the crypto ISAKMP peer information (see Configuring ISAKMP peer information on page 489). For example:

```
G430-001# crypto isakmp peer address 149.49.70.1
G430-001(config-peer:149.49.70.1)# continuous-channel
Done!
```

- To set continuous channel for IKE phase 2, enter **continuous-channel** when configuring the crypto map (see Configuring crypto maps on page 494). For example:

```
G430-001# crypto map 1
G430-001(config-crypto:1)# continuous-channel
Done!
```

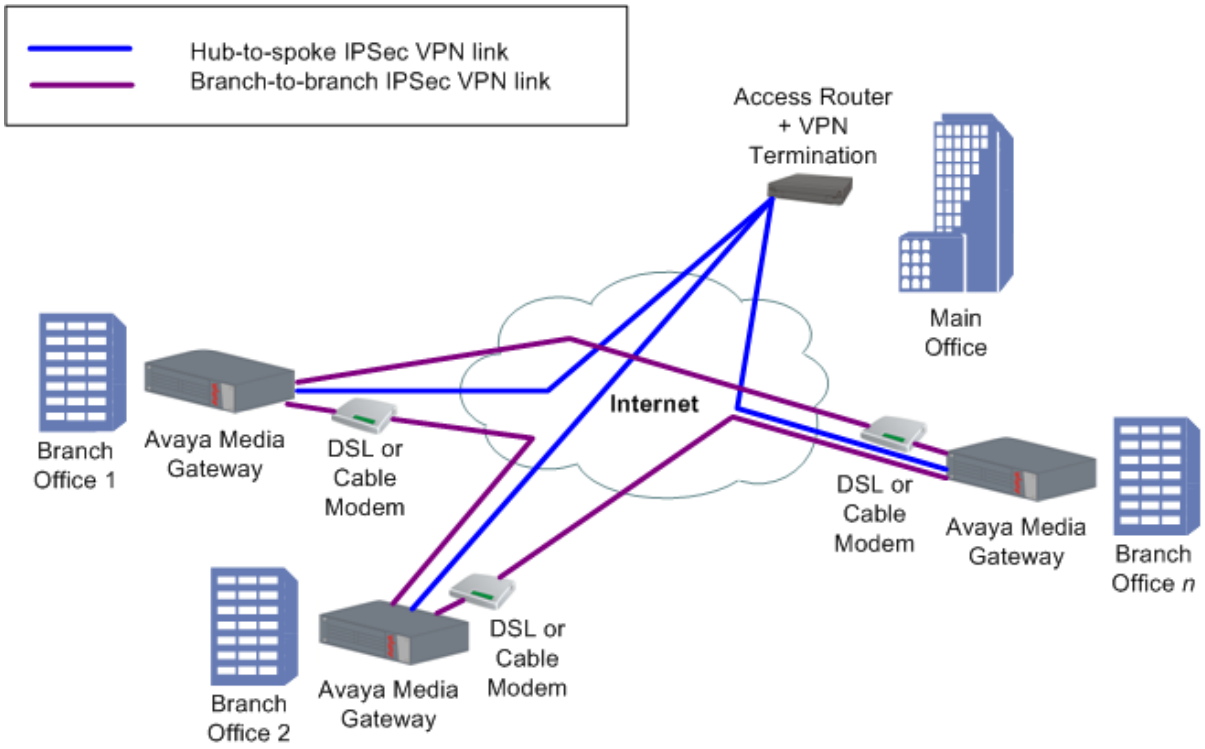
Full or partial mesh

This installation is very similar to the simple hub and spokes installation, but instead of connecting to a single central site, the branch is also connected to several other branch sites by direct IPSec VPN tunnels. The configuration is therefore very similar to the previous one, duplicated several times.

In this topology:

- The Broadband Internet connection uses cable or DSL modem, with a static public IP address
- There is a VPN tunnel from each spoke to the VPN hub over the Internet
- There is a VPN tunnel from one spoke to another spoke
- Only VPN traffic is allowed via the Internet connection

Figure 41: Full or partial mesh



Configuring the mesh VPN topology

1. Configure Branch Office 1 as follows:
 - The default gateway is the Internet interface

- VPN policy is configured on the Internet interface egress as follows:
 - Traffic from the local subnets to the second spoke subnets -> encrypt, using tunnel mode IPSec, with the remote peer being the second spoke
 - Traffic from the local subnets to any IP address -> encrypt, using tunnel mode IPSec, with the remote peer being the main office (VPN hub)
- An access control list (ACL) is configured on the Internet interface to allow only the VPN / ICMP traffic. See Table 124 for configuration settings.

Note:

For information about using access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.

Table 124: Configuring the mesh VPN topology – Branch Office 1

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value	Description
Ingress	IKE from Main Office IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	ESP from Main Office IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	IKE from Second Branch IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	ESP from Second Branch IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	ICMP from any IP address to local tunnel endpoint	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Ingress	All allowed services from any IP address to any local subnet	Permit	Due to the definition of the VPN Policy, this will be allowed only if traffic comes over ESP
Ingress	Default	Deny	-
Egress	IKE from Branch IP to Main Office IP	Permit	-
Egress	ESP from Branch IP to Main Office IP	Permit	-
Egress	IKE from Branch IP to Second Branch IP	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Egress	ESP from Branch IP to Second Branch IP	Permit	This traffic is tunnelled using VPN

1 of 2

Table 124: Configuring the mesh VPN topology – Branch Office 1 (continued)

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value	Description
Egress	ICMP from local tunnel endpoint to any IP address	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Egress	All allowed services from any local subnet to any IP address	Permit	This traffic is tunnelled using VPN
Egress	Default	Deny	-
			2 of 2

2. Configure Branch Office 2 as follows:
 - The default gateway is the Internet interface
 - VPN policy is configured on the Internet interface egress as follows:
 - Traffic from the local subnets to the First Spoke subnets -> encrypt, using tunnel mode IPSec, with the remote peer being the First Spoke
 - Traffic from the local subnets to any IP address -> encrypt, using tunnel mode IPSec, with the remote peer being the Main Office (VPN hub)
 - An ACL is configured on the Internet interface to allow only the VPN / ICMP traffic. See Table 125 for configuration settings.

Note:

For information about using access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.

Table 125: Configuring the mesh VPN topology – Branch Office 2

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value	Description
Ingress	IKE from Main Office IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	ESP from Main Office IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	IKE from First Branch IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
Ingress	ESP from First Branch IP to Branch IP	Permit	-
			1 of 2

Table 125: Configuring the mesh VPN topology – Branch Office 2 (continued)

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value	Description
Ingress	ICMP from any IP address to local tunnel endpoint	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Ingress	All allowed services from any IP address to any local subnet	Permit	Due to the definition of the VPN Policy, this will be allowed only if traffic comes over ESP
Ingress	Default	Deny	-
Egress	IKE from Branch IP to Main Office IP	Permit	-
Egress	ESP from Branch IP to Main Office IP	Permit	-
Egress	IKE from Branch IP to First Branch IP	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Egress	ESP from Branch IP to First Branch IP	Permit	This traffic is tunnelled using VPN
Egress	ICMP from local tunnel endpoint to any IP address	Permit	This enables the PMTUD application to work
Egress	All allowed services from any local subnet to any IP address	Permit	This traffic is tunnelled using VPN
Egress	Default	Deny	-
			2 of 2

3. Configure the VPN Hub (Main Office) as follows:
 - Static routing: Branch subnets -> Internet interface
 - The VPN policy portion for the branch is configured as a mirror image of the branch, as follows:
 - Traffic from any IP address to branch local subnets -> encrypt, using tunnel mode IPSec
 - The remote peer is the VPN Spoke (Branch Internet address)

Configuration example

1. Configure Branch Office 1:

```
crypto isakmp policy 1
         encryption aes
         hash sha
         group 2
         exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Main Office Public Internet Static IP
                                                              Address>
         pre-shared-key  <secret key>
         isakmp-policy 1
         exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Second Branch Office Public Internet Static
                                                            IP Address>
         pre-shared-key  <secret key 2>
         isakmp-policy 1
         exit
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
         set pfs 2
         exit
 crypto map 1
         set peer <Main Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
         set transform-set ts1
         exit
crypto map 2
        set peer <Second Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
         set transform-set ts1
         exit
ip crypto-list 901
      local-address <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
      ip-rule 1
               source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               destination-ip   <Second Branch Subnet1> <Second Branch
                                                        Subnet1 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
      ip-rule 2
               source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               destination-ip   <Second Branch Subnet1> <Second Branch
                                                        Subnet1 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
      ip-rule 3
               source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               destination-ip   <Second Branch Subnet2> <Second Branch
                                                        Subnet2 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
```

```
      ip-rule 4
               source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               destination-ip   <Second Branch Subnet2> <Second Branch
                                                          Subnet2 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
       ip-rule 10
               source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               destination-ip  any
               protect crypto map 1
               exit
     ip-rule 20
               source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               destination-ip  any
               protect crypto map 1
               exit
     exit

ip access-control-list 301
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 11
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
                composite-operation permit
                exit
      ip-rule 12
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
                composite-operation permit
                exit
      ip-rule 20
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
```

```
      ip-rule 30
              source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               source-ip   any
               destination-ip host <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               source-ip   any
               destination-ip host <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation deny
               exit
      exit

ip access-control-list 302
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 11
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
                composite-operation permit
                exit
      ip-rule 12
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol     udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
                composite-operation permit
                exit
      ip-rule 20
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
```

```
      ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               desintation-ip any
               source-ip host <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               destination-ip any
               source-ip host <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation deny
               exit
      exit

interface vlan 1.1
        ip-address <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
        pmi
        icc-vlan
        exit

interface vlan 1.2
        ip-address <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
        exit

interface fastethernet 10/3
         encapsulation PPPoE
        traffic-shape rate 256000
         ip Address <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
                             <Branch Office Public Internet network mask>
         ip crypto-group        901
         ip access-group      301 in
         ip access-group      302 out
         exit

ip default-gateway  FastEthernet 10/3 high
```

Note:

The commands appearing in bold are the CLI commands that add the mesh capabilities to the simple hub and spokes configuration.

2. Configure Branch Office 2:

```
crypto isakmp policy 1
         encryption aes
         hash sha
         group 2
         exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Main Office Public Internet Static IP
                                                                Address>
         pre-shared-key  <secret key>
         isakmp-policy 1
         exit
crypto isakmp peer address <First Branch Office Public Internet Static IP
                                                                Address>
         pre-shared-key  <secret key 2>
         isakmp-policy 1
         exit
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
         set pfs 2
         exit
 crypto map 1
         set peer <Main Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
         set transform-set ts1
         exit
crypto map 2
         set peer <First Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
         set transform-set ts1
         exit
ip crypto-list 901
      local-address <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
      ip-rule 1
               source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               destination-ip <First Branch Subnet1> <Second Branch
                                                        Subnet1 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
      ip-rule 2
               source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               destination-ip <First Branch Subnet1> <Second Branch
                                                       Subnet1 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
      ip-rule 3
               source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               destination-ip <First Branch Subnet2> <Second Branch
                                                       Subnet2 Mask>
               protect crypto map 2
               exit
```

```
      ip-rule 4
                source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
                destination-ip <First Branch Subnet2> <Second Branch
                                                          Subnet2 Mask>
                protect crypto map 2
                exit
      ip-rule 10
                source-ip <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
                destination-ip  any
                protect crypto map 1
                exit
     ip-rule 20
                source-ip <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
                destination-ip  any
                protect crypto map 1
                exit
     exit

ip access-control-list 301
      ip-rule 10
                source-ip any
                destination-ip any
                ip-protocol udp
                udp destination-port eq Ike
                composite-operation Permit
                exit
      ip-rule 11
                 source-ip any
                 destination-ip any
                 ip-protocol     udp
                 udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
                 composite-operation permit
                 exit
      ip-rule 12
                 source-ip any
                 destination-ip any
                 ip-protocol     udp
                 udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
                 composite-operation permit
                 exit
```

```
    ip-rule 20
             source-ip any
             destination-ip any
             ip-protocol esp
             composite-operation Permit
             exit
    ip-rule 30
             source-ip any
             destination-ip any
             ip-protocol icmp
             composite-operation Permit
             exit
    ip-rule 40
             source-ip   any
             destination-ip host <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
             composite-operation Permit
             exit
    ip-rule 50
             source-ip   any
             destination-ip host <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
             composite-operation Permit
             exit
    ip-rule default
             composite-operation deny
             exit
    exit
ip access-control-list 302
    ip-rule 10
             source-ip any
             destination-ip any
             ip-protocol udp
             udp destination-port eq Ike
             composite-operation Permit
             exit
    ip-rule 11
              source-ip any
              destination-ip any
              ip-protocol     udp
              udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
              composite-operation permit
              exit
    ip-rule 12
              source-ip any
              destination-ip any
              ip-protocol     udp
              udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
              composite-operation permit
              exit
    ip-rule 20
             source-ip any
             destination-ip any
             ip-protocol esp
             composite-operation Permit
             exit
```

```
      ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               desintation-ip any
               source-ip host <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               destination-ip any
               source-ip host <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation deny
               exit
      exit

interface vlan 1.1
        ip-address <Branch Subnet1> <Branch Subnet1 Mask>
        pmi
        icc-vlan
        exit

interface vlan 1.2
        ip-address <Branch Subnet2> <Branch Subnet2 Mask>
        exit

interface fastethernet 10/3
         encapsulation PPPoE
        traffic-shape rate 256000
         ip Address   <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
                           <Branch Office Public Internet network mask>
         ip crypto-group        901
         ip access-group      301 in
         ip access-group      302 out
exit

ip default-gateway  FastEthernet 10/3 high
```

Note:

The commands appearing in bold are the CLI commands that add the mesh capabilities to the simple hub and spokes configuration.

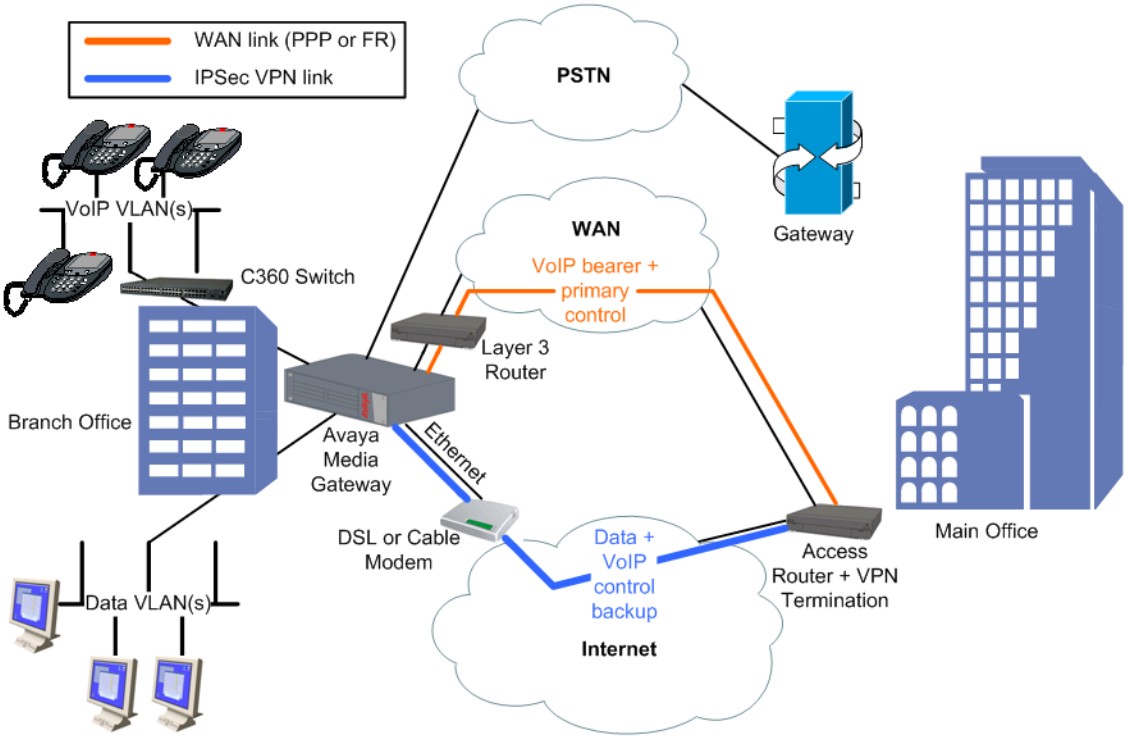
Full solution: hub and spoke with VPN

The full solution consists of a hub-and-spoke with VPN for data and VoIP control backup.

In this topology:

- There is a direct WAN connection, via an external layer 3 router in the branch, to the Main Office for VoIP bearer and as primary VoIP control connection. The layer 3 router is connected to the G430 via a dedicated VLAN interface.
- The Broadband Internet connection uses cable or DSL modem, with a static public IP address
- There is a VPN tunnel to the hub over the Internet for intranet data, and as backup connection for VoIP control
- The local hosts access the Internet directly through the local broadband connection
- The PSTN connection backs up the voice bearer

Figure 42: Full solution: hub-and-spoke with VPN for data and VoIP control backup



Configuring hub-and-spoke with VPN for data and VoIP control backup

1. Configure the Branch Office as follows:
 - The default gateway is the Internet interface
 - VPN policy is configured on the Internet interface egress as follows:
 Traffic from the local GRE tunnel endpoint to the remote GRE tunnel endpoint -> encrypt, using IPSec tunnel mode, with the remote peer being the Main Office.
 - An access control list (ACL) is configured on the Internet interface to allow only the VPN tunnel and ICMP traffic. See Table 126 for configuration settings.

Note:

For information about using access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.

Table 126: Configuring hub-and-spoke with VPN

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value
Ingress	IKE (UDP/500) from remote tunnel endpoint to local tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	ESP/AH from remote tunnel endpoint to local tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	Remote GRE tunnel endpoint to local GRE tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	Allowed ICMP from any IP address to local tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	Default	Deny
Egress	IKE (UDP/500) from local tunnel endpoint to remote tunnel endpoint	Permit
Egress	Local GRE tunnel endpoint to remote GRE tunnel endpoint	Permit
Egress	All allowed services from any local subnet to any IP address	Permit
Egress	Allowed ICMP from local tunnel endpoint to any IP address	Permit
Egress	Default	Deny

 - Policy Based Routing (PBR) is configured as follows on VoIP VLAN and loopback interfaces:
 - Destination IP = local subnets -> Route: DBR
 - DSCP = bearer -> Route: WAN
 - DSCP = control -> Route: 1. WAN 2. DBR

Note:

For information about PBR, see Configuring policy-based routing on page 595.

2. Configure the VPN Hub (Main Office) as follows:
 - The VPN policy portion for the branch is configured as a mirror image of the branch
 - The ACL portion for the branch is a mirror image of the branch, with some minor modifications
 - Static routing is configured as follows:
 - Branch subnets -> Internet interface
 - The PBR portion for the branch is configured as follows, on most interfaces:
 - Destination IP = branch VoIP subnet(s) or GW address (PMI), DSCP = bearer -> Route: WAN
 - Destination IP = branch VoIP subnet(s) or GW address (PMI), DSCP = control -> Route: 1. WAN 2. DBR
 - ACM is configured to route voice calls through PSTN when the main VoIP trunk is down

Configuration example

```
crypto isakmp policy 1
    encryption aes
    hash sha
    group 2
    authentication pre-share
    exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Main Office Internet public Static IP
                                                                    Address>
   pre-shared-key  <key1>
   isakmp-policy 1
   exit
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
   exit
crypto map 1
    set peer <Main Office Internet public Static IP Address>
    set transform-set ts1
    exit

ip crypto-list 901
      local-address <Branch Office Public Internet Static IP Address>
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip <Branch data Subnet> <Branch data Subnet Mask>
               destination-ip  any
               protect crypto map 1
               exit
      ip-rule 20
               source-ip <Branch voice Subnet> <Branch voice Subnet Mask>
               destination-ip  any
               protect crypto map 1
               exit
      exit

ip access-control-list 301
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
```

```
     ip-rule 11
              source-ip any
              destination-ip any
              ip-protocol     udp
              udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
              composite-operation permit
               exit
      ip-rule 12
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol     udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
               composite-operation permit
               exit
      ip-rule 20
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               source-ip any
               destination-ip <Branch data Subnet> <Branch data Subnet
                                                                  Mask>
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               source-ip any
               destination-ip <Branch voice Subnet> <Branch voice Subnet
                                                                  Mask>
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation  deny
               exit
      exit

ip access-control-list 302
      ip-rule 10
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
```

```
     ip-rule 11
              source-ip any
              destination-ip any
              ip-protocol     udp
              udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
              composite-operation permit
              exit
      ip-rule 12
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol     udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
               composite-operation permit
               exit
      ip-rule 20
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               source-ip <Branch data Subnet> <Branch data Subnet Mask>
               destination-ip         any
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               source-ip <Branch voice Subnet> <Branch voice Subnet Mask>
               destination-ip         any
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation  deny
               exit
      exit

interface vlan 1
   description "VoIP_VLAN"
    ip address <branch voice subnet IP address> <branch voice subnet mask>
    icc-vlan
    pmi
    exit

interface vlan 2
   description "DATA_VLAN"
    ip address <branch data subnet IP address> <branch data subnet mask>
    exit
```

```
interface vlan 3
   description "External_router_connection"
    ip address <external router IP address> <external router subnet mask>
    exit

interface fastethernet 10/3
     encapsulation pppoe
     traffic-shape rate 256000
     ip address <Branch Office Internet public Static IP Address> <Branch
                                          Office Internet public net mask>
     ip crypto-group 901
     ip access-group      301 in
     ip access-group      302 out
     exit

ip next-hop-list 1
    next-hop-ip 1 <external layer 3 router IP address>
    exit

ip next-hop-list 2
    next-hop-interface 1 FastEthernet 10/3
    next-hop-ip 2 <external layer 3 router IP address>
    exit

ip pbr-list 801
  ip-rule 10
!
! The following command specifies the Voice bearer
!
      dscp 46
      next-hop list 1
      exit
  ip-rule 20
!
! The following command specifies the Voice Control
!
     dscp 34
     next-hop list 2
     exit
  ip-rule default
      next-hop PBR
      exit
  exit
```

Typical failover applications

Introduction to the failover mechanism

The failover mechanism provides switchover to backup peers in case of remote peer failure. To enable the failover mechanism, you must:

- Configure VPN keepalives, which check the remote peer periodically and announce when the remote peer is dead
- Provide backup peers and a mechanism for switching to a backup in case of remote peer failure

In addition to the GRE failover mechanism (see Failover using GRE on page 535), the G430 supports several additional failover mechanisms, as described below.

Configuring VPN keepalives

VPN keepalives can dramatically improve the speed with which the G430 detects loss of connectivity with the remote VPN peer. Two types of VPN keepalives are available. You can use either or both methods:

- Enable DPD keepalives, a standard VPN keepalive, that check whether the remote peer is up. This type of detection can be used only if it is supported also by the remote peer.
- Bind peer status to an object tracker. Object trackers track the state (up/down) of remote devices using keepalive probes, and notify registered applications such as VPN when the state changes. Object tracking allows monitoring of hosts inside the remote peer's protected network, not just of the remote peer itself as in DPD.

Backup peer mechanism

You can use any one of these alternate backup peer mechanisms:

- DNS server (see Failover using DNS on page 542). This method utilizes the G430's DNS resolver capability for dynamically resolving a remote peer's IP address via a DNS query.

 Use this feature when your DNS server supports failover through health-checking of redundant hosts. On your DNS server, configure a hostname to translate to two or more redundant hosts, which act as redundant VPN peers. On the G430, configure that hostname as your remote peer. The G430 will perform a DNS query in order to resolve the hostname to an IP address before establishing an IKE connection. Your DNS server should be able to provide an IP address of a living host. The G430 will perform a new DNS query and try to re-establish the VPN connection to the newly provided IP address whenever it senses that the currently active remote peer stops responding. The G430 can sense that a peer is dead when IKE negotiation times-out, through DPD keepalives, and through object tracking.

- Using the G430's peer-group entity (see Failover using a peer-group on page 550):
 - Define a peer-group. A peer-group is an ordered list of redundant remote peers, only one of which is active at any time. When the active peer is considered dead, the next peer in the list becomes the active remote peer.
 - When configuring a crypto map, point to the peer-group instead of to a single peer

Failover using GRE

A branch with a G430 can connect to two or more VPN hub sites, in a way that will provide either redundancy or load sharing.

In this topology, the G430 is connected through its 10/100 WAN Ethernet port to a DSL modem.

- Define two GRE Tunnel interfaces:
 - GRE1 that leads to a Primary Main Office GRE End Point behind the VPN Hub Gateway
 - GRE2 that leads to a Backup Main Office GRE End Point behind the VPN Hub Gateway
- Define two VPNs
- Connectivity to the networks in Primary/Backup Main Office is determined through GRE keepalives. If network connectivity is lost due to failures in the WAN, in the Primary Main Office, the GRE keep-alive will fail and the GRE interface will transition to a "down" state.

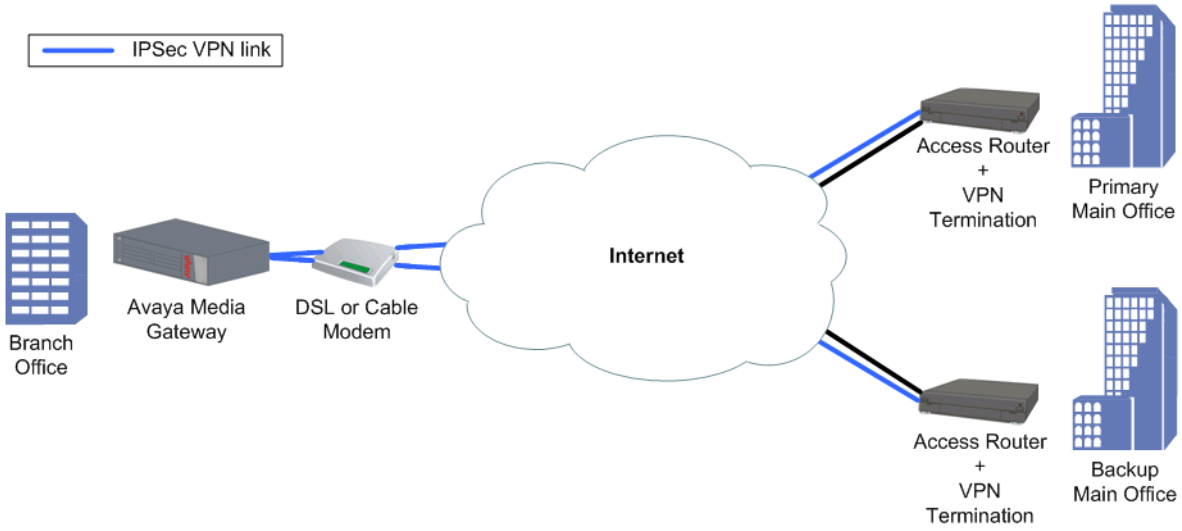
Redundancy and load sharing modes

The two GRE tunnels can then be used for branch to Primary/Backup Main Office in either Redundancy or Load sharing mode:

- **Redundancy**. GRE2 is configured as a backup interface for GRE1, and is activated only when GRE1 is down
- **Load sharing**. Both Tunnel interfaces are active. Routing protocols (RIP or OSPF) route traffic to destinations based on route cost and availability, as follows:

 For two routes of equal cost to the same destination, one through the Primary Main Office and one through the Backup Main Office, OSPF will automatically distribute traffic through both routes, effectively sharing the load between routes.

Figure 43: Hub and spoke with hub redundancy/load sharing using GRE



Configuring VPN hub redundancy and load sharing topologies using GRE

1. Configure the Branch Office as follows:
 - VPN policy is configured on the Internet interface egress as follows:
 - GRE Traffic from the local tunnel endpoint to remote tunnel endpoint 1 -> encrypt, using IPSec tunnel mode, with the remote peer being tunnel endpoint 1
 - GRE Traffic from the local tunnel endpoint to remote tunnel endpoint 2 -> encrypt, using IPSec tunnel mode, with the remote peer being tunnel endpoint 2
 - An access control list (ACL) is configured on the Internet interface to allow only the VPN / ICMP traffic. See Table 127 for configuration settings.

Note:

For information about using access control lists, see Configuring policy on page 567.

Table 127: Configuring VPN hub redundancy and load sharing topologies

Traffic direction	ACL parameter	ACL value
Ingress	IKE (UDP/500) from remote tunnel endpoint to local tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	ESP/AH from remote tunnel endpoint to local tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	Allowed ICMP from any IP address to local tunnel endpoint	Permit
Ingress	Default	Deny
Egress	IKE (UDP/500) from local tunnel endpoint to remote tunnel endpoint	Permit
Egress	All allowed services from any local subnet to any IP address	Permit
Egress	Allowed ICMP from local tunnel endpoint to any IP address	Permit
Egress	Default	Deny

- Configure dynamic routing (OSPF or RIP) to run over local data interfaces (data VLANs) and on the GRE interfaces

2. Configure the VPN Hubs (Main Offices) as follows:
 - The VPN policy portion for the branch is configured as a mirror image of the branch
 - The ACL portion for the branch is a mirror image of the branch, with some minor modifications
 - The GRE Tunnel interface is configured for the branch
 - Dynamic routing (OSPF or RIP) is configured to run over the GRE interface to the branch

Configuration example

```
crypto isakmp policy 1
    encryption aes
    hash sha
    group 2
    authentication pre-share
    exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Primary Main Office Internet public Static IP
                                                                  Address>
   pre-shared-key  <key1>
   isakmp-policy 1
   exit
crypto isakmp peer address <Backup Main Office Internet public Static
                                                              IP Address>
   pre-shared-key  <key2>
   isakmp-policy 1
   exit
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
   exit
crypto map 1
    set peer <Primary Main Office Internet public Static IP Address>
    set transform-set ts1
    exit
crypto map 2
    set peer <Backup Main Office Internet public Static IP Address>
    set transform-set ts1
    exit

ip crypto-list 901
    local-address <Branch Office Internet public Static IP Address>
     ip-rule 1
         source-ip host <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
         destination-ip host <Primary Main Office GRE Tunnel end point IP
                                                                  Address>
         protect crypto map 1
         exit
      ip-rule 2
         source-ip host <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
         destination-ip host <Backup Main Office GRE Tunnel end point
                                                              IP Address>
         protect crypto map 2
         exit
      exit
```

```
ip access-control-list 301
      ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 31
              source-ip any
              destination-ip any
              ip-protocol     udp
              udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
              composite-operation permit
              exit
      ip-rule 32
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol     udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
               composite-operation permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               source-ip any
               destination-ip host  <Branch Office Public Internet Static
                                                          IP Address>
               ip-protocol icmp
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 60
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
              composite-operation  Permit
               exit
```

```
      ip-rule 70
               source-ip host <Backup Main Office GRE Tunnel end point
                                                                IP Address>
               destination-ip host <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP
                                                                  Address>
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation  deny
               exit
      exit

ip access-control-list 302
ip-rule 30
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 31
              source-ip any
              destination-ip any
              ip-protocol     udp
              udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
              composite-operation permit
              exit
      ip-rule 32
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol     udp
               udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
               composite-operation permit
               exit
      ip-rule 40
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol esp
               composite-operation Permit
               exit
      ip-rule 50
               source-ip any
               destination-ip any
               ip-protocol icmp
               exit
      ip-rule 60
               source-ip host <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
               destination-ip host <Primary Main Office GRE Tunnel end
                                                        point IP Address>
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
```

```
      ip-rule 70
               source-ip host <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
               destination-ip host <Backup Main Office GRE Tunnel end
                                                        point IP Address>
               composite-operation  Permit
               exit
      ip-rule default
               composite-operation  deny
               exit
      exit


interface vlan 1
   description "VoIP_VLAN"
    ip address <branch voice subnet IP address> <branch voice subnet mask>
    icc-vlan
    pmi
    exit

interface vlan 2
   description "DATA_VLAN"
    ip address <branch data subnet IP address> <branch data subnet mask>
    exit

interface fastethernet 10/3
     encapsulation pppoe
     traffic-shape rate 256000
     ip address <Branch Office Internet public Static IP Address> <Branch
                                        Office Internet public net mask>
     ip crypto-group 901
     ip access-group      301 in
     ip access-group      302 out
     exit

interface Tunnel 1
!
! The following two backup commands specify redundant mode.
! To specify load-sharing mode, omit them.
!
    backup interface tunnel 2
    backup delay 20 15
    keepalive 10 3
    tunnel source  <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
    tunnel destination <Primary MainPrimary Main Office GRE Tunnel end
                                                        point IP Address>
    ip address 10.10.10.1 255.255.255.252
    exit
interface Tunnel 2
   keepalive 10 3
   tunnel source  <Branch GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
   tunnel destination <Backup Main Office GRE Tunnel end point IP
                                                              Address>
   ip address 20.20.20.1 255.255.255.252
   exit
```

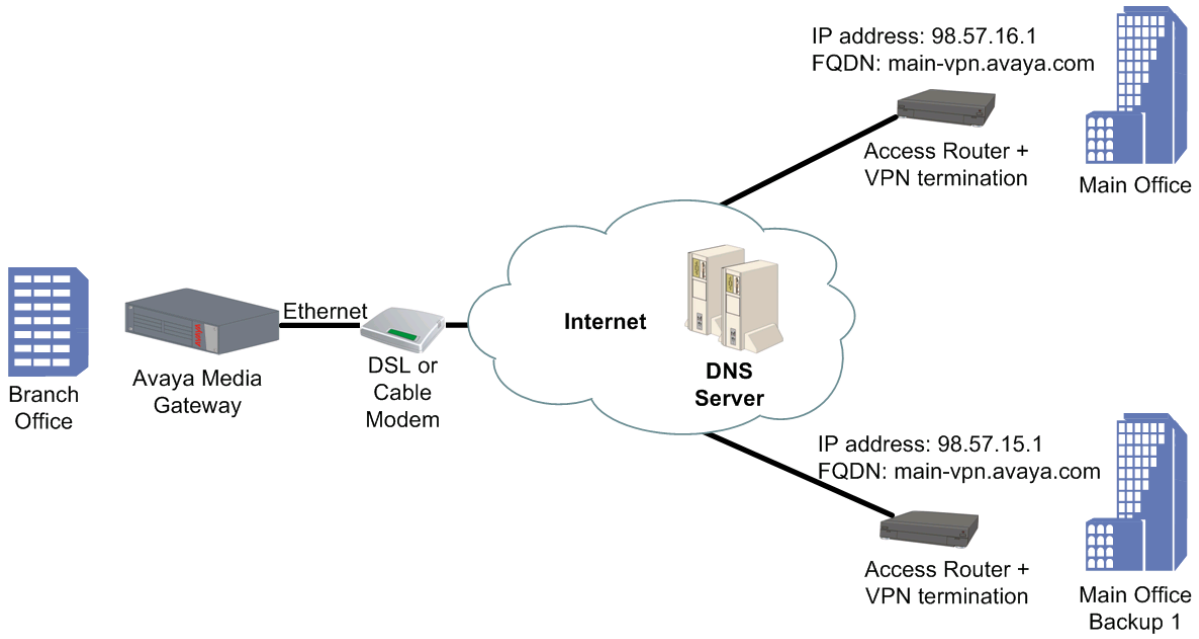
```
ip route <Primary Main Offfice GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
                                    255.255.255.255 FastEthernet 10/3 high
ip route <Backup Main Offfice GRE Tunnel end point IP Address>
                                    255.255.255.255 FastEthernet 10/3 high
router ospf
   network 10.10.10.0 0.0.0.3 area 0.0.0.0
   network 20.20.20.0 0.0.0.3 area 0.0.0.0
   exit
```

Failover using DNS

The VPN DNS topology provides failover by utilizing the DNS resolver feature.

Use this feature when your DNS server supports failover through health-checking of redundant hosts. On your DNS server configure a hostname to translate to two or more redundant hosts, which act as redundant VPN peers. On the G430 configure that hostname as your remote peer. The G430 will perform a DNS query in order to resolve the hostname to an IP address before establishing an IKE connection. Your DNS server should be able to provide an IP address of a living host. The G430 will perform a new DNS query and try to re-establish the VPN connection to the newly provided IP address whenever it senses that the currently active remote peer stops responding. The G430 can sense that a peer is dead when IKE negotiation times-out through DPD keepalives and through object tracking.

Figure 44: VPN DNS topology



Note:

For an explanation of DNS resolver, see DNS resolver on page 84.

Configuring the VPN DNS topology

1. Define the private VLAN1 and VLAN2 interfaces (IP address and mask), and define one of them as the PMI and ICC-VLAN.
2. Define the public FastEthernet10/3 interface (IP address and mask).
3. Define the default gateway (the IP of the next router).
4. Define the DNS name-server-list and the IP address of the DNS server.

 Note:

 Alternatively, you can use DHCP Client or PPPoE to dynamically learn the DNS server's IP address. Use the **`ip dhcp client request`** command when using DHCP client, or use the **`ppp ipcp dns request`** command when using PPPoE.
5. Define the ISAKMP policy, using the **`crypto isakmp policy`** command.
6. Define the remote peer with FQDN, using the **`crypto isakmp peer address`** command, including:
 - the pre-shared key
 - the ISAKMP policy
7. Define the IPSEC transform-set, using the **`crypto ipsec transform-set`** command.
8. Define the crypto map, using the **`crypto map`** command.
9. Define the crypto list as follows:
 - Set the local address to the public interface name (for example, FastEthernet 10/3.0)
 - For each private interface, define an ip-rule using the following format:
 - source-ip <private subnet> <private subnet wild card mast>.
 For example, `10.10.10.0 0.0.0.255`
 - destination-ip any
 - protect crypto map 1
10. Define the ingress access control list (ACL) to protect the device from Incoming traffic from the public interface, as follows:
 - Permit DNS traffic to allow clear (unencrypted) DNS traffic
 - Permit IKE Traffic (UDP port 500) for VPN control traffic (IKE)
 - Permit ESP traffic (IP Protocol ESP) for VPN data traffic (IPSEC)
 - Permit ICMP traffic, to support PMTU application support, for a better fragmentation process

- For each private subnet, add a permit rule, with the destination being the private subnet and the source being any. This traffic will be allowed only if it tunnels under the VPN, because of the crypto list.
- Define all other traffic (default rule) as deny in order to protect the device from non-secure traffic

11. Define the egress access control list to protect the device from sending traffic that is not allowed to the public interface (optional):
 - Permit DNS traffic to allow clear (unencrypted) DNS traffic
 - Permit IKE Traffic (UDP port 500) for VPN control traffic (IKE)
 - Permit ESP traffic (IP Protocol ESP) for VPN data traffic (IPSEC)
 - Permit ICMP traffic, to support PMTU application support, for a better fragmentation process
 - For each private subnet, add a permit rule, with the source being the private subnet, and the destination being any
 - Define all other traffic (default rule) as deny in order to protect the device from sending non-secure traffic
12. Activate the crypto list, the ingress access control list, and the egress access control list, on the public interface.

Configuration example

```
!
! Define the Private Subnet1
!
interface vlan 1
   description "Branch Subnet1"
   ip address  10.0.10.1 255.255.255.0
   icc-vlan
   pmi
   exit

!
! Define the Private Subnet2
!
interface vlan 2
   description "Branch Subnet2"
   ip address  10.0.20.1 255.255.255.0
   exit


!
! Define the Public Subnet
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
   ip address 100.0.0.2 255.255.255.0
   exit

!
! Define the default gateway to be on the public subnet
!
ip default-gateway 100.0.0.1


!
! Define the DNS name server
! that is accessible without VPN.
!
ip domain name-server-list 1
   name-server 1 123.124.125.126
   exit



!
! Define the IKE Entity
!
crypto isakmp policy 1
   encryption aes
   hash sha
   group 2
   authentication pre-share
   exit
```

```
!
! Define the remote peer as FQDN (DNS Name)
!
crypto isakmp peer fqdn main-vpn.avaya.com
   pre-shared-key <key1>
   isakmp-policy 1
   exit

!
! Define the IPSEC Entity
!
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
   exit

!
! Define the VPN Tunnel
!
crypto map 1
   set peer main-vpn.avaya.com
   set transform-set ts1
   exit

!
! Define the crypto list for the public interface
!

ip crypto-list 901
   local-address "Fast Ethernet 10/3.0"
!
! ip-rule 5 allows un-encrypted traffic for DNS
!
   ip-rule 5
      source-ip      any
      destination-ip 123.124.125.126
      no protect
      exit
   ip-rule 10
      source-ip      10.0.10.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip any
      protect crypto map 1
      exit
   ip-rule 20
      source-ip      10.0.20.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip any
      protect crypto map 1
      exit
   exit
```

```
!
! Define the Ingress access control list for the public interface
!
ip access-control-list 301
   ip-rule 5
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          udp
      udp destination-port eq Dns
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 10
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 11
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 12
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 20
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          esp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 30
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          icmp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 40
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       10.0.10.0 0.0.0.255
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 50
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       10.0.20.0 0.0.0.255
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
```

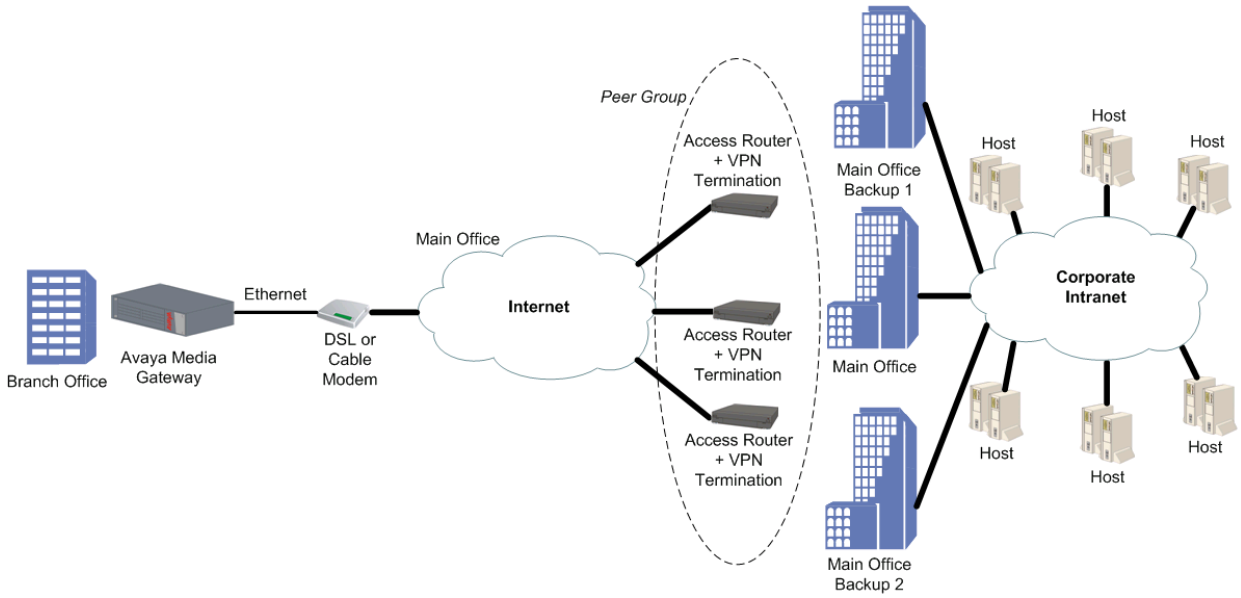
```
 ip-rule default
      composite-operation deny
      exit
     exit
!
! Define the Egress access control list for the public interface
!
ip access-control-list 302
   ip-rule 5
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          udp
      udp destination-port eq dns
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 10
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 11
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 12
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 20
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          esp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 30
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          icmp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 40
      source-ip            10.0.10.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip       any
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
```

```
 ip-rule 50
      source-ip            10.0.20.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip       any
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule default
      composite-operation deny
      exit
    exit
!
! Activate the crypto list and the access control list on the public
interface
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
   ip crypto-group 901
   ip access-group 301 in
   ip access-group 302 out
   exit
```

Failover using a peer-group

The failover VPN topology utilizes a peer-group which lists a group of redundant peers. At any point in time, only one peer is active and acting as the remote peer. An object tracker monitors the state of the active peer. If the active peer is presumed dead, the next peer in the peer-group becomes the active remote peer. For more information on object trackers, see Object tracking on page 274.

Figure 45: Failover VPN topology using a peer-group



Configuring the failover VPN topology using a peer-group

1. Define the private VLAN1 and VLAN2 interfaces (IP address and mask), and define one of them as the PMI and ICC-VLAN.
2. Define the public FastEthernet 10/3 interface (IP address and mask).
3. Define the default gateway (the IP address of the next router).
4. Define the object tracking configuration, and define when an object tracker is considered down, as follows:

 Define a track list that will monitor (by ICMP) five hosts behind the specific peer. If two or more hosts are not working then the object tracker is down. The G430 will then pass on to the next peer in the peer group list.
5. Define the ISAKMP policy, using the **`crypto isakmp policy`** command.
6. Define the 3 remote peers, using the **`crypto isakmp peer address`** command, and specify for each one:
 - the pre-shared key
 - the ISAKMP policy
 - keepalive track. This track is the object tracker that checks if the peer is still alive. If an active peer is considered dead, the next peer in the peer group becomes the active peer.
7. Define a peer group that include all three remote peers, using the **`crypto isakmp peer-group`** command.
8. Define the IPSEC transform-set, using the **`crypto ipsec transform-set`** command.
9. Define the Crypto map entity, using the **`crypto map`** command.
10. Define the crypto list as follows:
 - Set the local address to the public interface name (for example, FastEthernet 10/3.0).
 - For each private interface, define an ip-rule using the following format:
 - source-ip <private subnet> <private subnet wild card mast>.
 For example, `10.10.10.0 0.0.0.255`
 - destination-ip any
 - protect crypto map 1
11. Define the ingress access control list to protect the device from incoming traffic from the public interface, as follows:
 - Permit IKE Traffic (UDP port 500) for VPN control traffic (IKE)

 Note:

 If you are using NAT Traversal, you must also open UDP port 4500 and 2070.
 - Permit ESP traffic (IP Protocol ESP) for VPN data traffic (IPSEC)

- Permit ICMP traffic, to support PMTU application support, for a better fragmentation process
- For each private subnet, add a permit rule, with the destination being the private subnet, and the source being any. This traffic will be allowed only if it tunnels under the VPN, because of the crypto list.
- Define all other traffic (default rule) as deny in order to protect the device from non-secure traffic

12. Optionally, define the egress access control list to protect the device from sending traffic that is not allowed to the public interface:
 - Permit IKE Traffic (UDP port 500) for VPN control traffic (IKE)

 Note:

 If you are using NAT Traversal, you also need to open UDP port 4500 and 2070.

 - Permit ESP traffic (IP Protocol ESP) for VPN data traffic (IPSEC)
 - Permit ICMP traffic, to support the PMTU application, for a better fragmentation process
 - For each private subnet add a permit rule, with the source being the private subnet, and the destination being any
 - Define all other traffic (default rule) as deny in order to protect the device from sending non-secure traffic
13. Activate the crypto list, the ingress access control list, and the egress access control list, on the public interface.

Configuration example

```
!
! Define the Private Subnet1
!
interface vlan 1
   description "Branch Subnet1"
   ip address  10.0.10.1 255.255.255.0
   icc-vlan
   pmi
   exit

!
! Define the Private Subnet2
!
interface vlan 2
   description "Branch Subnet2"
   ip address  10.0.20.1 255.255.255.0
   exit


!
! Define the Public Subnet
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
   ip address 100.0.0.2 255.255.255.0
   exit

!
! Define the default gateway the public interfce
!
ip default-gateway 100.0.0.1
```

```
!
! We wish to check 5 hosts in the Corporate intranet behind the current VPN
! remote peer, and if 2 or more hosts don't work then keepalive-track will fail ,
! and  we will move to the next peer in the peer-group
!
rtr 1
   type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho <host1 IP>
   exit
rtr-schedule 1 start-time now life forever
rtr 2
   type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho <host2 IP>
   exit
rtr-schedule 2 start-time now life forever
rtr 3
   type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho <host3 IP>
   exit
rtr-schedule 3 start-time now life forever
rtr 4
   type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho <host4 IP>
   exit
rtr-schedule 4 start-time now life forever
rtr 5
   type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho <host5 IP>
   exit
rtr-schedule 5 start-time now life forever
track 11 rtr 1
  exit
track 12 rtr 2
  exit
track 13 rtr 3
  exit
track 14 rtr 4
  exit
track 15 rtr 5
  exit
track 1 list threshold count
  threshold count up 5 down 3
  object 11
  object 12
  object 13
  object 14
  object 15
  exit
!
! Define the IKE Entity
!
crypto isakmp policy 1
   encryption aes
   hash sha
   group 2
   authentication pre-share
   exit
```

```
! Define the remote peers (3 main offices)
!
crypto isakmp peer address <First Main Office VPN address>
   pre-shared-key <key1>
   isakmp-policy 1
   keepalive-track 1
   exit

crypto isakmp peer address <Second Main Office VPN address>
   pre-shared-key <key2>
   isakmp-policy 1
   keepalive-track 1
   exit

crypto isakmp peer address <Third Main Office VPN address>
   pre-shared-key <key3>
   isakmp-policy 1
   keepalive-track 1
   exit

crypto isakmp peer-group main-hubs
    set peer <First      Main Office VPN address>
    set peer <Second Main Office VPN address>
    set peer <Third    Main Office VPN address>
    exit
!
! Define the IPSEC Entity
!
crypto ipsec transform-set ts1 esp-3des esp-sha-hmac
   exit
!
! Define the VPN Tunnel
!
crypto map 1
   set peer-group  main-hubs
   set transform-set ts1
   exit
! Define the crypto list for the public interface
!
 ip crypto-list 901
   local-address "Fast Ethernet 10/3.0"
   ip-rule 10
      source-ip      10.0.10.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip any
      protect crypto map 1
      exit
   ip-rule 20
      source-ip      10.0.20.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip any
      protect crypto map 1
      exit
   exit
```

```
!
! Define the Ingress access control list for the public interface
!
ip access-control-list 301
   ip-rule 10
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 11
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 12
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 20
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          esp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 30
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          icmp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 40
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       10.0.10.0 0.0.0.255
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 50
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       10.0.20.0 0.0.0.255
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule default
      composite-operation deny
      exit
    exit
```

```
! Define the Egress access control list for the public interface
!
ip access-control-list 302
   ip-rule 10
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 11
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 12
      source-ip any
      destination-ip any
      ip-protocol     udp
      udp destination-port eq Ike-nat-t-vsu
      composite-operation permit
      exit
   ip-rule 20
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          esp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 30
      source-ip            any
      destination-ip       any
      ip-protocol          icmp
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 40
      source-ip            10.0.10.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip       any
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule 50
      source-ip            10.0.20.0 0.0.0.255
      destination-ip       any
      composite-operation  Permit
      exit
   ip-rule default
      composite-operation deny
      exit
    exit
```

```
!
! Activate the crypto list and the access control list on the public interface
!
interface fastethernet 10/3
   ip crypto-group 901
   ip access-group 301 in
   ip access-group 302 out
   exit
```

Checklist for configuring site-to-site IPSec VPN

Use Table 128 to gather the information for simple G430 site-to-site IPSec VPN.

Table 128: Checklist for configuring site-to-site IPSec VPN

Parameter	Possible values	Actual value
1. Type of connection to the ISP	• ADSL • Cable Modem	
2. VPN Interface	• FastEthernet10/3	
3. VPN Local IP Address		
• Type	• Static – If static, provide: IP Address Mask Next-hop Router • Dynamic (DHCP/PPPoE)	
4. Coordinating with the VPN Remote peer		
a.) VPN IKE (Control) Phase 1 Parameters		
– Encryption	• des • 3des • aes • aes-192 • aes-256	
– Authentication Hash	• sha • md5	

Table 128: Checklist for configuring site-to-site IPSec VPN (continued)

Parameter	Possible values	Actual value
– DH Group	• 1 • 2 • 5 • 14	
– Lifetime seconds	• 60 to 86,400 default: 86,400 (1 day)	
b.) VPN IPSEC (Data) Phase 2 Parameters		
– Encryption	• esp-des • esp-3des • esp-aes • esp-aes-192 • esp-aes-256	
– Authentication Hash	• esp-sha-hmac • esp-md5-hmac	
– IP compression	• enable (comp-lzs) • disable	
– PFS Group	• no pfs (default) • 1 • 2 • 5 • 14	
– Lifetime seconds	• 120 to 86,400 default: 3,600 (1 hour)	
– Lifetime kilobytes	• 2,560 to 536,870,912 default: 4,608,000 kb • disable	
5. Which packets should be secured		
a. Protect rules matching options	• IP source address • IP destination address	

2 of 3

Table 128: Checklist for configuring site-to-site IPSec VPN (continued)

Parameter	Possible values	Actual value
b. Bypass rules matching options	• IP source address • IP destination address • udp • tcp • dscp • fragment • icmp • IP protocol	
6. The remote peer (crypto isakmp peer) parameters		
a. Remote peer	• IP address • FQDN (dns name)	
b. Pre-shared key	• 1 to 127 alphanumerical characters. 1 to 64 bytes in hexadecimal notation	
7. If the branch IP is dynamic		
	• If the branch IP is an initiator, set initiate mode to none (device is a responder) • If the branch IP is a responder, set initiate mode to aggressive (device is an initiator) • Set self identity to identify the device in the remote peer	

Summary of VPN commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 129: VPN CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
clear crypto isakmp			Flush a specific ISAKMP SA or all the ISAKMP SAs
clear crypto sa			Clear all or specific IPSec SAs
clear crypto sa counters			Clear the crypto SA counters
crypto ipsec nat-transparency udp-encapsulation			Re-enable NAT Traversal if it was disabled
crypto ipsec transform-set			Enter the IKE phase 2 (IPSec) transform-set context and create or edit IPSec parameters for the VPN tunnel
	mode		Set security-association lifetime
	set pfs		Specify whether each IKE phase 2 negotiation will employ PFS and, if yes, which Diffie-Hellman group to employ
	set security-association lifetime		Set the IKE phase 2 (IPSec) SA lifetime
crypto isakmp invalid-spi-recovery			Enable invalid SPI recovery (default setting)
crypto isakmp nat keepalive			Re-enable NAT Traversal keepalive if it was disabled, and configure the keepalive interval. This command keeps the NAT devices tables updated.
crypto isakmp peer			Enter the crypto ISAKMP peer context and create or edit an ISAKMP peer

1 of 5

Table 129: VPN CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
	continuous-channel		Enable continuous-channel IKE, which keeps the IKE phase1 session always up and running, even if there is no traffic
	description		Enter a description for the ISAKMP peer
	initiate mode		Specify which IKE Phase-1 mode to use when communicating with the peer: aggressive or none
	isakmp-policy		Set the ISAKMP policy for the ISAKMP peer
	keepalive		Enable DPD keepalives that check whether the remote peer is up
	keepalive-track		Bind an object tracker to a remote VPN peer or to an interface, to check whether the remote peer or the interface is up
	pre-shared-key		Configure the IKE pre-shared key
	self-identity		Set the identity of this device
	suggest-key		Generate a random string which you can use as a pre-shared key for IKE. You must use the same key on both peers.
crypto isakmp peer-group			Enter the crypto ISAKMP peer-group context and create or edit an ISAKMP peer group
	description		Enter a description for the ISAKMP peer group
	set peer		Add a peer to the peer-group
crypto isakmp policy			Enter the crypto ISAKMP policy context and create or edit IKE Phase 1 parameters
	authentication		Set the authentication of ISAKMP policy to pre-shared secret

Table 129: VPN CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
	description		Enter a description for the ISAKMP policy
	encryption		Set the encryption algorithm for an ISAKMP policy
	group		Set the Diffie-Hellman group for an ISAKMP policy
	hash		Set the hash method for an ISAKMP policy
	lifetime		Set the lifetime of the ISAKMP SA in seconds
crypto isakmp suggest-key			Generate a random string which you can use as a pre-shared key for IKE. You must use the same key on both peers.
crypto map			Enter crypto map context and create or edit a crypto map
	continuous-channel		In a crypto ISAKMP peer context, enable continuous-channel IKE, which keeps the IKE phase1 session always up and running, even if there is no traffic
	description		Enter a description for the crypto map
	set dscp		Set the DSCP value in the tunneled packet
	set peer		Attach a peer to a crypto map
	set peer-group		Attach a peer-group to a crypto map
	set transform-set		Configure the transform-set
interface (fastethernet\|dialer\|vlan)			Enter the `FastEthernet`, `Dialer`, or `VLAN` interface context
	crypto ipsec df-bit		Set the Don't-Fragment bit to clear mode or copy mode

Table 129: VPN CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
	crypto ipsec minimal-pmtu		Set the minimal PMTU value that can be applied to an SA when the G430 participates in PMTUD for the tunnel pertaining to that SA
	ip crypto-group		Activate a crypto list in the context of the interface on which the crypto list is activated
ip crypto-list			Enter crypto list context and create or edit a crypto list
	ip-rule		Enter ip-rule context and create or modify a specific rule
		description	Enter a description for the ip-rule in the ip crypto list
		destination-ip	Specify the destination IP address of packets to which the current rule applies
		protect crypto map	Protect traffic that matches this rule by applying the IPSec processing configured by the specific crypto map
		source-ip	Indicate that the current rule applies to packets from the specified source IP address
	local-address		Set the local IP address for the IPSec tunnels derived from this crypto list
show crypto ipsec sa			Display the IPSec SA database and related runtime, statistical, and configuration information
show crypto ipsec transform-set			Display the configuration for the specified transform-set or all transform-sets
show crypto isakmp peer			Display crypto ISAKMP peer configuration
show crypto isakmp peer-group			Display crypto ISAKMP peer-group configuration

4 of 5

Table 129: VPN CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
show crypto isakmp policy			Display ISAKMP policy configuration
show crypto isakmp sa			Display the ISAKMP SA database status
show crypto map			Display all or specific crypto map configurations
show ip active-lists			Display information about a specific policy list or all lists
show ip crypto-list			Display all or specific crypto list configurations
			5 of 5

Chapter 20: Configuring policy

Policy lists enable you to control the ingress and egress of traffic to a router or port. You can use policies to manage security, determine packet priority through an interface, implement quality of service, or determine routing for a specific application or user. Each policy list consists of a set of rules determining the behavior of a packet entering or leaving the interface on which the list is applied.

Types of policy lists

There are various policy lists on the G430, including access control lists, QoS lists, and Policy based routing.

Access control lists

Access lists have the following parts:

- **Global rules**. A set of rules that are executed before the list is evaluated
- **Rule list**. A list of filtering rules and actions for the G430 to take when a packet matches the rule. Match actions on this list are pointers to the composite operation table.
- **Actions (composite operation table)**. A table that describes actions to be performed when a packet matches a rule. The table includes pre-defined actions, such as permit and deny. You can configure more complex rules. See Composite operations on page 581.

Access control list rule specifications

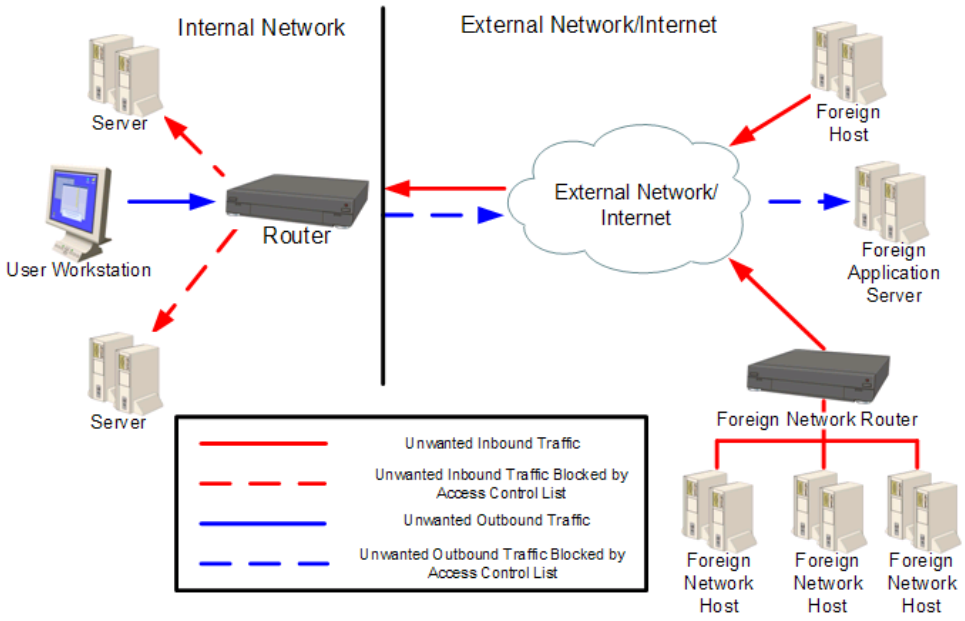
You can use access control lists to control which packets are authorized to pass through an interface. When a packet matches a rule on the access control list, the rule specifies whether the G430:

- Accepts the packet or drops the packet
- Sends an ICMP error reply if it drops the packet
- Sends an SNMP trap if it drops the packet

Network security using access control lists

The primary use of access control lists is to act as a component of network security. You can use access control lists to determine which applications, networks, and users can access hosts on your network. Also, you can restrict internal users from accessing specific sites or applications outside the network. Access control lists can be based on permitting or denying specific values or groups of IP addresses, protocols, ports, IP fragments, or DSCP values. Figure 46 illustrates how access control lists are used to control traffic into and out of your network.

Figure 46: Network security using access control lists



QoS lists

You can use QoS lists to change the DSCP and Ethernet IEEE 802.1p CoS fields in packets. Changing these fields adjusts the priority of packets meeting the criteria of the QoS list. DSCP values are mapped to a CoS value. Rules can be created determining the priority behavior of either individual DSCP values or CoS values, and can be based on specific values or groups of IP addresses, protocols, ports, IP fragments, or DSCP values. When a packet matches a rule on the QoS list, the G430 sets one or both of the QoS fields in the packet. The following table shows these QoS fields:

Table 130: QoS fields

Layer	QoS field	Allowed values
2	802.1p	0–7
3	DSCP	0–63

Each QoS list also includes a DSCP table. The DSCP table enables you to set one or both of the QoS fields in a packet, based on the previous value of the `DSCP` field in the packet.

QoS lists have the following parts:

- **Rule list.** A list of filtering rules and actions for the G430 to take when a packet matches the rule. Match actions on this list are pointers to the composite operation table.
- **Actions (composite operation table)**. A table that describes actions to be performed when a packet matches a rule. The table includes pre-defined actions, such as permit and deny. You can configure more complex rules. Refer to Composite operations on page 581.
- **DSCP map.** A table that contains DSCP code points and match action pairs. Match actions are pointers to the composite operation table. Refer to DSCP table on page 584.

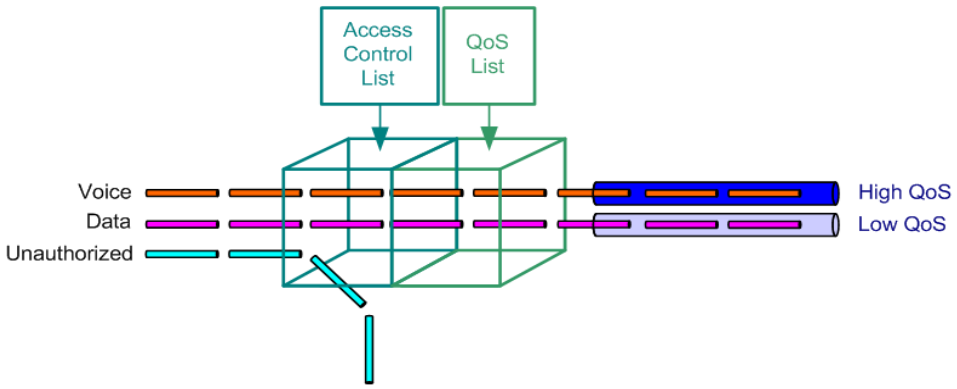
Policy-based routing

You can use policy-based routing to determine the routing path a packet takes based on the type of packet, or the packet's source or destination IP addresses, or its `DSCP` field. This enables you to route different types of traffic over different routes or interfaces. For example, you use policy-based routing to route voice traffic over a WAN interface and data traffic over the Internet. Policy-based routing is implemented by means of policy-based routing (PBR) lists. PBR lists are similar in many respects to access control lists and QoS lists. However, since there are also some key differences, policy-based routing is explained in a separate chapter. Refer to Configuring policy-based routing on page 595.

Managing policy lists

You can manage policy lists on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway with CLI commands. You can also manage policy lists throughout your network with Avaya QoS Manager. Avaya QoS Manager is part of Avaya Integrated Management. Figure 47 illustrates the operation of policy lists on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway:

Figure 47: Policy lists



Defining policy lists

You can create and edit policy lists, and define the list identification attributes. You can also delete an unnecessary policy list.

Creating and editing a policy list

To create or edit a policy list, you must enter the context of the list. If the list already exists, you can edit the list from the list context. If the list does not exist, entering the list context creates the list.

To create or edit an access control list, enter **`ip access-control-list`** followed by a list number in the range `300-399`. The G430 includes one pre-configured access control list. The pre-configured access control list is list number `300`.

For example, to create access control list 301, enter the following command:

```
ip access-control-list 301
```

To create or edit a QoS list, enter **ip qos-list** followed by a list number in the range 400-499. The G430 includes one pre-configured QoS list. The pre-configured QoS list is list number 400.

For example, to create a new QoS list 401, enter the following command:

```
ip qos-list 401
```

You can create a new policy list based on an existing list by using the **ip policy-list-copy** command, followed by the name of the list from which you want to copy. The source and destination lists must be of the same type. For example, you cannot copy an access control list to a QoS list.

The following example creates a new access control list, number 340, based on access control list 330. You can then enter the context of access control list 340 to modify it.

```
G430-001(super)# ip policy-list-copy 330 340
Done!
```

Once you have entered the list context, you can perform the following actions:

- **Configure rules**. See Defining rules on page 575
- **Configure composite operations**. See Composite operations on page 581
- **Configure DSCP mapping (QoS lists only).** See DSCP table on page 584

Defining list identification attributes

The policy list attributes including name, owner, and cookie, are used by Avaya QoS Manager software to identify policy lists.

1. Enter the context of the policy list in which you want to define the attribute.
2. Enter one of the following commands, followed by a text string or integer:
 - **name**. Defines a list name (text string). The default value is *owner*.
 - **owner**. Defines a list owner (text string). The default value is *list#<listnumber>*.
 - **cookie**. Defines a list cookie (integer). The Avaya QoS Manager uses the cookie attribute internally. Normally, you should not change this attribute.

To set a policy list attribute to its default setting, use the **no** form of the appropriate command. For example, to set a list to its default name, use the command **no name**.

To view the attributes, use the **show list** command in the context of the list.

Default actions

When no rule matches a packet, the G430 applies the default action for the list. The following table shows the default action for each type of policy list:

List	Default action
Access control list	Accept all packets
QoS list	No change to the priority or DSCP

Deleting a policy list

To delete an access control list, enter **no ip access-control-list** followed by the number of the list you want to delete. To delete a QoS list, enter **no ip qos-list** followed by the number of the list you want to delete.

Attaching policy lists to an interface

Attached to each interface on the Avaya G430 Media Gateway are policy lists, including the ingress access control list, ingress QoS list, egress access control list, and egress QoS list.

Note:

You can also attach PBR lists to certain interfaces, but PBR lists are not attached to any interface by default.

Packets entering the interface

When a packet enters the G430 through an interface, the G430 applies the policy lists in the following order:

1. Apply the ingress access control list.
2. If the ingress access control list does not drop the packet:
 a. Apply the ingress QoS list.
 b. Apply the PBR list (if any).

The packet enters the G430 through the interface.

Packets exiting the interface

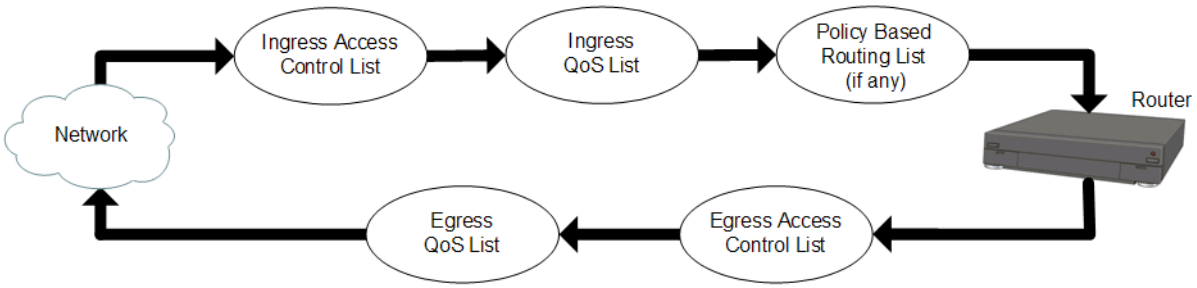
When a packet exits the G430 through an interface, the G430 applies the policy lists in the following order:

1. Apply the egress access control list.
2. If the egress access control list does not drop the packet, apply the egress QoS list.

The packet exits the G430 through the interface.

Figure 48 illustrates the order in which the G430 applies policy lists to packets.

Figure 48: Applying Policy Lists to Packets



You can configure which policy lists are attached to each interface. You can choose the ingress access control list and the egress access control list from among the access control lists that are configured on the G430. You can choose the ingress QoS list and the egress QoS list from among the QoS lists that are configured on the G430.

To attach an access control list to an interface as its ingress access control list, enter the interface context and enter **ip access-group *list number* in**. To attach an access control list to an interface as its egress access control list, enter the interface context and enter **ip access-group *list number* out**.

To attach a QoS list to an interface as its ingress QoS list, enter the interface context and enter **ip qos-group *list number* in**. To attach an access control list to an interface as its egress QoS list, enter the interface context and enter **ip qos-group *list number* out**.

For example, the following sequence of commands attach policy lists to the VLAN 2 interface. Access control list 301 becomes the ingress access control list for VLAN 2. QoS list 401 becomes the egress QoS list for VLAN 2.

```
G430-001# interface vlan 2
G430-001(if:VLAN 2)# ip access-group 301 in
Done!
G430-001(if:VLAN 2)# ip qos-group 401 out
Done!
```

To remove a list from an interface, use the **no** form of the appropriate command.

For example, if the ingress access control list for the VLAN 1 interface is list number 302, you can remove the list from the interface by entering the following commands:

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 1
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 1)# no ip access-group in
Done!
```

Note:

You cannot change or delete a default list. You cannot change or delete any list when it is attached to an interface. In order to change or delete a list that is attached to an interface, you must first remove the list from the interface. You can then change or delete the list. After changing the list, you can reattach the list to the interface.

Device-wide policy lists

You can attach a policy list (other than a policy-based routing list) to every interface on the G430 using one command. To do this, attach a list to the Loopback 1 interface. For more information, see Attaching policy lists to an interface on page 572.

Note:

If you attach a policy list to a Loopback interface other than Loopback 1, the policy list has no effect.

When you attach a policy list to the Loopback 1 interface, thereby creating a device-wide policy list, and you also attach policy lists to specific interfaces, the G430 applies the lists in the following order:

- Incoming packets:
 a. Apply the ingress policy lists that are attached to the interface
 b. Apply the device-wide ingress policy lists
- Outgoing packets:
 a. Apply the device-wide egress policy lists
 b. Apply the egress policy lists that are attached to the interface

Defining global rules

In an access control list, you can define global rules for packets that contain IP fragments and IP options. These rules apply to all packets. This is in contrast to individual rules, which apply to packets that match certain defined criteria. See Defining rules on page 575.

The G430 applies global rules before applying individual rules.

1. Enter the context of the access control list in which you want to define the rule.
2. Enter one of the following commands, followed by the name of a composite command:
 - **ip-fragments-in**. Applies to incoming packets that contain IP fragments
 - **ip-option-in**. Applies to incoming packets that contain IP options

The composite command can be any command defined in the composite operation list. These commands are case-sensitive. To view the composite operation list for the access control list you are working with, use the command **show composite-operation** in the context of the access control list.

The following example defines a rule in access control list 301 that denies access to all incoming packets that contain IP fragments:

```
G430-001(super)# ip access-control-list 301
G430-001(super/ACL 301)# ip-fragments-in Deny
Done!
```

Defining rules

You can configure policy rules to match packets based on one or more of the following criteria:

- Source IP address, or a range of addresses
- Destination IP address, or a range of addresses
- IP protocol, such as TCP, UDP, ICMP, or IGMP
- Source TCP or UDP port or a range of ports
- Destination TCP or UDP port or a range of ports
- ICMP type and code
- Fragment
- DSCP

Use IP wildcards to specify a range of source or destination IP addresses. The zero bits in the wildcard correspond to bits in the IP address that remain fixed. The one bits in the wildcard correspond to bits in the IP address that can vary. Note that this is the opposite of how bits are used in a subnet mask.

For access control lists, you can require the packet to be part of an established TCP session. If the packet is a request for a new TCP session, the packet does not match the rule. You can also specify whether an access control list accepts packets that have an `IP option` field.

Editing and creating rules

To create or edit a policy rule, you must enter the context of the rule. If the rule already exists, you can edit the rule from the rule context. If the rule does not exist, entering the rule context creates the rule.

1. Enter the context of the list in which you want to create or edit a rule.
2. Enter **`ip-rule`** followed by the number of the rule you want to create or edit. For example, to create rule 1, enter **`ip-rule 1`**.

You can use the **`description`** command in the rule context to add a description of the rule. This description is used in the AccessViolation Policy trap to identify and describe the IP rule in which the trap was caused.

To view the existing rules in a list, enter the list's context and then enter **`ip show-rule`**. Each list starts with a default rule. Each new rule has the same default parameters as the default rule. The default rule appears as follows:

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301)# show ip-rule

Index Protocol     IP               Wildcard        Port          Operation
      DSCP                                                       Fragment rule
----- -------- --- ---------------- --------------- ------------ --------------
Deflt  Any     Src  Any                              Any         Permit
       Any     Dst  Any                              Any         No
```

This rule permits all packets.

Policy lists rule criteria

Rules work in the following ways, depending on the type of list and the type of information in the packet:

- Layer 4 rules in an access control list with a *Permit* operation are applied to non-initial fragments

- Layer 4 rules in an access control list with a *Deny* operation are not applied to non-initial fragments, and the device continues checking the next IP rule. This is to prevent cases in which fragments that belong to other L4 sessions may be blocked by the other L4 session which is blocked.
- Layer 3 rules apply to non-initial fragments
- Layer 3 rules that include the fragment criteria do not apply to initial fragments or non-fragment packets
- Layer 3 rules that do not include the fragment criteria apply to initial fragments and non-fragment packets
- Layer 4 rules apply to initial fragments and non-fragment packets
- Layer 3 and Layer 4 rules in QoS and policy-based routing lists apply to non-initial fragments

IP protocol

To specify the IP protocol to which the rule applies, enter **ip-protocol** followed by the name of an IP protocol. If you want the rule to apply to all protocols, use **any** with the command. If you want the rule to apply to all protocols except for one, use the **no** form of the command, followed by the name of the protocol to which you do not want the rule to apply.

For example, the following command specifies the UDP protocol for rule 1 in QoS list 401:

```
G430-001(QoS 401/rule 1)# ip-protocol udp
```

The following command specifies any IP protocol except IGMP for rule 3 in access control list 302:

```
G430-001(ACL 302/ip rule 3)# no ip-protocol igmp
```

Source and destination IP address

To specify a range of source and destination IP addresses to which the rule applies, use the commands **source-ip** and **destination-ip**, followed by the IP range criteria. The IP range criteria can be one of the following:

- **A range**. Type two IP addresses to set a range of IP addresses to which the rule applies
- **A single address**. Type **host**, followed by an IP address, to set a single IP address to which the rule applies
- **A wildcard**. Type **host**, followed by an IP address using wildcards, to set a range of IP addresses to which the rule applies
- **All addresses**. Type **any** to apply the rule to all IP addresses

Use the **no** form of the appropriate command to specify that the rule does not apply to the IP address or addresses defined by the command.

For example, the following command specifies a source IP address of 10.10.10.20 for rule 1 in access control list 301:

```
G430-001(ACL 301/ip rule 1)# source-ip host 10.10.10.20
```

The following command allows any destination IP address for rule 3 in QoS list 404:

```
G430-001(QoS 404/rule 3)# destination-ip any
```

The following command specifies a source IP address in the range 10.10.0.0 through 10.10.255.255 for rule 1 in access control list 301:

```
G430-001(ACL 301/ip rule 1)# source-ip 10.10.0.0 0.0.255.255
```

The following command specifies a source IP address outside the range 64.236.24.0 through 64.236.24.255 for rule 7 in access control list 308:

```
G430-001(ACL 308/ip rule 7)# no source-ip 64.236.24.0 0.0.0.255
```

The following command specifies a source IP address in the range 64.<any>.24.<any> for rule 6 in access control list 350:

```
G430-001(ACL 350/ip rule 6)# source-ip 64.*.24.*
```

Source and destination port range

To specify a range of source and destination ports to which the rule applies, use the following commands, followed by either port name or port number range criteria:

- **`tcp source-port`**. The rule applies to TCP packets from ports that match the defined criteria
- **`tcp destination-port`**. The rule applies to TCP packets to ports that match the defined criteria
- **`udp source-port`**. The rule applies to UDP packets from ports that match the defined criteria
- **`udp destination-port`**. The rule applies to UDP packets to ports that match the defined criteria

This command also sets the IP protocol parameter to TCP or UDP.

Port name or number range criteria

- **A range**. Type **`range`**, followed by two port numbers, to set a range of port numbers to which the rule applies
- **Equal**. Type **`eq`**, followed by a port name or number, to set a port name or port number to which the rule applies

- **Greater than**. Type **gt**, followed by a port name or port number, to apply the rule to all ports with a name or number greater than the specified name or number
- **Less than**. Type **lt**, followed by a port name or port number, to apply the rule to all ports with a name or number less than the specified name or number
- **All**. Type **any** to apply the rule to all port names and port numbers

Use the **no** form of the appropriate command to specify that the rule does not apply to the ports defined by the command.

For example, the following command specifies a source TCP port named *telnet* for rule 1 in access control list 301:

```
G430-001(ACL 301/ip rule 1)# tcp source-port eq telnet
```

The following command specifies any destination UDP port less than 1024 for rule 3 in QoS list 404:

```
G430-001(QoS 404/rule 3)# udp destination-port lt 1024
```

The following command specifies any destination TCP port in the range 5000 through 5010 for rule 1 in access control list 301:

```
G430-001(ACL 301/ip rule 1)# tcp destination-port range 5000 5010
```

The following command specifies any source TCP port except a port named *http* for rule 7 in access control list 304:

```
G430-001(ACL 304/ip rule 7)# no tcp source-port eq http
```

ICMP type and code

To apply the rule to a specific type of ICMP packet, use the **icmp** command. This command sets the IP protocol parameter to ICMP, and specifies an ICMP type and code to which the rule applies. You can specify the ICMP type and code by integer or text string, as shown in the examples below. To apply the rule to all ICMP packets except the specified type and code, use the **no** form of this command.

For example, the following command specifies an ICMP echo reply packet for rule 1 in QoS list 401:

```
G430-001(QoS 401/rule 1)# icmp Echo-Reply
```

The following command specifies any ICMP packet except type 1 code 2 for rule 5 in access control list 321:

```
G430-001(ACL 321/ip rule 5)# no icmp 1 2
```

TCP establish bit (access control lists only)

In access control lists, you can use the **tcp established** command to specify that the rule only applies to packets that are part of an established TCP session (a session in with the TCP ACK or RST flag is set). Use the **no** form of this command to specify that the rule applies to all TCP packets. In either case, the command also sets the IP protocol parameter to TCP.

For example, the following command specifies that rule 6 in access control list 301 only matches packets that are part of an established TCP session:

```
G430-001(ACL 301/ip rule 6)# tcp established
```

Fragments

Enter **fragment** to apply the rule to non-initial fragments. You cannot use the **fragment** command in a rule that includes UDP or TCP source or destination ports.

```
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 5)# fragment
Done!
G430-001(super-ACL 301/ip rule 5)#
```

DSCP

Enter **dscp**, followed by a DSCP value (from 0 to 63), to apply the rule to all packets with the specified DSCP value. Use the **no** form of the command to remove the rule from the list.

For example, the following command specifies that rule 5 in access control list 301 only matches packets in which the DSCP value is set to 56:

```
G430-001(ACL 301/ip rule 5)# dscp 56
```

Composite Operation

For instructions on assigning a composite operation to an ip rule, see Adding composite operation to an ip rule on page 583.

Composite operations

A composite operation is a set of operations that the G430 can perform when a rule matches a packet. Every rule in a policy list has an **operation** field that specifies a composite operation. The **operation** field determines how the G430 handles a packet when the rule matches the packet.

There are different composite operations for access control list rules and QoS list rules. For each type of list, the G430 includes a pre-configured list of composite operations. You cannot change or delete pre-configured composite operations. You can define additional composite operations.

Pre-configured composite operations for access control lists

Table 131 lists the pre-configured entries in the composite operation table for rules in an access control list:

Table 131: Pre-configured access control list composite operations

No	Name	Access	Notify	Reset Connection
0	Permit	forward	no trap	no reset
1	Deny	deny	no trap	no reset
2	Deny-Notify	deny	trap all	no reset
3	Deny-Rst	deny	no trap	reset
4	Deny-Notify-Rst	deny	trap all	reset

Each column represents the following:

- **No**. A number identifying the operation
- **Name**. A name identifying the operation. Use this name to attach the operation to a rule.
- **Access**. Determines whether the operation forwards (forward) or drops (deny) the packet
- **Notify**. Determines whether the operation causes the G430 to send a trap when it drops a packet
- **Reset Connection**. Determines whether the operation causes the G430 to reset the connection when it drops a packet

Pre-configured composite operations for QoS lists

Table 132 lists the pre-configured entries in the composite operation table for rules in a QoS list:

Table 132: Pre-configured QoS list composite operations

No	Name	CoS	DSCP	Trust
0	CoS0	cos0	no change	No
1	CoS1	cos1	no change	No
2	CoS2	cos2	no change	No
3	CoS3	cos3	no change	No
4	CoS4	cos4	no change	No
5	CoS5	cos5	no change	No
6	CoS6	cos6	no change	No
7	CoS7	cos7	no change	No
9	No-Change	no change	no change	No
10	Trust-DSCP	-	-	DSCP
11	Trust-DSCP-CoS	-	-	DSCP and CoS

Each column represents the following:

- **No**. A number identifying the operation
- **Name**. A name identifying the operation. Use this name to attach the operation to a rule.
- **CoS**. The operation sets the `Ethernet IEEE 802.1p CoS` field in the packet to the value listed in this column
- **DSCP**. The operation sets the `DSCP` field in the packet to the value listed in this column
- **Trust**. Determines how to treat packets that have been tagged by the originator or other network devices. If the composite operation is set to Trust-DSCP, the packet's CoS tag is set to 0 before the QoS list rules and DSCP map are executed. If the composite operation is set to CoSX, the DSCP map is ignored, but the QoS list rules are executed on the `Ethernet IEEE 802.1p CoS` field. (For example, the composite operation CoS3 changes the `CoS` field to 3.) If the composite operation is set to Trust-DSCP-CoS, the operation uses the greater of the CoS or the DSCP value. If the composite operation is set to No Change, the operation makes no change to the packet's QoS tags.

Configuring composite operations

You can configure additional composite operations for QoS lists. You can also edit composite operations that you configured. You cannot edit pre-configured composite operations.

Note:

You cannot configure additional composite operations for access control lists, since all possible composite operations are pre-configured.

1. Enter the context of a QoS list.
2. Enter **composite-operation** followed by an index number. The number must be 12 or higher, since numbers 1 through 11 are assigned to pre-configured lists.
3. Use one or more of the following commands to set the parameters of the composite operation:
 - **dscp**. Determines the value to which the rule resets the packet's DSCP field. To ignore the DSCP field, use the argument **no change**, or enter **no dscp**.
 - **cos**. Determines the value to which the rule resets the packet's CoS field. To ignore the CoS field, use the argument **no change**, or enter **no cos**.
4. Enter **name**, followed by a text string, to assign a name to the composite operation. You must assign a name to the composite operation, because when you attach the composite operation to a rule, you use the name, not the index number, to identify the composite operation.

Adding composite operation to an ip rule

You can add or delete composite operations to or from an IP rule by using the **[no] composite-operation** command, followed by the name of the composite operation you want to add or delete, in the context of the rule. See Composite operation example on page 584 for an example.

Composite operation example

The following commands create a new composite operation called dscp5 and assign the new composite operation to rule 3 in QoS list 402. If the packet matches a rule, the G430 changes the value of the DSCP field in the packet to 5.

```
G430-001# ip qos-list 402
G430-001(QoS 402)# composite-operation 12
G430-001(QoS 402/cot 12)# name dscp5
Done!
G430-001(QoS 402/cot 12)# dscp 5
Done!
G430-001(QoS 402/cot 12)# cos no-change
Done!
G430-001(QoS 402/cot 12)# exit
G430-001(QoS 402)# ip-rule 3
G430-001(QoS 402/rule 3)# composite-operation dscp5
Done!
```

DSCP table

DSCP is a standards-defined method for determining packet priority through an interface, either into or out of a router.

There are three ways you can use the **DSCP** field:

- **Classifier**. Select a packet based on the contents of some portions of the packet header and apply behavioral policies based on service characteristic defined by the DSCP value
- **Marker**. Set the DSCP field based on the traffic profile, as determined by the defined rules
- **Metering**. Check compliance to traffic profile using filtering functions

A DSCP value can be mapped to a Class of Service (CoS). Then, for a CoS, rules can be applied to determine priority behavior for packets meeting the criteria for the entire CoS. Multiple DSCP values can be mapped to a single CoS. Rules can also be applied to individual DSCP values.

The default value of DSCP in a packet is 0, which is defined as “best-effort.” You can determine a higher priority for a traffic type by changing the DSCP value of the packet using a QoS rule or composite operation.

Each QoS list includes a DSCP table. A DSCP lists each possible DSCP value, from 0 to 63. For each value, the list specifies a composite operation. See Pre-configured composite operations for QoS lists on page 582.

QoS rules on the list take precedence over the DSCP table. If a QoS rule other than the default matches the packet, the G430 does not apply the DSCP table to the packet. The G430 applies only the operation specified in the QoS rule.

Changing an entry in the DSCP table

1. Enter the context of a QoS list.
2. Enter **dscp-table** followed by the number of the DSCP value for which you want to change its composite operation.
3. Enter **composite-operation** followed by the name of the composite operation you want to execute for packets with the specified DSCP value.

The following commands specify the pre-configured composite operation CoS5 for DSCP table entry 33 in QoS list 401. Every packet with DSCP equal to 33 is assigned CoS priority 5.

```
G430-001# ip qos-list 401
G430-001(QoS 401)# dscp-table 33
G430-001(QoS 401/dscp 33)# composite-operation CoS5
Done!
```

The following commands create a new composite operation called dscp5 and assign the new composite operation to DSCP table entry 7 in QoS list 402. Every packet with DSCP equal to 7 is assigned a new DSCP value of 5.

```
G430-001(super)# ip qos-list 402
G430-001(super/QoS 402)# composite-operation 12
G430-001(super/QoS 402/CompOp 12)# name dscp5
Done!
G430-001(super/QoS 402/CompOp 12)# dscp 5
Done!
G430-001(super/QoS 402/CompOp 12)# cos No-Change
Done!
G430-001(super/QoS 402/CompOp 12)# exit
G430-001(super/QoS 402)# dscp-table 7
G430-001(super/QoS 402/dscp 7)# composite-operation dscp5
Done!
```

Composite operation dscp5 changes the mapping of packets entering the router with a DSCP values of 7. DSCP value 5 is most likely to be mapped to a different CoS, making these packets subject to a different set of behavioral rules.

Displaying and testing policy lists

To verify access control lists, QoS lists, and policy-based routing (PBR) lists, you can view the configuration of the lists. You can also test the effect of the lists on simulated IP packets.

Displaying policy lists

To view information about policy lists and their components, use the following commands. Many of these commands produce different results in different contexts.

- In general context:
 - **`show ip access-control-list`**. Displays a list of all configured access control lists, with their list numbers and owners
 - **`show ip access-control-list`** ***`list number`*** **`detailed`**. Displays all the parameters of the specified access control list
 - **`show ip qos-list`**. Displays a list of all configured QoS lists, with their list numbers and owners
 - **`show ip qos-list detailed`**. Displays all the parameters of the specified QoS list
- In `ip access-control-list` context:
 - **`show composite-operation`**. Displays a list of all composite operations configured for the list
 - **`show ip-rule`**. Displays a list of all rules configured for the list
 - **`show list`**. displays the parameters of the current list, including its rules
- In `ip access-control-list/ip-rule` context:
 - **`show composite-operation`**. Displays the parameters of the composite operation assigned to the current rule
 - **`show ip-rule`**. Displays the parameters of the current rule
- In `ip qos-list` context:
 - **`show composite-operation`**. Displays a list of all composite operations configured for the list
 - **`show dscp-table`**. Displays the current list's DSCP table
 - **`show ip-rule`**. Displays a list of all rules configured for the list
 - **`show list`**. Displays the parameters of the current list, including its rules

- In `ip qos-list/ip-rule` context:
 - **`show composite-operation`**. Displays the parameters of the composite operation assigned to the current rule
 - **`show dscp-table`**. Displays the current list's DSCP table
 - **`show ip-rule`**. Displays the parameters of the current rule
- In `ip qos-list/dscp-table` context:
 - **`show dscp-table`**. Displays the parameters of the current DSCP table entry
- In `ip qos-list/composite-operation` context:
 - **`show composite-operation`**. Displays the parameters of the current composite operation

Simulating packets

Use the **`ip simulate`** command in the context of an interface to test a policy list. The command tests the effect of the policy list on a simulated IP packet in the interface. You must specify the number of a policy list, the direction of the packet (in or out), and a source and destination IP address. You may also specify other parameters. For a full list of parameters, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

For example, the following command simulates the effect of applying QoS list number 401 to a packet entering the G430 through interface VLAN 2:

```
G430-001(if:VLAN 2)# ip simulate 401 in CoS1 dscp46 10.1.1.1
10.2.2.2 tcp 1182 20
```

The simulated packet has the following properties:

- CoS priority is 1
- DSCP is 46
- source IP address is 10.1.1.1
- destination IP address is 10.2.2.2
- IP protocol is TCP
- source TCP port is 1182
- destination TCP port is 20

When you use the **ip simulate** command, the G430 displays the effect of the policy rules on the simulated packet. For example:

```
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 2)# ip simulate 401 in CoS1 dscp46 10.1.1.1
10.2.2.2 tcp 1182 20
Rule match for simulated packet is the default rule
Composite action for simulated packet is CoS6
New priority value is fwd6
Dscp value is not changed
```

Summary of access control list commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 133: Access control list CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Command	Description
interface {dialer\|loopback\|fastethernet\|tunnel\|vlan}			Enter the Dialer, Loopback, FastEthernet, Tunnel or VLAN interface configuration context
	ip access-group		Activate a specific Access Control list, for a specific direction, on the current interface
	ip simulate		Test the action of a policy on a simulated packet
	show ip access-control-list		Display the attributes of a specific access control list or of all access control lists on the current interface
ip access-control-list			Enter configuration mode for the specified policy access control list, and create the list if it does not exist
	cookie		Set the cookie for the current list

1 of 3

Table 133: Access control list CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Command	Description
	ip-fragments-in		Specify the action taken on incoming IP fragmentation packets for the current access control list
	ip-option-in		Specify the action taken on incoming packets carrying an IP option for the current access control list
	ip-rule		Enter configuration mode for a specified policy rule or, if the rule doesn't exist, create it and enter its configuration mode
		composite-operation	Assign the specified composite operation to the current rule
		destination-ip	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified destination IP address
		dscp	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified DSCP value
		fragment	Apply the current rule for non-initial fragments only
		icmp	Apply the current rule to a specific type of ICMP packet
		ip-protocol	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified IP protocol
		show composite-operation	Display the parameters of the composite operation assigned to the current rule
		show ip-rule	Display the attributes of the current rule
		source-ip	Apply the current rule to packets from the specified source IP address
		tcp destination-port	Apply the current rule to TCP packets with the specified destination port

2 of 3

Table 133: Access control list CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Command	Description
		tcp established	Apply the current rule only to packets that are part of an established TCP session
		tcp source-port	Apply the current rule to TCP packets from ports with specified source port
		udp destination-port	Apply the rule to UDP packets with the specified destination port
		udp source-port	Apply the rule to UDP packets from the specified source port
	name		Assign a name to the current list
	owner		Specify the owner of the current list
	show composite-operation		Display the composite operations configured for the list
	show ip-rule		Display the rules configured for the current list attributes of a specific rule
	show list		Display the attributes of the current list, including its rules
ip policy-list-copy			Copy an existing policy list to a new list
show ip access-control-list			Display the attributes of a specific access control list or of all access control lists

3 of 3

Summary of QoS list commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 134: QoS list CLI commands

Root level command	Command	Command	Description
interface {dialer\| loopback\| fastethernet \|tunnel\| vlan}			Enter the `Dialer`, `Loopback`, `FastEthernet`, `Tunnel`, or `VLAN` interface configuration context
	ip qos-group		Activate a specific QoS list, for a specific direction, on the current interface
	ip simulate		Test the action of a policy on a simulated packet
	show ip qos-list		Display the attributes of a specific QoS list or all QoS lists for the current interface
ip policy-list-copy			Copy an existing policy list to a new list
ip qos-list			Enter configuration mode for the specified QoS list, and create the list if it does not exist
	composite-operation		Enter the configuration mode for one of the current list's composite operations
		cos	Set the CoS priority value for the current composite operation
		dscp	Set the DSCP value for the current composite operation
		name	Assign a name to the current composite operation

1 of 3

Table 134: QoS list CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Command	Description
		show composite-operation	Display the attributes of the current composite operation
	cookie		Set the cookie for the current list
	dscp-table		Enter the DSCP table entry context for a particular DSCP value for the current QoS list
		composite-operation	Specify the composite operation to execute for packets with the specified DSCP value
		name	Assign a name to the current DSCP table entry
		show dscp-table	Display the parameters of the current DSCP table entry
	ip-rule		Enter configuration mode for a specified policy rule or, if the rule does not exist, create it and enter its configuration mode
		composite-operation	Assign the specified composite operation to the current rule
		destination-ip	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified destination IP address
		dscp	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified DSCP value
		fragment	Apply the current rule for non-initial fragments only
		icmp	Apply the current rule to a specific type of ICMP packet
		ip-protocol	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified IP protocol
		show composite-operation	Display the parameters of the composite operation assigned to the current rule

2 of 3

Table 134: QoS list CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	Command	Command	Description
		show dscp-table	Display the current list's DSCP table
		show ip-rule	Display the attributes of the current rule
		source-ip	Apply the current rule to packets from the specified source IP address
		tcp destination-port	Apply the current rule to TCP packets with the specified destination port
		tcp source-port	Apply the current rule to TCP packets from ports with specified source port
		udp destination-port	Apply the rule to UDP packets with the specified destination port
		udp source-port	Apply the rule to UDP packets from the specified source port
	name		Assign a name to the current list
	owner		Specify the owner of the current list
	pre-classification		Specify which priority tag the current QoS list uses for data flows
	show composite-operation		Display all composite operations configured for the list
	show dscp-table		Display the current list's DSCP table
	show ip-rule		Display the rules configured for the current list attributes of a specific rule
	show list		Display the attributes of the current list, including its rules
show ip qos-list			Display the attributes of a specific QoS list or all QoS lists

Chapter 21: Configuring policy-based routing

Policy-based routing enables you to configure a routing scheme based on traffic's source IP address, destination IP address, IP protocol, and other characteristics. You can use policy-based routing (PBR) lists to determine the routing of packets that match the rules defined in the list. Each PBR list includes a set of rules, and each rule includes a next hop list. Each next hop list contains up to 20 next hop destinations to which the G430 sends packets that match the rule. A destination can be either an IP address or an interface.

Policy-based routing takes place only when the packet enters the interface, not when it leaves. Policy-based routing takes place after the packet is processed by the Ingress Access Control List and the Ingress QoS list. Thus, the PBR list evaluates the packet after the packet's `DSCP` field has been modified by the Ingress QoS List. See Figure 48.

Note:

The Loopback 1 interface is an exception to this rule. On the Loopback 1 interface, PBR lists are applied when the packet leaves the interface. This enables the PBR list to handle packets sent by the G430 device itself, as explained below.

Note:

ICMP keepalive provides the interface with the ability to determine whether a next hop is or is not available. See ICMP keepalive on page 268.

Policy-based routing only operates on routed packets. Packets traveling within the same subnet are not routed, and are, therefore, not affected by policy-based routing.

The Loopback interface is a logical interface which handles traffic that is sent to and from the G430 itself. This includes ping packets to or from the G430, as well as Telnet, SSH, FTP, DHCP Relay, TFTP, HTTP, NTP, SNMP, H.248, and other types of traffic. The Loopback interface is also used for traffic to and from analog and DCP phones connected to the device via IP phone entities.

The Loopback interface is always up. You should attach a PBR list to the Loopback interface if you want to route specific packets generated by the G430 to a specific next-hop.

Unlike the case with other interfaces, PBR lists on the Loopback interface are applied to packets when they leave the G430, rather than when they enter.

Certain types of packets are not considered router packets (on the Loopback interface only), and are, therefore, not affected by policy-based routing. These include RIP, OSPF, VRRP, GRE, and keepalive packets. On the other hand, packets using SNMP, Telnet, Bootp, ICMP, FTP, SCP, TFTP, HTTP, NTP, and H.248 protocols are considered routed packets, and are, therefore, affected by policy-based routing on the Loopback interface.

Applications

The most common application for policy-based routing is to provide for separate routing of voice and data traffic. It can also be used as a means to provide backup routes for defined traffic types.

Separate routing of voice and data traffic

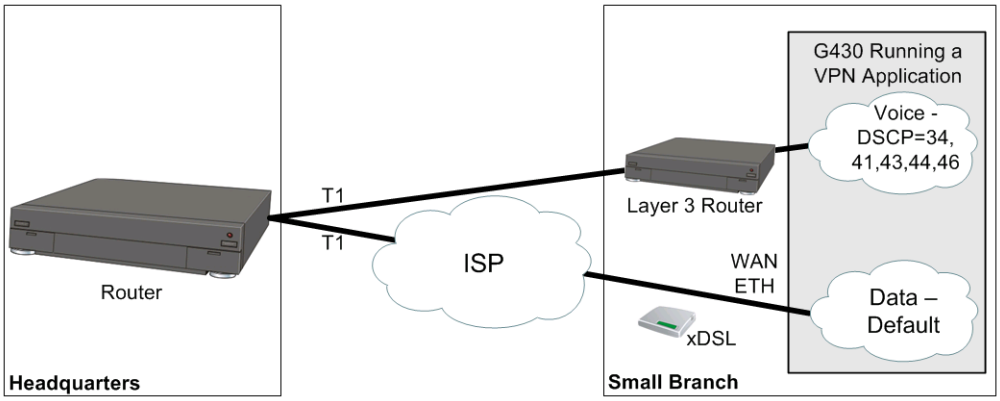
Although there are many possible applications for policy-based routing, the most common application is to create separate routing for voice and data traffic.

For example, the application shown in Figure 49 uses the `DSCP` field to identify VoIP control packets (DSCP = 34, 41), VoIP Bearer RESV packets (DSCP = 43, 44), and VoIP Bearer packets (DSCP = 46). Policy-based routing sends these packets over the T1 WAN line, and sends other packets over the Internet. This saves bandwidth on the more expensive external Serial interface.

Note:

When using a broadband modem (either xDSL or cable), it is recommended to run the VPN application.

Figure 49: Policy-based routing – Voice/Data division by DSCP



Backup

You can utilize policy-based routing to define backup routes for defined classes of traffic. If the first route on the next hop list fails, the packets are routed to a subsequent hop. When necessary, you can use the NULL interface to drop packets when the primary next hop fails. For example, voice packets are usually sent over a WAN line, and not the Internet. You can configure a PBR list to drop voice packets when the WAN line is down.

Setting up policy-based routing

For a full example of a policy-based routing configuration, see Application example on page 604.

1. Define PBR lists.
 - In general context, enter **ip pbr-list** followed by a list number in the range 800-899. For example:

```
G430-001(super)# ip pbr-list 802
G430-001(super-PBR 802)#
```

 - To assign a name to the list, use the **name** command, followed by a text string, in the PBR list context. The default name is **list #<list number>**. For example:

```
G430-001(super-PBR 802)# name "voice"
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802)#
```

 - To assign an owner to the list, use the **owner** command, followed by a text string, in the PBR list context. The default owner is **other**. For example:

```
G430-001(super-PBR 802)# owner "tom"
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802)#
```

2. Define PBR rules.

 In the PBR list context, enter **ip-rule**, followed by the number of the rule, to define a rule for the PBR list. Repeat this command to define additional rules. A rule contains: (i) criteria that is matched against the packet, and (ii) a next hop list. When a packet matches the criteria specified in the rule, the rule's next hop list determines how the packet is routed. Each PBR list can have up to 1,500 rules. The first rule that matches the packet determines the packet's routing.

 It is important to include a destination address, or range of addresses, in PBR rules to better classify the traffic to be routed. For an illustration, see Application example on page 604.

 Note:

 It is recommended to leave a gap between rule numbers, in order to leave room for inserting additional rules at a later time. For example, ip-rule 10, ip-rule 20, ip-rule 30.

 The following example creates rule 1, which routes packets going to IP address 149.49.43.210 with a DSCP value of 34 according to next hop list 1. The next step explains how to define a next hop list. For additional details about PBR rules, see PBR rules on page 600.

```
G430-001(super-PBR 802)# ip-rule 1
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# next-hop list 1
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# destination-ip host 149.49.43.210
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# dscp 43
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)#
```

 Note:

 Rules do not include a default next hop list. Thus, if you do not include a next hop list in the rule, the packet is routed according to destination-based routing, that is, the ordinary routing that would apply without policy-based routing.

3. Define next hop lists.

 Enter **exit** twice to return to general context. In general context, define all the next hop lists that you have used in PBR rules.

 Note:

 You can also perform this step before defining PBR lists and rules.

 Enter **ip next-hop-list**, followed by the number of the list, to define a next hop list. In the next hop list context, use the following commands to define the next hops in the list:

 - Enter **next-hop-ip**, followed by the index number of the entry in the next hop list, to define an IP address as a next hop. You can optionally apply tracking to monitor the route.

- Enter **next-hop-interface**, followed by the index number of the entry in the next hop list, to define an interface as a next hop. You can optionally apply tracking to monitor the route.

You can also use the **name** command to assign a name to the next hop list.

Note:

You cannot use a FastEthernet Interface as an entry on a next hop list unless the interface was previously configured to use **PPPoE** encapsulation, or was configured as a DHCP client. See Configuring PPPoE on page 241, and Configuring DHCP client on page 196.

A next hop list can include the value NULL0. When the next hop is NULL0, the G430 drops the packet. However, you cannot apply tracking to NULL0.

The following example creates next hop list 1, named ***"Data to HQ"***, with three entries:

- The first entry is the FastEthernet 10/2 interface. Object tracker 3 is applied to monitor the route. For details about configuring the object tracker see Object tracking configuration on page 275.
- The second entry is IP address 172.16.1.221. This is the IP address of the external Layer 3 router connected to the G430.
- The third entry is NULL0, which means the packet is dropped

```
G430-001(super)# ip next-hop-list 1
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#name "Data_to_HQ"
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#next-hop-interface 1 FastEthernet 10/2
track 3
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#next-hop-ip 2 172.16.1.221
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#next-hop-interface 3 Null0
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#
```

For additional details about next hop lists, see Next hop lists on page 602.

This example demonstrates a case where the data traffic is sent over the WAN FastEthernet Interface through the Internet. When the track detects that this next hop is not valid, traffic is routed over the external Serial interface connected to the external Layer 3 router.

4. Apply the PBR list to an interface.

 Enter **exit** to return to general context. From general context, enter the interface to which you want to apply the PBR list. In the interface context, enter **ip pbr-group**, followed by the number of the PBR list, to attach the list to the interface. The list will be applied to packets entering the interface.

 The following example applies PBR list 802 to VLAN 2.

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 2
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 2)# ip pbr-group 802
Done!
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 2)#
```

5. Apply the PBR list to the Loopback interface.

 The following example applies PBR list 802 to the Loopback interface.

```
G430-001(super)# interface Loopback 1
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# ip pbr-group 802
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

6. Enter **copy running-config startup-config**. This saves the new policy-based routing configuration in the startup configuration file.

PBR rules

Each PBR list can have up to 1,500 rules. The first rule that matches the packet specifies the next hop list for the packet. If no rule matches the packet, the packet is routed according to the default rule.

You can configure policy rules to match packets based on one or more of the following criteria:

- Source IP address, or a range of addresses
- Destination IP address or a range of addresses
- IP protocol, such as TCP, UDP, ICMP, IGMP
- Source TCP or UDP port or a range of ports
- Destination TCP or UDP port or a range of ports
- ICMP type and code
- Fragments
- DSCP field

Note:

The fragment criteria is used for non-initial fragments only. You cannot specify TCP/UDP ports or ICMP code/type for a rule when using the **fragment** command.

Use IP wildcards to specify a range of source or destination IP addresses. The zero bits in the wildcard correspond to bits in the IP address that remain fixed. The one bits in the wildcard correspond to bits in the IP address that can vary. Note that this is the opposite of how bits are used in a subnet mask.

Note:

When you use destination and source ports in a PBR rule, policy-based routing does not catch fragments.

Note:

It is recommended to leave a gap between rule numbers, in order to leave room for inserting additional rules at a later time. For example, ip-rule 10, ip-rule 20, ip-rule 30.

Modifying rules

To modify a policy-based routing rule, you must enter the context of the rule and redefine the rule criteria.

1. Enter the context of the PBR list to which the rule belongs.
2. Enter **ip-rule** followed by the number of the rule you want to modify. For example, to create rule 1, enter **ip-rule 1**.

To view the rules that belong to a PBR list, enter the list's context and then enter **show ip-rule**.

PBR rule criteria

The rule criteria for PBR rules are largely the same as the rule criteria for other policy list rules. Refer to Policy lists rule criteria on page 576 for an explanation of the rule criteria, including explanations and examples of the commands used to set the criteria.

Unlike other policy lists, PBR lists do not use composite operations. Thus, there is no **composite-operation** command in the context of a PBR rule. Instead, PBR lists use next hop lists. For an explanation of next hop lists, see Next hop lists on page 602.

Enter **next-hop list**, followed by the list number of a next hop list, to specify a next hop list for the G430 to apply to packets that match the rule. You can specify *Destination Based Routing* instead of a next hop list, in which case the G430 applies destination-based routing to a packet when the packet matches the rule.

If the next hop list specified in the rule does not exist, the G430 applies destination-based routing to packets that match the rule.

Next hop lists

PBR rules include a next hop list. When the rule matches a packet, the G430 routes the packet according to the specified next hop list.

Each next hop list can include up to 20 entries. An entry in a next hop list can be either an IP address or an interface. The G430 attempts to route the packet to the first available destination on the next hop list. If every destination on the list is unavailable, the G430 routes the packet according to destination-based routing.

Modifying next hop lists

To modify a next hop list, you must enter the context of the next hop list. To enter a next hop list context, enter **ip next-hop-list** followed by the number of the list you want to edit. For example, to modify next hop list 1, enter **ip next-hop-list 1**.

To show the next hops in an existing list, enter the context of the next hop list and enter **show next-hop**.

Adding entries to a next hop list

1. Enter the context of the next hop list.
2. Use one of the following commands:
 - To enter an IP address as a next hop, enter **next-hop-ip**, followed by the index number of the entry and the IP address. You can optionally apply tracking to monitor the route. For example, the command **next-hop-ip 2 149.49.200.2 track 3** sets the IP address 149.49.200.2 as the second entry on the next hop list and applies object tracker 3 to monitor the route.
 - To enter an interface as a next hop, enter **next-hop-interface**, followed by the index number of the entry and the name of the interface. You can optionally apply tracking to monitor the route, except for the NULL0. For example, the command **next-hop-interface 3 fastethernet 10/2** sets FastEthernet 10/2 as the third entry on the next hop list.

Deleting an entry from a next hop list

1. Enter the context of the next hop list.

2. Use one of the following commands:
 - To delete an IP address, enter **no next-hop-ip**, followed by the index number of the entry you want to delete. For example, the command **no next-hop-ip 2** deletes the second entry from the next hop list.
 - To delete an interface, enter **no next-hop-interface**, followed by the index number of the entry you want to delete. For example, the command **no next-hop-interface 3** deletes the third entry from the next hop list.

Canceling tracking and keeping the next hop

1. Enter the context of the next hop list.
2. Use the **next-hop-ip** or **next-hop-interface** command again, without the **track** keyword.

Changing the object tracker and keeping the next hop

1. Enter the context of the next hop list.
2. Use the **next-hop-ip** or **next-hop-interface** command again, with the **track** keyword followed by the new track index.

Editing and deleting PBR lists

You cannot delete or modify a PBR list when it is attached to an interface. In order to delete or modify a PBR list, you must first remove the list from the interface. You can then delete or modify the list. After modifying the list, you can reattach the list to the interface.

To remove a list from an interface, use the **no** form of the **ip pbr-group** command in the interface context. The following example removes the PBR list from the VLAN 2 interface.

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 1
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 1)# no ip pbr-group
Done!
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 1)#
```

To modify a PBR list, enter **ip pbr-list**, followed by the number of the list you want to modify, to enter the list context. Redefine the parameters of the list.

To delete a PBR list, enter **exit** to return to general context and enter **no ip pbr-list** followed by the number of the list you want to delete.

Displaying PBR lists

To view information about PBR lists and their components, use the following commands. Many of these commands produce different results in different contexts.

- In general context:
 - **show ip active-pbr-lists**. Displays details about a specified PBR list, or about all active PBR lists, according to the interfaces on which the lists are active
 - **show ip pbr-list**. Displays a list of all configured PBR lists, with their list numbers and names and their owners
 - **show ip pbr-list *list number***. Displays the list number and name of the specified PBR list
 - **show ip pbr-list all detailed**. Displays all the parameters of all configured PBR lists
 - **show ip pbr-list *list number* detailed**. Displays all the parameters of the specified PBR list
 - **show ip active-lists**. Displays a list of each G430 interface to which a PBR list is attached, along with the number and name of the PBR list
 - **show ip active-lists *list number***. Displays a list of each G430 interface to which the specified PBR list is attached, along with the number and name of the PBR list
 - **show ip next-hop-list all**. Displays the number and name of all next hop lists
 - **show ip next-hop-list *list number***. Displays the number and name of the specified next hop list
- In PBR list context:
 - **show list**. Displays all the parameters of the current PBR list
 - **show ip-rule**. Displays the parameters of all rules configured for the current list
 - **show ip-rule *rule number***. Displays the parameters of the specified rule
- In next hop list context:
 - **show next-hop**. Displays the next hop entries in the current next hop list and their current status

Application example

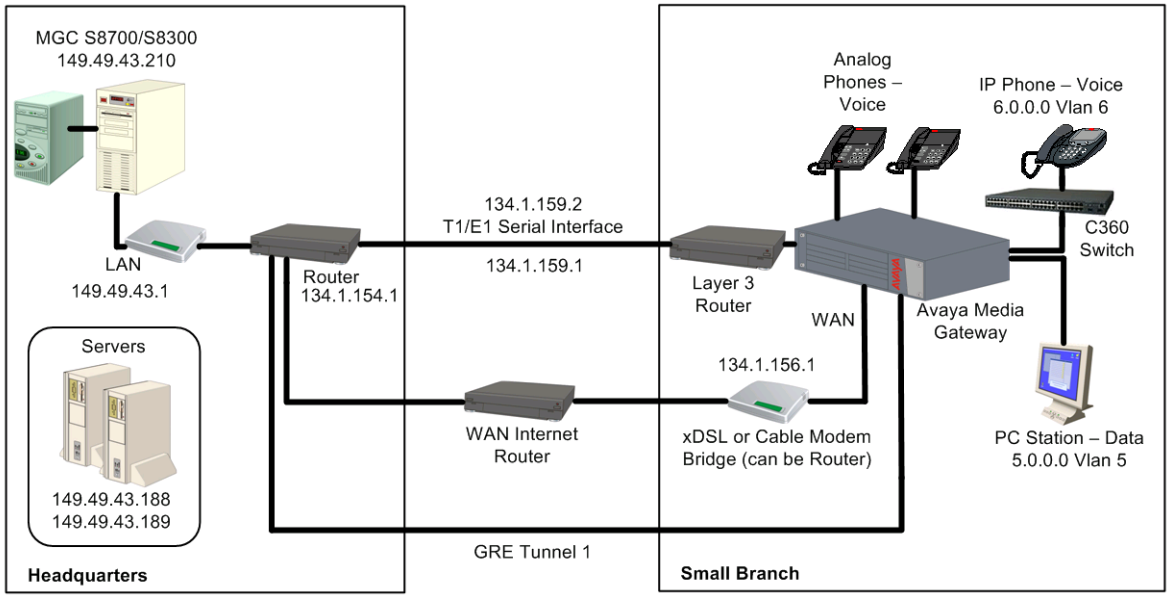
The following example creates a policy-based routing scheme in which:

- Voice traffic is routed over an external Serial interface using an external Layer 3 router connected to the gateway. If the interface is down, the traffic is dropped.

- Data traffic is routed over a GRE tunnel. If the tunnel is down, the traffic is routed over the external Serial interface. If both interfaces are down, the traffic is dropped.

Figure 50 illustrates the sample application described below.

Figure 50: Sample policy-based routing application



This example includes a voice VLAN (6) and a data VLAN (5). The PMI is on VLAN 6. The G430 is managed by a remote Media Gateway Controller (MGC) with the IP address 149.49.43.210. The G430 also includes a local S8300 in LSP mode.

IP phones are located on the same subnet as the PMI. Therefore, there is no routing between the PMI and the IP phones.

In this example, the object of policy-based routing is to route all voice traffic over the E1/T1 line, which is more expensive but provides the superior QoS necessary for voice traffic. Remaining traffic is to be routed over the more inexpensive Internet connection.

It is assumed that the IP phones on VLAN 6 establish connections with other IP phones on the same subnet, sending signalling packets to the MGC, and bearer packets directly to other IP phones or to the G430.

The policy-based routing configuring starts with PBR list 801. This list requires all voice packets addressed to the MGC (149.49.43.210) with DSCP values that indicate voice transmission (34, 41, 43, 44, and 46) to be routed according to next hop list 1. This list directs packets to the T1/E1 interface. If that interface is down, the packets are dropped.

In this example, it is important to include the destination IP address in each rule. This is because without the destination address, calls from IP phones on VLAN 6 to a Softphone on VLAN 5 will be routed by the PBR list to the E1/T1 line, rather than being sent directly to VLAN 5 via the G430.

Configuration for the sample policy-based routing application

```
G430-001(super)# ip pbr-list 801
G430-001(super-PBR 801)# name "Voice"
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801)# ip-rule 1
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 1)# next-hop list 1
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 1)# destination-ip 149.49.123.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 1)# dscp 34
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 1)# exit
G430-001(super-PBR 801)# ip-rule 10
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 10)# next-hop list 1
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 10)# destination-ip 149.49.123.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 10)# dscp 41
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 10)# exit
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 20)# destination-ip 149.49.123.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 20)# dscp 43
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 20)# exit
G430-001(super-PBR 801)# ip-rule 30
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 30)# next-hop list 1
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 30)# destination-ip 149.49.123.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 30)# dscp 44
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 30)# exit
G430-001(super-PBR 801)# ip-rule 40
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 40)# next-hop list 1
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 40)# destination-ip 149.49.123.0 0.0.0.255
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 40)# dscp 46
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 801/ip rule 40)# exit
G430-001(super-PBR 801)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

The next group of commands configures next hop list 1, which was included in the rules configured above. Next hop list 1 sends packets that match the rule in which it is included to the IP address of the Layer 3 router. If that interface is not available, the next hop list requires the packet to be dropped (Null0). This is because the QoS on the Internet interface is not adequate for voice packets. It would also be possible to include one or more backup interfaces in this next hop list.

```
G430-001(super)# ip next-hop-list 1
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#name "Voice-To_HQ"
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#next-hop-ip 1 <external Layer 3 router IP address>
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#next-hop-interface 2 Null0
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 1)#exit
G430-001(super)#
```

The next set of commands applies the PBR list to the voice VLAN (6).

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 6
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 6)# ip pbr-group 801
Done!
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 6)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

The next set of commands applies the PBR list to the Loopback interface. This is necessary to ensure that voice packets generated by the G430 itself are routed via the external E1/T1 line installed on the external Layer 3 router. The Loopback interface is a logical interface that is always up. Packets sent from the G430, such as signaling packets, are sent via the Loopback interface. In this example, applying PBR list 801 to the Loopback interface ensures that signaling packets originating from voice traffic are sent via the T1/E1 line.

```
G430-001(super)# interface Loopback 1
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# ip pbr-group 801
Done!
G430-001(super-if:Loopback 1)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

The next set of commands defines a new PBR list (802). This list will be applied to the data interface (VLAN 5). The purpose of this is to route data traffic through interfaces other than the E1/T1 interface, so that this traffic will not interface with voice traffic.

```
G430-001(super)# ip pbr-list 802
G430-001(super-PBR 802)# name "Data_To_HQ"
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802)# ip-rule 1
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# next-hop list 2
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# ip-protocol tcp
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# destination-ip host 149.49.43.189
Done!
G430-001(super-PBR 802/ip rule 1)# exit
G430-001(super-PBR 802)# exit
```

The next set of commands creates next hop list 2. This next hop list routes traffic to the GRE tunnel (Tunnel 1). If the GRE tunnel is not available, then the next hop list checks the next entry on the list and routes the traffic to the external E1/T1 interface. If neither interface is available, the traffic is dropped. This allows data traffic to use the E1/T1 interface, but only when the GRE tunnel is not available. Alternatively, the list can be configured without the external E1/T1 interface, preventing data traffic from using the external E1/T1 interface at all.

```
G430-001(super)# ip next-hop-list 2
G430-001(super-next hop list 2)#name "Data-To_HQ"
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 2)#next-hop-interface 1 Tunnel 1
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 2)#next-hop-ip 2 <external Layer 3 router IP address>
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 2)#next-hop-interface 3 Null0
Done!
G430-001(super-next hop list 2)#exit
G430-001(super)#
```

Finally, the next set of commands applies the PBR list to the data VLAN (5).

```
G430-001(super)# interface vlan 5
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 6)# ip pbr-group 802
Done!
G430-001(super-if:VLAN 6)# exit
G430-001(super)#
```

In this example you can add a track on GRE Tunnel 1 in order to detect whether this next hop is valid or not (for more information on object tracking, refer to Object tracking on page 274). Note that the GRE tunnel itself has keepalive and can detect the status of the interface and, therefore, modify the next hop status.

Simulating packets in PBR

Policy-based routing supports the **ip simulate** command for testing policies. Refer to Simulating packets on page 587.

Summary of policy-based routing commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 135: Policy-based routing CLI commands

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
ip next-hop-list			Enter the context of the specified next hop list. If the list does not exist, it is created.
	next-hop-interface		Add the specified interface to the next hop path for this next-hop list
	next-hop-ip		Add the specified ip address to the next hop path for this next-hop list
	show next-hop		Display the next-hop entries in the current list
interface			Enter the interface configuration mode for a `Dialer`, `Loopback`, `Fast Ethernet`, `Tunnel` or `VLAN` interface
	ip pbr-group		Apply the specified PBR list to the current interface. The PBR list is applied to ingress packets only.
ip pbr-list			Enter the context of the specified PBR list. If the list does not exist, it is created.
	cookie		Set the cookie for the current list
	ip-rule		Enter configuration mode for the specified rule. If the specified rule does not exist, the system creates it and enters its configuration mode.

1 of 3

Table 135: Policy-based routing CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
		destination-ip	Specify the destination IP address of packets to which the current rule applies
		dscp	Specify the DSCP value that is set by the current policy operation
		fragment	Apply the current rule for non-initial fragments only
		icmp	Apply the current rule to a specific type of ICMP packet
		ip-protocol	Apply the current rule to packets with the specified IP protocol
		next-hop	Specify the next-hop policy to use when the current rule is applied
		show ip next-hop-list	Display the details of the next-hop list or of all next-hop lists
		show ip-rule	Display the attributes of a specific rule or all rules
		source-ip	Apply the current rule to packets from the specified source IP address
		tcp destination-port	Apply the current rule to TCP packets with the specified destination port
		tcp source-port	Apply the current rule to TCP packets from ports with specified source port
		udp destination-port	Apply the rule to UDP packets with the specified destination port
		udp source-port	Apply the rule to UDP packets from the specified source port
	name		Assign a name to the specified list or operation
	owner		Specify the owner of the current list
	show ip-rule		Display the attributes of a specific rule or all rules

2 of 3

Table 135: Policy-based routing CLI commands (continued)

Root level command	First level command	Second level command	Description
	show list		Display information about the specified list
show ip active-lists			Display information about a specific policy list or all lists
show ip active-pbr-lists			Display details about a specific PBR list or all PBR lists
show ip pbr-list			Display information about the specified PBR list

3 of 3

Chapter 22: Setting synchronization

If the Avaya G430 Media Gateway contains an MM710 T1/E1 media module, it is advisable to define the MM710 as the primary synchronization source for the G430. In so doing, clock synchronization signals from the Central Office (CO) are used by the MM710 to synchronize all operations of the G430. If no MM710 is present, it is not necessary to set synchronization.

Enter **set sync interface primary|secondary *mmID* [*portID*]** to define a potential stratum clock source (T1/E1 Media Module, ISDN-BRI), where:

- ***mmID*** is the Media Module ID of an MM stratum clock source of the form **vn**, where ***n*** is the MM slot number
- ***portID*** is the port number for an ISDN clock source candidate. The port ID consists of the slot number of the media module and the number of the port. You can set more than one port. For example, `v2 1, 3, 5-8`.

Note:

The port ID parameter only applies if the source is a BRI module.

By setting the clock source to primary, normal failover will occur. The identity of the current synchronization source is not stored in persistent storage. Persistent storage is used to preserve the parameters set by this command.

Note:

Setting the source to secondary overrides normal failover, generates a trap, and asserts a fault. Thus, it is only recommended to set the clock source to secondary for testing purposes.

To determine which reference source is the active source, use the **set sync source primary|secondary** command. If you choose **secondary**, the secondary source becomes active, and the primary source goes on standby. In addition, fallback to the primary source does not occur even when the primary source becomes available.

If neither primary nor secondary sources are identified, the local clock becomes the active source.

The following example sets the MM710 media module located in slot 2 of the G430 chassis as the primary clock synchronization source for the Avaya G430 Media Gateway.

```
set sync interface primary v2
set sync source primary
```

If the Avaya G430 Media Gateway includes a second MM710 media module, enter the following additional command:

```
set sync interface secondary v3
set sync source secondary
```

If, for any reason, the primary MM710 media module cannot function as the clock synchronization source, the system uses the MM710 media module located in slot 3 of the Avaya G430 Media Gateway chassis as the clock synchronization source. If neither MM710 media module can function as the clock synchronization source, the system defaults to the local clock running on the S8300 Server.

To disassociate an interface previously specified as the primary or secondary clock synchronization source, enter **`clear sync interface primary`** or **`clear sync interface secondary`**.

To enable or disable automatic failover and failback between designated primary and secondary synchronization sources, enter **`set sync switching enable`** or **`set sync switching disable`**.

Synchronization status

The yellow ACT LED on the front of the MM710 media module displays the synchronization status of that module.

- If the yellow ACT LED is solidly on or off, it has not been defined as a synchronization source. If it is on, one or more channels is active. If it is an ISDN facility, the D-channel counts as an active channel and causes the yellow ACT LED to be on.
- When the MM710 is operating as a clock synchronization source, the yellow ACT LED indicates that the MM710 is the clock synchronization source by flashing at three second intervals, as follows:
 - The yellow ACT LED is on for 2.8 seconds and off for 200 milliseconds if the MM710 media module has been specified as a clock synchronization source and is receiving a signal that meets the minimum requirements for the interface
 - The yellow ACT LED is on for 200 milliseconds and off for 2.8 seconds if the MM710 media module has been specified as a synchronization source and is not receiving a signal, or is receiving a signal that does not meet the minimum requirements for the interface

Displaying synchronization status

Enter **show sync timing** to display the status of the primary, secondary, and local clock sources. The status can be `Active`, `Standby`, or `Not Configured`. The status is `Not Configured` when a source has not been defined, for example, when there are no T1 cards installed.

Summary of synchronization commands

For more information about these commands, see *Avaya G430 CLI Reference*, 03-603234.

Table 136: Synchronization CLI commands

Command	Description
clear sync interface	Disassociate a previously specified interface as the primary or secondary clock synchronization source
set sync interface	Define the specified module and port as a potential source for clock synchronization for the media gateway
set sync source	Specify which clock source is the active clock source. The identity of the current synchronization source is not stored in persistent storage.
set sync switching	Toggle automatic sync source switching
show sync timing	Display the status of the primary, secondary, and local clock sources

Appendix A: Traps and MIBs

This appendix contains a list of all G430 traps and all MIBs.

G430 traps

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
coldStart		STD	Boot	Warning	coldStart	Agent Up with Possible Changes (coldStart Trap) enterprise:$E ($e) args($#):$*	A coldStart trap indicates that the entity sending the protocol is reinitializing itself in such a way as to potentially cause the alteration of either the agent's configuration or the entity's implementation.
warmStart		STD	Boot	Warning	warmStart	Agent Up with No Changes (warmStart Trap) enterprise:$E ($e) args($#):$*	A warmStart trap indicates that the entity sending the protocol is reinitializing itself in such a way as to keep both the agent configuration and the entity's implementation intact.
LinkUp	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus	STD	System	Warning	LinkUp	Agent Interface Up (linkUp Trap) enterprise:$E ($e) on interface $1	A linkUp trap indicates that the entity sending the protocol recognizes that one of the communication links represented in the agent's configuration has come up. The data passed with the event is 1) The name and value of the ifIndex instance for the affected interface. The name of the interface can be retrieved via an snmpget of.1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.INST, where INST is the instance returned with the trap.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
linkDown	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus	STD	System	Warning	linkDown	Agent Interface Down (linkDown Trap) enterprise:$E ($e) on interface $1	A linkDown trap indicates that the entity that is sending the protocol recognizes a failure in one of the communication links represented in the agent's configuration. The data passed with the event is 1) The name and value of the ifIndex instance for the affected interface. The name of the interface can be retrieved via an snmpget of.1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2.INST, where INST is the instance returned with the trap.
SNMP_Authen_Failure		P330	SECURITY	Notification	authentic Failure	Incorrect Community Name (authentication Failure Trap) enterprise:$E ($e) args($#):$*	An authentication failure trap indicates that the protocol is not properly authenticated.
risingAlarm	alarmIndex, alarmVariable, alarmSample Type, alarmValue, alarmRising Threshold	RMON	THRES HOLD	Warning	rising Alarm	Rising Alarm: $2 exceeded threshold $5; value = $4. (Sample type = $3; alarm index = $1)	The SNMP trap that is generated when an alarm entry crosses its rising threshold and generates an event that is configured for sending SNMP traps
fallingAlarm	alarmIndex, alarmVariable, alarmSample Type, alarmValue, alarmRising Threshold, alarmFalling Threshold	RMON	THRES HOLD	Warning	falling Alarm	Falling Alarm: $2 fell below threshold $5; value = $4. (Sample type = $3; alarm index = $1)	The SNMP trap that is generated when an alarm entry crosses its falling threshold and generates an event that is configured for sending SNMP traps
deleteSW Redundancy Trap	soft Redundancy Status	P330	SWITCH FABRIC	Info	deleteSWRedu ndancyTrap	Software Redundancy $1 definition deleted	The trap notifies the manager of the deletion of the specified redundant link, which is identified by the softRedundancyId. It is enabled/disabled by chLntAgConfigChangeTraps.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
createSW Redundancy Trap	soft Redundancy Status	P330	SWITCH FABRIC	Info	createSWRedundancyTrap	Software Redundancy $1 definition created	The trap is generated on the creation of the redundant links for the specified ports. It gives the logical name of the redundant link the identification of the main and secondary ports and the status of the link. The softRedundancyId defines the instances of the above- mentioned variables. The trap is enabled/disabled by chLntAgConfigChangeTraps.
lseIntPortCAMLastChange Trap	lseIntPortCAMLastChange	P330	SWITCH FABRIC	Info	lseIntPort CAMLast Change Trap	CAM Change at $1	This trap reports of the occurred configuration changes. It is enabled/disabled by chLntAgCAMChangeTraps.
duplicateIP Trap	ipNetToMediaPhysAddress, ipNetToMediaNetAddress	P330	ROUTER	Warning	duplicateIPTrap	Duplicate IP address $2 detected; MAC address $1	This trap reports to the Management station on Duplicate IP identification. CRP identify the new IP on the network. If it similar to one of its IP interfaces, the CRP will issue a SNMP trap, containing the MAC of the intruder.
lntPolicy ChangeEvent	ipPolicy Activation EntID, ipPolicy ActivationList, ipPolicy Activationif Index, ipPolicy ActivationSub Context	P330	POLICY	Info	lntPolicyChangeEvent	Module $1 - Active policy list changed to $2	The trap reports a change in the active list specific for a policy-enabled box or module.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
IntPolicy AccessControlViolationFlt	ipPolicy AccessControl ViolationEnt ID, ipPolicy AccessControlVi olationSrc Addr, ipPolicy AccessControl ViolationDst Addr, ipPolicy AccessControl Violation Protocol, ipPolicy AccessControl Violation L4SrcPort, ipPolicy AccessControl ViolationL4DstP ort, ipPolicy AccessControlVi olation Established, ipPolicyRuleID, ipPolicyRule ListID, ipPolicy AccessControlVi olationIf Index, ipPolicy AccessControl ViolationSub Ctxt, ipPolicy AccessControl ViolationTime	P330	POLICY	Warning	IntPolicy Access Control ViolationFlt	IP PolicyAccess Control violation, if-index$9 ip-protocol=$4 src-ip=$2 dst-ip=$3 src-port=$5 dst-port=$6 rule-id=$8 rule-list=$$9	This trap reports to the Management station on IP PolicyAccess Control violation. The trap includes in its varbind information about the slot where the event occurred. The id of the rule that was violated in the current rules table, and the quintuplet that identifies the faulty packet. A management application would display this trap and the relevant information in a log entry. This trap will not be sent at intervals smaller than one minute for identical information in the varbinds list variables.
DormantPort Fault	genPortSWRdF ault, genPortGroup Id, genPortId	P330	SWITCH FABRIC	Warning	Dormant PortFault	Dormant Port Connection Lost on Module $2 Port $3;	This trap reports the loss of connection on a dormant port.
DormantPort Ok	genPortSWRdF ault, genPortGroup Id, genPortId	P330	SWITCH FABRIC	Notification	Dormant PortOk	Dormant Port Connection Returned to Normal on Module $2 Port $3;	This trap reports the return of connection on a dormant port.
InlinePwrFlt	genGroup FaultMask, genGroupId, genGroup BUPSActivity Status	P330	POE	Error	InlinePwr Flt	Module $2 Inline Power Supply failure	This trap reports the failure of an inline power supply.
InlinePwrFltOK	genGroup FaultMask, genGroupId, genGroup BUPSActivity Status	P330	POE	Notification	InlinePwr FltOK	Module $2 Inline Power Supply failure was cleared	This trap reports the correction of a failure on an inline power supply.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
WanPhysical AlarmOn	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Critical	Wan Physical AlarmOn	Cable Problem on port $4	An E1/T1/serial cable was disconnected.
wanPhysical AlarmOff	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Notification	wan Physical AlarmOff	Cable Problem on port $4 was cleared	An E1/T1/serial cable was reconnected.
wanLocal AlarmOn	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Error	wanLocal AlarmOn	Local Alarm on interface $4	Local alarms, such as LOS.
wanLocal AlarmOff	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Notification	wanLocal AlarmOff	Local Alarm on interface $4 was cleared	Local alarms, such as LOS, was cleared.
wanRemote AlarmOn	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Error	wan Remote AlarmOn	Remote Alarm on interface $4	Remote alarms, such as AIS.
wanRemote AlarmOff	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Notification	wan Remote AlarmOff	Remote Alarm on interface $4 was cleared	Remote alarms, such as AIS, was cleared.
wanMinor AlarmOn	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Warning	wanMinor AlarmOn	Minor Alarm on interface $4	Low BER.
wanMinorAlarm Off	ifIndex, ifAdminStatus, ifOperStatus, ifName, ifAlias, dsx1Line Status	WAN	WAN	Notification	wanMinor AlarmOff	Minor Alarm on interface $4 was cleared	Normal BER.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
AvEntFanFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensorValue, avEntPhySensorLo Warning	AVAYA-ENTITY	TEMP		AvEntFan Flt	Fan $2 is Faulty	This trap reports a faulty fan.
AvEntFanOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhySensorLo Warning	AVAYA-ENTITY	TEMP	Notification	AvEntFanOk	Fan $2 is OK	This trap reports the return to function of a faulty fan.
avEnt48vPwr Flt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhySensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-ENTITY	SUPPLY		avEnt48v PwrFlt	48V power supply Fault	This trap reports a problem with a 48V power supply.
avEnt5vPwrFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhySensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-ENTITY	SUPPLY		avEnt5v PwrFlt	5V power supply Fault	This trap reports a problem with a 5V power supply.
avEnt3300mv PwrFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhySensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-ENTITY	SUPPLY		avEnt3300mv PwrFlt	3.3V (3300mv) power supply Fault	This trap reports a problem with a 3.3V power supply.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
avEnt2500mv PwrFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY		avEnt2500mv PwrFlt	2.5V (2500mv) power supply Fault	This trap reports a problem with a 2.5V power supply.
avEnt1800mv PwrFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY		avEnt1800mv PwrFlt	1.8V (1800mv) power supply Fault	This trap reports a problem with a 1.8V power supply.
avEnt1600mv PwrFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY		avEnt1600mv PwrFlt	1.6V (1600mv) power supply Fault	This trap reports a problem with a 1.6V power supply.
avEnt48vPwr FltOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY	Notification	avEnt48v PwrFltOk	48V power supply Fault Cleared	This trap reports the correction of a problem with a 48V power supply.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
avEnt5vPwrFltOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY	Notification	avEnt5v PwrFltOk	5V power supply Fault Cleared	This trap reports the correction of a problem with a 5V power supply.
avEnt3300mv PwrFltOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY	Notification	avEnt3300mv PwrFlt Ok	3.3V (3300mv) power supply Fault Cleared	This trap reports the correction of a problem with a 3.3V power supply.
avEnt2500mv PwrFltOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY	Notification	avEnt2500mvP wrFlt Ok	2.5V (2500mv) power supply Fault Cleared	This trap reports the correction of a problem with a 2.5V power supply.
avEnt1800mv PwrFltOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY	Notification	avEnt1800mvP wrFlt Ok	1.8V (1800mv) power supply Fault Cleared	This trap reports the correction of a problem with a 1.8V power supply.

Name	Parameters (MIB variables)	Class	Msg Facility	Severity	Trap Name/ Mnemonic	Format	Description
avEnt1600mv PwrFltOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, avEntPhy SensorLo Warningent Physical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	SUPPLY	Notification	avEnt1600mv PwrFlt Ok	1.6V (1600mv) power supply Fault Cleared	This trap reports the correction of a problem with a 1.6V power supply.
avEntAmbient TempFlt	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, entPhysical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-E NTITY	TEMP		avEnt Ambient TempFlt	Ambient Temperature fault ($3)	This trap reports that the ambient temperature in the device is not within the acceptable temperature range for the device.
avEntAmbient TempOk	entPhysical Index, entPhysical Descr, entPhySensor Value, avEntPhy SensorHi Warning, entPhysical ParentRelPos	AVAYA-ENTITY	TEMP	Notification	avEnt Ambient TempOk	Ambient Temperature fault ($3) cleared	This trap reports that the ambient temperature in the device has returned to the acceptable range for the device.

G430 MIB files

MIB File	MIB Module Supported by G430
Load.MIB	LOAD-MIB
RFC1315-MIB.my	RFC1315-MIB
Q-BRIDGE-MIB.my	Q-BRIDGE-MIB
ENTITY-MIB.my	ENTITY-MIB
IP-FORWARD-MIB.my	IP-FORWARD-MIB
VRRP-MIB.my	VRRP-MIB

MIB File	MIB Module Supported by G430
UTILIZATION-MANAGEMENT-MIB.my	UTILIZATION-MANAGEMENT-MIB
ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB.my	ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB
RSTP-MIB.my	RSTP-MIB
APPLIC-MIB.MY	APPLIC-MIB
DS1-MIB.my	DS1-MIB
PPP-IP-NCP-MIB.my	PPP-IP-NCP-MIB
RFC1213-MIB.my	RFC1213-MIB
AVAYA-ENTITY-MIB.MY	AVAYA-ENTITY-MIB
Rnd.MIB	RND-MIB
XSWITCH-MIB.MY	XSWITCH-MIB
CROUTE-MIB.MY	CROUTE-MIB
RS-232-MIB.my	RS-232-MIB
RIPv2-MIB.my	RIPv2-MIB
IF-MIB.my	IF-MIB
DS0BUNDLE-MIB.my	DS0BUNDLE-MIB
RFC1406-MIB.my	RFC1406-MIB
DS0-MIB.my	DS0-MIB
POLICY-MIB.MY	POLICY-MIB
BRIDGE-MIB.my	BRIDGE-MIB
CONFIG-MIB.MY	CONFIG-MIB
G700-MG-MIB.MY	G700-MG-MIB
FRAME-RELAY-DTE-MIB.my	FRAME-RELAY-DTE-MIB
IP-MIB.my	IP-MIB
Load12.MIB	LOAD-MIB
PPP-LCP-MIB.my	PPP-LCP-MIB
WAN-MIB.MY	WAN-MIB

2 of 3

MIB File	MIB Module Supported by G430
SNMPv2-MIB.my	SNMPv2-MIB
USM-MIB.my	USM-MIB
VACM-MIB.my	VACM-MIB
OSPF-MIB.my	OSPF-MIB
Tunnel-MIB.my	TUNNEL-MIB
	3 of 3

MIB files in the Load.MIB file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the Load.MIB file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
genOpModuleId	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.1
genOpIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.2
genOpRunningState	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.3
genOpSourceIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.4
genOpDestIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.5
genOpServerIP	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.6
genOpUserName	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.7
genOpPassword	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.8
genOpProtocolType	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.9
genOpFileName	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.10
genOpRunningStateDisplay	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.11
genOpLastFailureIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.12
genOpLastFailureDisplay	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.13
genOpLastWarningDisplay	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.14
	1 of 2

Object	OID
genOpErrorLogIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.15
genOpResetSupported	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.16
genOpEnableReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.17
genOpNextBootImageIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.18
genOpLastBootImageIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.19
genOpFileSystemType	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.20
genOpReportSpecificFlags	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.21
genOpOctetsReceived	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.22
genAppFileId	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.1
genAppFileName	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.2
genAppFileType	1.3.6.‘1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.3
genAppFileDescription	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.4
genAppFileSize	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.5
genAppFileVersionNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.6
genAppFileLocation	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.7
genAppFileDateStamp	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.8
genAppFileRowStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.9
	2 of 2

MIB files in the RFC1315-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the RFC1315-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
frDlcmiIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.1
frDlcmiState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.2
	1 of 3

Object	OID
frDlcmiAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.3
frDlcmiAddressLen	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.4
frDlcmiPollingInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.5
frDlcmiFullEnquiryInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.6
frDlcmiErrorThreshold	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.7
frDlcmiMonitoredEvents	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.8
frDlcmiMaxSupportedVCs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.9
frDlcmiMulticast	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.10
frCircuitIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.1
frCircuitDlci	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.2
frCircuitState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.3
frCircuitReceivedFECNs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.4
frCircuitReceivedBECNs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.5
frCircuitSentFrames	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.6
frCircuitSentOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.7
frCircuitReceivedFrames	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.8
frCircuitReceivedOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.9
frCircuitCreationTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.10
frCircuitLastTimeChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.11
frCircuitCommittedBurst	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.12
frCircuitExcessBurst	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.13
frCircuitThroughput	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.14
frErrIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.1
frErrType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.2
frErrData	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.3

2 of 3

Object	OID
frErrTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.4
frTrapState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.4.1
	3 of 3

MIB files in the Q-BRIDGE-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the Q-BRIDGE-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dot1qVlanVersionNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.1.1
dot1qMaxVlanId	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.1.2
dot1qMaxSupportedVlans	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.1.3
dot1qNumVlans	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.1.4
dot1qGvrpStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.1.5
dot1qVlanTimeMark	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.1
dot1qVlanIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.2
dot1qVlanFdbId	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.3
dot1qVlanCurrentEgressPorts	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.4
dot1qVlanCurrentUntaggedPorts	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.5
dot1qVlanStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.6
dot1qVlanCreationTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.2.1.7
dot1qVlanStaticName	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.3.1.1
dot1qVlanStaticEgressPorts	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.3.1.2
dot1qVlanForbiddenEgressPorts	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.3.1.3
dot1qVlanStaticUntaggedPorts	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.3.1.4
dot1qVlanStaticRowStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.3.1.5
dot1qNextFreeLocalVlanIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.4

Object	OID
dot1qPvid	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.5.1.1
dot1qPortAcceptableFrameTypes	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.5.1.2
dot1qPortIngressFiltering	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.5.1.3
dot1qPortGvrpStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.5.1.4
dot1qPortGvrpFailedRegistrations	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.5.1.5
dot1qPortGvrpLastPduOrigin	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.7.1.4.5.1.6

MIB files in the ENTITY-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the ENTITY-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
entPhysicalIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.1
entPhysicalDescr	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.2
entPhysicalVendorType	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.3
entPhysicalContainedIn	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.4
entPhysicalClass	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.5
entPhysicalParentRelPos	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.6
entPhysicalName	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7
entPhysicalHardwareRev	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.8
entPhysicalFirmwareRev	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.9
entPhysicalSoftwareRev	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.10
entPhysicalSerialNum	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.11
entPhysicalMfgName	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.12
entPhysicalModelName	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.13
entPhysicalAlias	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.14

1 of 2

Object	OID
entPhysicalAssetID	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.15
entPhysicalIsFRU	1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.16
	2 of 2

MIB files in the IP-FORWARD-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the IP-FORWARD-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ipCidrRouteNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.3
ipCidrRouteDest	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.1
ipCidrRouteMask	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.2
ipCidrRouteTos	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.3
ipCidrRouteNextHop	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.4
ipCidrRouteIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.5
ipCidrRouteType	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.6
ipCidrRouteProto	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.7
ipCidrRouteAge	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.8
ipCidrRouteInfo	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.9
ipCidrRouteNextHopAS	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.10
ipCidrRouteMetric1	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.11
ipCidrRouteMetric2	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.12
ipCidrRouteMetric3	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.13
ipCidrRouteMetric4	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.14
ipCidrRouteMetric5	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.15
ipCidrRouteStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.24.4.1.16

MIB files in the VRRP-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the VRRP-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
vrrpNodeVersion	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.1
vrrpOperVrId	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.1
vrrpOperVirtualMacAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.2
vrrpOperState	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.3
vrrpOperAdminState	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.4
vrrpOperPriority	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.5
vrrpOperIpAddrCount	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.6
vrrpOperMasterIpAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.7
vrrpOperPrimaryIpAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.8
vrrpOperAuthType	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.9
vrrpOperAuthKey	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.10
vrrpOperAdvertisementInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.11
vrrpOperPreemptMode	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.12
vrrpOperVirtualRouterUpTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.13
vrrpOperProtocol	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.14
vrrpOperRowStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.3.1.15
vrrpAssoIpAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.4.1.1
vrrpAssoIpAddrRowStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.68.1.1.4.1.2

MIB files in the UTILIZATION-MANAGEMENT-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the UTILIZATION-MANAGEMENT-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
genCpuIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.1.1.1
genCpuUtilizationEnableMonitoring	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.1.1.2
genCpuUtilizationEnableEventGeneration	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.1.1.3
genCpuUtilizationHighThreshold	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.1.1.4
genCpuAverageUtilization	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.1.1.5
genCpuCurrentUtilization	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.1.1.6
genCpuUtilizationHistorySampleIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.2.1.1
genCpuHistoryUtilization	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.1.2.1.2
genMemUtilizationTotalRAM	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.1
genMemUtilizationOperationalImage	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.2
genMemUtilizationDynAllocMemUsed	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.3.1
genMemUtilizationDynAllocMemMaxUsed	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.3.2
genMemUtilizationDynAllocMemAvailable	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.3.3
genMemUtilizationAllocationFailures	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.4
genMemUtilizationID	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.6.1.1
genMemUtilizationPhyRam	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.6.1.2
genMemUtilizationPercentUsed	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.11.1.2.6.1.3

MIB files in the ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
entPhySensorType	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.1
entPhySensorScale	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.2
entPhySensorPrecision	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.3
entPhySensorValue	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.4
entPhySensorOperStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.5
entPhySensorUnitsDisplay	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.6
entPhySensorValueTimeStamp	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.7
entPhySensorValueUpdateRate	1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.8

MIB files in the RSTP-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the RSTP-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dot1dStpVersion	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.16
dot1dStpTxHoldCount	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.17
dot1dStpPathCostDefault	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.18
dot1dStpPortProtocolMigration	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.19.1.1
dot1dStpPortAdminEdgePort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.19.1.2
dot1dStpPortOperEdgePort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.19.1.3
dot1dStpPortAdminPointToPoint	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.19.1.4

1 of 2

Object	OID
dot1dStpPortOperPointToPoint	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.19.1.5
dot1dStpPortAdminPathCost	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.19.1.6
	2 of 2

MIB files in the APPLIC-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the APPLIC-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
lseIntPortGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.1.1.1
lseIntPortId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.1.1.2
lseIntPortCAMLastChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.1.1.39
lseIntPortMACAddGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.2.1.1.1
lseIntPortMACAddPortId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.2.1.1.2
lseIntPortMACAddLAId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.2.1.1.3
lseIntPortMACAddList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.19.1.2.2.1.1.4

MIB files in the DS1-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the DS1-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dsx1LineIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.1
dsx1IfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.2
dsx1TimeElapsed	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.3
dsx1ValidIntervals	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.4
	1 of 3

Object	OID
dsx1LineType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.5
dsx1LineCoding	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.6
dsx1SendCode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.7
dsx1CircuitIdentifier	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.8
dsx1LoopbackConfig	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.9
dsx1LineStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.10
dsx1SignalMode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.11
dsx1TransmitClockSource	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.12
dsx1Fdl	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.13
dsx1InvalidIntervals	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.14
dsx1LineLength	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.15
dsx1LineStatusLastChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.16
dsx1LineStatusChangeTrapEnable	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.17
dsx1LoopbackStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.18
dsx1Ds1ChannelNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.19
dsx1Channelization	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.20
dsx1CurrentIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.1
dsx1CurrentESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.2
dsx1CurrentSESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.3
dsx1CurrentSEFSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.4
dsx1CurrentUASs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.5
dsx1CurrentCSSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.6
dsx1CurrentPCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.7
dsx1CurrentLESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.8
dsx1CurrentBESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.9
dsx1CurrentDMs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.10

2 of 3

Object	OID
dsx1CurrentLCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.11
dsx1IntervalIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.1
dsx1IntervalNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.2
dsx1IntervalESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.3
dsx1IntervalSESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.4
dsx1IntervalSEFSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.5
dsx1IntervalUASs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.6
dsx1IntervalCSSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.7
dsx1IntervalPCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.8
dsx1IntervalLESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.9
dsx1IntervalBESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.10
dsx1IntervalDMs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.11
dsx1IntervalLCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.12
dsx1IntervalValidData	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.13
dsx1TotalIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.1
dsx1TotalESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.2
dsx1TotalSESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.3
dsx1TotalSEFSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.4
dsx1TotalUASs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.5
dsx1TotalCSSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.6
dsx1TotalPCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.7
dsx1TotalLESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.8
dsx1TotalBESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.9
dsx1TotalDMs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.10
dsx1TotalLCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.11
	3 of 3

MIB files in the PPP-IP-NCP-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the PPP-IP-NCP-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
pppIpOperStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.1.1.1
pppIpLocalToRemoteCompressionProtocol	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.1.1.2
pppIpRemoteToLocalCompressionProtocol	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.1.1.3
pppIpRemoteMaxSlotId	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.1.1.4
pppIpLocalMaxSlotId	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.1.1.5
pppIpConfigAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.2.1.1
pppIpConfigCompression	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.3.2.1.2

MIB files in the RFC1213-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the RFC1213-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
sysDescr	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
sysObjectID	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2
sysUpTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3
sysContact	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4
sysName	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5
sysLocation	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.6
sysServices	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.7
ifNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.1
ifIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1
ifDescr	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2
ifType	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.3
ifMtu	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.4
ifSpeed	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.5
ifPhysAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.6
ifAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.7
ifOperStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.8
ifLastChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.9
ifInOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10
ifInUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.11
ifInNUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.12
ifInDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.13
ifInErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.14

1 of 4

Object	OID
ifInUnknownProtos	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.15
ifOutOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.16
ifOutUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17
ifOutNUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.18
ifOutDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.19
ifOutErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.20
ifOutQLen	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.21
ifSpecific	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.22
ipForwarding	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.1
ipDefaultTTL	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.2
ipInReceives	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.3
ipInHdrErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.4
ipInAddrErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.5
ipForwDatagrams	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.6
ipInUnknownProtos	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.7
ipInDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.8
ipInDelivers	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.9
ipOutRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.10
ipOutDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.11
ipOutNoRoutes	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.12
ipReasmTimeout	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.13
ipReasmReqds	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.14
ipReasmOKs	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.15
ipReasmFails	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.16
ipFragOKs	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.17
ipFragFails	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.18

2 of 4

Object	OID
ipFragCreates	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.19
ipAdEntAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.1
ipAdEntIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.2
ipAdEntNetMask	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.3
ipAdEntBcastAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.4
ipAdEntReasmMaxSize	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.5
ipRouteDest	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.1
ipRouteIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.2
ipRouteMetric1	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.3
ipRouteMetric2	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.4
ipRouteMetric3	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.5
ipRouteMetric4	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.6
ipRouteNextHop	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.7
ipRouteType	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.8
ipRouteProto	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.9
ipRouteAge	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.10
ipRouteMask	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.11
ipRouteMetric5	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.12
ipRouteInfo	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.21.1.13
ipNetToMediaIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.1
ipNetToMediaPhysAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.2
ipNetToMediaNetAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.3
ipNetToMediaType	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.4
ipRoutingDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.23
snmpInPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.1
snmpOutPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.2

3 of 4

Object	OID
snmpInBadVersions	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.3
snmpInBadCommunityNames	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.4
snmpInBadCommunityUses	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.5
snmpInASNParseErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.6
snmpInTooBigs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.8
snmpInNoSuchNames	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.9
snmpInBadValues	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.10
snmpInReadOnlys	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.11
snmpInGenErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.12
snmpInTotalReqVars	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.13
snmpInTotalSetVars	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.14
snmpInGetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.15
snmpInGetNexts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.16
snmpInSetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.17
snmpInGetResponses	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.18
snmpInTraps	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.19
snmpOutTooBigs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.20
snmpOutNoSuchNames	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.21
snmpOutBadValues	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.22
snmpOutGenErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.24
snmpOutGetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.25
snmpOutGetNexts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.26
snmpOutSetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.27
snmpOutGetResponses	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.28
snmpOutTraps	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.29
snmpEnableAuthenTraps	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.30
	4 of 4

MIB files in the AVAYA-ENTITY-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the AVAYA-ENTITY-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
avEntPhySensorHiShutdown	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.1
avEntPhySensorHiWarning	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.2
avEntPhySensorHiWarningClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.3
avEntPhySensorLoWarningClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.4
avEntPhySensorLoWarning	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.5
avEntPhySensorLoShutdown	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.6
avEntPhySensorEventSupportMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.99.1.1.7

MIB files in the Rnd-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the Rnd.MIB file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
genGroupHWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.24
genGroupConfigurationSymbol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.21
genGroupHWStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.17

MIB files in the XSWITCH-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the XSWITCH-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
scGenPortGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.1
scGenPortId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.2
scGenPortVLAN	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.3
scGenPortPriority	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.4
scGenPortSetDefaults	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.5
scGenPortLinkAggregationNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.9
scGenPortGenericTrap	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.15
scGenPortLagCapability	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.20
scGenPortCapability	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.4.1.1.21
scGenSwitchId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.5.1.1.1
scGenSwitchSTA	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.1.5.1.1.13
scEthPortGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.1
scEthPortId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.2
scEthPortFunctionalStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.27
scEthPortMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.28
scEthPortSpeed	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.29
scEthPortAutoNegotiation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.30
scEthPortAutoNegotiationStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.31
scEthPortPauseCapabilities	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.44
scEthPortFlowControl	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.28.2.1.1.1.47

MIB files in the CROUTE-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the CROUTE-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ipGlobalsBOOTPRelayStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.1.1
ipGlobalsICMPErrMsgEnable	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.1.2
ipGlobalsARPInactiveTimeout	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.1.3
ipGlobalsPrimaryManagementIPAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.1.4
ipGlobalsNextPrimaryManagementIPAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.1.5
ipInterfaceAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.1
ipInterfaceNetMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.2
ipInterfaceLowerIfAlias	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.3
ipInterfaceType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.4
ipInterfaceForwardIpBroadcast	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.5
ipInterfaceBroadcastAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.6
ipInterfaceProxyArp	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.7
ipInterfaceStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.8
ipInterfaceMainRouterAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.9
ipInterfaceARPServerStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.10
ipInterfaceName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.11
ipInterfaceNetbiosRebroadcast	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.12
ipInterfaceIcmpRedirects	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.13
ipInterfaceOperStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.14
ipInterfaceDhcpRelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.2.1.15
ripGlobalsRIPEnable	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.3.1
ripGlobalsLeakOSPFIntoRIP	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.3.2

1 of 4

Object	OID
ripGlobalsLeakStaticIntoRIP	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.3.3
ripGlobalsPeriodicUpdateTimer	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.3.4
ripGlobalsPeriodicInvalidRouteTimer	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.3.5
ripGlobalsDefaultExportMetric	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.3.6
ripInterfaceAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.1
ripInterfaceMetric	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.2
ripInterfaceSplitHorizon	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.3
ripInterfaceAcceptDefaultRoute	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.4
ripInterfaceSendDefaultRoute	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.5
ripInterfaceState	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.6
ripInterfaceSendMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.7
ripInterfaceVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.4.1.8
ospfGlobalsLeakRIPIntoOSPF	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.5.1
ospfGlobalsLeakStaticIntoOSPF	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.5.2
ospfGlobalsLeakDirectIntoOSPF	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.5.3
ospfGlobalsDefaultExportMetric	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.5.4
relayVlIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.6.1.1
relayVlPrimaryServerAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.6.1.2
relayVlSeconderyServerAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.6.1.3
relayVlStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.6.1.4
relayVlRelayAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.6.1.5
ipRedundancyStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.9.1
ipRedundancyTimeout	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.9.2
ipRedundancyPollingInterval	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.9.3
ipShortcutARPServerStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.10.1
distributionListRoutingProtocol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.1

2 of 4

Object	OID
distributionListDirection	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.2
distributionListIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.3
distributionListRouteProtocol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.4
distributionListProtocolSpecific1	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.5
distributionListProtocolSpecific2	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.6
distributionListProtocolSpecific3	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.7
distributionListProtocolSpecific4	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.8
distributionListProtocolSpecific5	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.9
distributionListAccessListNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.10
distributionListEntryStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.12.1.11
ipVRRPAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.14.1
iphcIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.1
iphcControlTcpAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.2
iphcTcpSessions	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.3
iphcNegotiatedTcpSessions	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.4
iphcControlRtpAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.5
iphcRtpSessions	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.6
iphcNegotiatedRtpSessions	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.7
iphcControlNonTcpAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.8
iphcNonTcpSessions	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.9
iphcNegotiatedNonTcpSessions	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.10
iphcMaxPeriod	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.11
iphcMaxTime	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.12
iphcControRtpMinPortNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.13
iphcControRtpMaxPortNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.14
iphcControlRtpCompressionRatio	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.15

3 of 4

Object	OID
iphcControlNonTcpMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.15.1.1.16
ospfXtndIfIpAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.16.1.1
ospfXtndIfAddressLessIf	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.16.1.2
ospfXtndIfPassiveMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.1.16.1.3
vlConfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.3.1.1.1
vlConfAlias	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.3.1.1.2
vlConfStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.3.1.1.3
	4 of 4

MIB files in the RS-232-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the RS-232-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
rs232Number	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.1
rs232PortIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.1
rs232PortType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.2
rs232PortInSigNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.3
rs232PortOutSigNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.4
rs232PortInSpeed	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.5
rs232PortOutSpeed	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.6
rs232PortInFlowType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.7
rs232PortOutFlowType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.2.1.8
rs232SyncPortIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.1
rs232SyncPortClockSource	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.2
rs232SyncPortFrameCheckErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.3
	1 of 2

Object	OID
rs232SyncPortTransmitUnderrunErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.4
rs232SyncPortReceiveOverrunErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.5
rs232SyncPortInterruptedFrames	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.6
rs232SyncPortAbortedFrames	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.7
rs232SyncPortRole	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.8
rs232SyncPortEncoding	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.9
rs232SyncPortRTSControl	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.10
rs232SyncPortRTSCTSDelay	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.11
rs232SyncPortMode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.12
rs232SyncPortIdlePattern	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.13
rs232SyncPortMinFlags	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.4.1.14
rs232InSigPortIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.5.1.1
rs232InSigName	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.5.1.2
rs232InSigState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.5.1.3
rs232InSigChanges	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.5.1.4
rs232OutSigPortIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.6.1.1
rs232OutSigName	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.6.1.2
rs232OutSigState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.6.1.3
rs232OutSigChanges	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.33.6.1.4
	2 of 2

MIB files in the RIPv2-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the RIPv2-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
rip2GlobalRouteChanges	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.1.1
rip2GlobalQueries	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.1.2
rip2IfStatAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.2.1.1
rip2IfStatRcvBadPackets	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.2.1.2
rip2IfStatRcvBadRoutes	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.2.1.3
rip2IfStatSentUpdates	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.2.1.4
rip2IfStatStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.2.1.5
rip2IfConfAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.1
rip2IfConfDomain	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.2
rip2IfConfAuthType	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.3
rip2IfConfAuthKey	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.4
rip2IfConfSend	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.5
rip2IfConfReceive	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.6
rip2IfConfDefaultMetric	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.7
rip2IfConfStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.8
rip2IfConfSrcAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.23.3.1.9

MIB files in the IF-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the IF-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ifNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.1
ifIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.1
ifDescr	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.2
ifType	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.3
ifMtu	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.4
ifSpeed	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.5
ifPhysAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.6
ifAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.7
ifOperStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.8
ifLastChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.9
ifInOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.10
ifInUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.11
ifInNUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.12
ifInDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.13
ifInErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.14
ifInUnknownProtos	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.15
ifOutOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.16
ifOutUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.17
ifOutNUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.18
ifOutDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.19
ifOutErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.20
ifOutQLen	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.21

1 of 2

Object	OID
ifSpecific	1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.22
ifName	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.1
ifInMulticastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.2
ifInBroadcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.3
ifOutMulticastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.4
ifOutBroadcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.5
ifHCInOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.6
ifHCInUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.7
ifHCInMulticastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.8
ifHCInBroadcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.9
ifHCOutOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.10
ifHCOutUcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.11
ifHCOutMulticastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.12
ifHCOutBroadcastPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.13
ifLinkUpDownTrapEnable	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.14
ifHighSpeed	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.15
ifPromiscuousMode	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.16
ifConnectorPresent	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.17
ifAlias	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.18
ifCounterDiscontinuityTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.19

2 of 2

MIB files in the DS0BUNDLE-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the DS0BUNDLE-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dsx0BundleIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.82.3.1.1
dsx0BundleIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.82.3.1.2
dsx0BundleCircuitIdentifier	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.82.3.1.3
dsx0BundleRowStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.82.3.1.4

MIB files in the RFC1406-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the RFC1406-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dsx1LineIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.1
dsx1IfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.2
dsx1TimeElapsed	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.3
dsx1ValidIntervals	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.4
dsx1LineType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.5
dsx1LineCoding	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.6
dsx1SendCode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.7
dsx1CircuitIdentifier	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.8
dsx1LoopbackConfig	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.9
dsx1LineStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.10
dsx1SignalMode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.11
dsx1TransmitClockSource	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.12
	1 of 3

Object	OID
dsx1Fdl	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.6.1.13
dsx1CurrentIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.1
dsx1CurrentESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.2
dsx1CurrentSESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.3
dsx1CurrentSEFSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.4
dsx1CurrentUASs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.5
dsx1CurrentCSSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.6
dsx1CurrentPCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.7
dsx1CurrentLESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.8
dsx1CurrentBESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.9
dsx1CurrentDMs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.10
dsx1CurrentLCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.7.1.11
dsx1IntervalIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.1
dsx1IntervalNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.2
dsx1IntervalESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.3
dsx1IntervalSESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.4
dsx1IntervalSEFSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.5
dsx1IntervalUASs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.6
dsx1IntervalCSSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.7
dsx1IntervalPCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.8
dsx1IntervalLESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.9
dsx1IntervalBESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.10
dsx1IntervalDMs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.11
dsx1IntervalLCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.8.1.12
dsx1TotalIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.1
dsx1TotalESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.2
	2 of 3

Object	OID
dsx1TotalSESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.3
dsx1TotalSEFSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.4
dsx1TotalUASs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.5
dsx1TotalCSSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.6
dsx1TotalPCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.7
dsx1TotalLESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.8
dsx1TotalBESs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.9
dsx1TotalDMs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.10
dsx1TotalLCVs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.18.9.1.11
	3 of 3

MIB files in the DS0-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the DS0-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dsx0Ds0ChannelNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.1
dsx0RobbedBitSignalling	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.2
dsx0CircuitIdentifier	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.3
dsx0IdleCode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.4
dsx0SeizedCode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.5
dsx0ReceivedCode	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.6
dsx0TransmitCodesEnable	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.7
dsx0Ds0BundleMappedIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.1.1.8
dsx0ChanMappedIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.81.3.1.1

MIB files in the POLICY-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the POLICY-MIB.MY file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ipPolicyListSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.1
ipPolicyListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.2
ipPolicyListName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.3
ipPolicyListValidityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.4
ipPolicyListChecksum	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.5
ipPolicyListRowStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.6
ipPolicyListDefaultOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.7
ipPolicyListCookie	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.8
ipPolicyListTrackChanges	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.9
ipPolicyListOwner	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.10
ipPolicyListErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.11
ipPolicyListTrustedFields	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.12
ipPolicyListScope	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.13
ipPolicyListIpOptionOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.14
ipPolicyListIpFragmentationOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.15
ipPolicyListType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.16
ipPolicyListEtherTypeDefaultOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.1.1.17
ipPolicyRuleSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.1
ipPolicyRuleListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.2
ipPolicyRuleID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.3
ipPolicyRuleSrcAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.4
ipPolicyRuleSrcAddrWild	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.5
	1 of 7

Object	OID
ipPolicyRuleDstAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.6
ipPolicyRuleDstAddrWild	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.7
ipPolicyRuleProtocol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.8
ipPolicyRuleL4SrcPortMin	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.9
ipPolicyRuleL4SrcPortMax	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.10
ipPolicyRuleL4DestPortMin	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.11
ipPolicyRuleL4DestPortMax	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.12
ipPolicyRuleEstablished	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.13
ipPolicyRuleOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.14
ipPolicyRuleApplicabilityPrecedence	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.15
ipPolicyRuleApplicabilityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.16
ipPolicyRuleApplicabilityType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.17
ipPolicyRuleErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.18
ipPolicyRuleStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.19
ipPolicyRuleDSCPOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.20
ipPolicyRuleDSCPFilter	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.21
ipPolicyRuleDSCPFilterWild	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.22
ipPolicyRuleIcmpTypeCode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.23
ipPolicyRuleSrcAddrNot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.24
ipPolicyRuleDstAddrNot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.25
ipPolicyRuleProtocolNot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.26
ipPolicyRuleL4SrcPortNot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.27
ipPolicyRuleL4DestPortNot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.28
ipPolicyRuleIcmpTypeCodeNot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.29
ipPolicyRuleSrcPolicyUserGroupName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.30
ipPolicyRuleDstPolicyUserGroupName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.2.1.31

2 of 7

Object	OID
ipPolicyControlSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.1
ipPolicyControlActiveGeneralList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.2
ipPolicyControlAllowedPolicyManagers	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.3
ipPolicyControlCurrentChecksum	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.4
ipPolicyControlMinimalPolicyManagmentVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.5
ipPolicyControlMaximalPolicyManagmentVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.6
ipPolicyControlMIBversion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.3.1.7
ipPolicyDiffServSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.1
ipPolicyDiffServDSCP	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.2
ipPolicyDiffServOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.3
ipPolicyDiffServName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.4
ipPolicyDiffServAggIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.5
ipPolicyDiffServApplicabilityPrecedence	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.6
ipPolicyDiffServApplicabilityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.7
ipPolicyDiffServApplicabilityType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.8
ipPolicyDiffServErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.4.1.9
ipPolicyQuerySlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.1
ipPolicyQueryListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.2
ipPolicyQuerySrcAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.3
ipPolicyQueryDstAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.4
ipPolicyQueryProtocol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.5
ipPolicyQueryL4SrcPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.6
ipPolicyQueryL4DestPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.7
ipPolicyQueryEstablished	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.8
ipPolicyQueryDSCP	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.9
ipPolicyQueryOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.10

3 of 7

Object	OID
ipPolicyQueryRuleID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.11
ipPolicyQueryDSCPOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.12
ipPolicyQueryPriority	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.13
ipPolicyQueryIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.14
ipPolicyQuerySubContext	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.15
ipPolicyQueryEtherTypeType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.16
ipPolicyQueryEtherTypeTrafficType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.17
ipPolicyQueryIcmpTypeCode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.5.1.18
ipPolicyDiffServControlSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.6.1.1
ipPolicyDiffServControlChecksum	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.6.1.2
ipPolicyDiffServControlTrustedFields	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.6.1.3
ipPolicyDiffServControlValidityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.6.1.4
ipPolicyDiffServControlErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.6.1.5
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.1
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationSrcAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.2
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationDstAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.3
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationProtocol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.4
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationL4SrcPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.5
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationL4DstPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.6
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationEstablished	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.7
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationDSCP	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.8
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.9
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationSubCtxt	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.10
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationTime	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.11
ipPolicyAccessControlViolationRuleType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.7.1.12
ipPolicyCompositeOpEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.1

4 of 7

Object	OID
ipPolicyCompositeOpListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.2
ipPolicyCompositeOpID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.3
ipPolicyCompositeOpName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.4
ipPolicyCompositeOp802priority	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.5
ipPolicyCompositeOpAccess	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.6
ipPolicyCompositeOpDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.7
ipPolicyCompositeOpRSGQualityClass	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.8
ipPolicyCompositeOpNotify	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.9
ipPolicyCompositeOpRowStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.10
ipPolicyCompositeOpErrorReply	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.11
ipPolicyCompositeOpKeepsState	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.8.1.12
ipPolicyDSCPmapEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.1
ipPolicyDSCPmapListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.2
ipPolicyDSCPmapDSCP	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.3
ipPolicyDSCPmapOperation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.4
ipPolicyDSCPmapName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.5
ipPolicyDSCPmapApplicabilityPrecedence	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.6
ipPolicyDSCPmapApplicabilityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.7
ipPolicyDSCPmapApplicabilityType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.8
ipPolicyDSCPmapErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.9.1.9
ipPolicyActivationEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.1
ipPolicyActivationifIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.2
ipPolicyActivationSubContext	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.3
ipPolicyActivationSubContextName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.4
ipPolicyActivationList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.5
ipPolicyActivationAclList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.6

5 of 7

Object	OID
ipPolicyActivationQoSList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.7
ipPolicyActivationSourceNatList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.8
ipPolicyActivationDestinationNatList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.9
ipPolicyActivationAntiSpoofignList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.10.1.10
ipPolicyActivationPBRList	
ipPolicyValidListEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.1
ipPolicyValidListIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.2
ipPolicyValidListSubContext	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.3
ipPolicyValidListListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.4
ipPolicyValidListStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.5
ipPolicyValidListErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.6
ipPolicyValidListIpOption	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.7
ipPolicyValidListIpFragmentation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.1.1.8
ipPolicyValidRuleEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.1
ipPolicyValidRuleIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.2
ipPolicyValidRuleSubContext	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.3
ipPolicyValidRuleListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.4
ipPolicyValidRuleRuleID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.5
ipPolicyValidRuleStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.6
ipPolicyValidRuleApplicabilityType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.7
ipPolicyValidRuleErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.2.1.8
ipPolicyValidDSCPEntID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.1
ipPolicyValidDSCPIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.2
ipPolicyValidDSCPSubContext	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.3
ipPolicyValidDSCPListID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.4
ipPolicyValidDSCPvalue	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.5

6 of 7

Object	OID
ipPolicyValidDSCPStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.6
ipPolicyValidDSCPApplicabilityType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.7
ipPolicyValidDSCPErrMsg	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.36.11.3.1.8
	7 of 7

MIB files in the BRIDGE-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the BRIDGE-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
dot1dBaseBridgeAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.1
dot1dBaseNumPorts	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.2
dot1dBaseType	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.3
dot1dBasePort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1.1
dot1dBasePortIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1.2
dot1dBasePortCircuit	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1.3
dot1dBasePortDelayExceededDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1.4
dot1dBasePortMtuExceededDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.1.4.1.5
dot1dStpProtocolSpecification	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.1
dot1dStpPriority	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.2
dot1dStpTimeSinceTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.3
dot1dStpTopChanges	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.4
dot1dStpDesignatedRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.5
dot1dStpRootCost	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.6
dot1dStpRootPort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.7
dot1dStpMaxAge	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.8
	1 of 2

Object	OID
dot1dStpHelloTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.9
dot1dStpHoldTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.10
dot1dStpForwardDelay	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.11
dot1dStpBridgeMaxAge	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.12
dot1dStpBridgeHelloTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.13
dot1dStpBridgeForwardDelay	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.14
dot1dStpPort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.1
dot1dStpPortPriority	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.2
dot1dStpPortState	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.3
dot1dStpPortEnable	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.4
dot1dStpPortPathCost	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.5
dot1dStpPortDesignatedRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.6
dot1dStpPortDesignatedCost	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.7
dot1dStpPortDesignatedBridge	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.8
dot1dStpPortDesignatedPort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.9
dot1dStpPortForwardTransitions	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.2.15.1.10
dot1dTpAgingTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.2
dot1dTpFdbAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.3.1.1
dot1dTpFdbPort	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.3.1.2
dot1dTpFdbStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.4.3.1.3
	2 of 2

MIB files in the CONFIG-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the CONFIG-MIB.MY file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
chHWType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.1
chNumberOfSlots	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.2
chReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.7
chLntAgMaxNmbOfMngrs	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.1
chLntAgPermMngrId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.2.1.1
chLntAgPermMngrAddr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.2.1.2
chLntAgMngrTraps	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.2.1.3
chLntAgTrapsPermMngrId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.7.1.1
chLntAgTrapsId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.7.1.2
chLntAgTrapsEnableFlag	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.7.1.3
chLntAgMaxTrapsNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.9.3.100
chGroupList	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.18
chLogFileGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.22.1.1
chLogFileIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.22.1.2
chLogFileName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.22.1.3
chLogFileAbsoluteTime	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.22.1.4
chLogFileMessage	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.22.1.5
chLogFileEncryptedMessage	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.7.22.1.6
genGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.1
genGroupSWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.2
genGroupKernelVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.3
genGroupType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.4

1 of 4

Object	OID
genGroupDescr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.5
genGroupNumberOfPorts	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.6
genGroupNumberOfIntPorts	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.7
genGroupReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.8
genGroupAutoMan	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.9
genGroupFullConfig	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.10
genGroupRedun12	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.11
genGroupRedun34	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.12
genGroupStandAloneMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.14
genGroupInterProcCommStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.15
genGroupCommStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.16
genGroupHWStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.17
genGroupSupplyVoltageFault	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.18
genGroupIntTemp	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.19
genGroupSpecificOID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.20
genGroupConfigurationSymbol	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.21
genGroupLastChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.22
genGroupRedunRecovery	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.23
genGroupHWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.24
genGroupHeight	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.25
genGroupWidth	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.26
genGroupIntrusionControl	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.27
genGroupThresholdStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.28
genGroupEavesdropping	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.29
genGroupMainSWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.30
genGroupMPSActivityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.31

2 of 4

Object	OID
genGroupBUPSActivityStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.32
genGroupPrepareCounters	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.33
genGroupPortLastChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.34
genGroupIntPortLastChange	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.35
genGroupFaultMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.36
genGroupTypeName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.37
genGroupAgentSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.38
genGroupMngType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.39
genGroupNumberOfLogicalPorts	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.40
genGroupNumberOfInterfaces	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.41
genGroupCascadUpStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.42
genGroupCascadDownStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.43
genGroupSTARootPortID	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.44
genGroupCopyPortInstruction	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.45
genGroupLicenseKey	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.46
genGroupLogFileClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.47
genGroupBootVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.48
genGroupResetLastStamp	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.49
genGroupSerialNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.50
genGroupShowModuleInformation	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.51
genGroupCascadingUpFault	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.52
genGroupCascadingDownFault	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.53
genGroupPortClassificationMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.54
genGroupPSUType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.55
genGroupPolicyType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.8.1.1.56
genPortGroupId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.1

3 of 4

Object	OID
genPortId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.2
genPortFunctionality	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.3
genPortType	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.4
genPortDescr	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.5
genPortAdminStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.10
genPortFaultMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.14
genPortSWRdFault	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.15
genPortVLANMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.19
genPortAdminPermission	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.20
genPortName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.21
genPortClassification	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.22
genPortVLANBindingMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.9.1.1.23
softRedundancyId	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.1
softRedundancyName	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.2
softRedundancyGroupId1	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.3
softRedundancyPortId1	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.4
softRedundancyGroupId2	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.5
softRedundancyPortId2	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.6
softRedundancyStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.1.1.7
softRedundancyGlobalStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.2
softRedundancyMinTimeBetweenSwitchOvers	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.4
softRedundancySwitchBackInterval	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.11.5
	4 of 4

MIB files in the G700-MG-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the G700-MG-MIB.MY file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
cmgHWType	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.1
cmgModelNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.2
cmgDescription	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.3
cmgSerialNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.4
cmgHWVintage	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.5
cmgHWSuffix	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.6
cmgStackPosition	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.7
cmgModuleList	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.8
cmgReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.9
cmgHardwareFaultMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.10.12
cmgHardwareStatusMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.10.13
cmgModuleSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.1
cmgModuleType	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.2
cmgModuleDescription	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.3
cmgModuleName	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.4
cmgModuleSerialNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.5
cmgModuleHWVintage	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.6
cmgModuleHWSuffix	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.7
cmgModuleFWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.8
cmgModuleNumberOfPorts	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.9
cmgModuleFaultMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.10
cmgModuleStatusMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.11
cmgModuleReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.12
cmgModuleNumberOfChannels	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.1.11.1.1.13

1 of 5

Object	OID
cmgGatewayNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.1.1
cmgMACAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.1.2
cmgFWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.1.3
cmgCurrentIpAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.1.4
cmgMgpFaultMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.1.15
cmgQosControl	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.1
cmgRemoteSigDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.2
cmgRemoteSig802Priority	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.3
cmgLocalSigDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.4
cmgLocalSig802Priority	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.5
cmgStatic802Vlan	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.6
cmgCurrent802Vlan	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.2.7
cmgPrimaryClockSource	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.3.1
cmgSecondaryClockSource	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.3.2
cmgActiveClockSource	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.2.3.3
cmgRegistrationState	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.1
cmgActiveControllerAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.2
cmgH248LinkStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.3
cmgH248LinkErrorCode	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.4
cmgUseDhcpForMgcList	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.5
cmgStaticControllerHosts	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.6
cmgDhcpControllerHosts	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.3.7
cmgPrimarySearchTime	
cmgTotalSearchTime	
cmgTransitionPoint	
cmgVoipEngineUseDhcp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.1
cmgVoipQosControl	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.2
cmgVoipRemoteBbeDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.1.1

2 of 5

Object	OID
cmgVoipRemoteEfDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.1.2
cmgVoipRemote802Priority	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.1.3
cmgVoipRemoteMinRtpPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.1.4
cmgVoipRemoteMaxRtpPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.1.5
cmgVoipRemoteRtcpEnabled	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.2.1
cmgVoipRemoteRtcpMonitorIpAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.2.2
cmgVoipRemoteRtcpMonitorPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.2.3
cmgVoipRemoteRtcpReportPeriod	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.2.4
cmgVoipRemoteRsvpEnabled	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.3.1
cmgVoipRemoteRetryOnFailure	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.3.2
cmgVoipRemoteRetryDelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.3.3
cmgVoipRemoteRsvpProfile	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.3.3.4
cmgVoipLocalBbeDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.1.1
cmgVoipLocalEfDscp	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.1.2
cmgVoipLocal802Priority	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.1.3
cmgVoipLocalMinRtpPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.1.4
cmgVoipLocalMaxRtpPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.1.5
cmgVoipLocalRtcpEnabled	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.2.1
cmgVoipLocalRtcpMonitorIpAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.2.2
cmgVoipLocalRtcpMonitorPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.2.3
cmgVoipLocalRtcpReportPeriod	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.2.4
cmgVoipLocalRsvpEnabled	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.3.1
cmgVoipLocalRetryOnFailure	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.3.2
cmgVoipLocalRetryDelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.3.3
cmgVoipLocalRsvpProfile	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.4.3.4
cmgVoipSlot	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.1
cmgVoipMACAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.2
cmgVoipStaticIpAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.3

3 of 5

Object	OID
cmgVoipCurrentIpAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.4
cmgVoipJitterBufferSize	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.5
cmgVoipTotalChannels	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.6
cmgVoipChannelsInUse	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.7
cmgVoipAverageOccupancy	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.8
cmgVoipHyperactivity	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.9
cmgVoipAdminState	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.10
cmgVoipDspFWVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.11
cmgVoipDspStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.12
cmgVoipEngineReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.13
cmgVoipFaultMask	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.4.5.1.14
cmgCcModule	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.6.1.1.1
cmgCcPort	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.6.1.1.2
cmgCcRelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.6.1.1.3
cmgCcAdminState	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.6.1.1.4
cmgCcPulseDuration	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.6.1.1.5
cmgCcStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.6.1.1.6
cmgTrapManagerAddress	
cmgTrapManagerControl	
cmgTrapManagerMask	
cmgTrapManagerRowStatus	
cmgEtrModule	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.7.1.1.1
cmgEtrAdminState	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.7.1.1.2
cmgEtrNumberOfPairs	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.7.1.1.3
cmgEtrStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.7.1.1.4
cmgEtrCurrentLoopDetect	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.7.1.1.5
cmgDynCacStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.8.1

4 of 5

Object	OID
cmgDynCacRBBL	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.8.2
cmgDynCacLastUpdate	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.9.1.8.3
	5 of 5

MIB files in the FRAME-RELAY-DTE-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the FRAME-RELAY-DTE-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
frDlcmiIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.1
frDlcmiState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.2
frDlcmiAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.3
frDlcmiAddressLen	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.4
frDlcmiPollingInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.5
frDlcmiFullEnquiryInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.6
frDlcmiErrorThreshold	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.7
frDlcmiMonitoredEvents	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.8
frDlcmiMaxSupportedVCs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.9
frDlcmiMulticast	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.10
frDlcmiStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.11
frDlcmiRowStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.1.1.12
frCircuitIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.1
frCircuitDlci	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.2
frCircuitState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.3
frCircuitReceivedFECNs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.4
frCircuitReceivedBECNs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.5
	1 of 2

Object	OID
frCircuitSentFrames	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.6
frCircuitSentOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.7
frCircuitReceivedFrames	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.8
frCircuitReceivedOctets	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.9
frCircuitCreationTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.10
frCircuitLastTimeChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.11
frCircuitCommittedBurst	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.12
frCircuitExcessBurst	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.13
frCircuitThroughput	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.14
frCircuitMulticast	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.15
frCircuitType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.16
frCircuitDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.17
frCircuitReceivedDEs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.18
frCircuitSentDEs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.19
frCircuitLogicalIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.20
frCircuitRowStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.2.1.21
frErrIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.1
frErrType	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.2
frErrData	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.3
frErrTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.4
frErrFaults	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.5
frErrFaultTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.3.1.6
frTrapState	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.4.1
frTrapMaxRate	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.32.4.2
	2 of 2

MIB files in the IP-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the IP-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ipForwarding	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.1
ipDefaultTTL	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.2
ipInReceives	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.3
ipInHdrErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.4
ipInAddrErrors	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.5
ipForwDatagrams	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.6
ipInUnknownProtos	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.7
ipInDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.8
ipInDelivers	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.9
ipOutRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.10
ipOutDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.11
ipOutNoRoutes	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.12
ipReasmTimeout	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.13
ipReasmReqds	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.14
ipReasmOKs	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.15
ipReasmFails	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.16
ipFragOKs	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.17
ipFragFails	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.18
ipFragCreates	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.19
ipAdEntAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.1
ipAdEntIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.2
ipAdEntNetMask	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.3

1 of 2

Object	OID
ipAdEntBcastAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.4
ipAdEntReasmMaxSize	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.20.1.5
ipNetToMediaIfIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.1
ipNetToMediaPhysAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.2
ipNetToMediaNetAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.3
ipNetToMediaType	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.22.1.4
ipRoutingDiscards	1.3.6.1.2.1.4.23
	2 of 2

MIB files in the Load12-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the Load12-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
genOpModuleId	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.1
genOpIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.2
genOpRunningState	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.3
genOpSourceIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.4
genOpDestIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.5
genOpServerIP	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.6
genOpUserName	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.7
genOpPassword	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.8
genOpProtocolType	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.9
genOpFileName	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.10
genOpRunningStateDisplay	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.11
genOpLastFailureIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.12
	1 of 2

Object	OID
genOpLastFailureDisplay	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.13
genOpLastWarningDisplay	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.14
genOpErrorLogIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.15
genOpResetSupported	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.16
genOpEnableReset	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.17
genOpNextBootImageIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.18
genOpLastBootImageIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.19
genOpFileSystemType	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.20
genOpReportSpecificFlags	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.21
genOpOctetsReceived	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.1.2.1.22
genAppFileId	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.1
genAppFileName	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.2
genAppFileType	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.3
genAppFileDescription	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.4
genAppFileSize	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.5
genAppFileVersionNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.6
genAppFileLocation	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.7
genAppFileDateStamp	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.8
genAppFileRowStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.1751.2.53.2.1.1.9
	2 of 2

MIB files in the PPP-LCP-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the PPP-LCP-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
pppLinkStatusPhysicalIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.1
pppLinkStatusBadAddresses	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.2
pppLinkStatusBadControls	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.3
pppLinkStatusPacketTooLongs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.4
pppLinkStatusBadFCSs	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.5
pppLinkStatusLocalMRU	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.6
pppLinkStatusRemoteMRU	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.7
pppLinkStatusLocalToPeerACCMap	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.8
pppLinkStatusPeerToLocalACCMap	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.9
pppLinkStatusLocalToRemoteACCompression	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.12
pppLinkStatusRemoteToLocalACCompression	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.13
pppLinkStatusTransmitFcsSize	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.14
pppLinkStatusReceiveFcsSize	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.1.1.15
pppLinkConfigInitialMRU	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.2.1.1
pppLinkConfigReceiveACCMap	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.2.1.2
pppLinkConfigTransmitACCMap	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.2.1.3
pppLinkConfigMagicNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.2.1.4
pppLinkConfigFcsSize	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.23.1.1.2.1.5

MIB files in the WAN-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the WAN-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ds0BundleMemmbersList	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.1.1.2.1.1
ds0BundleSpeedFactor	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.1.1.2.1.2
ds1DeviceMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.1.1
ifTableXtndIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.1
ifTableXtndPeerAddress	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.2
ifTableXtndVoIPQueue	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.3
ifTableXtndCableLength	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.4
ifTableXtndGain	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.5
ifTableXtndDescription	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.6
ifTableXtndKeepAlive	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.7
ifTableXtndMtu	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.8
ifTableXtndInvertTxClock	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.9
ifTableXtndDTELoopback	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.10
ifTableXtndIgnoreDCD	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.11
ifTableXtndIdleChars	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.12
ifTableXtndBandwidth	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.13
ifTableXtndEncapsulation	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.14
ifTableXtndOperStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.15
ifTableXtndBackupCapabilities	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.16
ifTableXtndBackupIf	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.17
ifTableXtndBackupEnableDelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.18
ifTableXtndBackupDisableDelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.19

1 of 2

Object	OID
ifTableXtndPrimaryIf	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.20
ifTableXtndCarrierDelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.21
ifTableXtndDtrRestartDelay	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.22
ifTableXtndDtrPulseTime	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.23
ifTableXtndLoadInterval	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.24
ifTableXtndInputRate	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.25
ifTableXtndOutputRate	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.26
ifTableXtndInputLoad	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.27
ifTableXtndOutputLoad	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.28
ifTableXtndReliability	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.29
ifTableXtndCacBBL	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.31
ifTableXtndCacPriority	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.32
ifTableXtndCacifStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.2.1.1.33
frDlcmiXtndIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.1.1.1
frDlcmiXtndLMIAutoSense	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.1.1.2
frStaticCircuitSubIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.2.1.1
frStaticCircuitDLCI	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.2.1.2
frStaticCircuitDLCIrole	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.2.1.3
frStaticCircuitStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.2.1.4
frSubIfDlcmiIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.3.1.1
frSubIfSubIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.3.1.2
frSubIfType	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.3.1.3
frSubIfStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.6889.2.1.6.2.4.3.1.4
	2 of 2

MIB files in the SNMPv2-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the SNMPv2-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
sysDescr	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
sysObjectID	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.2
sysUpTime	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3
sysContact	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4
sysName	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5
sysLocation	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.6
sysServices	1.3.6.1.2.1.1.7
snmpInPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.1
snmpInBadVersions	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.3
snmpInBadCommunityNames	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.4
snmpInBadCommunityUses	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.5
snmpInASNParseErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.6
snmpEnableAuthenTraps	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.30
snmpOutPkts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.2
snmpInTooBigs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.8
snmpInNoSuchNames	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.9
snmpInBadValues	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.10
snmpInReadOnlys	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.11
snmpInGenErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.12
snmpInTotalReqVars	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.13
snmpInTotalSetVars	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.14
snmpInGetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.15

1 of 2

Object	OID
snmpInGetNexts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.16
snmpInSetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.17
snmpInGetResponses	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.18
snmpInTraps	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.19
snmpOutTooBigs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.20
snmpOutNoSuchNames	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.21
snmpOutBadValues	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.22
snmpOutGenErrs	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.24
snmpOutGetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.25
snmpOutGetNexts	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.26
snmpOutSetRequests	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.27
snmpOutGetResponses	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.28
snmpOutTraps	1.3.6.1.2.1.11.29
	2 of 2

MIB files in the OSPF-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the OSPF-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
ospfRouterId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.1
ospfAdminStat	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.2
ospfVersionNumber	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.3
ospfAreaBdrRtrStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.4
ospfASBdrRtrStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.5
ospfExternLsaCount	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.6
	1 of 4

Object	OID
ospfExternLsaCksumSum	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.7
ospfTOSSupport	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.8
ospfOriginateNewLsas	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.9
ospfRxNewLsas	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.10
ospfExtLsdbLimit	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.11
ospfMulticastExtensions	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.12
ospfExitOverflowInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.13
ospfDemandExtensions	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.1.14
ospfAreaId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.1
ospfAuthType	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.2
ospfImportAsExtern	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.3
ospfSpfRuns	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.4
ospfAreaBdrRtrCount	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.5
ospfAsBdrRtrCount	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.6
ospfAreaLsaCount	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.7
ospfAreaLsaCksumSum	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.8
ospfAreaSummary	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.9
ospfAreaStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.2.1.10
ospfLsdbAreaId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.1
ospfLsdbType	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.2
ospfLsdbLsid	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.3
ospfLsdbRouterId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.4
ospfLsdbSequence	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.5
ospfLsdbAge	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.6
ospfLsdbChecksum	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.7
ospfLsdbAdvertisement	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.4.1.8

2 of 4

Object	OID
ospfIfIpAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.1
ospfAddressLessIf	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.2
ospfIfAreaId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.3
ospfIfType	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.4
ospfIfAdminStat	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.5
ospfIfRtrPriority	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.6
ospfIfTransitDelay	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.7
ospfIfRetransInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.8
ospfIfHelloInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.9
ospfIfRtrDeadInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.10
ospfIfPollInterval	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.11
ospfIfState	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.12
ospfIfDesignatedRouter	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.13
ospfIfBackupDesignatedRouter	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.14
ospfIfEvents	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.15
ospfIfAuthKey	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.16
ospfIfStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.17
ospfIfMulticastForwarding	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.18
ospfIfDemand	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.19
ospfIfAuthType	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.7.1.20
ospfIfMetricIpAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.8.1.1
ospfIfMetricAddressLessIf	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.8.1.2
ospfIfMetricTOS	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.8.1.3
ospfIfMetricValue	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.8.1.4
ospfIfMetricStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.8.1.5
ospfNbrIpAddr	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.1
	3 of 4

Object	OID
ospfNbrAddressLessIndex	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.2
ospfNbrRtrId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.3
ospfNbrOptions	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.4
ospfNbrPriority	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.5
ospfNbrState	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.6
ospfNbrEvents	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.7
ospfNbrLsRetransQLen	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.8
ospfNbmaNbrStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.9
ospfNbmaNbrPermanence	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.10
ospfNbrHelloSuppressed	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.10.1.11
ospfExtLsdbType	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.1
ospfExtLsdbLsid	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.2
ospfExtLsdbRouterId	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.3
ospfExtLsdbSequence	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.4
ospfExtLsdbAge	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.5
ospfExtLsdbChecksum	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.6
ospfExtLsdbAdvertisement	1.3.6.1.2.1.14.12.1.7
	4 of 4

MIB files in the TUNNEL-MIB.my file

The following table provides a list of the MIBs in the TUNNEL-MIB.my file that are supported by the G430 and their OIDs:

Object	OID
tunnelIfLocalAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.1.1.1
tunnelIfRemoteAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.1.1.2
	1 of 2

Object	OID
tunnelIfEncapsMethod	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.1.1.3
tunnelIfTOS	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.1.1.4
tunnelIfHopLimit	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.1.1.5
tunnelConfigLocalAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.2.1.1
tunnelConfigRemoteAddress	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.2.1.2
tunnelConfigEncapsMethod	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.2.1.3
tunnelConfigID	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.2.1.4
tunnelConfigStatus	1.3.6.1.2.1.10.131.1.1.2.1.5
ipTunnelIfIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.1
ipTunnelIfChecksum	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.2
ipTunnelIfKey	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.3
ipTunnelIfkeyMode	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.4
ipTunnelIfAgingTimer	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.5
ipTunnelIfMTUDiscovery	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.6
ipTunnelIfMTU	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.7
ipTunnelIfKeepaliveRate	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.8
ipTunnelIfKeepaliveRetries	1.3.6.1.4.1.81.31.8.1.1.9
	2 of 2

Index

A

Access control list
 CLI commands . . . 588
Access control lists, *see* Policy . . . 567
Access Security Gateway (ASG) authentication . . . 51
Accessing
 Avaya Aura Communication Manager . . . 46
 Avaya IW . . . 41
 CLI . . . 37
 GIW . . . 44
 MGC . . . 46
 PIM . . . 46
 via modem . . . 40
 via S8300 . . . 41
Administrator login, configuring in IW . . . 43
Announcement files
 CLI commands . . . 318
 managing and transferring using SCP . . . 315
ARP table
 adding entries . . . 461
 CLI commands . . . 461
 configuration . . . 461
 deleting dynamic entries . . . 461
 description . . . 459
 dynamic entries . . . 460
 removing entries . . . 461
 static entries . . . 459
ASG authentication . . . 51
ASG commands . . . 56
Authenticating
 Service logins . . . 51
Auto Fallback in SLS . . . 114
autoneg . . . 196
Auto-negotiation
 Fast Ethernet port . . . 195
 flowcontrol advertisement . . . 192
Autonomous System Boundary Router . . . 470
Avaya Aura Communication Manager
 accessing . . . 46
 configuring for SLS . . . 130
 functions . . . 46
Avaya IW
 accessing . . . 41
 administrator login, configuring . . . 43
 configuration using . . . 42
 description . . . 41
 laptop configuration for . . . 42
Avaya Services
 authenticating logins with ASG . . . 51
Avaya Site Administration . . . 46
Avaya Voice Announcement Manager (VAM) . . . 315

B

Backing up the gateway
 via the gateway USB port . . . 102
Backup interfaces
 CLI commands . . . 248
 configuring . . . 246
 defining through policy-based routing . . . 597
 dynamic bandwidth reporting . . . 272
 GRE tunnels as . . . 434
 limitations . . . 247
 modem dial backup, *see* Modem dial backup
 overview . . . 195
Backup service . . . 293
Bandwidth
 displaying . . . 273
 dynamic reporting . . . 272
 manual adjustment . . . 470
 reducing via header compression . . . 223
 setting maximum . . . 273
 used to calculate Cost . . . 470
Basic
 LAN deployment . . . 27
BOOTP
 configuration . . . 446
 description . . . 444
BOOTstrap Protocol
 see BOOTP
BPDU . . . 333
Bridge Protocol Data Units
 see BPDU
Bridges
 direct handshaking . . . 333
 loops . . . 332
Broadcast address . . . 423
Broadcast relay
 CLI commands . . . 458
 description . . . 457
 directed broadcast forwarding . . . 457
 NetBIOS rebroadcast . . . 458

C

CAC-BL . . . 272
Call admission control, *see* Dynamic CAC
CAM table . . . 324
CDR, SLS information . . . 127
Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol . . . 236
CHAP . . . 236
CLI
 accessing from local network . . . 39
 accessing from remote location . . . 40
 accessing with modem . . . 40
 accessing, general . . . 37
 contexts . . . 38
 listing files . . . 112
 managing configuration files . . . 109
 managing firmware banks . . . 95
 online help . . . 38
 overview . . . 37
 remote access with S8300 Server . . . 41
 upgrading firmware using FTP/TFTP . . . 96
 using to configure the system . . . 34
 viewing device status . . . 91
CNA test plugs
 CLI commands . . . 411
 configuration example . . . 409
 configuring for registration . . . 407
 functionality . . . 406
 overview . . . 406
Codec . . . 229
Commands
 access-control-list . . . 259
 add nfas-interface . . . 177, 186
 add port . . . 172, 187
 analog-test . . . 416, 418
 area . . . 470, 473
 arp . . . 459, 461
 arp timeout . . . 461
 async modem-init-string . . . 235
 async reset-modem . . . 235
 async-limit-string . . . 237
 async-reset-modem . . . 237
 authentication . . . 562
 autoneg . . . 195
 backup config usb . . . 102, 108
 backup delay . . . 247, 248
 backup interface . . . 248, 254, 255, 268
 bandwidth . . . 470, 472
 bootfile . . . 451, 455
 bri . . . 156, 168, 181
 cancel . . . 417, 418
 capture buffer mode . . . 394
 capture buffer-mode . . . 401
 capture buffer-size . . . 401
 capture filter-group . . . 393, 395, 401
 capture interface . . . 385, 394, 402
 capture ipsec . . . 402
 capture max-frame-size . . . 394, 402
 capture start . . . 395, 402
 capture stop . . . 396, 402
 capture-service . . . 385, 402
 class-identifier . . . 450, 456
 clear arp-cache . . . 461
 clear attendant . . . 182
 clear bri . . . 168, 182
 clear capture-buffer . . . 394, 402
 clear counter . . . 411
 clear counters . . . 411
 clear crypto isakmp . . . 503, 561
 clear crypto sa . . . 503, 561
 clear crypto sa counters . . . 503, 561
 clear dial-pattern . . . 178, 182
 clear ds1 . . . 163, 182
 clear dynamic-trap-manager . . . 307
 clear fac . . . 182
 clear fragment . . . 480
 clear incoming-routing . . . 182
 clear ip dhcp-client statistics . . . 201, 202, 203
 clear ip dhcp-server binding . . . 451, 455
 clear ip dhcp-server statistics . . . 451, 455
 clear ip domain statistics . . . 90
 clear ip route . . . 432, 433
 clear ip rtp header-compression . . . 226, 229
 clear ip tcp header-compression . . . 226, 228, 229
 clear logging file . . . 211, 221
 clear logging server . . . 209
 clear mgc list . . . 82, 84
 clear port mirror . . . 331, 332
 clear port static-vlan . . . 324, 327
 clear profile . . . 417, 418
 clear radius authentication server . . . 62
 clear rmon statistics . . . 342, 344
 clear sig-group . . . 177, 182
 clear slot-config . . . 182
 clear ssh-client known-hosts . . . 60
 clear station . . . 160, 183
 clear survivable-config . . . 182
 clear sync interface . . . 614, 615
 clear tac . . . 187
 clear tcp syn-cookies counters . . . 67
 clear trunk-group . . . 170, 183
 clear vlan . . . 323, 324, 327
 client identifier . . . 449
 client identifiers . . . 455
 cna-testplug . . . 407, 411
 cna-testplug-service . . . 408, 411
 composite-operation
 access control list . . . 589
 DSCP table . . . 585, 592

IP rule configuration . . . 583
MSS configuration . . . 71
packet sniffing . . . 403
QoS list . . . 583, 591, 592
continuous-channel . . . 492, 495, 514, 562, 563
control-port . . . 408, 411
cookie
access control list . . . 588
capture list . . . 386, 402
policy based routing . . . 609
policy list . . . 571
QoS list . . . 592
copy announcement-file ftp . . . 99, 100, 316, 318
copy announcement-file scp . . . 99, 100, 315, 318
copy announcement-file usb . . . 98, 100, 316, 318
copy auth-file ftp . . . 53, 56, 99, 100
copy auth-file scp . . . 53, 56, 99, 100
copy auth-file tftp . . . 53, 56
copy auth-file usb . . . 53, 56, 98, 100
copy capture-file ftp . . . 99, 100, 398, 402
copy capture-file scp . . . 99, 100, 398, 402
copy capture-file tftp . . . 398, 402
copy capture-file usb . . . 98, 100, 398, 402
copy cdr-file ftp . . . 99, 100
copy cdr-file scp . . . 99, 100
copy cdr-file usb . . . 98, 100
copy dhcp-binding ftp . . . 99, 100
copy dhcp-binding scp . . . 99, 100
copy dhcp-binding usb . . . 98, 100
copy file usb . . . 98
copy ftp announcement-file . . . 316, 318
copy ftp auth-file . . . 53, 56
copy ftp EW_archive . . . 96, 100
copy ftp module . . . 96, 100
copy ftp startup-config . . . 109, 111
copy ftp SW_imageA . . . 96, 100
copy ftp sw_imageA . . . 104, 108
copy ftp SW_imageB . . . 100
copy ftp sw_imageB . . . 96
copy license-file usb . . . 98, 100
copy phone-script usb . . . 98, 100
copy running-config ftp . . . 110, 111
copy running-config scp . . . 110, 111
copy running-config startup-config . . . 65, 66
copy running-config tftp . . . 110, 111
copy scp announcement-file . . . 315, 318
copy scp auth-file . . . 53, 56
copy scp startup-config . . . 109, 111
copy startup-config ftp . . . 110, 111
copy startup-config scp . . . 110, 111
copy startup-config tftp . . . 110, 111
copy startup-config usb . . . 98, 100, 110, 111
copy syslog-file ftp . . . 211
copy syslog-file scp . . . 211
copy syslog-file tftp . . . 211
copy syslog-file usb . . . 98, 100, 211
copy tftp auth-file . . . 53, 56
copy tftp EW_archive . . . 96, 100
copy tftp module . . . 100
copy tftp startup-config . . . 109, 111
copy tftp SW_imageA . . . 96, 100
copy tftp sw_imageA . . . 104, 108
copy tftp SW_imageB . . . 96, 100
copy usb . . . 97
copy usb announcement-file . . . 100, 316, 318
copy usb auth-file . . . 53, 56, 100
copy usb EW_archive . . . 100
copy usb modules . . . 100
copy usb phone-image . . . 100
copy usb phone-script . . . 100
copy usb startup-config . . . 100, 110, 111
copy usb SW_image . . . 101
cos . . . 583, 591
crypto ipsec df-bit . . . 501, 563
crypto ipsec minimal pmtu . . . 501
crypto ipsec minimal-pmtu . . . 564
crypto ipsec nat-transparency udp-encapsulation 500, 561
crypto ipsec transform-set . . . 488, 543, 551, 561
crypto isakmp invalid-spi-recovery . . . 499, 561
crypto isakmp nat keepalive . . . 500, 561
crypto isakmp peer . . . 489, 543, 551, 561
crypto isakmp peer-group . . . 493, 551, 562
crypto isakmp policy . . . 543, 551, 562
crypto isakmp suggest-key . . . 563
crypto key generate . . . 58, 59
crypto map . . . 494, 543, 551, 563
crypto-group . . . 501
cyrpto isakmp policy . . . 487
default-metric . . . 466, 468, 470, 473, 474, 475
default-router . . . 450
default-routers . . . 455
description
crypto list rule . . . 496, 564
crypto map . . . 494, 563
DNS servers list . . . 86, 91
ISAKMP peer . . . 490, 562
ISAKMP peer-group . . . 493, 562
ISAKMP policy . . . 487, 563
object tracker . . . 278, 291
policy rule . . . 576
track list . . . 279
destination-ip
access control list . . . 589
crypto list rule . . . 496, 564
MSS configuration . . . 71
packet sniffing . . . 388, 403
policy based routing . . . 610
policy list . . . 577
QoS list . . . 592
dialer modem-interface . . . 267
dialer order . . . 253, 267

dialer persistent 253, 267
dialer persistent delay 253, 259, 267
dialer persistent initial delay 252, 259, 267
dialer persistent max-attempts 253, 267
dialer persistent re-enable 253, 267
dialer string 252, 260, 267
dialer wait-for-ipcp 253, 267
dial-pattern 157, 178, 183
dir 101, 108, 112
disconnect ssh 58, 59
distribution list 465
distribution-list 466, 468
dns-server 450, 455
domain-name 450, 455
dos-classification 71
ds1 156, 183
dscp
 access control list 589
 object tracking 276, 291
 packet sniffing 388, 403
 policy based routing 610
 policy lists 580
 QoS list 583, 591, 592
dscp-table 585, 592
duplex 195
dynamic-cac 273, 274
encapsulation pppoe 241, 244
encryption 487, 563
end-ip-addr 448, 456
erase announcement-file 316, 318
erase auth-file 52, 56
exit 76
fail-retries 277, 291
fair-queue-limit 231, 232
fair-voip-queue 231, 232
fingerprint 408, 411
fragment
 access control list 580, 589
 fragmentation 480
 packet sniffing 391, 403
 policy based routing 610
 QoS list 592
fragment chain 480
fragment size 480
fragment timeout 480
frequency 276, 291
group 487, 563
hash 487, 563
help 38
hostname 58, 59
icc-vlan 323, 327
icmp 391, 403, 579, 589, 592, 610
incoming-routing 157, 180, 184
initiate mode 491, 562
interface 75, 76, 268
interface dialer 252, 259, 267, 424
interface fastethernet
 DHCP and BOOTP relay 446
 DHCP client 198, 202
 interface configuration 424
 PPPoE 241
 WAN Ethernet port 194, 196
interface Loopback 259
interface loopback 425
interface tunnel 425, 439, 443
interface usb-modem 235, 237, 425
interface vlan 321, 324, 327, 425
ip access group 573
ip access-control-list 71, 499, 570, 588
ip access-group 260, 512, 588
ip address
 dialer interface 252, 267
 interface configuration 75, 423
 PPPoE 241, 244
 USB port 235, 237
ip address dhcp 88, 199, 202
ip address negotiated 241, 244, 252, 267, 512
ip admin-state 423, 424, 425
ip bootp-dhcp network 446
ip bootp-dhcp relay 446
ip bootp-dhcp server 446
ip broadcast-address 423, 424, 425
ip capture-list 386, 402
ip crypto list 495
ip crypto-group 498, 514, 564
ip crypto-list 564
ip default-gateway 78, 268, 432, 433
ip default-gateway dialer 255
ip dhcp activate pool 449, 455
ip dhcp client client-id 198, 202
ip dhcp client hostname 198, 202
ip dhcp client lease 198, 202
ip dhcp client request 198, 202, 543
ip dhcp client route track 198, 202
ip dhcp ping packets 451, 455
ip dhcp ping timeout 451, 455
ip dhcp pool 448
ip dhcp pools 455
ip dhcp-server 449, 457
ip directed-broadcast 457, 458
ip distribution access-default-action 465, 467
ip distribution access-list 465, 467
ip distribution access-list-cookie 467
ip distribution access-list-copy 467
ip distribution access-list-name 467
ip distribution access-list-owner 467
ip domain list 87, 91
ip domain lookup 87, 91
ip domain name-server-list 86, 91
ip domain retry 87, 91

ip domain timeout 91
ip icmp-errors 463
ip max-arp-entries 461
ip netbios-rebroadcast 458
ip netmask-format 432, 433
ip next-hop-list 598, 602, 609
ip ospf authentication 470, 472
ip ospf authentication-key 470, 472
ip ospf cost 470, 471, 472
ip ospf dead-interval 471, 472
ip ospf hello-interval 471, 472
ip ospf message-digest-key 471, 472
ip ospf network point-to-multipoint 471, 472
ip ospf priority 471, 472
ip ospf router-id 471, 473
ip pbr-group 599, 609
ip pbr-list 597, 603, 609
IP peer address 236
ip peer address 237
ip policy-list-copy 498, 571, 590, 591
ip proxy-arp 462
ip qos-group 573, 591
ip qos-list 570, 591
ip redirects 432, 433
ip rip authentication key 466
ip rip authentication mode 466
ip rip authentications key 468
ip rip authentications mode 468
ip rip default-route-mode 466, 468
ip rip poison-reverse 465, 466, 468
ip rip rip-version 466, 468
ip rip send-receive-mode 466, 468
ip rip split-horizon 464, 466, 468
ip route 430, 431, 432, 433
ip routing 421, 433
ip rtp compression-connections 225, 226
ip rtp header-compression 225, 226, 227
ip rtp max-period 225, 226
ip rtp max-time 225, 226
ip rtp non-tcp-mode 225, 226
ip rtp port-range 225, 227
ip rule 576
ip show rule 576
ip simulate 587, 588, 591
ip snmp 304
ip ssh 58, 59
ip tcp compression-connections 225, 227, 228
ip tcp header-compression 225, 227, 228
ip telnet 63, 64
ip telnet-client 63, 64
ip telnet-services 64
ip unnumbered 252, 260, 426
ip vrrp 477, 478
ip vrrp address 477, 478
ip vrrp auth-key 477, 478
ip vrrp override addr owner 477, 478
ip vrrp preempt 477, 478
ip vrrp primary 478, 479
ip vrrp priority 478, 479
ip vrrp timer 478, 479
ip-fragments-in 575, 589
ip-option-in 575, 589
ip-protocol
 access control list 589
 MSS configuration 71
 packet sniffing 388, 403
 policy based routing 610
 policy list 577
 QoS list 592
ip-rule
 access control list 589
 crypto list 496
 MSS configuration 71
 packet sniffing 386, 402
 policy based routing 598, 601, 609
 QoS list 592
 VPN 564
isakmp policy 490
isakmp-policy 562
keepalive 242, 244, 437, 439, 443, 492, 562
keepalive-icmp 270, 271
keepalive-icmp failure-retries 270, 271
keepalive-icmp interval 270, 271
keepalive-icmp source-address 270, 271
keepalive-icmp success-retries 270, 271
keepalive-icmp timeout 270, 272
keepalive-track 195, 242, 244, 492, 562
key config-key password-encryption 65, 108
launch 417, 418
lease 449, 450, 456
lifetime 487, 563
load-interval 75
local-address 496, 564
login authentication 54
login authentication inactivity-period 49, 50
login authentication local-craft-password . . . 54, 57
login authentication lockout 49, 50, 54, 57
login authentication min-password-digit-chars . 49, 50
login authentication min-password-length . . . 49, 50
login authentication min-password-lower-chars 49, 51
login authentication min-password-special-chars 49, 51
login authentication min-password-upper-chars 49, 51
login authentication password-expire 49, 51
login authentication response-time 54, 57
login authentication services-logins 57
mode 489, 561
mtu 242, 244
name
 access control list 590
 crypto list 496

DHCP option . . . 450, 456
DHCP server . . . 448, 456
DHCP vendor specific option . . . 450, 456
packet sniffing . . . 386, 403
policy based routing . . . 597, 598, 610
policy list . . . 571
QoS list . . . 583, 591, 592, 593
name server . . . 86
name-server . . . 91
network . . . 467, 471, 473
next-hop . . . 276, 291, 601
next-hop (policy-based routing) . . . 610
next-hop-interface . . . 598, 602, 609
next-hop-ip . . . 602, 609
next-hop-list . . . 598
next-server . . . 451, 456
nslookup . . . 89, 91
object . . . 279, 291
option . . . 449, 456
owner
access control list . . . 590
packet sniffing . . . 386, 403
policy based routing . . . 597, 610
policy list . . . 571
QoS list . . . 593
passive-interface . . . 471
passive-interfaces . . . 473
password . . . 50, 51
ping . . . 246
pmi . . . 76, 77
ppp authentication
ASG authentication . . . 55, 57
USB port . . . 236, 237
ppp chap hostname . . . 242, 244, 254, 259
ppp chap password . . . 242, 244, 254
ppp chap refuse . . . 242, 244
ppp chap-secret . . . 236, 237
ppp ipcp dns request . . . 88, 91, 243, 244, 268, 543
ppp pap refuse . . . 242, 244
ppp pap sent username . . . 244
ppp pap sent-username . . . 253
ppp pap-sent username . . . 241
ppp timeout authentication
USB port . . . 237
ppp timeout ncp . . . 245
ppp timeout retry . . . 242, 245
pppoe-client persistent delay . . . 242, 245
pppoe-client persistent max-attempts . . . 242, 245
pppoe-client service-name . . . 242, 245
pppoe-client wait-for-ipcp . . . 242, 245
pre-classification . . . 593
pre-shared-key . . . 490, 562
priority-queue . . . 231, 232, 233, 234
profile . . . 416, 419
protect crypto-map . . . 497, 564
queue-limit . . . 233, 234
redistribute . . . 467, 468, 471, 473, 474, 475
release dhcp . . . 200, 202
remove nfas-interface . . . 186
remove port . . . 187
rename announcement-file . . . 316, 318
renew dhcp . . . 200, 202
reset . . . 76
restore . . . 107
restore usb . . . 98, 104, 108
rmon alarm . . . 342, 344
rmon event . . . 342, 344
rmon history . . . 342, 344
router ospf . . . 260, 268, 471, 473, 475
router rip . . . 467, 468, 475
router vrrp . . . 478, 479
rtp-echo-port . . . 408, 411
rtp-stat clear . . . 349, 382
rtp-stat event-threshold . . . 349, 382
rtp-stat fault . . . 353, 382
rtp-stat min-stat-win . . . 352, 382
rtp-stat qos-trap . . . 353, 382
rtp-stat qos-trap-rate-limit . . . 354, 383
rtp-stat service . . . 383
rtp-stat thresholds . . . 349, 383
rtp-stat-service . . . 349
rtp-test-port . . . 408, 411
rtr . . . 276, 290
rtr-schedule . . . 278, 291
running-config startup-config . . . 35, 36
safe-removal usb . . . 108
scheduler . . . 407, 411
self-identity . . . 491, 562
server-name . . . 451, 456
session . . . 83, 84
session mgc . . . 398
set associated-signaling . . . 177, 186
set attendant . . . 158, 184
set balance . . . 418, 419
set bearer-capability (bri) . . . 168, 181
set bearer-capability (ds1) . . . 166, 183
set bit-rate . . . 164, 183
set boot bank . . . 95, 101
set busy-disconnect . . . 187
set cbc . . . 187
set cbc-parameter . . . 187
set cbc-service-feature . . . 187
set channel-numbering . . . 183
set channel-preferences . . . 175, 187
set codeset-display . . . 174, 187
set codeset-national . . . 175, 188
set connect . . . 164, 183
set contact-closure admin . . . 312, 313
set contact-closure pulse-duration . . . 312, 313
set cor . . . 186
set country-protocol (bri) . . . 168, 181
set country-protocol (ds1) . . . 165, 183

set crosstalk-destination 416, 419
set crosstalk-port 416, 419
set crosstalk-responder 416, 419
set date-format 157, 159, 185
set delete-digits (dial-pattern) 179, 183
set delete-digits (incoming-routing) 180, 184
set deny 179, 183
set destination 416, 419
set dial 171, 188
set digit-handling 175, 188
set digits 174, 188
set digit-treatment 174, 188
set directory-number-a 169, 181
set directory-number-b 169, 181
set dscp 495, 563
set echo-cancellation analog 412, 413
set echo-cancellation analog config 412
set echo-cancellation config analog 413
set echo-cancellation config voip 413
set echo-cancellation voip 412, 413
set echo-cancellation voip config 413
set endpoint-init 169, 181
set etr 293, 294
set expansion-module 163, 186
set fac 185
set icc-monitoring 83, 84
set incoming-destination 176, 188
set incoming-dialtone 176, 188
set insert-digits (dial-pattern) 179, 183
set insert-digits (incoming-routing) 180, 184
set interface (bri) 168, 181
set interface (ds1) 164, 183
set interface-companding (bri) 169, 181
set interface-companding (ds1) 167, 184
set ip-codec-set 157, 185
set japan-disconnect 175, 188
set layer 1-stable 169, 182
set length 180, 184
set lldp re-init-delay 205, 206
set lldp system-control 204, 206
set lldp tx-delay 205, 206
set lldp tx-hold-multiplier 205, 206
set lldp tx-interval 205, 206
set logging file 215, 221
set logging file condition 215
set logging file disable 211
set logging file enable 211
set logging server 208, 221
set logging server access level 221
set logging server access-level 209
set logging server condition 215, 221
set logging server disable 209
set logging server enable 208
set logging server facility 208, 221
set logging session 221
dialer interface 261, 268
DNS resolver 90
object tracking 281
session log 213
VPN 503
set logging session condition 215
set logging session condition dhcpc 201
set logging session disable 213
set logging session enable 201
set long-timer 167, 184
set match-pattern 180, 184
set max-ip-registrations 157, 185
set max-length 179, 183
set mediaserver 83, 84
set mgc list 80, 82, 84
set min-length 179, 183
set mss-notification rate 69
set name (bri) 168, 182
set name (ds1) 164, 184
set name (station) 163, 186
set name (trunk-group) 174, 188
set numbering-format 176, 188
set password 163, 186
set peer 493, 494, 562, 563
set peer group 494
set peer-group 563
set pfs 488, 561
set pim-lockout 157, 159, 185
set port 161, 186, 416, 419
set port auto-negotiation-flowcontrol-advertisement 192
set port classification 339, 340
set port disable 192
set port duplex 192, 193
set port edge admin state 192, 193, 334, 337
set port flowcontrol 192, 193
set port level 192, 193
set port lldp 204, 206
set port lldp tlv 205, 206
set port mirror 331, 332
set port name 193
set port negotiation 193, 194
set port point-to-point admin status 193, 194, 334, 337
set port redundancy 329, 330
set port redundancy enable|disable 329, 330
set port redundancy-intervals 328, 329, 330
set port spantree 335, 338
set port spantree cost 335, 338
set port spantree force-protocol-migration . . 335, 338
set port spantree priority 335, 338
set port speed 194
set port static-vlan 324, 327
set port trap 301, 303
set port vlan 324, 327
set port vlan-binding-mode 324, 327
set primary-dchannel 177, 186

set protocol-version 165, 184
set qos bearer 229, 230
set qos control 229, 230
set qos rsvp 230
set qos rtcp 230
set qos signal 229, 231
set radius authentication 60, 61, 62
set radius authentication retry-number 61, 62
set radius authentication retry-time 61, 62
set radius authentication secret 60, 62
set radius authentication server 61, 62
set radius authentication udp-port 61, 62
set receive-gain 418, 419
set reset-times 82, 84
set responder 416, 419
set responder-type 416, 419
set security-association lifetime 561
set security-association lifetime kilobytes 488
set security-association lifetime seconds 488
set send-name 175, 188
set send-number 175, 188
set side (bri) 168, 182
set side (ds1) 165, 184
set signaling-mode 164, 184
set slot-config 157, 185
set sls 140, 159, 181
set snmp community 304, 305
set snmp retries 304, 305
set snmp timeout 304, 305
set snmp trap 303
set snmp trap disable auth 301
set snmp trap disable frame-relay 301
set snmp trap enable auth 301
set snmp trap enable frame-relay 301
set spantree default-path-cost 335, 338
set spantree enable/disable 335, 338
set spantree forward-delay 335, 338
set spantree hello-time 335, 338
set spantree max-age 335, 338
set spantree priority 335, 338
set spantree tx-hold-account 335
set spantree tx-hold-count 338
set spantree version 335, 338
set spid-a 169, 182
set spid-b 169, 182
set supervision 173, 188
set swhook-flash 163, 187
set sync interface 615
set sync source 613, 615
set sync switching 614, 615
set system contact 77
set system location 77
set system name 77
set tac 172, 189
set tei-assignment 169, 182
set terminal recovery password 63
set tgnum 179, 183
set transform-set 494, 563
set transmit-gain 418, 419
set trunk 324, 327
set trunk-destination 162, 187
set trunk-group-chan-select 177, 186
set trunk-hunt 176, 189
set type 416, 419
set type (dial-pattern) 178, 183
set type (station) 160, 187
set utilization cpu 92, 93
set vlan 321, 324, 327
setting buffer-size 394
show (bri) 169, 182
show (dial-pattern) 179, 183
show (ds1) 167, 184
show (incoming-routing) 180, 184
show (profile) 417, 419
show (sig-group) 178, 186
show (station) 163, 187
show (trunk-group) 176, 189
show announcement-file 319
show announcements-files 317
show attendant 185
show auth-file info 52, 55, 57
show auth-file status 57
show backup status 108
show boot bank 95, 101
show bri 185
show cam vlan 324, 327
show capture 396, 403
show capture-buffer hex 396, 403
show capture-dummy-headers 400
show cna testplug 408, 411
show composite-operation
 access control list 575, 589, 590
 policy list 586
 QoS list 592, 593
show contact-closure 313
show correction 418, 419
show crypto ipsec sa 499, 564
show crypto ipsec transform-set 502, 564
show crypto isakmp peer 502, 564
show crypto isakmp peer-group 502, 564
show crypto isakmp policy 502, 565
show crypto isakmp sa 502, 565
show crypto ispsec sa 502
show crypto map 502, 565
show date-format 185
show dial-pattern 185
show download announcement-file status . . . 317, 319
show download software status 98, 101
show download status 109, 110, 111
show ds1 185

show dscp-table 586, 592, 593
show dynamic-cac 273, 274
show echo-cancellation 413
show etr 294
show fac 185
show faults 91, 93
show fragment 480
show icc-monitoring 83, 84
show icc-vlan 323, 327
show image version 91, 93, 95, 101, 104, 109
show incoming-routing 185
show interface 237
show interfaces
dialer interface 252, 254, 268
GRE tunnel 441, 443
interface status 404
unnumbered IP interface 426
VLANs 324, 328
WAN configuration 245, 246
show interfaces usb-modem 236
show ip access-control-list 586, 588, 590
show ip active-lists 502, 565, 604, 611
show ip active-pbr-lists 611
show ip arp 461, 462
show ip capture-list 393, 404
show ip crypto-list 502
show ip crypto-lists 565
show ip dhcp-client 199, 201, 202, 203
show ip dhcp-client statistics 201, 202
show ip dhcp-pool 454, 456
show ip dhcp-server bindings 454, 457
show ip dhcp-server statistics 454, 457
show ip distribution access-lists 469
show ip domain 89, 91
show ip domain statistics 89, 91
show ip icmp 463
show ip interface 245
show ip interface brief 425
show ip interfaces 246
show ip next-hop-list all 604
show ip ospf 471, 473
show ip ospf database 471, 473
show ip ospf interface 471, 473
show ip ospf neighbor 471, 473
show ip ospf protocols 473
show ip pbr-list 604, 611
show ip protocols 469, 472
show ip qos-list 586, 591
show ip reverse-arp 461, 462
show ip route 432, 433
show ip route best-match 432, 433
show ip route static 432, 433
show ip route summary 432, 433
show ip route track-table 432
show ip rtp header-compression 227, 229
show ip rtp header-compression brief 227
show ip ssh 58, 59
show ip tcp header-compression 227, 228, 229
show ip tcp header-compression brief 227, 228
show ip telnet 64
show ip track-table 433
show ip vrrp 478, 479
show ip-codec-set 185
show ip-next-hop-list 610
show ip-qos-list 593
show ip-rule
access control list 589, 590
policy based routing 601, 604, 610
policy list 586
QoS list 593
show keepalive-icmp 270, 272
show last-pim-update 185
show list 571, 586, 590, 593, 604, 611
show lldp 205, 206
show lldp config 205, 206
show logging file condition 212, 221
show logging file content 211, 215, 221
show logging server condition 210, 221
show logging session condition 214, 221
show login authentication 50, 51, 55, 57
show max-ip-registration 185
show mediaserver 84
show mg list_config 92, 93
show mgc 81, 84, 91, 93
show mgc list 81, 84
show mm 91
show module 92, 93
show next-hop 602, 604, 609
show pim-lockout 185
show pmi 76, 77
show point-to-point status 338
show port classification 339, 340
show port edge state 192, 334, 338
show port edge status 194
show port flowcontrol 192, 194
show port lldp config 205, 206
show port lldp vlan-name config 205, 206
show port mirror 331, 332
show port point-to-point status 334
show port redundancy 329, 330
show port trap 301, 303
show port vlan-binding 324
show port vlan-binding-mode 328
show ppp authentication 237
show profile 417, 420
show protocol 64, 90
show protocols 91
show qos-rtcp 229, 230, 231
show queue 231, 232
show queueing 231, 232, 233, 234
show radius authentication 61, 62
show recovery 82, 84

show restart-log 92, 93
show restore status 98, 107
show result 417, 420
show result (profile) 417, 419
show rmon alarm 342, 344
show rmon event 342, 344
show rmon history 342, 344
show rmon statistics 342, 344
show rtp-stat config 350, 383
show rtp-stat detailed 356, 383
show rtp-stat sessions 355, 383
show rtp-stat summary 354, 383
show rtp-stat thresholds 347, 383
show rtp-stat traceroute 368, 383
show rtr configuration 280, 291
show rtr operational-state 280, 291
show running-config 245
show sig-group 185
show slot-config 186
show sls 181
show snmp 68, 301, 303, 305, 353
show snmp engineID 305
show snmp group 305
show snmp retries 305, 306
show snmp timeout 305, 306
show snmp user 305, 306
show snmp userToGroup 305
show snmp usertogroup 306
show snmp view 304, 306
show spantree 335, 338
show startup-config 246
show station 186
show sync timing 615
show system 78, 92, 93, 101, 109
show tcp syn-cookies 67
show temp 92, 93
show timeout 92, 93
show track 280, 291
show traffic-shape 245, 246
show trunk 324, 328
show trunk-group 186
show upload announcement-file status . . . 317, 319
show upload auth-file status 53, 57
show upload status 398, 404
show username 50, 51, 55
show utilization 92, 93
show vlan 323, 324, 328
show voltages 92, 93
shutdown
 CNA test plug 408, 411
 PPPoE 242, 245
 USB port 236, 237
 WAN port 195
sig-group 156, 177, 186
sls 156, 157, 181
snmp trap link-status 302, 303
snmp-server community 304, 306
snmp-server dynamic-trap-manager 68, 306, 307, 353
snmp-server enable notification 303
snmp-server enable notifications 301
snmp-server engineID 304, 306
snmp-server group 68, 304, 306
snmp-server host 68, 301, 304, 352
snmp-server informs 301, 304
snmp-server remote-user 304, 306
snmp-server user 68, 298, 304, 306
snmp-server view 300, 304, 306
source-address 277, 291
source-ip
 access control list 589
 crypto list rule 496, 564
 packet sniffing 388, 403
 policy based routing 610
 policy list 577
 QoS list 593
speed 195
 USB port 237
start-ip-addr 448, 456
station 156, 160, 186
subnet-mask 449, 450, 456
success-retries 277, 291
suggest-key 491, 562
tcp destination-port . . 389, 403, 578, 589, 593, 610
tcp established 580, 590
tcp source-port 389, 403, 578, 590, 593, 610
tcp syn-cookies 66, 67
telnet 41, 64
test led 92, 93
test-rate-limit 408, 411
threshold count 279, 291
timeout absolute 236
timers basic 467, 468
timers spf 472, 473
traceroute 432, 433
track 279, 291
track rtr 278
traffic-shape rate 195
trunk-group 156, 187
tunnel checksum 440, 443
tunnel destination 439, 443
tunnel dscp 440, 443
tunnel key 440, 443
tunnel path-mtu-discovery 438, 443
tunnel source 439, 443
tunnel ttl 440, 443
type 276, 290
udp destination-port . . 389, 403, 578, 590, 593, 610
udp source-port 389, 403, 578, 590, 593, 610
username 48, 51
value 450, 456

vendor-specific-option 450, 456
voip-queue 231, 232, 233, 234
voip-queue-delay 231, 233, 234
wait-interval 277, 291
Composite operations
adding to IP rule 583
configuring 583
deleting from IP rule 583
example 584
pre-configured for access control lists 581
Computer, connecting to fixed router port 191
Configuration
defining an interface 75
DHCP client 198
dynamic trap manager 306
ethernet ports 191
header compression 223
installation and setup 33
LLDP 204
managing configuration files 109
MGC list 80
modem 235
primary management interface 76
RTCP 223
RTP 223
running configuration 35
saving configuration changes 35
startup 246
startup configuration 35
switching 321
using Avaya IW 42
using GIW 45
using GUI applications 33, 34
using the CLI 34
WAN ethernet port 194
Configuration file
CLI commands 111
Contact closure
activating when access code dialed 312
closure modes 312
configuring software 312
deactivating manually 312
displaying status 313
overview 311
relay control methods 311
setting manually 312
setting pulse duration 312
using in SLS mode 125
Contact closure configuration
CLI commands 313
Contexts 38
Continuous channel in VPN 514
Cost 470
Crypto list
configuring 495
deactivating 498
crypto list
overview 482
Crypto map
configuring 494
overview 482

D

Default gateway
CLI commands 78
defining 78, 432
removing 432
Denial of Service reporting 68
Deployments
basic 27
introduction 27
overview 27
port redundancy 28, 29
RSTP 30
RSTP and switch redundancy 31
switch redundancy 29
Device status
CLI commands 93
viewing 91
DHCP
BOOTP relay 445
configuration 446
description 444
DHCP and BOOTP relay
CLI commands 446
DHCP client
applications 197
CLI commands 202
CLI logging
enabling 201
setting logging session conditions 201
viewing 201
configuring 198
determining DHCP option requests 198
displaying configuration 201
displaying parameters 199
enabling 198
lease
releasing 200
renewing 200
maintaining 201
overview 196
setting the client identifier 198
setting the client lease 198
setting the hostname 198
DHCP options 449
DHCP server
CLI commands 455
configuration examples 452

configuring DHCP options . . . 449
configuring vendor-specific options . . . 450
overview . . . 447
typical application . . . 448
Diagnosing
and monitoring the network . . . 341
Dial On Demand Routing (DDR) . . . 249
Dialer interface
activating with object tracking . . . 256
as backup for Loopback interface . . . 250
as backup for WAN interface . . . 250
assigning access control list to . . . 260
authentication method . . . 253
CHAP authentication . . . 254
CLI commands . . . 267
configuring . . . 252
configuring as backup . . . 254
configuring backup routing . . . 255
dynamic IP . . . 256
dynamic routing . . . 250
giving priority to VoIP . . . 249
logging . . . 261
setting IP address . . . 252
static routing . . . 250
unnumbered IP . . . 250, 256, 426
verifying connection . . . 254
Dialer strings . . . 252
Directed broadcast forwarding . . . 457
Discard routes . . . 431
Distribution access lists . . . 465
DNS resolver
clearing counters . . . 90
CLI commands . . . 90
configuration example . . . 89
features . . . 85
maintaining . . . 89
overview . . . 84
showing information . . . 89
typical application . . . 85
when not necessary . . . 87
DNS servers
requesting list of DNS servers during a PPP/IPCP session . . . 243
requesting list of DNS servers from a DHCP server 198
DoS reporting . . . 68
DSA . . . 58
DSCP
as access control list rule criteria . . . 580
as policy-based routing rule criteria . . . 580
as QoS list rule criteria . . . 580
in GRE header . . . 440
in RTR probes . . . 276
in VPN packets . . . 495
routing based on . . . 596
DSCP table, *see* Policy . . . 584
duplex . . . 196
Duplex, configuring duplex type . . . 192
Dynamic CAC
and modem dial backup . . . 249, 256
CLI commands . . . 274
configuration . . . 273
description . . . 272
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
see DHCP
Dynamic IP
configuring . . . 512
Dialer interface . . . 256
overview . . . 511
Dynamic routes
deleting . . . 432
redistributing . . . 474
Dynamic trap manager
CLI commands . . . 307
configuring . . . 306

E

E1/T1 lines
connecting to WAN media module . . . 239
Echo cancellation
CLI commands . . . 413
configuring . . . 412
overview . . . 412
ECMP . . . 470
Emergency Transfer Relay
see ETR
Encrypting gateway secrets . . . 64
Ethernet ports
CLI commands . . . 193
configuration . . . 191
configuring duplex type . . . 192
configuring link negotiation protocol . . . 193
configuring switch port . . . 192
connecting devices to . . . 191
list of . . . 191
port redundancy . . . 328
setting flowcontrol advertisements . . . 192
WAN Ethernet port
see WAN Ethernet port
ETR
CLI commands . . . 294
description . . . 293
displaying status . . . 294
LED . . . 293
manual activation . . . 293
setting state . . . 293
trunk-to-port latchings . . . 293

F

Fair VoIP queue . . . 231

Fast Ethernet interface
configuring PPPoE . . . 240
Fast Ethernet port . . . 270
auto-negotiation . . . 195
configuring duplex type . . . 195
configuring interface . . . 194
configuring port speed . . . 195
firewall connected . . . 422
VPN connected . . . 422
FastEthernet interface
checking status . . . 268
dynamic bandwidth reporting . . . 272
ICMP keepalive . . . 268
Features . . . 25
File transfer, *see* FTP or TFTP . . . 94
FIPS
adding next hops . . . 430
next hops static routes . . . 430
Firewall . . . 422
Firmware
CLI commands . . . 100
firmware bank defaults . . . 95
firmware banks . . . 36
load with ASB button . . . 95
managing firmware banks . . . 95
redundancy . . . 95
upgrade overview . . . 94
upgrading using FTP/TFTP . . . 96
upgrading using USB mass storage device . . . 97
uploading files from the gateway . . . 98
version control . . . 36
Fixed analog trunk port . . . 293
Flowcontrol advertisement . . . 192
Fragmentation
CLI commands . . . 480
configuration . . . 480
description . . . 479
GRE tunneling . . . 438
reassembly . . . 480
FTP . . . 94

G

General context . . . 38
Generic Routing Encapsulation, *see* GRE tunneling
Gigabit Ethernet port
port redundancy . . . 328
GIW
accessing . . . 44
configuration using . . . 45
description . . . 44
installation on laptop . . . 45
GRE tunneling
adding checksum . . . 440
adding ID keys . . . 440
applications . . . 434
as next hop . . . 602
assigning DSCP . . . 440
assigning TTL . . . 440
checking tunnel status . . . 437, 439
CLI commands . . . 443
compared to VPN . . . 433
displaying tunnel information . . . 441
dynamic bandwidth reporting . . . 272
dynamic MTU discovery . . . 438
optional features . . . 437
overview . . . 422, 433
preventing recursive routing . . . 435
routing packets to tunnel . . . 434
GUI tools, configuring the system with . . . 33, 34
Guide
downloading from website . . . 21
latest version, downloading . . . 21

H

Header compression
clearing rtp header compression statistics . . . 229
clearing tcp header compression statistics . . . 229
decompression . . . 224
IPCH method - RTP and TCP header compression
CLI commands . . . 226
disabling . . . 226
enabling . . . 225
overview . . . 224
IPHC method - RTP and TCP header compression
configuring UDP ports range . . . 225
methods . . . 224
overview . . . 223
showing rtp header compression statistics . . . 229
showing tcp header compression statistics . . . 229
supported methods per interface type . . . 224
transmission rate . . . 224
Van Jacobson Method - TCP header compression
CLI commands . . . 228
configuring . . . 227
disabling . . . 228
enabling . . . 227
overview . . . 224
Hello packets . . . 471
Help
CLI . . . 38
commands . . . 38
High Preference static routes . . . 430

I

ICC-VLAN . . . 323
ICMP errors . . . 463
CLI commands . . . 463

ICMP keepalive . . . 268
and policy-based routing . . . 595
CLI commands . . . 271
IGAR . . . 249, 256, 272
IKE
phase 1 . . . 481
phase 2 . . . 481
Ingress Access Control List . . . 595
Ingress QoS List . . . 595
Integrated analog testing
CLI commands . . . 418
displaying corrections . . . 418
displaying test results . . . 417
healing trunks . . . 418
overview . . . 414
profiles, clearing . . . 417
profiles, configuring . . . 416
profiles, displaying . . . 417
test cancelling . . . 417
test launching . . . 417
test lines . . . 415
types of tests . . . 414
Interface configuration
CLI commands . . . 424
Interface status
CLI commands . . . 405
Interfaces
adjusting bandwidth . . . 470
administrative status . . . 195
applying PBR lists . . . 599
assigning Cost . . . 470
assigning IP addresses . . . 75
authentication . . . 466
backup . . . 195
configuration . . . 421
configuration examples . . . 423
defining . . . 75
disabling . . . 429
displaying information . . . 245
displaying status . . . 404
duplex type . . . 195
dynamic bandwidth reporting . . . 272
GRE tunnel, *see* GRE tunneling
IP
see IP interfaces
Layer 2 . . . 422, 429
logical . . . 423
Loopback . . . 422, 595, 600
metrics . . . 471
network type . . . 471
physical . . . 422
priority . . . 471
setting administrative state . . . 423
setting load calculation intervals . . . 75
speed . . . 195
switching . . . 422, 423
testing configuration . . . 245
updating broadcast address . . . 423
virtual . . . 422
WAN . . . 422
Inter-Gateway Alternate Routing, *see* IGAR
Internet Key Exchange (IKE) . . . 481
IP address
assigning to USB port . . . 33
defining . . . 423
obtaining via DHCP . . . 197
obtaining via PPP/IPCP negotiation . . . 241
storing in ARP table . . . 459
ip domain timeout . . . 87
IP interfaces . . . 423
IP Security, *see* VPN
IP unnumbered interface configuration
CLI commands . . . 428
IPSec VPN, *see* VPN
ISAKMP
peer-group configuration . . . 493
policies . . . 487
VPN peer configuration . . . 489

K

keepalive ICMP, *see* ICMP keepalive
Keepalive, GRE tunnel . . . 437
keepalive-track . . . 196
configuring in VPN . . . 492
configuring on PPPoE interface . . . 242

L

Layer 2 interfaces . . . 429
Layer 2 logical interfaces . . . 423
Layer 2 virtual interfaces . . . 422
LEDs, ETR . . . 293
Link Layer Discovery Protocol, *see* LLDP . . . 203
Link-state algorithm . . . 469
Listing files . . . 112
CLI commands . . . 112
LLDP
802.1 TLVs (optional) . . . 204
CLI commands . . . 206
configuration . . . 204
enabling . . . 204
mandatory TLVs . . . 204
optional TLVs . . . 204
overview . . . 203
setting additional TLVs . . . 205
setting port status . . . 204
supported ports . . . 205
supported TLVs . . . 204
verify advertisements . . . 205

Load balancing
ECMP . . . 470
VRRP . . . 475
Log file
see Logging
Logging
CLI commands . . . 220
configuring log file . . . 211
configuring session log . . . 213
configuring Syslog server . . . 208
copying the Syslog file . . . 211
default severity levels . . . 216
defining filters . . . 215
deleting log file . . . 211
deleting Syslog server . . . 209
Dialer interface . . . 261
disabling log file . . . 211
disabling session log . . . 213
disabling Syslog server . . . 209
displaying log file contents . . . 211
displaying Syslog server status . . . 210
enabling log file . . . 211
enabling session log . . . 213
enabling Syslog server . . . 208
filtering by application . . . 217
introduction . . . 207
limiting Syslog access . . . 209
log file . . . 207
log file example . . . 219
log file filter contents . . . 215
log file message format . . . 213
modem dial backup . . . 261
object trackers . . . 281
object tracking . . . 281
overview . . . 207
RTR . . . 281
saving settings . . . 207
session log . . . 207, 213
session log example . . . 220
session log message format . . . 214
setting filters . . . 215
sinks . . . 207
specifying Syslog output facility . . . 208
Syslog default settings . . . 210
Syslog server . . . 207
Syslog server example . . . 218
Syslog server message format . . . 210
VPN . . . 503
Logging session, *see* Logging
Logical interfaces . . . 423
Loopback interface . . . 250, 422, 595, 600
Loops
defined . . . 332
preventing in GRE tunneling . . . 435
preventing in RIP . . . 464
Low preference static routes . . . 430

M

MAC addresses, storing in ARP table . . . 459
Managed Security Services, *see* MSS
Master Configuration Key
CLI commands . . . 67
configuring . . . 65
MCG
CLI commands . . . 84
MCK (Master Configuration Key) . . . 64
Media modules . . . 26
adding, using a USB mass storage device . . . 107
upgrading, using a USB mass storage device . . . 107
Metrics . . . 474
MGC
accessing . . . 46
accessing the registered MGC . . . 83
auto fallback to primary . . . 79
changing the list . . . 82
checking connectivity with . . . 250
clearing the list . . . 82
displaying the list . . . 81
monitoring the ICC . . . 83
monitoring the LSP . . . 83
overview . . . 78
reporting bandwidth to . . . 272
running Avaya Aura Communication Manager . . . 46
setting reset times . . . 82
setting the list . . . 80
MGC list
SLS entry . . . 120
Modem
configuring . . . 235
connecting to S8300 Server . . . 41
connecting to USB port . . . 40
connecting via USB modem . . . 41
dial backup, *see* Modem dial backup
displaying USB modem status . . . 236
USB . . . 235
Modem dial backup
activating with object tracking . . . 256
and dynamic CAC . . . 249, 256
as backup interface . . . 249
authentication method . . . 253
bandwidth available for . . . 249
CHAP authentication . . . 254
configuration example . . . 257
configuring backup routing . . . 255
entering dialer strings . . . 252
feature interactions . . . 255
logging . . . 261
overview . . . 248
policy lists and . . . 249

prerequisites . . . 251
RAS configuration . . . 251
typical installations . . . 251
using VPN . . . 249
Weighted Fair Queuing and . . . 249
Monitoring applications
configuring . . . 341
MSS
CLI commands . . . 74
configuring . . . 68
example . . . 73
Overview . . . 68
predefined DoS classes . . . 70
reporting mechanism . . . 68
user-defined DoS classes . . . 71

N

NAT Traversal
configuring . . . 499
overview . . . 499
Nested tunneling . . . 435
NetBIOS . . . 458
Network monitoring
applications . . . 341
Next hop lists
applying to policy-based routing rules . . . 601
backup routes . . . 597
editing . . . 602
entries . . . 602
overview . . . 602
Next hops, *see* FIPS . . . 430

O

Object tracking
activating Dialer interface . . . 256
applying to DHCP client . . . 198
applying to PBR next-hops . . . 598
applying to static routes . . . 429
backup for the FastEthernet interface . . . 285
CLI commands . . . 290
configuration . . . 275
configuration workflow . . . 280
enabling logging . . . 281
interface backup via policy-based routing . . . 288
maintenance . . . 280
object tracker configuration . . . 278
overview . . . 274
RTR configuration . . . 276
showing routes with tracking . . . 432
verifying MGC connectivity . . . 250
viewing log messages . . . 281
VPN failover . . . 285
Open Shortest Path First protocol
see OSPF
OSPF
advertising static routes . . . 429
CLI commands . . . 472
compared to RIP . . . 463, 469
configuration . . . 470
default metric . . . 474
description . . . 469
displaying information . . . 471
dynamic Cost . . . 470
enabling on network . . . 471
enabling on system . . . 471
interface authentication password . . . 470
interface authentication type . . . 470
limitations . . . 470
metrics . . . 470
modem dial backup and . . . 251
priority . . . 471
redistributing routing information . . . 471
shortest-path-first algorithm . . . 469
suppressing updates . . . 471
using with RIP . . . 474
OSPF Autonomous System Boundary Router . . . 470

P

Packet sniffing
analyzing capture file . . . 399
analyzing captured packets . . . 396
applying a capture-list . . . 393
applying rules to an address range . . . 388
applying rules to packets with DSCP values . . . 388
applying rules to packets with ip protocols . . . 388
capture list examples . . . 392
clearing the capture buffer . . . 394
CLI commands . . . 401
configuring . . . 385
creating capture-list . . . 386
defining rule criteria . . . 386
disabling . . . 385
enabling . . . 385
enabling the service . . . 395
excepting protocols from rules . . . 388
excluding ICMP type and code . . . 391
identifying the interface . . . 400
information, viewing . . . 396
overview . . . 383
packets captured . . . 384
reducing the size of the capture file . . . 394
rule criteria commands . . . 387
scp file upload limit . . . 398
service, starting . . . 395
service, stopping . . . 396
setting buffers . . . 394
setting capture list context . . . 386

setting capture list parameters . . . 386
setting max frame size . . . 394
settings . . . 394
simulating packets . . . 401
specifying bugger size . . . 394
specifying capture actions . . . 386
specifying ICMP type and code . . . 391
specifying interfaces . . . 385
streams that can be captured . . . 384
streams that cannot be captured . . . 384
streams with conditional capture requirements . . . 384
uploading capture file . . . 397
uploading capture files to remote servers or USB storage device . . . 398
uploading capture files to the S8300 . . . 398
viewing the capture-list . . . 393
viewing, captured packet hex dump . . . 396
Packets, simulating, *see* Policy . . . 587
Password Authentication Protocol . . . 236
Passwords
changing by the admin . . . 48
changing by the user . . . 50
disabling . . . 49
displaying password information . . . 50
managing . . . 47
managing contents . . . 49
managing expiry . . . 49
managing length . . . 49
managing lockout . . . 49
overview . . . 47
recovery password . . . 63
PBR lists
attaching to interface . . . 599
attaching to Loopback interface . . . 595, 600
CLI commands . . . 609
deleting . . . 603
editing rules . . . 601
modifying . . . 603
name . . . 597
rule criteria . . . 600
rules . . . 598, 600
Permanent routes . . . 431
Phones supported in SLS mode . . . 114
PIM
accessing . . . 46
description . . . 46
SLS configuration . . . 135
Ping . . . 246
PMI
CLI commands . . . 77
configuration . . . 76
entering the interface context . . . 76
explanation . . . 76
resetting the interface . . . 76
setting location information . . . 77
setting system contact information . . . 77
setting the system name . . . 77
showing the PMI . . . 76
Poison-reverse . . . 465, 466
Policy
access control lists . . . 567
attaching policy list to interface at IACL . . . 573
attaching policy lists to an interface . . . 572
attaching QoS list to interface at ingress QoS list 573
changing DSCP table entries . . . 585
configuring composite operations . . . 583
copy list . . . 571
create access control lost . . . 570
create QoS list . . . 570
creating policy lists . . . 570
creating rules . . . 576
default actions . . . 572
defining global rules . . . 575
defining list identification attributes . . . 571
defining policy lists . . . 570
deleting a policy list . . . 572
deleting a QoS list . . . 572
destination port range . . . 578
device wide policy lists . . . 574
displaying access control lists . . . 575
displaying composite operation lists . . . 575
displaying ip rules . . . 576
displaying policy lists in access control list context 586
displaying policy lists in DSCP table context . . . 587
displaying policy lists in general context . . . 586
displaying policy lists in QoS list context . . . 586
displaying policy lists in QoS list rule context . . . 586
DSCP as rule criteria . . . 580
DSCP default value . . . 584
DSCP methods . . . 584
DSCP table . . . 584
edit access control list . . . 570
editing policy lists . . . 570
editing rules . . . 576
example composite operation . . . 584
fragments . . . 580
ICMP code . . . 579
ICMP type . . . 579
managing policy lists . . . 570
mapping DSCP to a CoS . . . 584
modem dial backup and . . . 249
network security with access control lists . . . 568
overview . . . 567
policy lists and loopback interfaces . . . 574
policy-based routing, *see* Policy-based routing
precongifured composite operations . . . 581
precongifured for QoS lists . . . 582
QoS fields . . . 569
QoS list . . . 570
QoS list parts . . . 569
QoS lists . . . 569

rule criteria . . . 575
sequence of device-wide policy list application . . . 574
sequence of policy list application . . . 572
simulated packet properties . . . 587
simulating packets . . . 587
source port range . . . 578
specifying a destination ip address . . . 577
specifying a source ip address . . . 577
specifying an ip protocol . . . 577
specifying operations . . . 580
TCP, establish bit . . . 580
testing policy lists . . . 586
using ip wildcards . . . 575
Policy-based routing
applications . . . 596
applying object tracking to next-hops . . . 598
attaching list to interface . . . 599
based on DSCP . . . 596
cancelling object tracking on next-hops . . . 603
changing the object tracker on a next-hop . . . 603
defining next hop lists . . . 598
distinguishing between voice and data . . . 596
object tracking and . . . 288
overview . . . 595
packets not considered router packets . . . 595
PBR lists, *see* PBR lists
routing to GRE tunnel . . . 434
rules . . . 600
saving the configuration . . . 600
used to define backup routes . . . 597
VoIP . . . 596
Port classification
CLI commands . . . 340
Port classification, *see* Ports . . . 339
Port mirroring
CLI commands . . . 332
configuration . . . 331
description . . . 331
Port redundancy
CLI commands . . . 330
configuration . . . 329
disabling . . . 329
displaying information . . . 329
enabling . . . 329
LAN deployment . . . 28, 29
secondary port activation . . . 328
setting redundancy-intervals . . . 329
switchback . . . 329
Ports
alternate . . . 333
analog line . . . 293
assigning static VLANs . . . 324
backup . . . 333
classification . . . 339
configuring administrative state . . . 192
configuring name . . . 193
configuring VLAN tagging mode . . . 324
disabling . . . 192
displaying VLAN binding mode information . . . 324
Fast Ethernet, *see* Fast Ethernet port
FastEthernet
see Fast Ethernet port
managing connection type . . . 193
mirroring, *see* Port mirroring
opening traffic . . . 333
roles in RSTP . . . 333
setting priority level . . . 192
setting send/receive mode . . . 192
PPP
connection . . . 40
PPP over Ethernet, *see* PPPoE
PPP/IPCP address negotiation . . . 241
PPPoE . . . 239
authentication . . . 241
CLI commands . . . 244
description . . . 240
shutting down client . . . 243
Priority queueing
CLI commands . . . 234
Priority Queuing . . . 232
Priority VoIP queuing . . . 231
Privilege levels
changing . . . 48
description . . . 48
Provisioning and Installation Manager, *see* PIM
Proxy ARP . . . 462
CLI commands . . . 462

Q

QoS
analyzing fault and clear trap output . . . 366
CLI commands . . . 230
configuration . . . 229
displaying parameters . . . 229
fair packet scheduling . . . 231
fault and clear traps . . . 353
metrics for RTP statistics application . . . 347
policy, *see* Policy
Priority Queuing . . . 232
queue sizes for VoIP traffic . . . 229
resolving conflicts . . . 229
SNMP traps . . . 352
traps in messages file . . . 363
traps, viewing . . . 362
VoIP Queuing . . . 232
Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing . . . 231, 239
QoS list
CLI commands . . . 591
Queues

fair packet scheduling . . . 231
Priority . . . 232
Priority Queuing . . . 232
VoIP . . . 232
VoIP Queuing . . . 232
Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing . . . 231, 239

R

RADIUS authentication . . . 47, 60
RAS
dialer strings for modem dial backup . . . 260
modem dial backup and . . . 249
modem dial backup configuration options . . . 251
modem dial backup prerequisites . . . 251
serving multiple branch offices . . . 251
Recovery password . . . 63
CLI commands . . . 63
Remote Access Server, *see* RAS
Remote services logins . . . 51
Restoring the gateway
via the gateway USB port . . . 104
RIP
advertising static routes . . . 429
authentication type . . . 466
CLI commands . . . 467
compared to OSPF . . . 469
configuration . . . 466
default metric . . . 474
description . . . 463
distribution access lists . . . 465
enabling . . . 467
learning default route . . . 466
limitations . . . 466
poison-reverse . . . 465
preventing loops . . . 464
redistributing routing information . . . 467
RIPv1 . . . 464
RIPv2 . . . 464
setting timers . . . 467
specifying networks . . . 467
specifying version . . . 466
split-horizon . . . 464
using with OSPF . . . 474
versions supported . . . 463
RMON
agent . . . 341
clearing statistics . . . 342
CLI commands . . . 342, 344
creating a history entry . . . 342
creating an alarm entry . . . 342
creating an event entry . . . 342
displaying alarm entries . . . 342
displaying event entries . . . 342
displaying history entries . . . 342
displaying statistics . . . 342
overview . . . 341
Route redistribution . . . 463
CLI commands . . . 475
configuration . . . 474
description . . . 474
metric translation . . . 474
metrics . . . 474
Router
backup . . . 475
computing path . . . 469
configuration commands . . . 59, 60, 62, 64, 65
configuring BOOTP . . . 444
configuring broadcast relay . . . 457
configuring DHCP . . . 444
configuring unnumbered ip addresses . . . 426
connecting to fixed router port . . . 191
defining default gateway . . . 432
determining shortest path . . . 470
disabling . . . 421
displaying interfaces . . . 426
enabling . . . 421
enabling RIP . . . 467
features . . . 421
fragmentation
see Fragmentation
hello packets . . . 471
ID . . . 471
interfaces . . . 422
load balancing . . . 475
OSPF Autonomous System Boundary . . . 470
overview . . . 421
redundancy . . . 475
RIP
see RIP
setting the borrowed ip interface . . . 426
unnumbered ip interfaces in table . . . 427
virtual . . . 475, 477
Router port, connecting to . . . 191
Routes
displaying . . . 432
distribution policy rules . . . 466
dynamic, displaying . . . 432
metrics . . . 466
setting route preference . . . 435
static, displaying . . . 432
tracing . . . 432
Routing
policy based, *see* Policy . . . 569
Routing Information Protocol
see RIP
Routing table
CLI commands . . . 433
configuration . . . 432
deleting dynamic entries . . . 432

deleting static routes . . . 429
description . . . 429
displaying for destination address . . . 432
displaying information . . . 432
RSA authentication . . . 57
RSTP
designating ports as edge ports . . . 334
displaying port point-to-point status . . . 334
displaying the port edge state . . . 334
fast network convergence . . . 334
features . . . 333
LAN deployment . . . 30, 31
manually configure uplink and backbone ports . . . 334
role of ports . . . 333
setting port-to-port admin status . . . 334
RSVP . . . 230
RTCP . . . 223
RTP
configuring . . . 223
overview . . . 344
statistics application functionality . . . 345
viewing configuration thresholds . . . 346
RTP header compression, *see* Header compression
RTP session data . . . 344
RTP statistics
CLI commands . . . 382
RTP statistics application
configuration and output examples . . . 369
configuring . . . 345
configuring additional trap destinations . . . 352
configuring fault and clear traps . . . 353
configuring QoS traps . . . 352
configuring thresholds . . . 348
display session information . . . 356
displaying VoIP engine RTP statistics . . . 354
enabling . . . 349
enabling traps . . . 353
modifying the statistics window . . . 352
QoS metric thresholds . . . 346
QoS metrics . . . 347
resetting . . . 349
sample network . . . 369
setting QoS event thresholds . . . 349
setting QoS indicator thresholds . . . 349
setting the trap rate limiter . . . 354
statistics summary report output . . . 354
viewing configuration . . . 350
viewing QoS traps in messages file . . . 363
RTR, *see* Object tracking

S

S8300 Server
accessing gateway via . . . 41
connecting modem . . . 41
remote connection to . . . 41
Saving configuration changes commands . . . 36
SCP . . . 59
transferring announcement files using . . . 315
Security
DoS attack detection . . . 68
overview . . . 47
special features . . . 62
VLANs . . . 323
Security Associations (SAs) . . . 481
Services port
connecting console device . . . 39
Session log, *see* Logging
Setting synchronization, *see* Synchronization . . . 613
show ip ospf commands . . . 471
shutdown
WAN port . . . 196
SLS
Avaya phones supported in SLS . . . 114
call processing not supported by SLS . . . 117
call processing supported by SLS . . . 116
capabilities . . . 113
capacities by gateway model . . . 142
CDR log . . . 127
CLI command hierarchy . . . 181
configuring . . . 129
configuring Communication Manager for SLS . . . 130
disabling . . . 140
enabling . . . 140
entry in MGC list . . . 120
features . . . 114
interaction with
call transfer . . . 124
contact closure . . . 125
Direct Inward Dialing . . . 121
Hold feature . . . 122
multiple call appearances . . . 122
shared administrative identity with softphone . . . 126
introduction . . . 113
logging . . . 127
manual CLI configuration
administering BRI parameters . . . 168
administering dial-pattern parameters . . . 178
administering DS1 parameters . . . 163
administering incoming-routing parameters . . . 180
administering signaling-group parameters . . . 177
administering station parameters . . . 160
administering trunk-group parameters . . . 170
command sub-contexts . . . 156
commands hierarchy . . . 181
instructions . . . 157
introduction . . . 141
preparing SLS data set . . . 142
prerequisites . . . 141
PIM configuration . . . 135

preparing SLS data set . . . 142
analog stations data . . . 142
ARS dial patterns data . . . 154
DCP stations data . . . 143
DS1 trunks data . . . 149
FAC data . . . 152
incoming call handling data . . . 155
IP stations data . . . 145
ISDN-BRI trunks data . . . 151
signaling groups data . . . 150
system parameters data . . . 153
provisioning data . . . 118
states . . . 120
registered . . . 120
setup . . . 120
teardown . . . 121
unregistered . . . 120
supported functionality . . . 116
SNMP
adding an OID to a view . . . 304
agent-manager communication methods . . . 295
changing user parameters . . . 298
configuration examples . . . 308
configuring traps . . . 301
creating a community . . . 304
creating a remote user . . . 304
creating OID lists . . . 300
creating user groups . . . 300
creating users . . . 298
default security name, read . . . 297
default security name, write . . . 297
defining the SNMPv3 notification host . . . 301
deleting an OID from a view . . . 304
disabling authentication failure traps . . . 301
disabling link-up/down notifications/traps . . . 301
disabling link-up/down traps on an interface . . . 302
displaying a list of views . . . 304
displaying group lists . . . 305
displaying information . . . 301
displaying notification receiver list . . . 305
displaying the engine ID . . . 305
displaying user lists . . . 305
displaying users and group mapping . . . 305
DoS alerts . . . 68
enabling access . . . 304
enabling authentication failure traps . . . 301
enabling frame relay traps . . . 301
enabling link-up/down notifications/traps . . . 301
enabling link-up/down traps on an interface . . . 302
enabling traps and notifications . . . 301
mapping user groups to views . . . 299
MSS notifications . . . 68
overview . . . 295
potential agent residences . . . 295
predefined user groups . . . 299
QoS . . . 352
removing a group . . . 304
required information for creating views . . . 300
setting a group . . . 304
setting dynamic trap manager parameters . . . 306
setting SNMPv3 timeout notifications . . . 301
setting the engine ID . . . 304
snmp-server community . . . 304
user groups . . . 299
user-based security model (USM) . . . 298
USM security levels . . . 298
version 1 . . . 297
version 2 . . . 297
version 3 . . . 297
versions . . . 296
views . . . 300
SNMP access configuration
CLI commands . . . 305
SNMP trap configuration
CLI commands . . . 303
Software, *see* Firmware . . . 36
Spanning tree
CLI commands . . . 337
configuration . . . 335
configuring . . . 332
disabling . . . 333, 335
displaying spanning tree information . . . 335
enabling . . . 335
forcing port to send hello packet . . . 335
setting bridge priority for STP . . . 335
setting default path cost version . . . 335
setting hello time . . . 335
setting message storage time . . . 335
setting port cost . . . 335
setting port spanning tree priority . . . 335
setting protocol version . . . 335
setting the forward delay . . . 335
speed . . . 196
Split-horizon . . . 464, 466
SSH
configuration . . . 58
overview . . . 57
Standard Local Survivability, *see* SLS
Static routes
advertising . . . 429
applying object tracking . . . 429, 430
configuring next hops . . . 430
deleting . . . 429, 430
description . . . 429
discard route . . . 431
displaying . . . 432
dropping packets to . . . 431
establishing . . . 432
High Preference . . . 430
inactive . . . 429

load-balancing . . . 429
Low Preference . . . 430
permanent . . . 431
redistributing to RIP and OSPF . . . 474
removing . . . 432
types . . . 430
Survivability
auto fallback to primary MGC . . . 79
configuring the MGC list . . . 80
connection preserving migration . . . 80
ELS . . . 79
enhanced local survivability, *see* ELS . . . 79
MGC list . . . 79
modem dial-backup . . . 80
options . . . 79
overview . . . 79
setting reset times . . . 82
SLS, *see* SLS
Switch
connecting to fixed router port . . . 191
displaying configuration . . . 245
displaying VLAN tagging information . . . 324
displaying VLANs . . . 324
interface . . . 422, 423
Switch ports
configuring . . . 192
location . . . 191
Switch redundancy
LAN deployment . . . 29, 31
Switchback . . . 329
Switching
configuring . . . 321
interface . . . 422, 423
SYN attacks protection, *see* SYN cookies
SYN cookies
attack notification . . . 67
clearing counters . . . 67
configuring . . . 66
introduction . . . 65
overview . . . 65
statistics . . . 67
strategies employed . . . 66
SYN flood attack protection, *see* SYN cookies
Synchronization
CLI commands . . . 615
disassociating specified primary or secondary clock source . . . 614
displaying synchronization timing . . . 615
LED status . . . 614
overview . . . 613
setting the sync source . . . 613
toggling sync source switching . . . 614
Syslog server
see Logging

T

Target environment . . . 25
TCP header compression, *see* Header compression
TCP/IP connection . . . 40
Telnet
accessing gateway via . . . 40
accessing S8300 via . . . 41
enabling and disabling access . . . 63
TFTP . . . 94
TLVs
802.1 (optional) . . . 204
mandatory . . . 204
optional . . . 204
supported . . . 204
Tools
for monitoring . . . 341
VMON . . . 344
Traffic shaping
displaying configuration . . . 245
WAN Ethernet port . . . 195
traffic-shape rate . . . 196
Transform-sets
overview . . . 482
VPN, defining . . . 488
TRK port
see Fixed analog trunk port
TTL . . . 440

U

UDP
header compression . . . 224
probe packets . . . 432
Unnumbered IP interface
configuring . . . 426
Dialer interface . . . 250, 256
examples . . . 427
feature overview . . . 426
in routing table . . . 427
USB mass storage device
backing up the gateway . . . 102
CLI commands . . . 108
overview . . . 101
restoring the gateway . . . 104
upgrading firmware . . . 97
upgrading media modules . . . 107
USB port . . . 101
assigning IP address . . . 33
changing the ip peer address . . . 236
CLI commands . . . 237
configuring for modem use . . . 40
connecting modem . . . 40
default parameters . . . 235

description . . . 235
disconnecting USB sessions . . . 236
displaying USB-modem interface parameters . . . 236
enabling . . . 235
resetting . . . 235
resetting the USB modem . . . 235
setting authentication method . . . 236
setting ip address . . . 235
setting PPP timeout disconnects . . . 236
User accounts
CLI commands . . . 50
managing . . . 47
User authentication . . . 47
SSH . . . 57
Usernames
configuring . . . 48
managing . . . 47
overview . . . 47
removing . . . 48
USP WAN lines . . . 239

V

VAM . . . 315
Virtual interface . . . 422
Virtual Private Network, *see* VPN
Virtual router . . . 475, 477
Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol, *see* VRRP
Vlan 1 . . . 422
VLANs
assigning static VLANs to ports . . . 324
binding modes . . . 322
clearing the VLAN table . . . 323
CLI commands . . . 327
configuration examples . . . 324
configuring . . . 324
configuring tagging mode . . . 324
deleting the VLAN . . . 324
description . . . 423
DHCP/BOOTP requests . . . 445
displaying configuration and statistics . . . 324
displaying the VLAN table . . . 323
dynamic bandwidth reporting . . . 272
entering configuration mode . . . 324
ICC-VLAN . . . 323
ingress security . . . 323
multi VLAN binding . . . 322
multiple interfaces . . . 446
overview . . . 321
setting the VLAN . . . 321, 324
setting vlan 2 example . . . 323
switching interface . . . 422, 423
table . . . 323
tagging . . . 321
VLMS . . . 464
VMON, for troubleshooting QoS . . . 344
VoIP
available transmission protocols . . . 223
enabling queuing . . . 229
fair packet scheduling . . . 231
overview . . . 223
priority over Dialer interface . . . 249
queue delay . . . 229
queue size . . . 229
routing based on . . . 596
RSVP protocol . . . 230
VoIP queueing . . . 232
Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing . . . 231, 239
VoIP Queuing . . . 232
VPN . . . 422, 433
activating . . . 500
assigning an access control list . . . 499
basic parameters . . . 486
clearing VPN data . . . 503
CLI commands . . . 561
commands summary . . . 484
components and relationships . . . 483
components overview . . . 482
configuration
displaying . . . 502
procedure . . . 486
continuous channel . . . 514
coordinating with the VPN peer . . . 486
crypto list
assigning to an interface . . . 500
configuring . . . 495
deactivating . . . 498
overview . . . 482
crypto map
configuring . . . 494
overview . . . 482
failover mechanisms . . . 534
introduction . . . 481
ISAKMP policies
configuring . . . 487
overview . . . 482
logging . . . 503
maintenance . . . 502
modem dial backup and . . . 249
NAT Traversal . . . 499
object tracking for failover . . . 285
peer
configuring . . . 489
overview . . . 483
peer-group
configuring . . . 493
overview . . . 483
show configuration . . . 502
show status . . . 502
simple VPN topology . . . 505

site-to-site configuration 486
transform-sets
configuring 488
overview 482
typical failover applications
failover using a peer-group 550
failover using DNS 542
failover using GRE 535
failover using object-tracking 550
overview 534
typical installations
configuring dynamic IP 512
enabling continuous channel 514
full or partial mesh 515
full solution 527
hub and spokes installation 505
VRRP
CLI commands 478
configuration 477
configuration example 476
description 475

W

WAN
backup interfaces 248
checking interface status 268
Dialer interface as backup 250
dynamic bandwidth reporting 272
features 239
ICMP keepalive 268, 595
interfaces 422
overview 239
testing configuration 245
CLI commands 246
WAN endpoint device
connecting to fixed router port 191
WAN Ethernet port
backup interfaces 195
binding interface to object tracker 195
configuring 194
traffic shaping 195
WAN Ethernet ports
CLI commands 196
Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing 231, 239, 249
WFVQ
CLI commands 232
WFVQ, *see* Weighted Fair VoIP Queuing